



**SANGFOR**

SANGFOR Technologies Co., Ltd.

International Service Centre: +60 12711 7129 (7511)

Malaysia: 1700817071

Email: tech.support@sangfor.com.hk

RMA: rma@sangfor.com.hk

---

# **IAM V4.1 User Manual**



**SANGFOR**

**April, 2014**

# Table of Contents

Table of Contents .....	2
Announcement .....	5
Preface .....	6
About This Manual .....	6
Document Conventions.....	6
Graphic Interface Conventions .....	6
Symbol Conventions .....	7
Technical Support .....	7
Acknowledgements.....	7
Chapter 1    IAM Installation.....	8
1.1    Environment Requirement .....	8
1.2    Power .....	8
1.3    Product Appearance .....	8
1.4    Configuration and Management .....	9
1.5    Wiring Method of Standalone .....	9
1.6    Wiring Method of Redundant System.....	12
Chapter 2    IAM Console.....	13
2.1    WebUI Login .....	13
2.2    Configuration .....	16
Chapter 3    Functions.....	18
3.1    Status.....	18
3.1.1    Running Status .....	18
3.1.2    Security Status .....	25
3.1.3    Flow Status.....	26
3.1.4    Real-time Behaviors.....	39
3.1.5    Online Users .....	40
3.1.6    Email Audit .....	44
3.1.7    DHCP Status .....	47
3.2    Objects .....	47
3.2.1    Application Ident Library.....	49
3.2.2    Intelligent Ident Library .....	52
3.2.3    Application Customization .....	56
3.2.4    URL Library.....	60
3.2.5    Ingress Rule Library .....	65
3.2.6    Service .....	83
3.2.7    IP Group.....	85
3.2.8    Schedule.....	87
3.2.9    Black/White List Group.....	88
3.2.10    Keyword Group .....	89
3.2.11    File Type Group .....	90

3.2.12	Trusted CA.....	92
3.3	User/Policy .....	92
3.3.1	Access Management .....	93
3.3.2	User Management .....	183
3.3.3	User Authentication .....	233
3.4	Bandwidth Management .....	308
3.4.1	Overview.....	308
3.4.2	Bandwidth Channel Matching/Priority .....	309
3.4.3	Bandwidth Channel.....	309
3.4.4	Line Bandwidth.....	328
3.4.5	Virtual Line .....	329
3.5	Proxy/Cache.....	336
3.5.1	Overview.....	336
3.5.2	Proxy Options .....	336
3.5.3	Cache Options.....	339
3.5.4	Cache Hit Logs .....	342
3.6	Security.....	343
3.6.1	Anti-DoS.....	343
3.6.2	ARP Protection .....	345
3.6.3	Antivirus .....	347
3.7	Firewall.....	349
3.7.1	Firewall Rules .....	349
3.7.2	SNAT .....	353
3.7.3	DNAT.....	360
3.8	Network .....	368
3.8.1	Deployment.....	368
3.8.2	Interfaces.....	414
3.8.3	Static Route.....	420
3.8.4	Policy Route.....	423
3.8.5	High Availability .....	429
3.8.6	DHCP.....	437
3.8.7	VPN System.....	439
3.8.8	Protocol Extension .....	480
3.9	System.....	483
3.9.1	License .....	483
3.9.2	Administrator .....	484
3.9.3	System Time .....	495
3.9.4	Auto Update .....	496
3.9.5	Alarm Options.....	498
3.9.6	Global Excluded Address .....	501
3.9.7	Backup/Restore .....	503
3.9.8	Custom Prompt Page.....	504
3.9.9	Data Center Options.....	506
3.9.10	Advanced .....	508

3.10	Diagnostics .....	514
3.10.1	System Logs.....	514
3.10.2	Capture Packets.....	515
3.10.3	Command Console.....	517
3.10.4	Bypass/Packet Drop List.....	518
3.10.5	Restart.....	520
Appendix A:	Gateway Update Client .....	522
Appendix B:	Acronyms and Abbreviations .....	528

# Announcement

Copyright © SANGFOR Technologies Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of the information contained in this document shall be extracted, reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, without prior written permission of SANGFOR.

SANGFOR, SANGFOR Technologies and the SANGFOR logo  are the trademarks or registered trademarks of SANGFOR Technologies Co., Ltd. All other trademarks used or mentioned herein belong to their respective owners.

This manual shall only be used as usage guide, and no statement, information, or suggestion in it shall be considered as implied or express warranties of any kind, unless otherwise stated. This manual is subject to change without notice. To obtain the latest version of this manual, please contact the Customer Service of SANGFOR Technologies Co., Ltd.

# Preface

## About This Manual

This user manual includes the following chapters:

Chapter	Describe...
Chapter 1 IAM Installation	Describes the product appearance, function features and performance parameters of IAM device, and preparations and cautions before installation.
Chapter 2 IAM Console	Describes how to use the IAM console and perform general operations on the console.
Chapter 3 Functions	Describes how to configure the device-related configurations, including status displays, objects, user/policy, bandwidth management, proxy/cache, security, firewall, network, system and diagnostics.

## Document Conventions

### Graphic Interface Conventions

Convention	Meaning	Example
boldface	Keywords or highlighted items	The user name and password are <b>Admin</b> by default.
italics	Directories, URLs	Enter the following address in the IE address bar: <i>http://10.254.254.254:1000</i>
[ ]	Page titles, names of parameters, menus, and submenus	Select [System] > [Web UI] to open the Web UI page, and then configure the [Webpage Timeout].
< >	Names of buttons or links on the web interface or key-press	Click <Update> to save your settings.
>	Multilevel menus and submenus	Go to [System] > [Network Interface] to configure the network interfaces.
“ ”	Prompts popped up	The browser may pop up the prompt "Install ActiveX control"

## Symbol Conventions

This manual also adopts the following symbols to indicate the parts that need special attention to be paid during the operation:

Convention	Meaning	Description
	Caution	Indicates actions that could cause setting error, loss of data or damage to the device.
	Warning	Indicates actions that could cause injury to human body.
	Note	Indicates helpful suggestion or supplementary information.

## Technical Support

Email: [tech.support@sangfor.com.hk](mailto:tech.support@sangfor.com.hk)

International Service Centre: +60 12711 7129 (7511)      Malaysia: 1700817071

Website: [www.sangfor.com](http://www.sangfor.com)

## Acknowledgements

Thanks for using our product and user manual. If you have any suggestion about our product or user manual, please provide feedback to us through phone or email.

# Chapter 1 IAM Installation

This chapter mainly describes the appearance and installation of SANGFOR IAM hardware device. After correct installation, you can configure and debug the system.

## 1.1 Environment Requirement

The SANGFOR IAM device requires the following working environment:

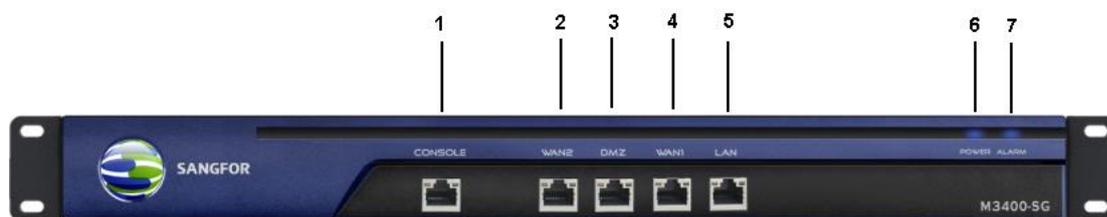
- ◆ Input voltage: 110V-230V
- ◆ Temperature: 0-45°C
- ◆ Humidity: 5%-90%

To ensure long-term and stable running of the system, the power supply should be properly grounded, dustproof measures taken, working environment well ventilated and indoor temperature kept stable. This product conforms to the requirements on environment protection, and the placement, usage and discard of the product should comply with relevant national law and regulation.

## 1.2 Power

The SANGFOR IAM device uses 110 ~ 230V alternating current (AC) as its power supply. Make sure it is well-grounded before being provided with power supply.

## 1.3 Product Appearance



SANGFOR IAM Hardware Device

Above is the front panel of SANGFOR IAM hardware gateway device. The interfaces or indicators on the front panel are described respectively in the following table.

**Table 1 Interface Description**

No.	Interface/Indicator	Usage
1	CONSOLE Interface	Used for high-availability function (redundant system)
2	WAN2 (eth3)	Network interface to be defined as WAN2 interface
3	DMZ (eth1)	Network interface to be defined as DMZ interface
4	WAN1 (eth2)	Network interface to be defined as WAN1 interface
5	LAN (eth0)	Network interface to be defined as LAN interface
6	POWER Indicator	Power indicator of IAM gateway device
7	ALARM Indicator	Alarm indicator of IAM gateway device



The CONSOLE interface is only for debugging by technical engineers. The end users connect to the device via the network interfaces.

## 1.4 Configuration and Management

Before configuring the device, please prepare a computer and make sure the web browser (for example, Internet Explorer browser) of the computer can be used normally. Then connect the computer with the IAM device to a same local area network (LAN) and then configure the IAM device on the computer over the established network.

The default IP address settings for the network interfaces are described below:

Interface	IP Address
eth0 (LAN)	10.251.251.251/24
eth1 (DMZ)	10.252.252.252/24
eth2 (WAN1)	200.200.20.61/24

## 1.5 Wiring Method of Standalone

Connect the power cable to the Power interface on the rear panel of the IAM device and switch on the power supply. The POWER indicator (in green) and ALARM indicator (in red) on the front panel will be lighted. The ALARM indicator will go out one or two minutes later, indicating the device runs normally.

Follow the instructions below to wire the interfaces:

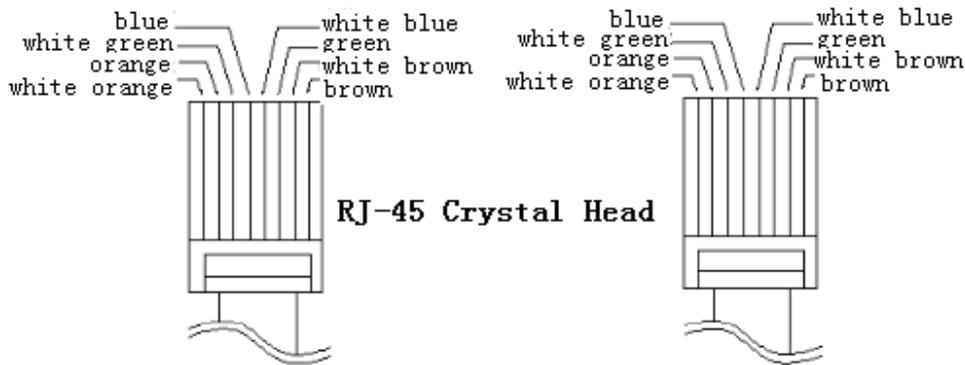
- ◆ Use standard RJ-45 Ethernet cable to connect the LAN interface to the local area network and then configure the IAM device.
- ◆ Use standard RJ-45 Ethernet cable to connect the WAN1 interface with the networking device, such as router, optical fiber transceiver, ADSL Modem, etc.
- ◆ Use standard RJ-45 Ethernet cable to connect DMZ interface to the DMZ zone network. Generally, the Web server and Mail server providing services to wide area network (WAN) are placed at the DMZ zone. The IAM device provides secure protection for these servers.

When wiring the interfaces, please use the correct cables for connection as instructed below:

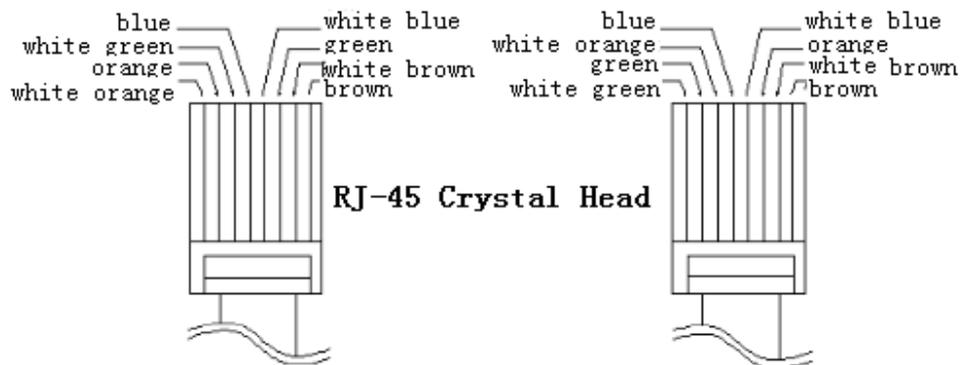
- ◆ Use straight-through cable to connect a WAN interface with the Modem, and crossover cable to connect a WAN interface with the router.
- ◆ Use straight-through cable to connect the LAN interface with the switch, and crossover cable to connect the LAN interface on the device with the network interface on the computer.

If connections cannot be established while the corresponding indicator functions normally, please check whether cables are correctly used for connections. The differences between straight-through cable and crossover cable are the wire sequences at both ends, as shown below:

## 1. Wire Sequence of Straight-through Cable



## 2. Wire Sequence of Crossover Cable



Wire Sequences of Straight-through Cable and Crossover Cable

After correct connections, log in to the console of IAM device and configure the deployment mode according to the network topology (see section 3.8.1 "Deployment").

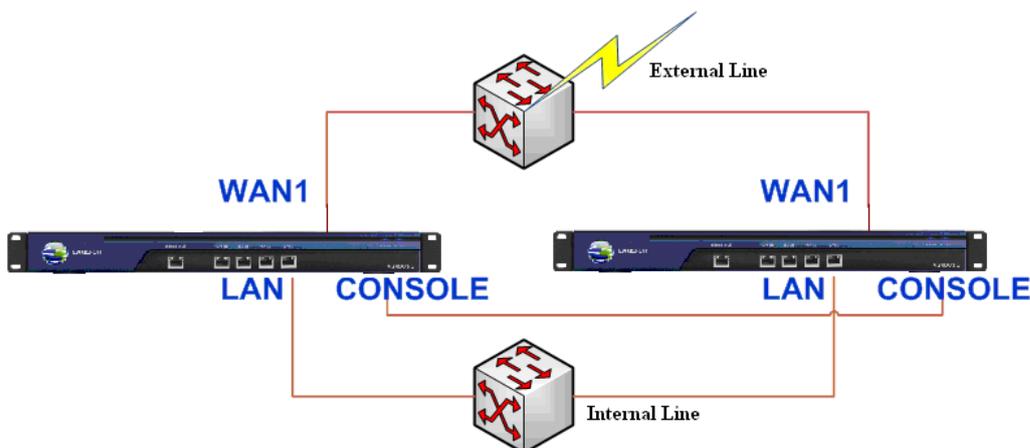


1. Multi-line function of the IAM device allows multiple Internet lines to be connected in. In this situation, connect the second networking device to WAN2 interface, the third networking device to WAN3 interface, and so on.

2. When IAM gateway device is running, the POWER indicator (in green) keeps lighted, the WAN LINK and LAN LINK indicators (in orange) keep lighted. The ACT indicator (in green) will flicker if there is data flow. When the device is starting, the ALARM indicator is lighted (in red) due to system loading and then goes out after one or two minutes, indicating successful startup of the device. After startup, the ALARM indicator may flash, which means the device is writing logs. However, if the ALARM indicator stays lighted for a long time and does not go out, please shut down the device and restart the device after 5 minutes. If this situation remains after restart, please contact us.

## 1.6 Wiring Method of Redundant System

If two IAM devices are deployed in high availability mode (HA), please wire the two devices to external network and internal network as shown below:



Follow the instructions below to wire the two devices:

- ◆ Use standard RJ-45 Ethernet cable to connect the WAN1 interfaces of the two IAM devices to a same switch (if multi-line function is applied, the wiring method is the same: just connect the WAN interfaces of the two devices to a same external line), and then connect the switch to other networking devices, such as router, fiber optical transceiver and ADSL Modem, etc.
- ◆ Use the Console cable (among the accessories) to connect Console interfaces of the two IAM devices.
- ◆ Use RJ-45 Ethernet cable to connect the LAN interfaces (eth0) of the two IAM devices to a same switch, and then connect the switch to the LAN switch, connecting it to the LAN.

After the two devices are correctly wired, switch on the power for both devices and then configure them. The procedures for configuring the redundant system are the same as that for a standalone device. You need only configure the active IAM device, which will automatically synchronize its configurations to the standby IAM device.

## Chapter 2 IAM Console

### 2.1 WebUI Login

The IAM device supports secure HTTPS login, using the standard port of HTTPS protocol. If you log into the Web Console of the IAM device for the first time, type the default login address *https://10.251.251.251* in the address bar of the browser.



Using HTTPS to login to the WEBUI and manage the IAM device can avoid the potential risks that the configurations may be intercepted during transmission.

#### Log into the Web Console

After finishing all the wiring, you can then log into the Web User Interface (UI) to configure the SANGFOR IAM device. Follow the procedures below to log into the console of the IAM device:

Step 1. Configure an IP address (for example, 10.251.251.100) on the 10.251.251.X subnet for the computer, and then type the default login IP address and port in the IE address bar: *https://10.251.251.251*. Click <Go> and the following alert dialog appears:



Step 2. Click <Yes> to open the login interface, as shown below:



Step 3. Type the user name and password, and click <Login> to log into the IAM device console. The username and password are **Admin** by default.

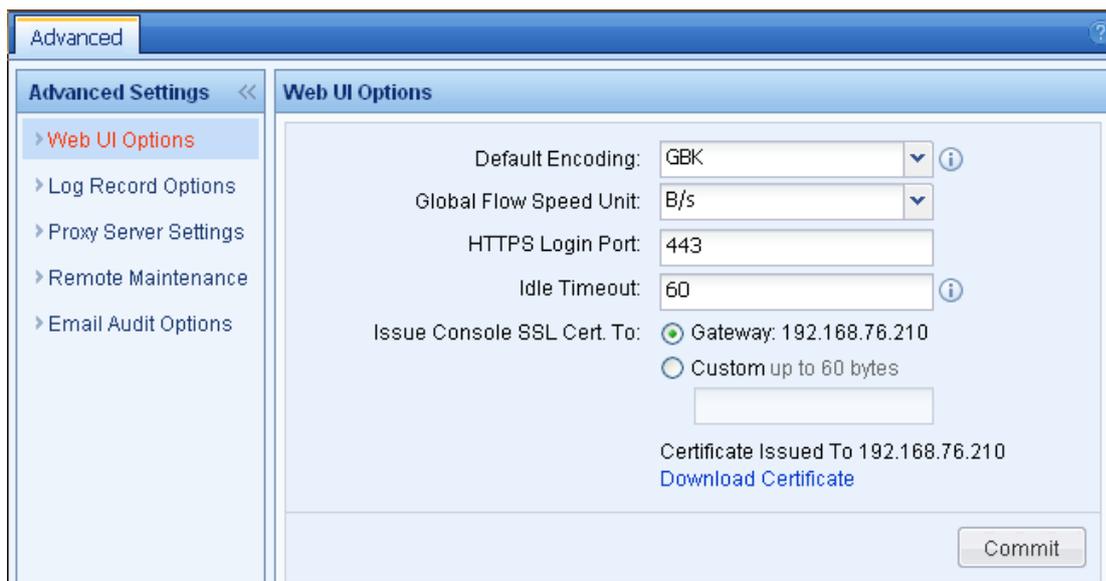
To view the version of the current IAM gateway device, click <Version>.

You can log into the console without installing any ActiveX. Non-IE browsers are also supported.

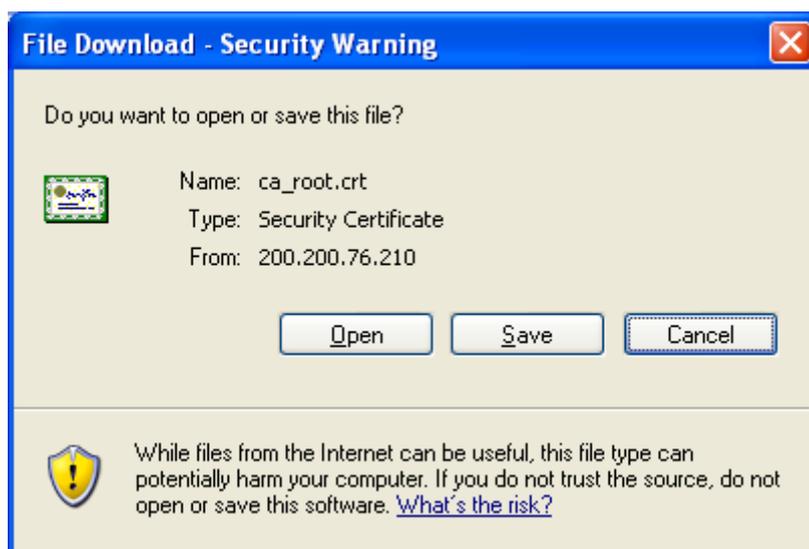
### Remove the Certificate Alert Dialog

During the login to the console, the browser may pop up the certificate alert dialog. To remove it, do as follows:

Step 1. Log into the console, open the [System] > [Advanced] > [Web UI Options] page. Specify the IP address (to which the certificate will be issued) in the [Issue Console SSL Cert. To] field. Here, the IP address refers to that of the network interface for login and it is the IP address of the LAN interface by default. In this example, we suppose that you have logged into the console through the default address of the LAN interface.



Step 2. Click <Download Certificate> to download the certificate to the local computer and click <Save> to save it.



Step 3. Locate the certificate in the local computer and double-click it to install.

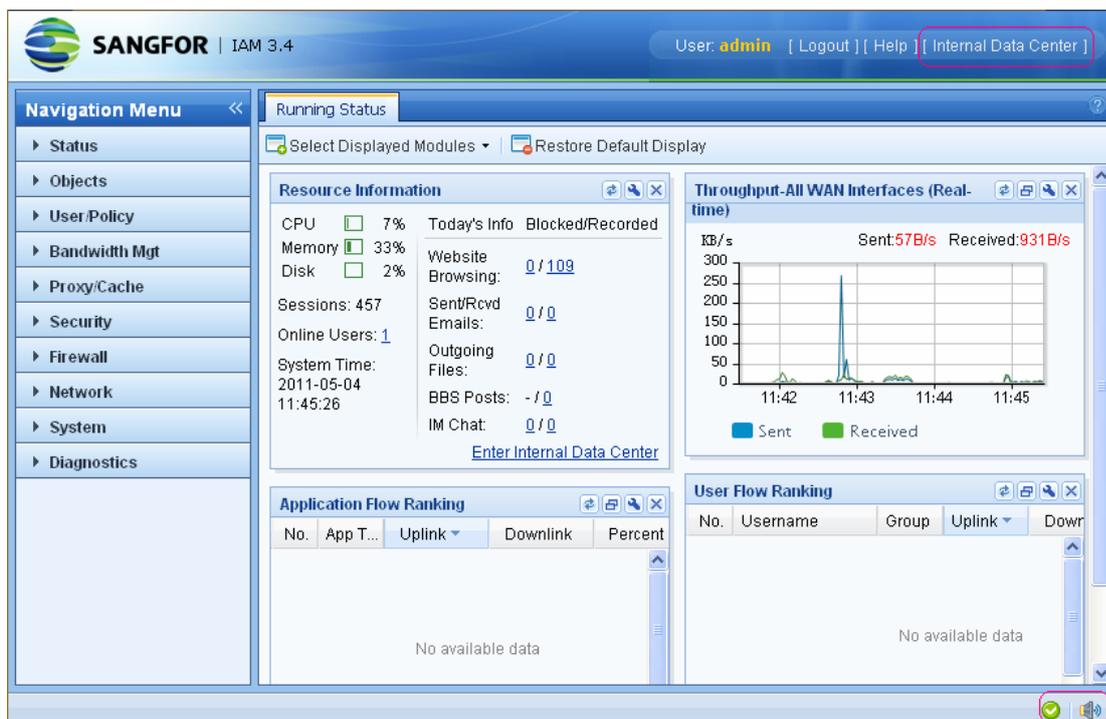
After the certificate is installed, the alert dialog will not pop up when you login through the default address of the LAN interface.



Only when you login through the IP address specified in [Issue Console SSL Cert. To] and the local computer has installed the certificate will this alert dialog be removed. If you login through other address or the computer has not installed the certificate, the alert dialog will still pop up.

## 2.2 Configuration

After logging in to the Web UI, you will see the following major modules: [Status], [Objects], [User/Policy], [Bandwidth Mgt], [Proxy/Cache], [Security], [Firewall], [Network], [System] and [Diagnostics], as shown below:



The following instructions for the buttons and icons are applicable to all the configuration pages on the IAM device and will not be described again in the subsequent sections:

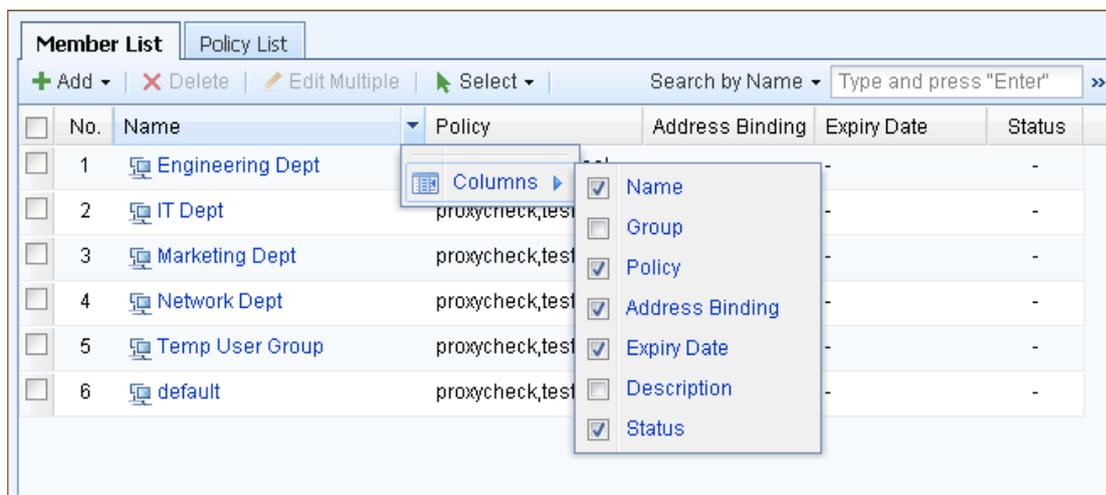
- ◆ If a <Commit> button is included on the configuration page, after you change the configurations, you need click this button to apply your configuration changes. Generally, it may take 5 to 10 seconds for the configuration changes to take effect. To make them take effect immediately, click the  icon at the bottom-right of the page.
- ◆ The  icon at the bottom-right of the page is for broadcasting some system messages or warning messages in real time.
- ◆ Most of the configuration pages include the  icon. When you put your mouse cursor over this icon, a brief description for the current configuration item will pop up.



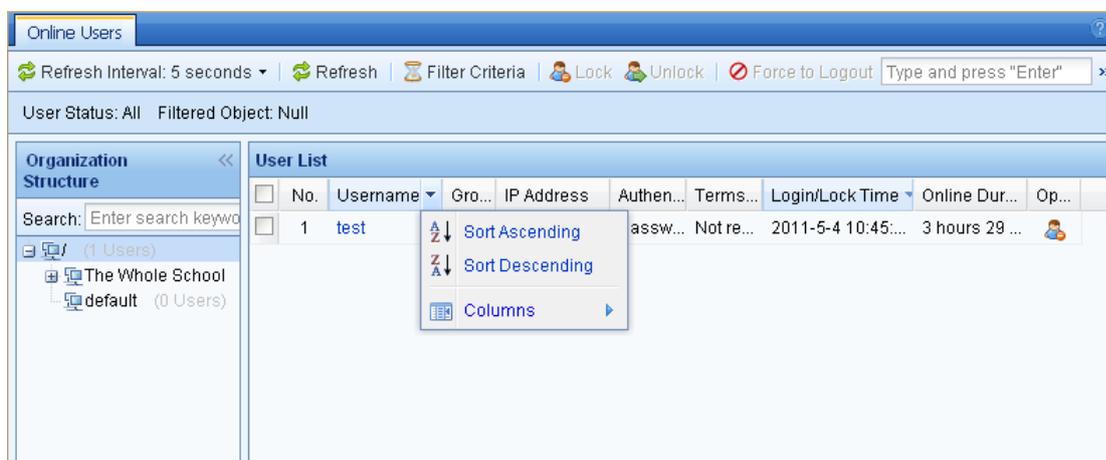
When you modify the settings on the [Network] > [Deployment] page or [System] > [System Time] page or default encoding on the [System] > [Advanced] > [Web UI Options] page, the IAM device will restart and you need to re-login.

For most of the pages that display the configuration information and status in List View, you can select the columns to be displayed to easily get your desired information and sort the information in ascending or descending order according to your needs. For example:

1. On the [Member List] page, you can select the columns that you want to display and the page will only display the information of the selected columns, as shown below:



2. On the [Online Users] page, you can select [Sort Ascending] or [Sort Descending] to sort the information in ascending or descending order by the corresponding column.



## Chapter 3 Functions

### 3.1 Status

The [Status] module displays the basic status information of the IAM device, including [Running Status], [Security Status], [Flow Status], [Real-time Behaviors], [Online Users], [Email Audit] and [DHCP Status].

#### 3.1.1 Running Status

The [Running Status] displays the following information of the IAM device: resource information, interface information, interface throughput, trend of application flow speed, flow ranking, real-time behaviors and security status.

##### 3.1.1.1 Select Displayed Modules

On the [Running Status] page, you can select the modules to be displayed on the [Running Status] page according to your needs.

To select the modules that you want to display, do as follows:

Step 1. Click the <Select Displayed Modules> button to open the information list, as shown below:



Step 2. Click to select the information items to be displayed, and the page will only display the information of the selected modules.

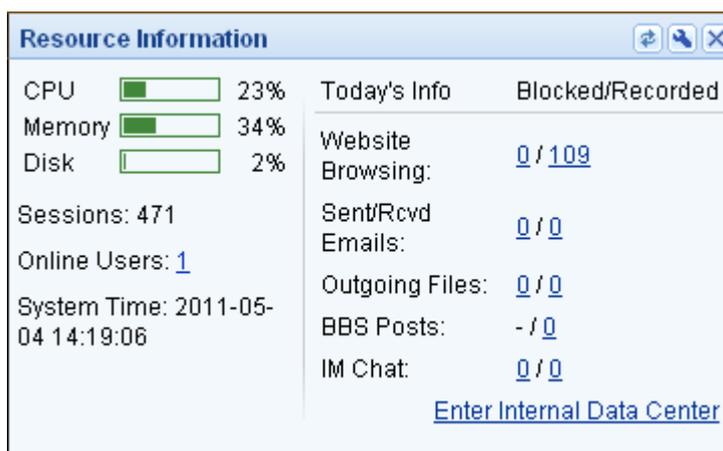
### 3.1.1.2 Restore Default Display

On the [Running Status] page, click the <Restore Default Display> button to display the default modules only, namely, [Resource Information], [Throughput], [Application Flow Ranking] and [User Flow Ranking].

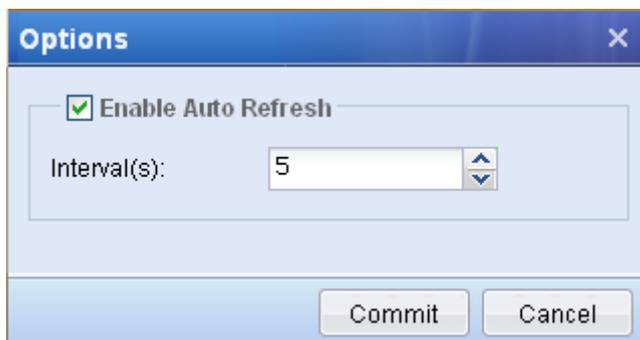
### 3.1.1.3 View Status

#### 3.1.1.3.1 Resource Information

The [Resource Information] section displays the brief information of the device resources, including CPU usage, memory usage, disk usage, device sessions, online users, system time and log information of the day, as shown below:



To enable the automatic refresh function, click the  icon to open the [Options] page, and then check the [Enable Auto Refresh] option and set the refresh interval, as shown below:

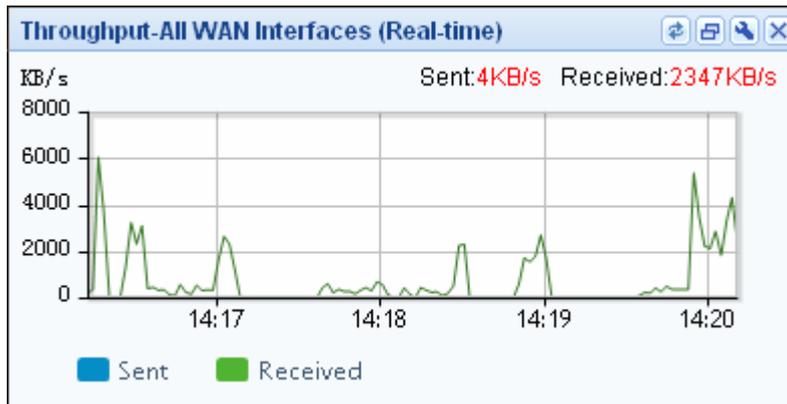


To enter the Internal Data Center, click the [Internal Data Center] link to enter the data center and search

for logs or make statistics.

### 3.1.1.3.2 Throughput

The [Throughput] section uses a line graph to dynamically display the status of the WAN interface sending or receiving packets in real time, as shown below:



To set the parameters related to the graph, do as follows:

Step 1. Click the  icon to open the [Graph Settings] page, as shown below:

The "Graph Settings" dialog box contains the following configuration options:

- Enable Auto Refresh
- Interval(s): 3
- Select Time Period:
  - Real-time
  - Last 24 hours
  - Last 7 days
- Select Unit:
  - B/s
  - bps
- Select Interface: All WAN Interfaces

Buttons: Commit, Cancel

Step 2. Specify the following information.

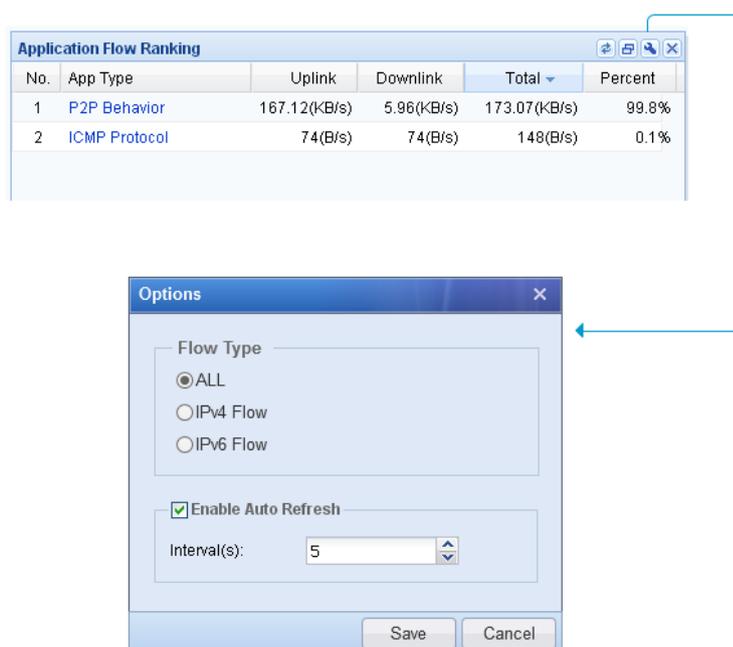
**Table 2 Graph Settings (Throughput)**

Field	Description
Enable Auto Refresh	Check the option to enable the automatic refresh function and then set the refresh interval.
Select Time Period	Select the time period, in which the throughput of the interface is to be displayed.
Select Unit	Select the flow unit.
Select Interface	Select the interface whose throughput is to be displayed.

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.1.1.3.3 Application Flow Ranking

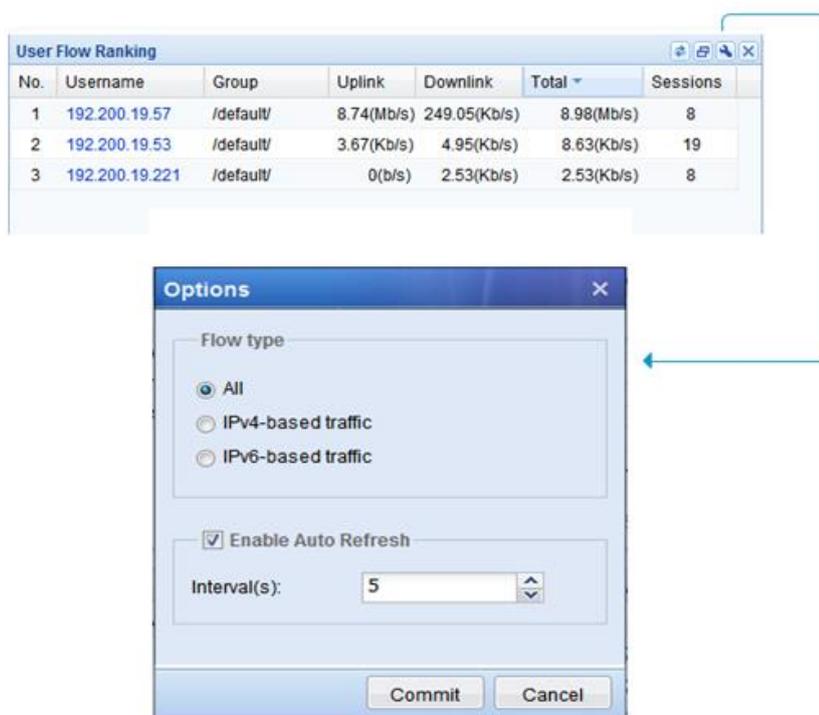
The [Application Flow Ranking] section displays the flow ranking of top 10 applications. You can rank them by uplink flow, downlink flow or total flow. As shown in the following figure, if you click the [Uplink] column, the [Percent] column display the percentage of uplink flow; if you click the [Downlink] column, the [Percent] column display the percentage of downlink flow. By default, the [Application Flow Ranking] displays applications of ALL flow type, which include IPv4 and IPv6. User has options to select either IPv4 or IPv6 flow for applications display.



To set the automatic refresh interval and flow type, click the  icon.

### 3.1.1.3.4 User Flow Ranking

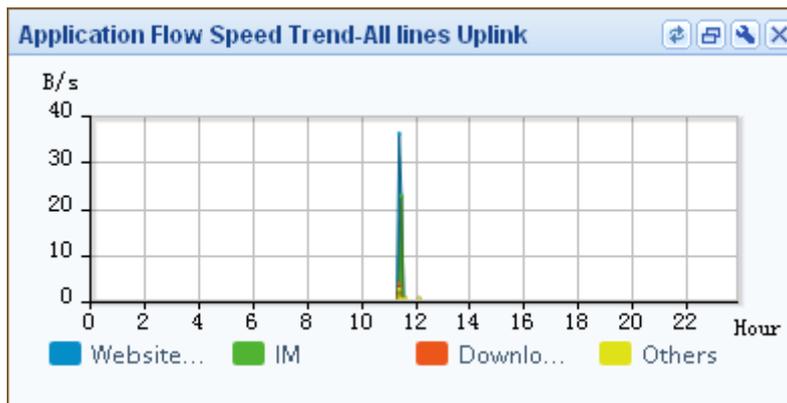
The [User Flow Ranking] section displays the flow ranking of top 10 users. You can rank them by uplink flow, downlink flow or total flow. As shown in the following figure, if you click the [Uplink] column, the [Percent] column display the percentage of uplink flow; if you click the [Downlink] column, the [Percent] column display the percentage of downlink flow. By default, the [User Flow Ranking] displays users of ALL flow type, which include IPv4 and IPv6. There are options to select either IPv4-based or IPv6-based traffic for display.



To set the automatic refresh interval and flow type, click the  icon.

### 3.1.1.3.5 Application Flow Speed Trend

The [Application Flow Speed Trend] section uses an overlay graph to dynamically display the flow speed trend of various applications, with different applications displayed in different colors, as shown below:



To set the parameters related to the graph, do as follows:

Step 1. Click the  icon to open the [Graph Settings] page, as shown below:

The "Graph Settings" dialog box contains the following configuration options:

- Enable Auto Refresh
- Interval(s): 1800
- Select Unit:
  - B/s
  - bps
- Select Line: All lines
- Type: Total
- Buttons: Commit, Cancel

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 3 Graph Settings (Application Flow Speed Trend)**

Field	Description
Enable Auto Refresh	Check the option to enable the automatic refresh function and then set the refresh interval.
Select Unit	Select the flow unit.
Select Line	Select the line. Options are: [All], [Line1] and [Line2].
Type	Select the flow speed type. Options are: [Total], [Uplink] and [Downlink].

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.1.1.3.6 Interface Information

The [Interface Information] section mainly displays the status of the network interfaces on the IAM device, and the corresponding flow sent and received in real time, as shown below:

Status	Interface	Zone	IP	Rcvd B/s	Sent B/s
	eth0	LAN1	192.16...	1,247	0
	eth1	DMZ1	10.252...	-	-
	eth2	VVA...	200.20...	3,296	8,259
	eth3	-	-	-	-

The  icon indicates the interface is connected, and the  icon indicates the interface is not connected yet.

To set the automatic refresh interval, click the  icon.

### 3.1.1.3.7 Security Status

The [Security Status] section mainly displays the insecure behaviors detected by the IAM device, as shown below:

No.	Type	Total Co...	Last Occ...	Last Involve...
1	Virus Event	0		
2	DoS/ARP Attack	0		
3	Port Scanning	0		
4	Outgoing Email An...	0		
5	Flow Anomaly at St...	0		
6	Protocol Anomaly	0		
7	Malicious Script	0		

To set the automatic refresh interval, click the  icon.

### 3.1.1.3.8 Real-time Behaviors

The [Real-time Behaviors] section mainly displays the real-time network behaviors of the users, as shown below:

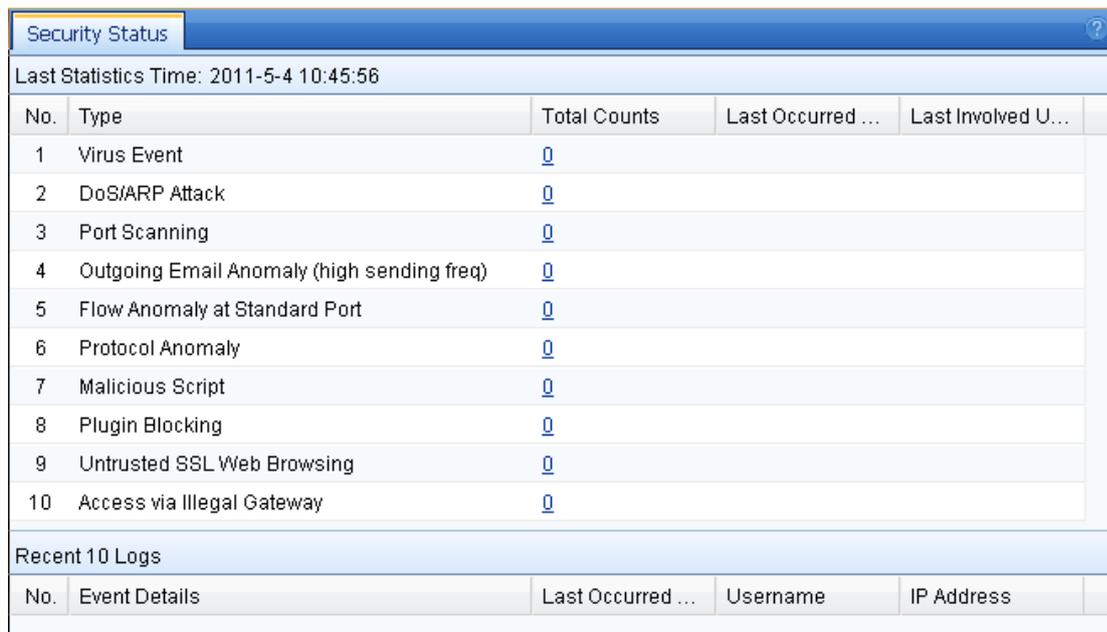


No.	Time	Username	Gro...	App Type	Application
1	3 hour...	test	/	Website B...	Others

To set the automatic refresh interval, click the  icon.

### 3.1.2 Security Status

The [Security Status] page mainly displays the insecure behaviors detected by the IAM device, as shown below:



No.	Type	Total Counts	Last Occurred ...	Last Involved U...
1	Virus Event	0		
2	DoS/ARP Attack	0		
3	Port Scanning	0		
4	Outgoing Email Anomaly (high sending freq)	0		
5	Flow Anomaly at Standard Port	0		
6	Protocol Anomaly	0		
7	Malicious Script	0		
8	Plugin Blocking	0		
9	Untrusted SSL Web Browsing	0		
10	Access via Illegal Gateway	0		

No.	Event Details	Last Occurred ...	Username	IP Address
-----	---------------	-------------------	----------	------------

There are 10 types of insecure behaviors: [Virus Event], [DoS/ARP Attack], [Port Scanning], [Outgoing Email Anomaly (high sending freq)], [Flow Anomaly at Standard Port], [Protocol Anomaly], [Malicious

Script], [Plugin Blocking], [Untrusted SSL Web Browsing] and [Access via Illegal Gateway]. If these insecure behaviors are detected by the IAM device, this page will list the total number of insecure behaviors, last occurred time, and last involved user/IP, and display the recent 10 logs and detailed event information of the insecure behavior.

To view the detailed logs, click the number displayed in the [Total Counts] column to enter the data center.

### 3.1.3 Flow Status

The [Flow Status] page mainly displays the following information of the IAM device: flow information of online users and various applications, bandwidth channel status, optimization status and connection monitoring.

#### 3.1.3.1 User Flow Ranking

The [User Flow Ranking] page mainly displays the bandwidth utilization of online users.

##### 3.1.3.1.1 View User Ranking

As shown in the following figure, users are ranked by uplink or downlink flow speed. You can view the information of the online users, including username, group, uplink/downlink flow speed, total flow speed, sessions, whether to lock the user, whether to obtain the host name and flow details.

User Flow Ranking										
Auto Refresh: 5 seconds   Refresh   Filter Criteria   Lock   Go to Unlock User										
Filter Criteria: Display Top 60, Group ()										
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Username	Group	Uplink	Down...	Total	Se...	Lock	Obtain Host	Flow Details
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	200.200.76.196	/Test/	640(b/s)	864(b/s)	1.47(K...	3		<a href="#">Obtain</a>	<a href="#">Website Browsing</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	200.200.76.5	/Test/	624(b/s)	0(b/s)	624(b/s)	1		<a href="#">Obtain</a>	<a href="#">NETBIOS</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	200.200.76.252	/Test/	624(b/s)	0(b/s)	624(b/s)	1		<a href="#">Obtain</a>	<a href="#">NETBIOS</a>

To lock a user, click the icon under the [Lock] column and the user will be blocked from accessing the Internet.

To obtain the computer name corresponding to a user, click the [Obtain] link under the [Obtain Hostname] column.

To view detailed application flow of a user, click the corresponding application under the [Flow Details] column, and a page pops up, as shown below:

Application	Line	Percentage	Upload	Download	Total
Website Browsing	Line1	100%	1.18(KB/s)	1.32(KB/s)	2.5(KB/s)

To set the automatic refresh interval, click the <Auto Refresh: 5 seconds> button to set the interval according to your needs. Or, you can click <Refresh> to refresh the information manually.

### 3.1.3.1.2 Filter User Ranking

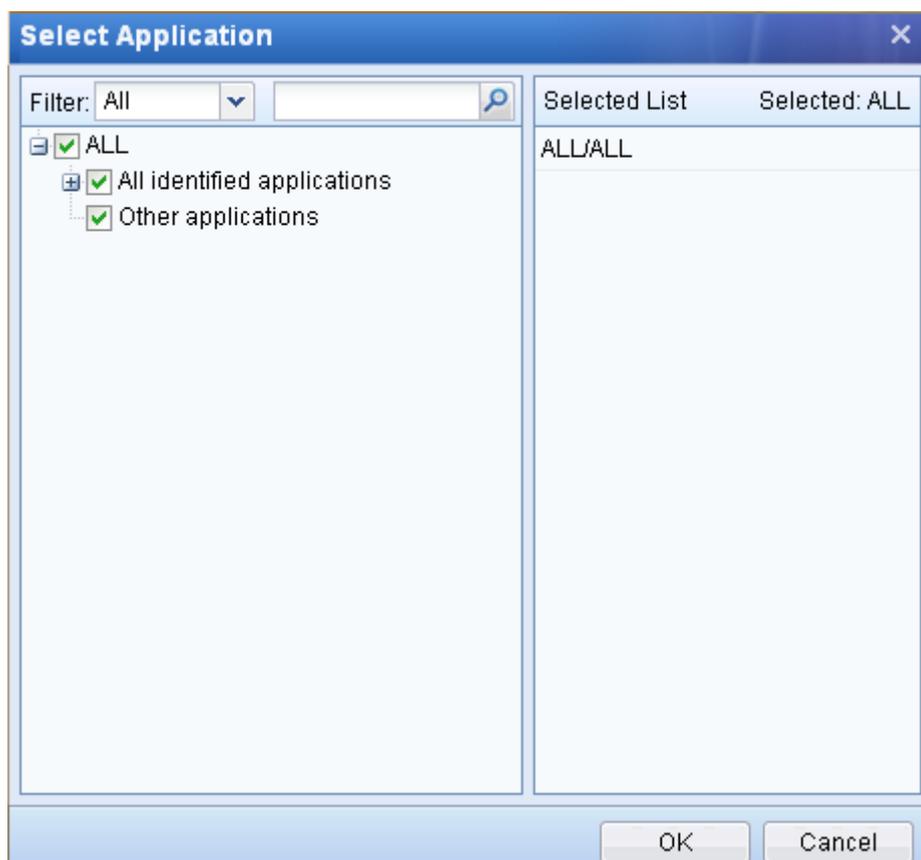
To filter user ranking, do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Filter Criteria> to open the [Filter Criteria] page, as shown below:

Step 2. Set [Filter Type] to specify the line and applications.

- a. Select the line in [Select Line].
- b. Specify the application. Click the text box of [App Type] to open the [Select Application] page,

as shown below:

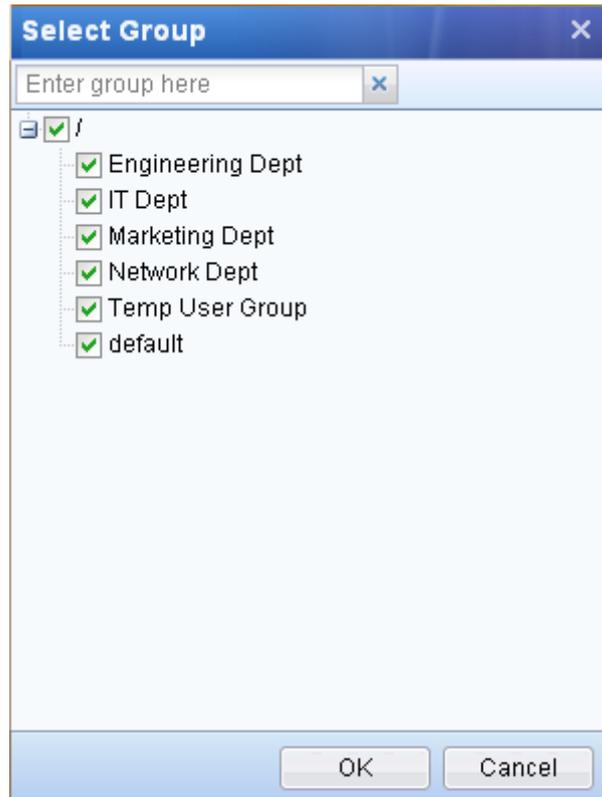


- c. To filter the applications, select [All], [Selected] or [Unselected] from the [Filter] drop-down list to display all, selected or unselected applications. Check specific applications on the left pane, and your selected applications will be displayed in the [Select List] on the right. Then, click <OK> to save your settings.

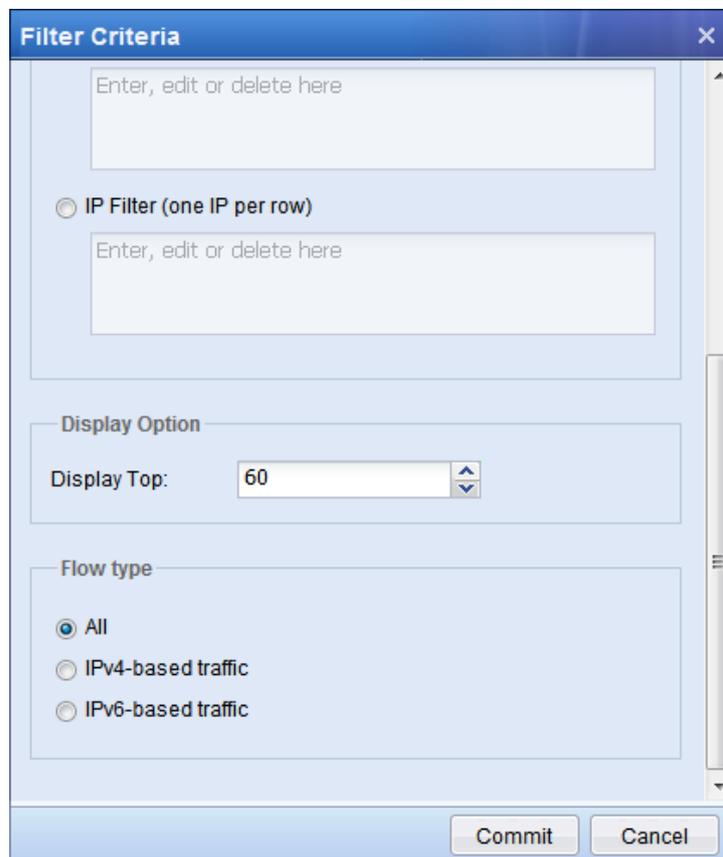
Step 3. Set [Object Filter] to specify the specific user, group or IP address.

- a. Select and set one of the three filters: [Group Filter], [User Filter] and [IP Filter].

In group filter, the slash “/” indicates all groups. To specify a specific group, click <Select> to open the [Select Group] page, as shown below:



- b. Check the groups you want to view or enter the corresponding group name in the text box, and then click <OK> to save your settings.



- Step 4. Set [Display Option] to specify the number of top users whose flow ranking you want to display.
- Step 5. Set [Flow Type] to specify the traffic type of flow that includes IPv4-based traffic or IPv6-based traffic or All, which means both traffics. Default setting is All.
- Step 6. Click <OK> to save your settings.

### 3.1.3.1.3 Lock User

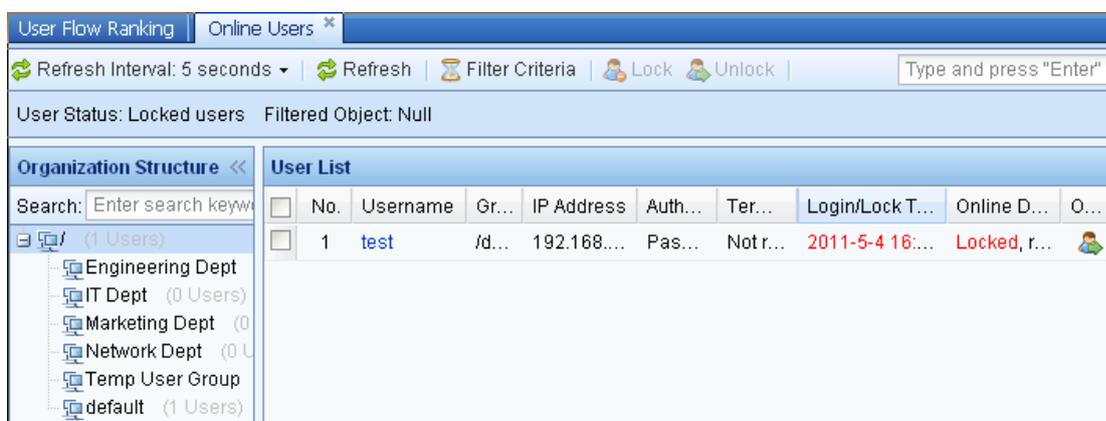
The <Lock> button or the  icon under the [Lock] column is used to cut off the connection of a user so that the user cannot access the Internet in a certain time period.

To lock a user, check the corresponding record and click the <Lock> button or the  icon. Then set the lockout period (in minutes) and click <Commit> to save your settings.



### 3.1.3.1.4 Unlock User

If you want to unlock the users who are still in lockout period so that they can access the Internet again, click the [Go to Unlock User] link and you will enter the [Online Users] page, as shown below:



To unlock a user, locate the locked user, check the box at the beginning of the record and click <Unlock>.

### 3.1.3.2 Application Flow Ranking

The [Application Flow Ranking] mainly displays the flow ranking of the applications in real time.

#### 3.1.3.2.1 View Application Ranking

As shown in the following figure, the applications are ranked by the occupied bandwidth. You can view the information of the applications, including application type, uplink/downlink flow speed, total flow speed, line, percentage of occupied bandwidth and main users that use the corresponding application.

No.	App Type	Line	Uplink	Downlink	Total	Percent	Main Users
1	Website Browsing	All Lines	1000(B/s)	7.85(KB/s)	8.82(KB/s)	100.0%	test

To view the information of the user that uses a corresponding application, click the user under the [Main Users] column and a page pops up, displaying the username, group, IP address, upload/download speed and total speed, as shown below:

User	Group	IP	Upload	Download	Total
test	/defa...	192.168.76.221	324(B/s)	324(B/s)	648(B/s)

To set the automatic refresh interval, click the <Auto Refresh: 5 seconds> button to set the interval according to your needs. Or, you can click <Refresh> to refresh the information manually.

#### 3.1.3.2.2 Filter Application Ranking

To filter application ranking, do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Filter Criteria> to open the [Filter Criteria] page, as shown below:

The screenshot shows a 'Filter Criteria' dialog box with the following settings:

- Object Filter:**
  - Select Line: All lines
  - Select Group: /
- Display Option:**
  - Display Top: 60
- Flow type:**
  - All
  - IPv4-based traffic

Step 2. Set [Object Filter] to specify the line and user group.

Step 3. Set [Display Option] to specify the number of top applications whose flow ranking you want to display.

Step 4. Set [Flow Type] to specify the traffic type of flow that includes IPv4 based traffic or IPv6 based traffic or All, which means both traffics. Default setting is All.

Step 5. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.1.3.3 Bandwidth Management Status

The [Bandwidth Mgt Status] page mainly displays the flow information of the bandwidth channels configured and already enabled on the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] > [Bandwidth Channel] page.

Bandwidth Management Status								
Auto Refresh: 5 seconds Refresh BM System Status: <b>Running</b> Enter Bandwidth Management System								
WAN Speed								
Name	Real-time Speed	History Speed	Preset Line Speed	Percent	History Flow			
Total Speed	↑1.91(Kb/s) ↓0(b/s)	0	↑32(Mb/s) ↓800(Mb/s)	↑0% ↓0%	0			
Bandwidth Channel Exclusion Policy								
Note: The two values in a same column respectively means Uplink / Downlink. History Info: Not display Filter: All channels								
Name	Line	Real-time Speed	Percent	Users	Min Bandwidth	Max Bandwidth	Priority	Status
test2	Line1	None	0% 0%	0 (0)	None	None	High	Runn...
Test	Line1	None	0% 0%	- (-)	None	None	High	Disa...
Guarantee L...	Line1	None	0% 0%	0 (0)	None	None	High	Runn...
Guarantee B...	Line1	None	0% 0%	5 (4)	None	None	Medium	Runn...
Limit Online ...	Line1	None	0% 0%	0 (0)	None	None	Low	Disa...
Limit P2P Flow	Line1	None	0% 0%	0 (0)	None	None	Low	Disa...
Default Cha...	ALL	1.91(Kb/s) 0(b/s)	0% 0%	4 (2)	None	None	Low	Runn...

The [BM System Status] field displays whether the Bandwidth Management System is enabled or not. Only when the status is **Running** can you view the real-time information of the bandwidth channels.

To set the automatic refresh interval, click the <Auto Refresh: 5 seconds> button to set the interval according to your needs. Or, you can click <Refresh> to refresh the information manually.

To enter the bandwidth management page, click the [Enter Bandwidth Management System] link.

### 3.1.3.3.1 View WAN Status

The [WAN Speed] section displays the overall flow information, including the real-time flow speed, history speed, preset line speed, percentage of flow occupation and history flow of each line and total lines, as shown below:

WAN Speed						
Name	Real-time Speed	History Speed	Preset Line Speed	Percent	History Flow	
Total Speed	↑405(B/s) ↓54(B/s)	↑12(B/s) ↓47(B/s)	↑1.25(MB/s) ↓1.25(MB/s)	↑0% ↓0%	↑3.73(KB) ↓13.87(KB)	

### 3.1.3.3.2 View Flow of Bandwidth Channels

The [Bandwidth Channel] tab displays the flow information of each bandwidth channel, including channel name, corresponding line, real-time flow speed, percentage of flow occupation, number of users using the channel, guaranteed bandwidth, priority and channel status, as show below:

Bandwidth Channel		Exclusion Policy								
Note: The two values in a same column respectively means Uplink / Downlink										
History Info: Last 5 minute Filter: All channels										
Name	Line	Real-ti...	Percent	History Speed	History Flow	U...	Min Ban...	Max Ban...	Pri...	S...
Guarantee L...	Li...	None	0% 0%	None	None	0 (0)	256(KB/...	1.25(MB...	High	...
Guarantee B...	Li...	None	0% 0%	None	None	1 (0)	768(KB/...	1.25(MB...	Me...	...
Limit Online ...	Li...	None	0% 0%	None	None	0 (0)	None	128(KB/...	Low	...
Limit P2P Flow	Li...	None	0% 0%	None	None	0 (0)	None	128(KB/...	Low	...
Default Cha...	ALL	None	0% 0%	None	None	1 (0)	None	1.25(MB...	Low	...

In [History Info], you can select to display or not display the history flow information of a specific time period.

In [Filter], you can select to view the flow information of all channels or only the running channels.

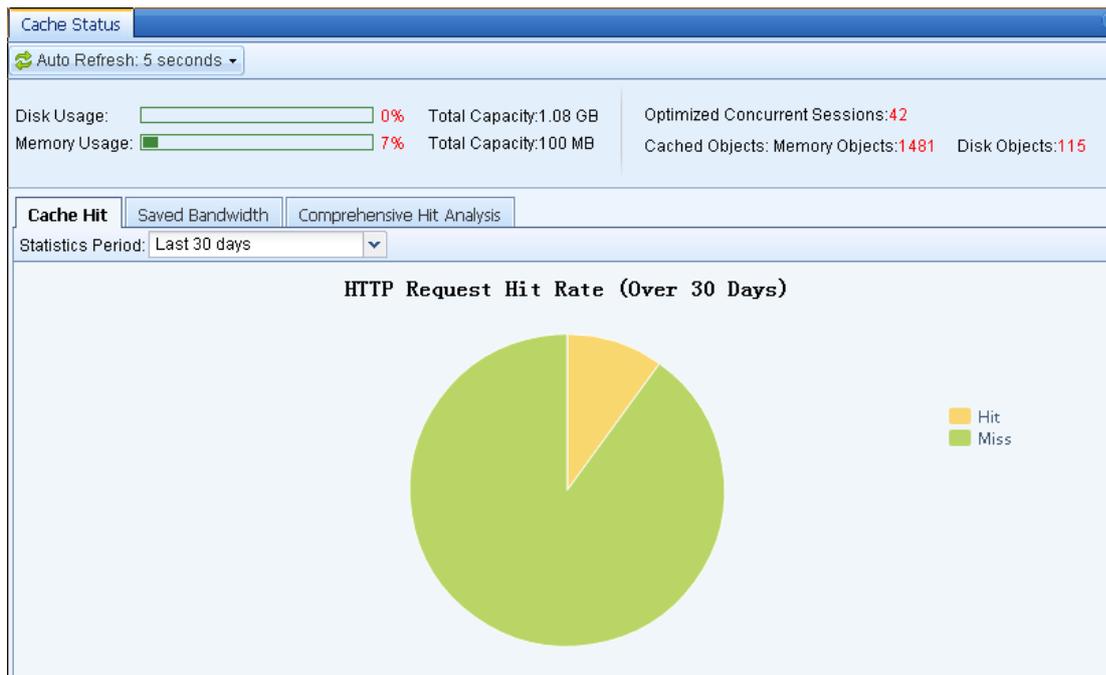
### 3.1.3.3 View Flow of Exclusion Policy

The [Exclusion Policy] tab mainly displays the flow information of the exclusion policies (that is, the data packets whose traffic is exempted from the control by bandwidth channel), as shown below:

Bandwidth Channel		Exclusion Policy			
No.	Name	Real-time Speed	History Speed	History Flow	
1	Total Speed	0	0	0	

### 3.1.3.4 Cache Status

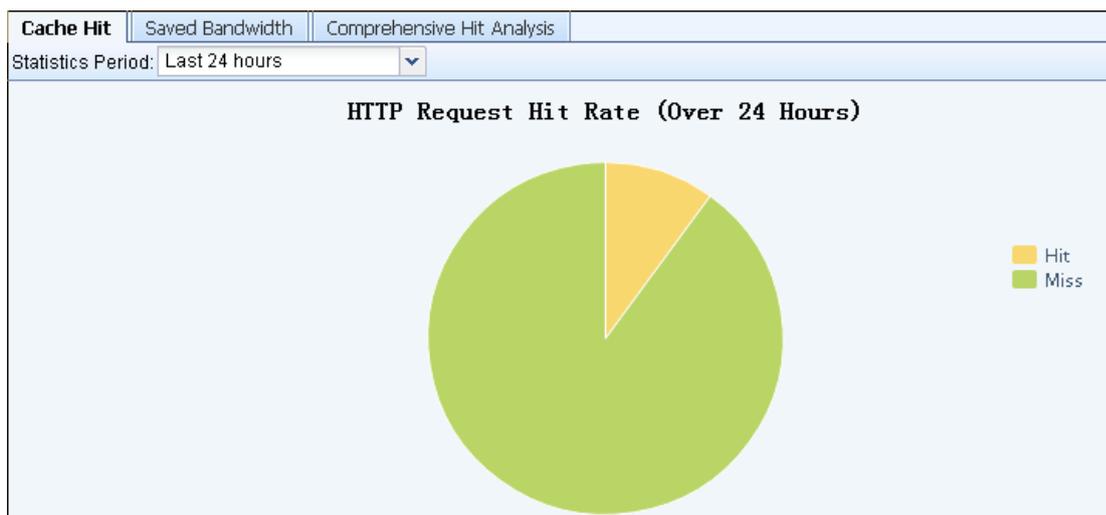
The [Cache Status] page displays the cache status information. Only when the cache function is enabled in the [Proxy/Cache] module will the corresponding information be displayed on this page, as shown below:



On the above page, you can view the cache-related information, including disk utilization, memory utilization, number of concurrent sessions, number of cached objects, optimization effect and cache hit of the cache module.

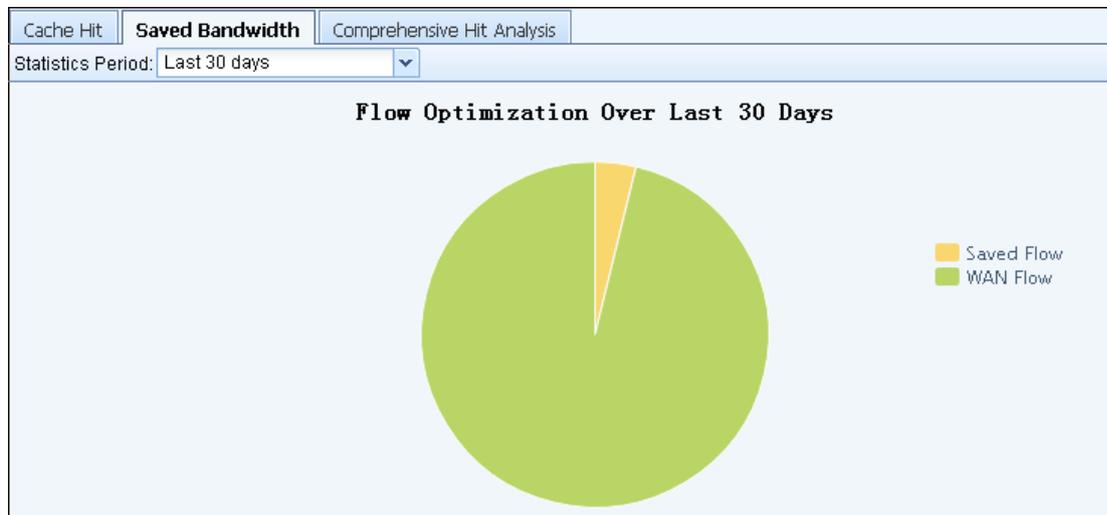
### 3.1.3.4.1 Cache Hit

The [Cache Hit] tab enables you to view the cache hit rate, as shown below:



### 3.1.3.4.2 Saved Bandwidth

The [Saved Bandwidth] tab enables you to view the flow optimization, as shown below:

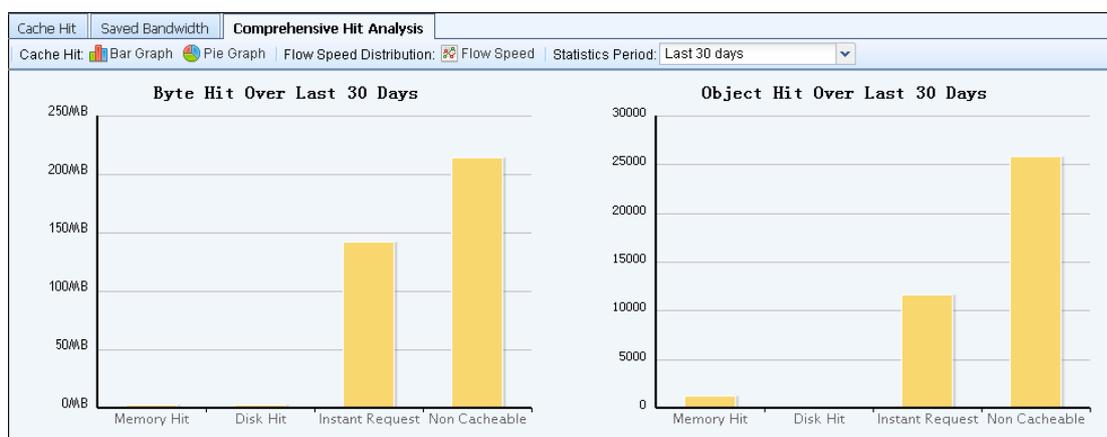


WAN flow indicates the flow sent from the IAM device to the wide area network, while LAN flow indicates the flow sent from the local area network to the IAM device.

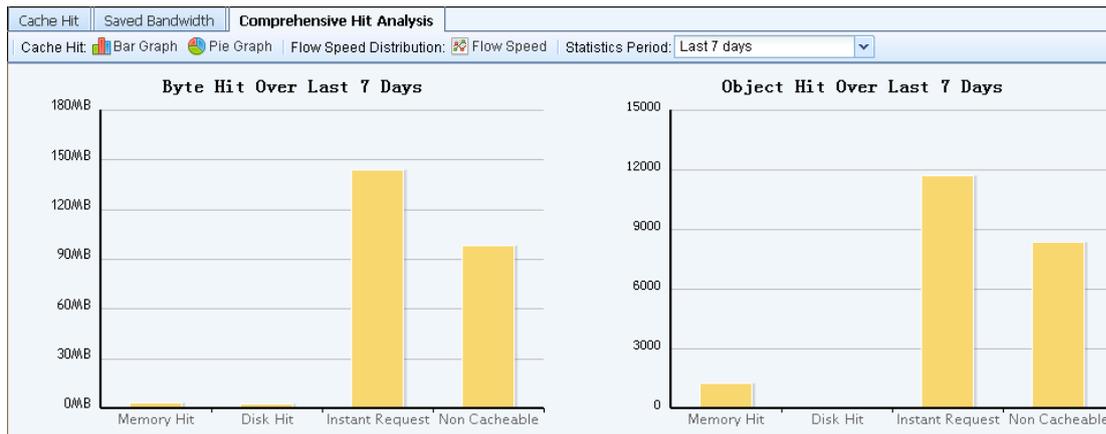
Saved flow = LAN flow – WAN flow.

### 3.1.3.4.3 Comprehensive Hit Analysis

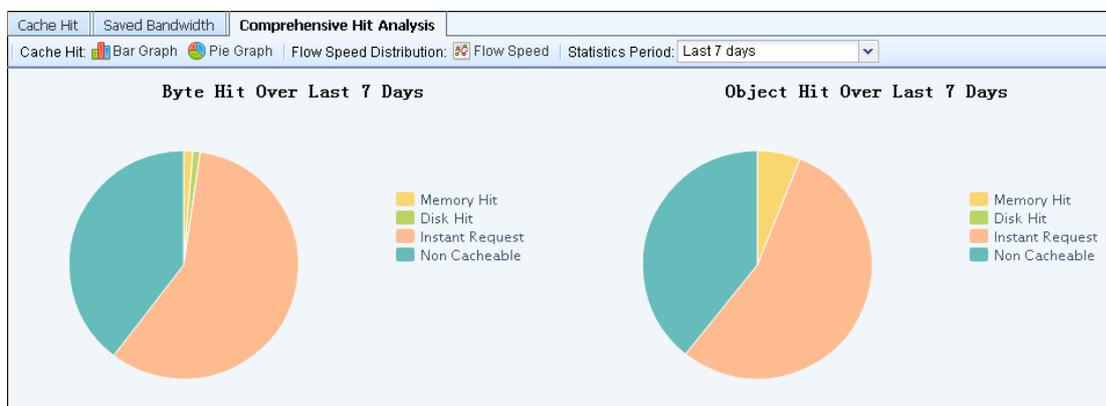
The [Comprehensive Hit Analysis] tab enables you to view the cache hit rate and flow optimization, as shown below:



The cache hit graphs mainly display the statistics of the LAN users' requested data that are read from the cache of the IAM device, as shown below:



By default, the statistics are displayed in bar graphs. You can click the <Pie Graph> button to view the information in pie graphs, as shown below:

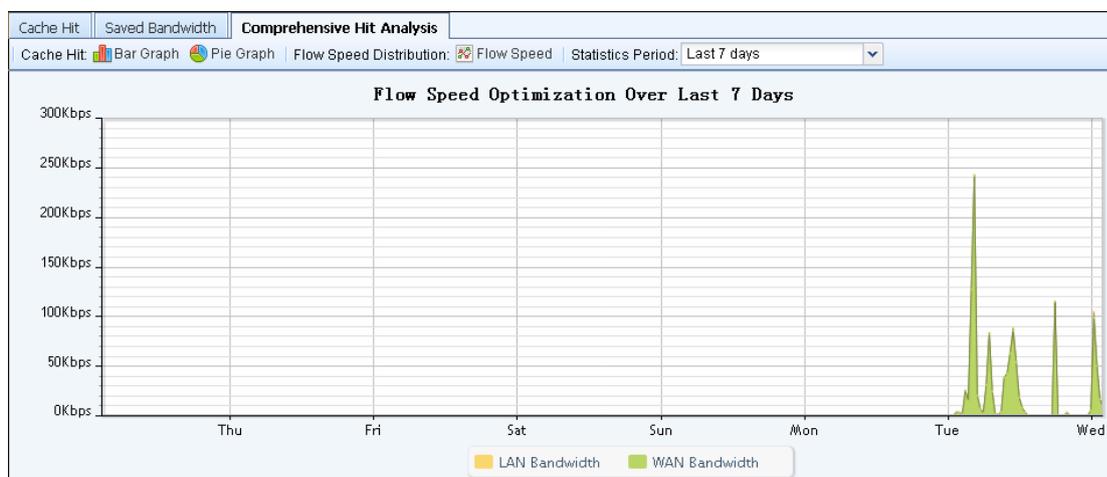


The information displayed on the above figure is described in the following table.

**Table 4 Cache Hit Information**

Field	Description
Object Hit	Indicates the requested data that are served by reading the cache of the device.
Byte Hit	Indicates the portions of the requested data that are served by reading the cache of the device.
Memory Hit	Indicates the requested data that are served by reading the memory cache.
Disk Hit	Indicates the requested data that are served by reading the disk cache.
Instant Request	Indicates the requests sent for the first time, or the requests that are denied by the URL filter.
Non Cacheable	Indicates the requested data that are marked with "not cacheable", that is, the data that will not be cached by the IAM device.
Statistical Period	Select the time period of which the statistics is to be made. You can select last 24 hours, last 7 days or last 30 days.

The [Comprehensive Hit Analysis] tab displays the cache hit graphs by default. You can click the <Flow Speed> button to view the flow speed optimization graph, as shown below:



WAN bandwidth indicates all the packets sent from the IAM device to the wide area network, while LAN bandwidth indicates all the packets sent from the local area network to the IAM device.

You can select to view the flow speed optimization information over last 24 hours, last 7 days or last 30 days.

### 3.1.3.5 Connections

The [Connections] page is used to search for the active connection information of a specific user or IP address. You can search by IP address or username, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the "Connections" page interface. At the top, there is a search bar with a dropdown menu set to "Search by IP" and a search icon. Below the search bar is a table with the following columns: No., Username, Group, Source, Destination (with a dropdown arrow), Protocol, App Type, Application, and Direction. The table body is currently empty.

#### 3.1.3.5.1 Search by IP

By default, the system displays [Search by IP]. To search for the connection information of a certain IP address, type the IP address in the text box, for example, 192.168.1.105, and click the  icon. The search results will be listed and you can view the connection information of the IP address, including source address, destination address, protocol, application type, direction, etc., as shown below:



No.	Username	Group	Source	Destination	Protocol	App Type	Applicat...	Direction
1	192.168.76.62-62	/default/	192.168.76.62...	200.200.76.3...	TCP	HTTP A...	HTTP_p...	LAN->W...

### 3.1.3.5.2 Search by Username

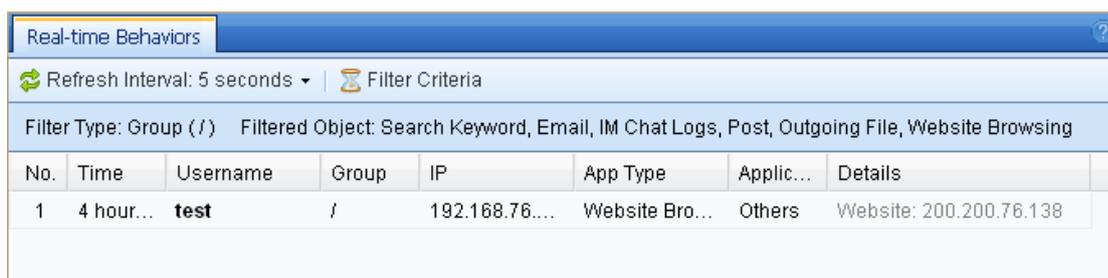
To search for the connection information by username, click [Search by IP] to select [Search by Username], as shown below. Then type the username and click the  icon.



## 3.1.4 Real-time Behaviors

### 3.1.4.1 View User Behaviors

The [Real-time Behaviors] page mainly displays the recent network behaviors of users, including such information as occurred time, IP address, group, application type, application name and behavior details, as shown below:



No.	Time	Username	Group	IP	App Type	Applic...	Details
1	4 hour...	test	/	192.168.76....	Website Bro...	Others	Website: 200.200.76.138

### 3.1.4.2 Filter User Behaviors

To filter the network behaviors, do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Filter Criteria> to open the [Filter Criteria] page, as shown below:

**Filter Criteria**

**Filter Type**

Group Filter  
/

User Filter Please enter username

IP Filter Please enter IP address

**Object Filter**

Search Keyword       Post  
 Email                       Outgoing File  
 IM Chat Logs               Website Browsing  
 Others

Commit      Cancel

Step 2. Set [Filter Type] to specify the user, group or IP address. Select and set one of the three filters: [Group Filter], [User Filter] and [IP Filter].

Step 3. Set [Filter Object] to specify the behaviors you want to view. Options include [Search Keyword], [Post], [Email], [Outgoing File], [IM Chat Logs], [Website Browsing] and [Others].

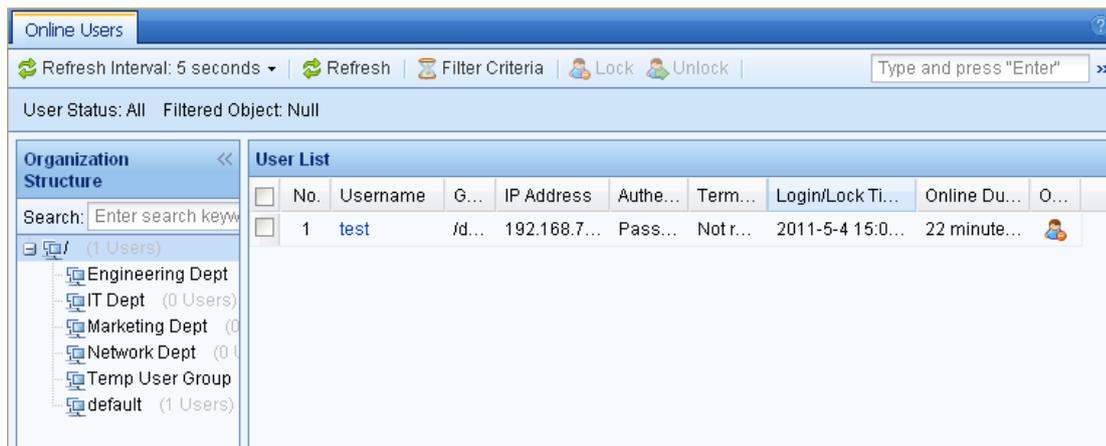
Step 4. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

## 3.1.5 Online Users

The [Online Users] page enables you to manage the online users that already pass the authentication on the IAM device. The function is not available for IPv6 address users.

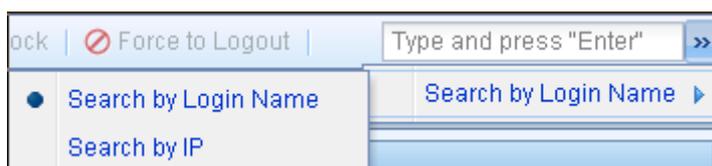
### 3.1.5.1 View Online Users

You can view all the authenticated online users, including such information as login name (display name), group, IP address, authentication type, login time/lock time, online duration and operation that you can perform.



In the [Organization Structure] section, you can enter a keyword to search for a specific user group and view the online users in the corresponding group.

In the [User List] section, you can search for a specific user through [Search by Login Name] or [Search by IP] at the top right corner, as shown below:



### 3.1.5.2 Filter Online Users

To filter online users, do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Filter Criteria> to open the [Filter Criteria] page, as shown below:

Step 2. Set [User Status] to filter the users by user status. Options are: [All], [Locked] and [Active].

Step 3. Set [Object Filter] to filter the users by username or IP address. Check it and then select [User Filter] or [IP Filter] to specify the user name or IP address.

Step 4. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.1.5.3 Lock Online Users

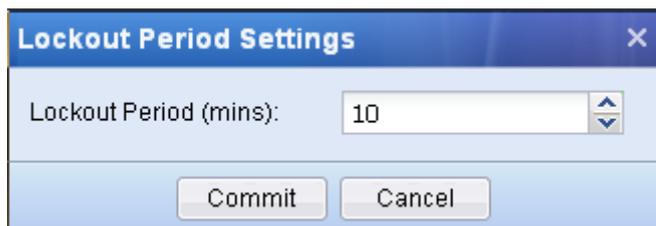
If you want to block online users from accessing the Internet, you can lock them on the [Online Users] page.

To lock a user, do as follows:

Step 5. Select the user you want to lock out, as show below:

User List									
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Username	Gr...	IP Address	Authen...	Terms ...	Login/Lock Time	Online Durat...	Op...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	test	/de...	192.168.76...	Passw...	Notre...	2011-5-4 15:06:4...	27 minutes ...	

Step 6. Click the <Lock> button at the top or the icon in the [Operation] column, and the [Lockout Period Settings] page appears, as shown below:



Step 7. Specify the lockout period and click <Commit>.

After being locked, the user cannot access the Internet during the lockout period. The status of the user is as shown below:

<input type="checkbox"/>	1	test	/def...	192.168.76.221	Passw...	Not req...	2011-5-4 15:35:18...	Locked, rem...	
--------------------------	---	------	---------	----------------	----------	------------	----------------------	----------------	--

### 3.1.5.4 Unlock Online Users

For the users still in lockout period, you can also unlock them so that they can access the Internet again.

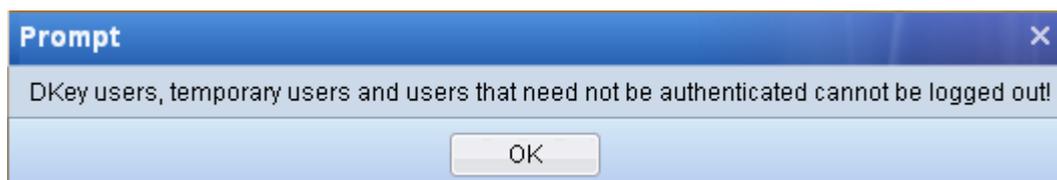
To unlock a user, select the locked user you want to unlock and then click the <Unlock> button at the top or the icon in the [Operation] column.

User List									
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Username	Group	IP Address	Authent...	Terms ...	Login/Lock Time	Online Duration	Op...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	test	/def...	192.168.76.221	Passw...	Not req...	2011-5-4 15:35:18...	Locked, rem...	

After being unlocked, the user can access the Internet again.

### 3.1.5.5 Logout Online Users

Administrators can logout online users through the [Online Users] page. However, the temporary users, DKey users and the users that need not be authenticated cannot be logged out. If you select these users and click <Force to Logout>, the following prompt will appear:



To logout users adopting SSO authentication or password authentication, do as follows:

Step 8. Select the user you want to logout, as shown below:

User List									
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Username	Gr...	IP Address	Authen...	Terms ...	Login/Lock Time	Online Dur...	Op...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	test	/de...	192.168.76...	Passw...	Not re...	2011-5-4 15:06:4...	31 minutes ...	

Step 9. Click the <Force to Logout> button, and the following prompt appears:



Step 10. Click <Yes>, and the user is logged out.

## 3.1.6 Email Audit

The [Email Audit] page displays the emails delayed for audit. Only when the email delay/audit function is enabled on the [User/Policy] > [Access Management] page will the corresponding information be displayed on this page.

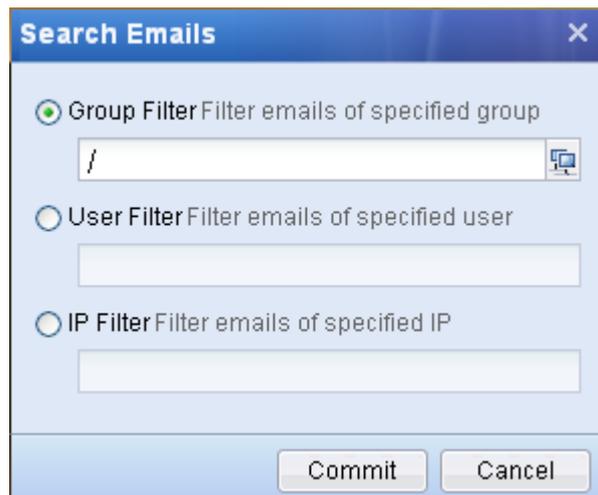
### 3.1.6.1 View Emails

The [Email Audit] page lists all the emails that need be audited, including such information as the name of email sender, email subject, sender email address, receiver email address, email size, number of files attached to the email, timestamp, email status and the operations that you can perform.

Email Audit										
				Audit&Approve [Priority: Medium]			<a href="#">Configure Audit Timeout/Action</a>			
The Email Delay/Audit function is not enabled. Please go to <a href="#">Access Management &gt; Access Control</a> to enable it.										
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	User...	Email Title	From	To	E...	Attac...	Timestamp	Email Status	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	zhy	hello, test!	zhy@m...	zhy12...	12	0	1970-1-8 16:...	Unaudited	

### 3.1.6.2 Filter Emails

To filter the emails, click <Filter Criteria> to open the [Search Emails] page, as shown below. Then select and set one of the three filters: [Group Filter], [User Filter] and [IP Filter], and click <Commit> to save your settings.



To download the emails to local computer, click the  icon in the [Operation] column.

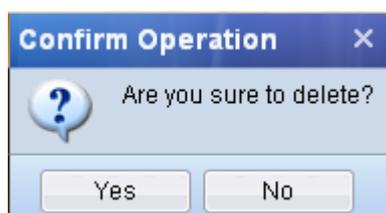
### 3.1.6.3 Delete Emails

If you want to delete some of the delayed emails, do as follows:

Step 1. Select the email you want to delete, as shown below:

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	User...	Email Title	From	To	E...	Attac...	Timestamp	Email Status	Operation
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	zhy	hello, test!	zhy@m...	zhy12...	12	0	1970-1-8 16:...	Unaudited	  

Step 2. Click the <Delete> button at the top or click the  icon in the [Operation] column, and the following prompt appears:



Step 3. Click <Yes>, and the email is deleted without being sent to the receiver.

### 3.1.6.4 Audit Emails

If you want to audit the delayed emails, do as follows:

Step 1. Select the email you want to audit, as shown below:

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	User...	Email Title	From	To	E...	Attac...	Timestamp	Email Status	Operation
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	zhy	hello, test!	zhy@m...	zhy12...	12	0	1970-1-8 16:...	Unaudited	  

Step 2. Click the <Audit&Approve> button at the top or the  icon in the [Operation] column, and the status of the email changes to "Waiting to be sent", as shown below:

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	User...	Email Title	From	To	E...	Attac...	Timestamp	Email Status	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	zhy	hello, test!	zhy@m...	zhy1...	12	0	1970-1-8 16:...	Wait for sending	 

After being audited and approved, the email will be successfully sent out as long as the device communicates smoothly with the mail server.

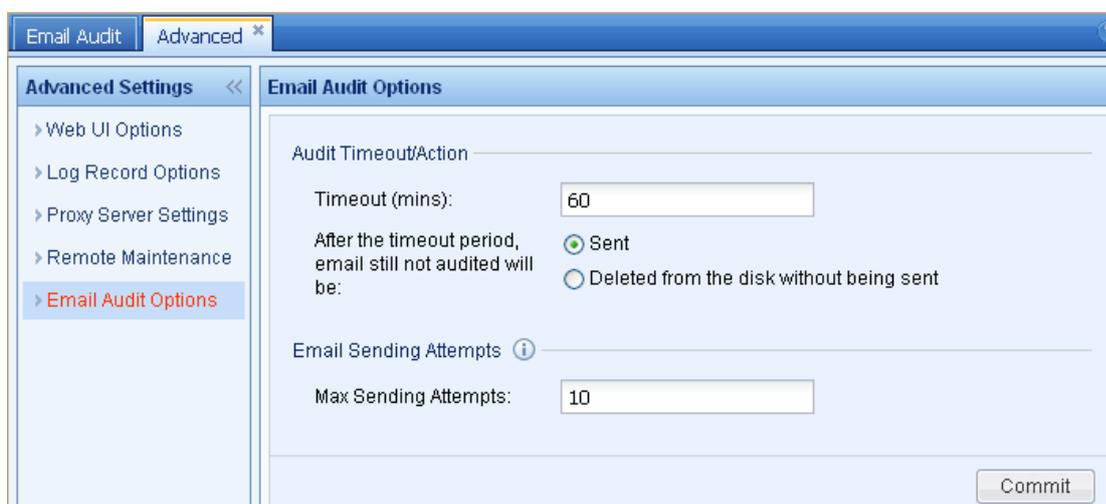
You can also set the audit priority of emails, as shown below:



If there are several emails audited and approved, the email with high priority will be preferentially sent out, while the emails with medium or low priority will queue up and wait to be sent after the high priority email is successfully sent.

### 3.1.6.5 Set Email Audit Options

If you want to configure the email audit options, click the [Configure Audit Timeout/Action] link to go to the [System] > [Advanced] > [Email Audit Options] page and set relevant parameters, as shown below:



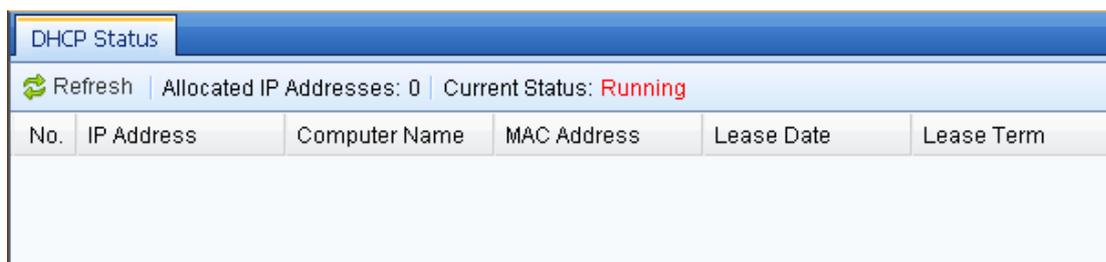
The screenshot shows the 'Email Audit Options' configuration page. The left sidebar contains a list of settings: Web UI Options, Log Record Options, Proxy Server Settings, Remote Maintenance, and Email Audit Options (highlighted). The main content area is titled 'Email Audit Options' and contains the following settings:

- Audit Timeout/Action**
  - Timeout (mins): 60
  - After the timeout period, email still not audited will be:
    - Sent
    - Deleted from the disk without being sent
- Email Sending Attempts**
  - Max Sending Attempts: 10

A 'Commit' button is located at the bottom right of the configuration area.

### 3.1.7 DHCP Status

The [DHCP Status] page displays the IP allocation by DHCP, including such information as total number of allocated IP addresses, the computer name and MAC address of the user who is allocated with the IP address, and lease date and lease term of the allocated IP address. Only when DHCP is enabled and relevant options are configured will the corresponding information be displayed on this page, as shown below:



DHCP Status					
Refresh   Allocated IP Addresses: 0   Current Status: <b>Running</b>					
No.	IP Address	Computer Name	MAC Address	Lease Date	Lease Term

## 3.2 Objects

The [Objects] module defines various objects which will be used by network behavior filter, network behavior audit and bandwidth management. All the control and audit conducted by the IAM device are based on the objects defined in this module.

It includes the following information:

- ◆ [App Ident Library], [Intelligent Ident Lib]: Displays various common Internet applications already defined. By analyzing the data feature and behavior feature of various applications commonly used, SANGFOR engineers have defined corresponding identification rules. You can reference the two types of objects in [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [App Control] to conduct control over Internet applications. Based on the two types of application identification rules, you can also implement [Web Filter], [SSL Management], [Internet Audit] and [Reminder], and conduct different bandwidth control over different application types through bandwidth management. [App Ident Library] can be updated periodically by visiting the SANGFOR server. SANGFOR will periodically update the application identification library on the server so that it can identify the latest application and version.
- ◆ [App Customization]: To customize application rules by yourself. You can also configure the packet feature. If you know how to capture packets and analyze packet feature, you can define your own application identification rules here. However, generally, it is not recommended to customize rules, for the conflict between customized rules and internal rules may incur application identification chaos, which may then result in unavailability of partial control and

audit functions.

- ◆ [URL Library]: Displays the URLs commonly used, which are already categorized. It includes the URL library built in the SANGFOR IAM device and the URL library customized by yourself. You can reference these objects in [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Web Filter] to conduct URL control.
- ◆ [Ingress Rule Library]: To define ingress rules. The ingress rule will check the operating system, process, file, registry and other information at client end. Besides, ingress rules can be used to realize audit on chat logs of encrypted IM tools. You can reference the ingress rules in [Access Management] > [Ingress Policy] to implement the detection and control over user computers.
- ◆ [Service]: To define network services based on port and protocol. You can reference the services defined here in [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Port Control] to conduct control over packets by detecting the port and protocol of the packets. Besides, you can reference them in [Firewall] > [Firewall Rules].
- ◆ [IP Group]: To define IP groups, which will be used to conduct control based on IP address. You can reference them in [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Port Control], [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] and [Firewall] > [Firewall Rules].
- ◆ [Schedule]: To define the schedules, which will be used to conduct control based on a specified time period. Besides, they may be used for searching behaviors and making statistics in Data Center.
- ◆ [Black/White List Group]: To define black list group and white list group for URLs. You can reference them in [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Web Filter] > [File Type Filter], [Access Management] > [Security Policy] > [Script Filter] and [ActiveX Filter].
- ◆ [Keyword Group]: To define the keyword groups, which will be used by [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Web Filter] > [Keyword Filter].
- ◆ [File Type Group]: To define the file type groups, which will be used by [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Web Filter] > [File Type Filter] and [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings].
- ◆ [Trusted CA]: To add trusted CA. When a LAN user accesses website using SSL protocol, the IAM device will verify the certificate used. If SSL protocol uses a certificate specified in [Trusted CA], the certificate will be regarded as legal by the device and the user can proceed. You can delete or add trusted SSL certificate. You can check the [SSL Certificate Chain Control] on the [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [SSL Management] > [SSL Security] page to enable the SSL certificate verification.

## 3.2.1 Application Ident Library

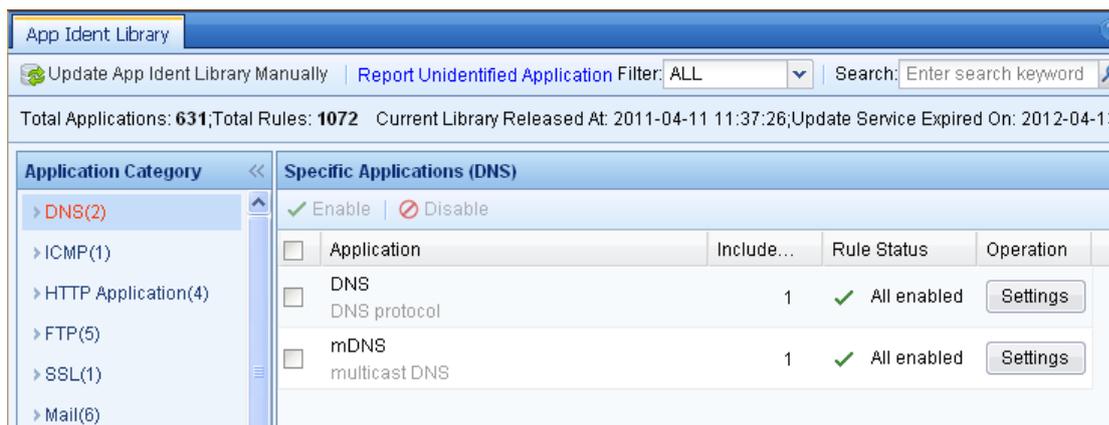
The [App Ident Library] page is used to determine and detect the application types of data packets. According to the combined conditions that include feature code or protocol, port, direction, packet length matching and packet contents matching, it can easily identify the application types that cannot be detected simply based on port or protocol, such as QQ, P2P, etc.

Application identification library comprises internal rules and customized rules. The internal rules cannot be modified and are periodically updated by the device. When updating internal rules, please make sure the update license is available and the device can connect to the Internet. For customized rules, you can add, delete or modify them (See section 3.2.3 "Application Customization" for detailed instructions).

You can reference the application identification rules in [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [App Control] to implement control over applications. In addition, the control and audit functions implemented by Web filter, SSL management, audit policy, reminder policy and bandwidth management are based on the application identification results; therefore, application identification library is very important. They cannot be edited nor deleted. Some of the rules can be disabled; however, the rules involving basic protocol judging cannot be disabled.

### 3.2.1.1 View Application Ident Rules

On the [App Ident Library] page, you can view the application identification rules.



The information displayed on the above figure is described in the following table.

**Table 5 App Ident Library Information**

Field	Description
-------	-------------

Total Applications, Total Rules	Displays the total number of applications and rules in the current application identification library of the IAM device.
Current Library Released On	Displays the release date of the current identification library.
Update Service Expired On	Displays the date when the update service of the current identification library expires.
Application Category	<p>Displays the categories of the application identification rules, such as IM, game, etc.</p> <p>When you select an application from the category list on the left, the specific applications included in this category will be displayed under [Specific Applications] on the right. They are categorized further, for example, QQ, MSN included in the IM category.</p>

To filter the application rules, select [ALL], [Enabled] or [Disabled] from the [Filter] drop-down list at the upper right of the page to display all, enabled or disabled application rules.

To search for a specific application rule, enter the keyword in the [Search] text box and then press the <Enter> key on your keyboard. For example, to search for the application rules corresponding to QQ, type **QQ** in the text box and then press the <Enter> key. The search results appear, as shown below:



Besides, you can manually import application identification rules into the device. To do this, click <Update App Ident Library Manually>, select the application identification rule file and click <Open> to import it.

### 3.2.1.2 Enable/Disable Application Ident Rules

You can enable or disable application identification rules on the [App Ident Library] page.

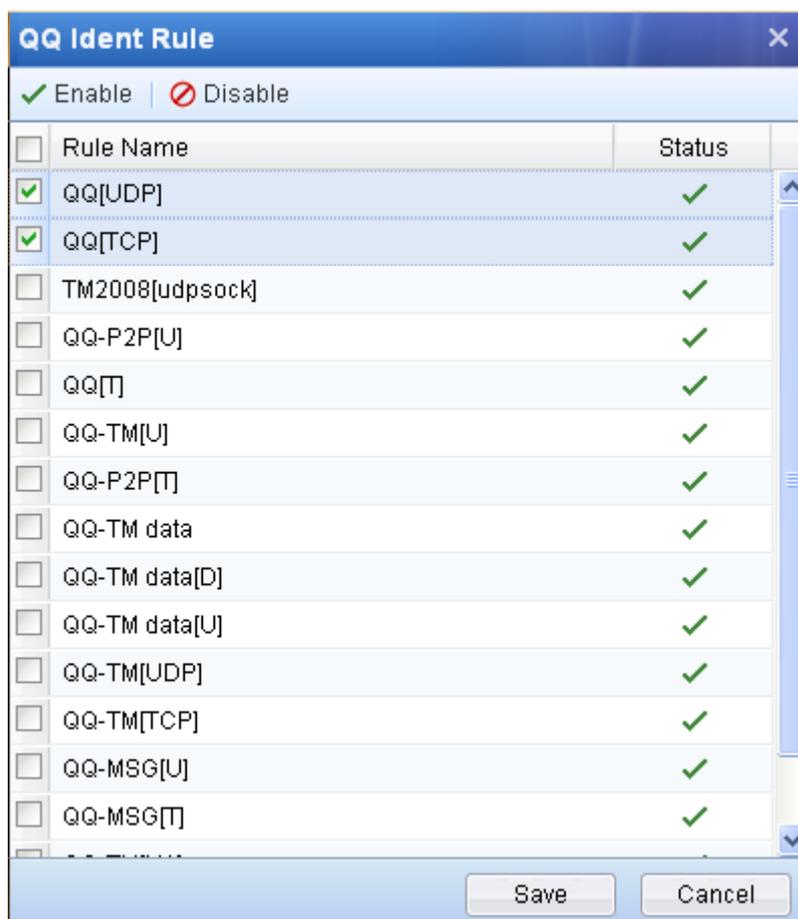
To enable or disable application identification rules, for example, to enable/disable the QQ-related rules, do as follows:

- Step 1. Open the [Objects] > [App Ident Library] page. Type **QQ** in the [Search] text box to search for the QQ-related applications, as shown below:



- Step 2. Check the application **QQ**, and then click the  or  icon in [Rule Status] column to enable or disable all the rules related to QQ.

- Step 3. If you want to disable/enable one application identification rule of the QQ application, click the <Settings> button, and the [QQ Ident Rule] dialogue appears, listing all the rules related to QQ, as shown below:



Step 4. Check the rule and click <Enable>/<Disable> to enable/disable it.



The application identification rules of some basic protocols (for example, HTTP) cannot be disabled, for it may affect other data identification based on HTTP protocol.

## 3.2.2 Intelligent Ident Library

The [Intelligent Ident Lib] page is also used to identify the application type of various Internet access data, but its identification method is different from that of [App Ident Library]. The intelligent identification can identify some encrypted data (such as P2P application, Skype, SSL, and SANGFOR VPN data in plaintext or ciphertext), proxy tools (such as freegate, unbounded browsing), and VOIP and IM video/audio data.

### 3.2.2.1 Enable/Disable Intelligent Ident Rules

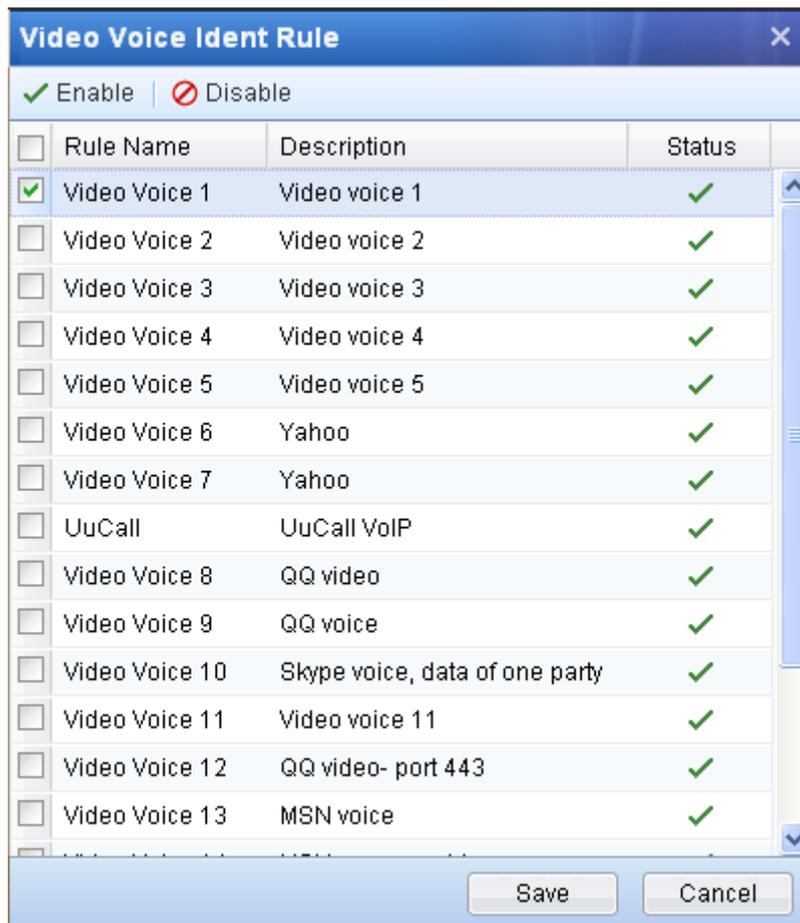
To enable or disable intelligent identification rules, for example, to enable/disable the rules related to **Video Voice**, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [Objects] > [Intelligent Ident Lib] page, as shown below:

Intelligent Ident Library						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable   <input type="checkbox"/> Disable						
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Application	App Type	Included Rules	Rule Status	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	P2P Behavior	P2P	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	skype	IM	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	SSL	SSL	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	SANGFOR VPN	SANGFOR VPN	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	FreeGate	ProxyTool	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	Ultrasurf	ProxyTool	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	Real-time Voice	VOIP	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	Real-time Video	VOIP	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	Real-time Voice Video	VOIP	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	Video Voice	IM	19	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>

Step 2. Check the application **Video Voice**, and then click the  or  icon in [Rule Status] column to enable or disable all the intelligent identification rules related to **Video Voice**.

Step 3. If you want to disable/enable one intelligent identification rule of the **Video Voice** application, click the <Settings> button, and the [Video Voice Ident Rule] dialogue appears, listing all the rules related to **Video Voice**, as shown below:



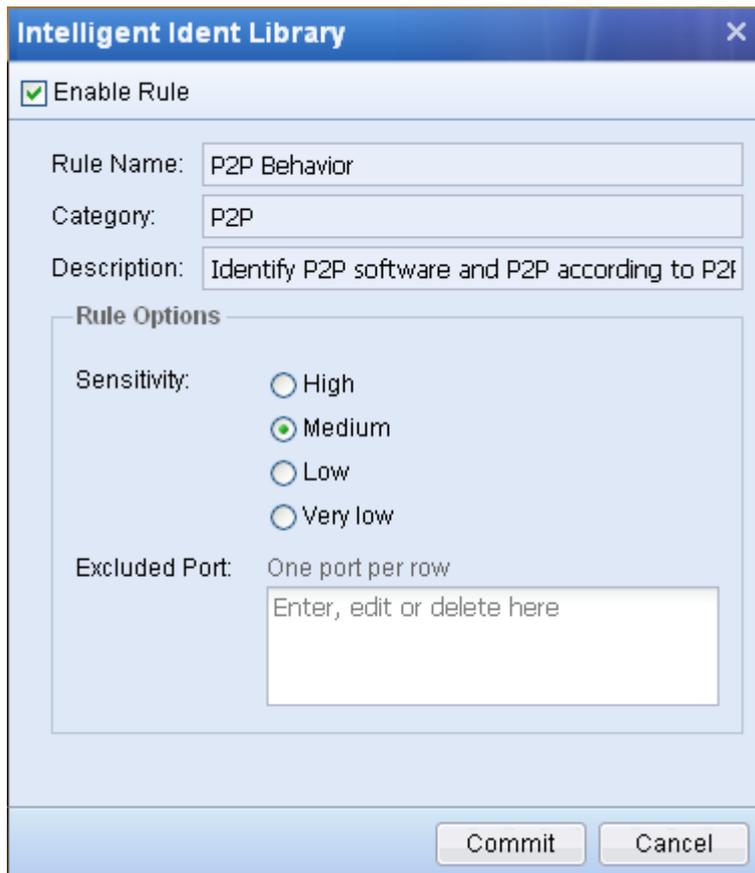
Step 4. Check the rule and click <Enable>/<Disable> to enable/disable it.

### 3.2.2.2 Edit P2P Behavior Ident Rule

The P2P behavior identification rule is a supplement to the application identification library. It can intelligently identify the P2P data, which cannot be identified by application identification library. The P2P behavior rule is editable.

To modify P2P behavior rule, do as follows:

Step 1. Click **P2P Behavior** to open the following page:



Step 2. Check the [Enable Rule] to enable the current rule. [Rule Name], [Category] and [Description] respectively indicate the name, application category and description of the current intelligent identification rule. These three fields cannot be modified.

Step 3. Specify the sensitivity level of the rule. The P2P intelligent identification may cause misjudgement. The higher the sensitivity level is, the lower the misjudgement rate is. You can adjust the sensitivity level according to specific data. For example,

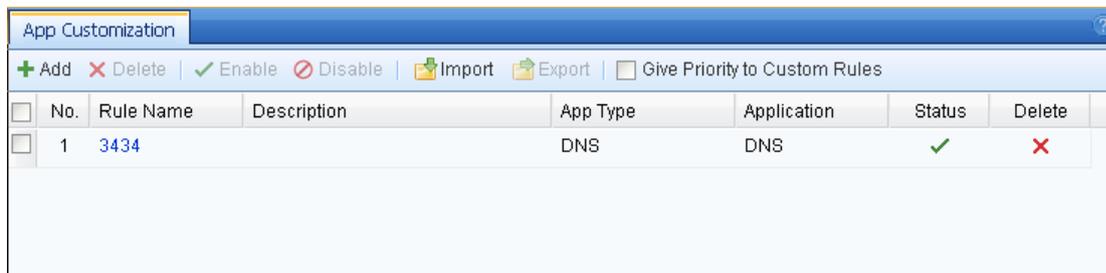
- ◆ If there is large amount of unidentified data that is connected to high-end ports randomly and changeable destination address, these data probably is unidentified P2P data. In this case, you can adjust the sensitivity to a higher level.
- ◆ If some data, which is not P2P data, is misjudged as P2P data, the sensitivity is probably set too high. In this situation, you can adjust it to a lower level.

Step 4. Specify the ports to be excluded. If the destination port of data is excluded here, the IAM device will not implement the P2P intelligent identification on the data to avoid misjudgement.

Step 5. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.2.3 Application Customization

The [App Customization] page allows you to customize application identification rules. You can define some applications that are not included in the [App Ident Library] according to data direction, IP, protocol and port.



The screenshot shows a window titled "App Customization" with a toolbar containing buttons for + Add, X Delete, ✓ Enable, ✗ Disable, Import, Export, and a checkbox for Give Priority to Custom Rules. Below the toolbar is a table with the following data:

No.	Rule Name	Description	App Type	Application	Status	Delete
1	3434		DNS	DNS	✓	✗

#### 3.2.3.1 Customize Application Rules

You can customize application rules on the [App Customization] page according to your needs.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to guarantee certain amount of bandwidth to company emails, but there is no **Company Email** application type in the application list for you to select when you are configuring the bandwidth channel. In this case, you can define an application rule named **Company Email**.

To customize the application rule, do as follows:

- Step 1. Click <Add> on the [App Customization] page to open the [Customize Application] page, as shown below:

**Customize Application**

Enable Application

**Application Basic**

Rule Name:

Description:

App Type:

Application:

**Packet Feature** ⓘ

Packet Direction: Feature ident applies only to packets of the selected direction

LAN<->WAN

LAN->WAN

WAN->LAN

Layer 3 Protocol:

Protocol Number:

Dst Port:  All

Step 2. Specify the information as follows:

**Customize Application**

Enable Application

**Application Basic**

Rule Name:

Description:

App Type:

Application:

**Packet Feature** ⓘ

Packet Direction: Feature ident applies only to packets of the selected direction

LAN<->WAN  
 LAN->WAN  
 WAN->LAN

Layer 3 Protocol: TCP ▾

Protocol Number: 0 ⓘ

Dst Port:  All  
 Specified port or port range ⓘ  
 25

IP Address:  All  
 Specified IP or IP range ⓘ

Match Domain: ⓘ  
 mail.sangfor.com.cn

Commit Cancel

**Table 6 Application Customization Settings**

Field	Description
Enable Application	Check this option to enable the current application rule.
Rule Name	Type a name for the application rule.
Description	Type a brief description for the rule.
App Type	Specify the type of the application. You can select the application type from the drop-down list or define it by yourself.
Application	Specify the application corresponding to the current application rule.
Packet Direction	Select the direction of data passing through the IAM device. Only when the direction of data is matched will the identification go on.
Layer 3 Protocol	Specify the protocol type adopted by data transfer. In this example, the email sending adopts TCP protocol.
Destination Port	Set the destination port of data. In this example, email sending uses the TCP 25 port.
IP Address	Set the source IP, destination IP or the destination IP identified by the proxy.

---

**Match Domain**                      Set the destination domain address of data. In this example, the domain of the company email address is **mail.sangfor.com.cn**.

---

Step 3. Click <Commit>, and the application rule is added to the custom application list, as shown below:

No.	Rule Name	Description	App Type	Application	Status	Delete
1	3434		DNS	DNS	✓	✗
2	Company Email	company email	Mail	Custom email	✓	✗

Step 4. Set the priority for the customized application rule. Since internal application identification library already includes the email identification rule, if priority is given to internal rules, data packets may be preferentially matches the internal rules instead of the customized **Company Email** rule. To make the customized rule preferentially matched, check the [Give Priority to Custom Rules] option on the [App Customization] page.

Step 5. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] > [Bandwidth Channel] page to configure a guaranteed bandwidth channel to assure certain amount of bandwidth for emails sending (see section 3.4.3 "Bandwidth Channel").



It is recommended to set such identification information as destination port, IP address and domain name when you are customizing application rules. If the conditions for identifying are too broad, the customized application rules may conflict with internal ones and cause identification chaos, resulting in unavailability of some control and audit functions.

### 3.2.3.2 Enable/Disable/Delete Custom Application Rules

To enable, disable or delete the customized application rules, check the rules and then click the <Enable>, <Disable> or <Delete> button.

No.	Rule Name	Description	App Type	Application	Status	Delete
1	3434		DNS	DNS	✓	✗
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Company Email	company email	Mail	Custom email	⊘	✗

### 3.2.3.3 Import/Export Custom Application Rules

To import customized application rules, click <Import>, select the rule file and click <Open>.

To export customized application rules, select the application rules you want to export and then click <Export>.

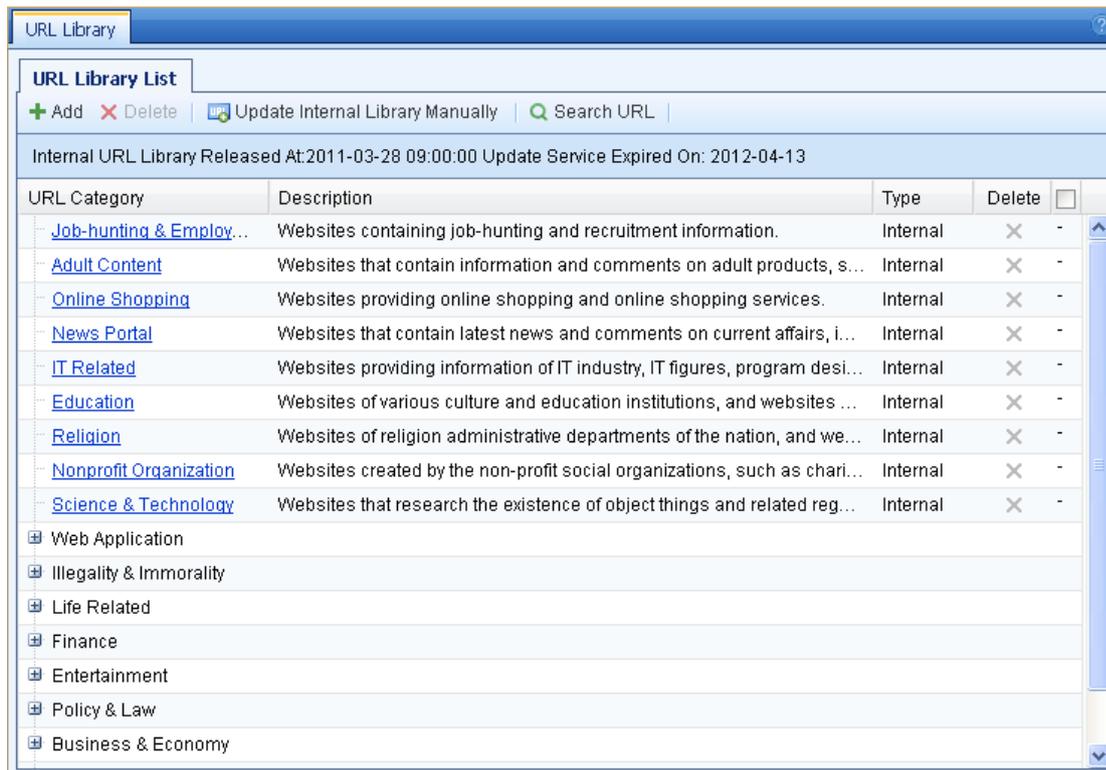
## 3.2.4 URL Library

The [URL Library] page displays the URL categories defined according to the contents of websites, which help the IAM device identify various websites to realize the control over flow and over access to various websites.

### 3.2.4.1 URL Library List

The [URL Library List] page lists the internal URL library and customized URL library. SANGFOR will update the internal URL library regularly onto the server and the IAM device will then automatically connect to the server for updating (on the condition that the corresponding license is obtained and the IAM can connect to the Internet). For the customized URL library, you can add, delete or modify the URL groups according to your needs.

You can view the release time and update service expiry time of the current internal URL library at the top of the page.



### 3.2.4.1.1 Search URL

You can query the URL category to which a specific URL belongs.

To find out the URL category of a specific URL, click <Search URL> to open the [Search URL] page. Then type the domain name you want to search and click <Search>. The search result will display the URL category to which the URL belongs, as shown below:



URL does not support fuzzy search.

### 3.2.4.1.2 Add URL Group

You can customize the URL groups according to your needs.

To add a URL group, do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Add> on the [URL Library] page to open the [Add URL Group] page, as shown below:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add URL Group". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Name:** A text input field with a placeholder "Enter, edit or delete here".
- Description:** A text input field with a placeholder "Enter, edit or delete here".
- URL: (i)**: A text input field with a placeholder "Enter, edit or delete here".
- Domain Name Keyword: (i)**: A text input field with a placeholder "Enter, edit or delete here".
- Buttons:** "Commit" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 7 URL Group Settings**

Field	Description
Name	Type a name for the URL group.
Description	Type descriptive information for the URL group.

---

URL	<p>Type the URLs that you want to add into this URL group. One URL group may include multiple URL entries.</p> <p>The wildcard character (*) is supported in URL entries. For example, to set a URL entry that matches the subpages of "Sina.com" (such as "news.sina.com.cn", "sports.sina.com.cn", "ent.sina.com.cn", etc.), type <b>*.sina.com.cn</b> in the text box.</p> <p> The wildcard character can only be used to indicate the first-level domain matching and can only be typed at the beginning of a URL entry (DO NOT type it in the middle); otherwise, the URL entry will not take effect.</p>
Domain Name Keyword	<p>Type the domain name keyword. If a visited domain name contains any of the keywords specified here, it will be identified as this URL group.  Domain Name Keyword has lower priority to be matched than Internal URL Library and Custom URL Library, that is, the system identifies a URL first according to the internal URL library, then the customized URL library and finally the domain name keyword.</p>

---

Step 3. Click <OK> to save your settings.



The URL library supports up to 100 URL categories (including internal and customized ones), and you can enable at most 10 customized URL categories (the excessive ones can be disabled).

### 3.2.4.1.3 Delete URL Group

You can delete the customized URL groups. The internal URL groups cannot be deleted.

To delete a customized URL group, check the URL group and then click <Delete>.

### 3.2.4.1.4 Modify URL Group

You can modify both the customized URL groups and internal URL groups, but there are some differences:

- ◆ For the customized URL group, you can modify the description, URL entries and domain name keywords;
- ◆ For the internal URL group, you can only add URL entries and domain name keywords to supplement the URL group, while other information, including the name, description, existing URL entries and domain name keywords, cannot be modified.

To modify a URL group, click the name of the URL group to open the [Edit URL Group] page, as shown

below, and then edit the URL group according to your needs (see section 3.2.4.1.2 "Add URL Group").



**Edit URL Type**

Name:  
163 Email

Description:  
163 email

URL: ⓘ  
\*.163.com

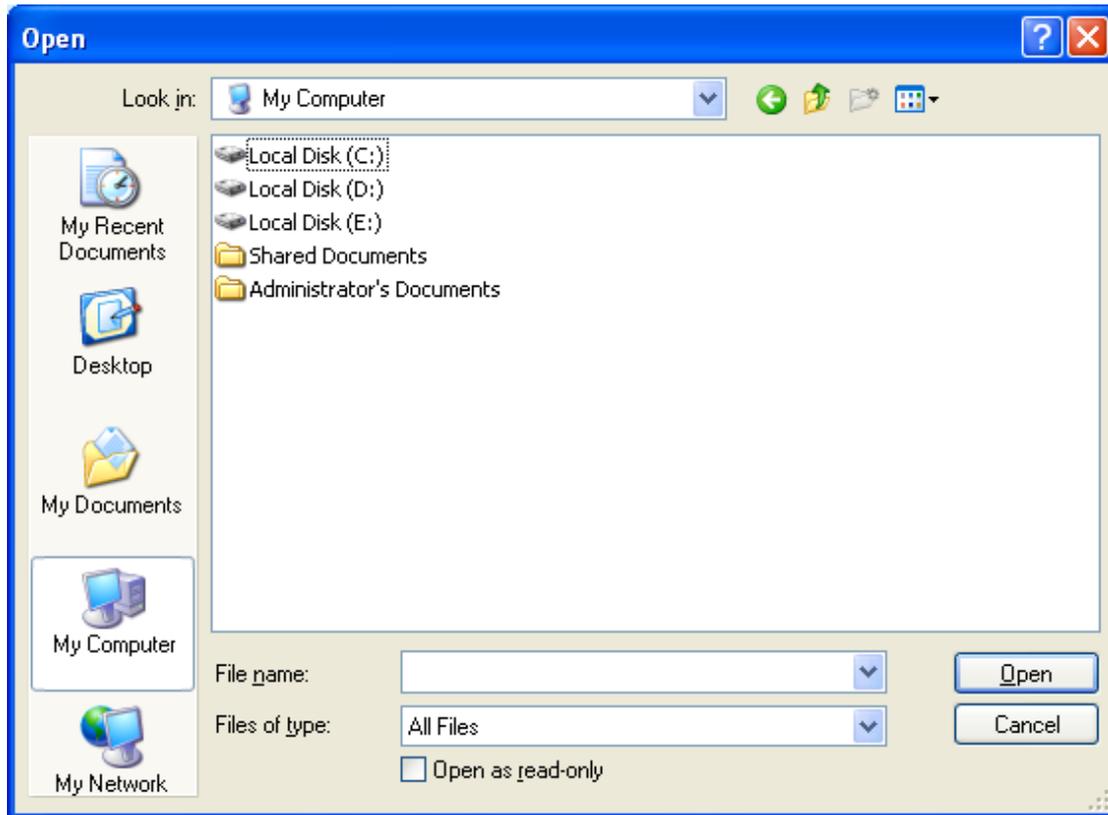
Domain Name Keyword: ⓘ  
Enter, edit or delete here

Commit Cancel

### 3.2.4.1.5 Update Internal URL Library

The <Update Internal Library Manually> button displayed at the top of the [URL Library List] page enables you to update the internal URL library manually.

To update the internal library, click <Update Internal Library Manually>, select the internal library file and then click <Open>.



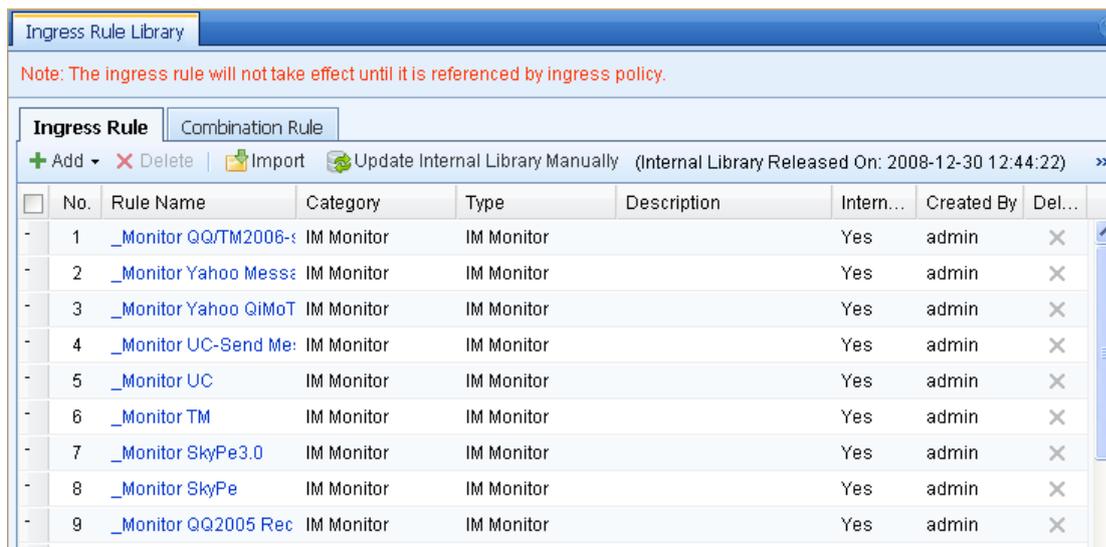
## 3.2.5 Ingress Rule Library

The ingress rules are used to check the operating system, process, file, registry or other information of the computers in the local area network by means of the ingress program installed at client end. Besides, ingress rules can be used to realize audit over chat logs of encrypted IM tools.

You can define these ingress rules on the [Ingress Rule Library] page, which will be referenced in [Access Management] > [Ingress Policy] (see section 3.3.1.4.6 "Add Ingress Policy"). If ingress system is enabled in the policy, the LAN users associated with the policy should satisfy the corresponding ingress rule before they are allowed to access the Internet. When accessing the Internet for the first time, users need to install the ingress control. The IAM device has already defined multiple built-in ingress rules, and you can also define the ingress rules according to your needs.

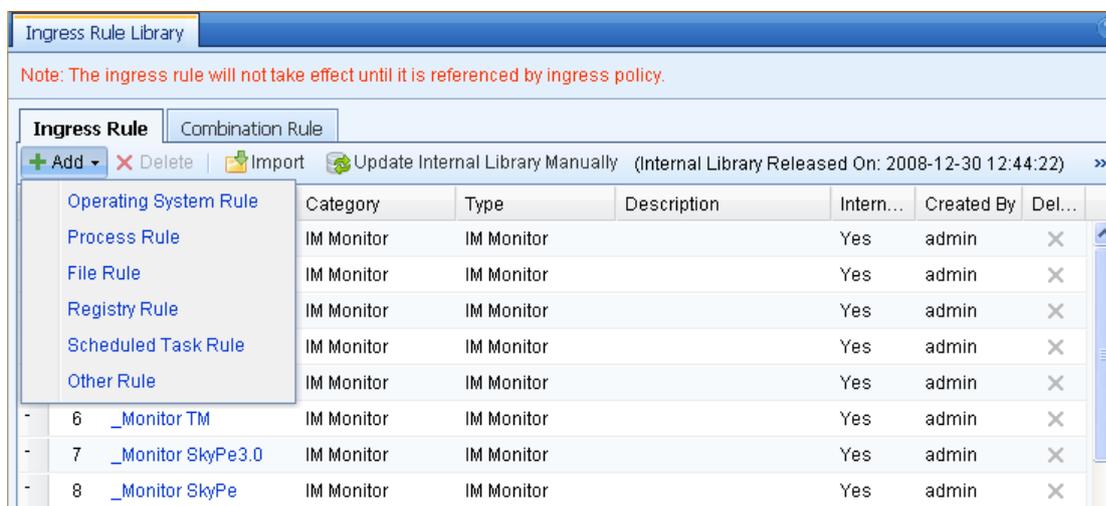
### 3.2.5.1 Ingress Rule

The [Ingress Rule] page enables you to define the ingress rules. You can add, delete or manage them according to your needs.



### 3.2.5.1.1 Add Ingress Rule

To add an ingress rule, click <Add> on the [Ingress Rule] page and then select the rule type. Options are [Operating System Rule], [Process Rule], [File Rule], [Registry Rule], [Scheduled Task Rule] and [Other Rule], as shown below:



### Add Operating System Rule

[Operating System Rule] is used to check the operating system of end users' computers.

Suppose the company requires that all the computers in the intranet should use Windows XP and upgrade the patch to at least SP4 to avoid the risk of infecting with virus; otherwise, they will be restricted from accessing the Internet.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. On [Ingress Rule] page, click <Add> and select [Operating System Rule] to open the [Operating System Rule] page, as shown below:

User PC must use the OS selected below	
System Version	Patch
<input type="checkbox"/> windowsNT	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windows2000	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windowsXP	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windows2003	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windowsVista	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windows2008	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windows7	None

- Step 2. Specify the information as follows:

**Operating System Rule**

Rule Name: Windows XP

Rule Type: Operating system

Description:

**User PC must use the OS selected below**

System Version	Patch
<input type="checkbox"/> windowsNT	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windows2000	None
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> windowsXP	SP4 or above
<input type="checkbox"/> windows2003	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windowsVista	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windows2008	None
<input type="checkbox"/> windows7	None

Action If Violated: Deny Internet access

Commit Cancel

**Table 8 Operating System Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Rule Name	Type a name for the rule. The length of rule name cannot exceed 95 bytes.
Rule Type	Specify the rule type. You can select a rule type from the drop-down list or define it by yourself. The length of rule type cannot exceed 95 bytes.
Description	Type a brief description for the rule.
User PC must use the OS selected below	Specify the operating system (OS) and related patch that should be installed on user PCs.  In this example, check the [windowsXP] option and select [SP4 or above] under the [Patch] column.
Action If Violated	Select the action that will be taken by IAM device to the user whose computer does not satisfy the requirements set here. Options are [Deny Internet access] and [Submit report only] (the latter indicates only recording it in Data Center, with no action taken).  In this example, select [Deny Internet access].

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

## Add Process Rule

[Process Rule] is used to check some programs running on users' computers.

To add a process rule, do as follows:

Step 1. On [Ingress Rule] page, click <Add> and select [Process Rule] to open the [Process Rule] page, as shown below:

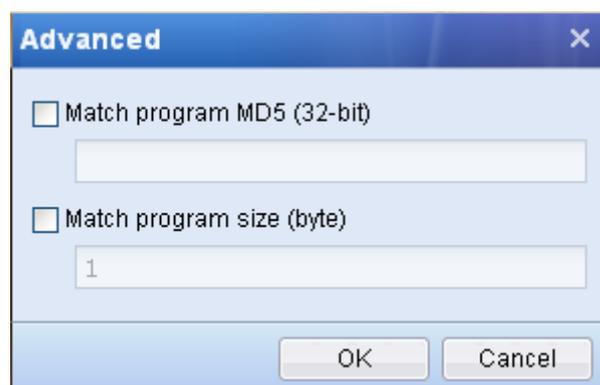
Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 9 Process Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Rule Name	Type a name for the rule.
Rule Type	Specify the rule type. You can select a rule type from the drop-down list or define it by yourself.
Description	Type a brief description for the rule.

Action If Violated	Select the action that will be taken by IAM device to the user whose computer does not satisfy the requirements set here. The options available vary with the setting of [Process Status] at the bottom. When [Process Status] is set to <b>Running</b> , the options available are [Deny Internet access], [Stop process] and [Submit report only]. When [Process Status] is set to <b>Not running</b> , the options available are [Deny Internet access], [Start process] and [Submit report only].																
Process Name	Type a complete process name. The wildcard character is not supported.																
Window Name	Type a complete window name. The wildcard character is not supported.																
Program Path	Type the installation path of the program. The following environment variables are supported: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Environment Variable</th> <th>Corresponding path (dependent on system settings)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>%systemdrive%</td> <td>C:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>%systemroot%</td> <td>C:\WINNT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>%system%</td> <td>C:\WINNT\system32</td> </tr> <tr> <td>%windir%</td> <td>C:\WINNT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>%userprofile%</td> <td>C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator</td> </tr> <tr> <td>%temp%</td> <td>C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\Local Settings\Temp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>%program%</td> <td>C:\Program Files</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Environment Variable	Corresponding path (dependent on system settings)	%systemdrive%	C:	%systemroot%	C:\WINNT	%system%	C:\WINNT\system32	%windir%	C:\WINNT	%userprofile%	C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator	%temp%	C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\Local Settings\Temp	%program%	C:\Program Files
Environment Variable	Corresponding path (dependent on system settings)																
%systemdrive%	C:																
%systemroot%	C:\WINNT																
%system%	C:\WINNT\system32																
%windir%	C:\WINNT																
%userprofile%	C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator																
%temp%	C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\Local Settings\Temp																
%program%	C:\Program Files																
Process Status	Specify the status of the process. Options are [Running] and [Not running]. If you select [Running], the [Advanced] button is available.																

Step 3. If you set [Process Status] to [Running], you can click the [Advanced] button to set the advanced conditions: [Match program MD5] and [Match program size], as shown below:



Step 4. Click <OK> and then <Commit> to save your settings.

## Add File Rule

[File Rule] is used to check some files on users' computers.

To add a file rule, do as follows:

- Step 1. On [Ingress Rule] page, click <Add> and select [File Rule] to open the [File Rule] page, as shown below:

- Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 10 File Rule Settings**

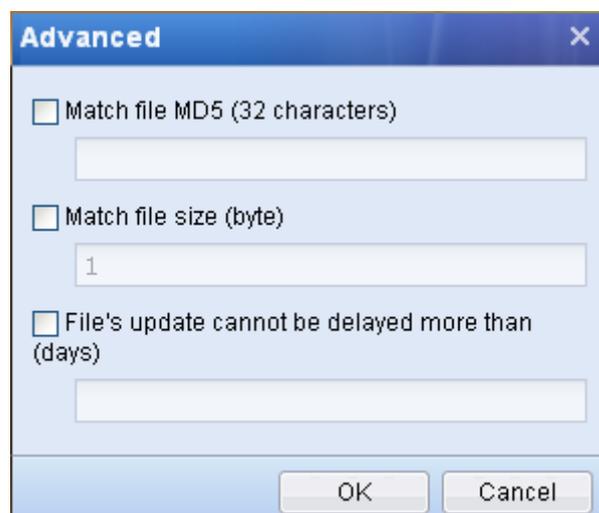
Field	Description
Rule Name	Type a name for the rule.
Rule Type	Specify the rule type. You can select a rule type from the drop-down list or define it by yourself.
Description	Type a brief description for the rule.
Action If Violated	Select the action that will be taken by IAM device to the user whose computer does not satisfy the requirements set here. The options available vary with the setting of [File Status] at the bottom. When [File Status] is set to <b>File exists</b> , the options available are [Deny Internet access], [Delete the file] and [Submit report only]. When [File Status] is set to <b>File does not exist</b> , the options available are [Deny Internet access] and [Submit report only].

**File Path** Enter a complete file saving path. The following environment variables are supported:

Environment Variable	Corresponding path (dependent on system settings)
%systemdrive%	C:
%systemroot%	C:\WINNT
%system%	C:\WINNT\system32
%windir%	C:\WINNT
%userprofile%	C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator
%temp%	C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\Local Settings\Temp
%program%	C:\Program Files

**File Status** Specify the status of the file. Options are [File exists] and [File does not exist]. If you select [Running], the [Advanced] button is available.

Step 3. If you set [File Status] to [Running], you can click the [Advanced] button to set the advanced conditions: [Match file MD5], [Match file size] and [File's update cannot be delayed more than], as shown below:



Step 4. Click <OK> and then <Commit> to save your settings.

## Add Registry Rule

[Registry Rule] is used to check some registry items on users' computers.

To add a registry rule, do as follows:

Step 1. On [Ingress Rule] page, click <Add> and select [Registry Rule] to open the [Registry Rule] page,

as shown below:

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 11 Registry Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Rule Name	Type a name for the rule.
Rule Type	Specify the rule type. You can select a rule type from the drop-down list or define it by yourself.
Description	Type a brief description for the rule.
Action If Violated	Select the action that will be taken by IAM device to the user whose computer does not satisfy the requirements set here. The options available vary with the setting of [Item Status] at the bottom. When [Item Status] is set to <b>Contained in user registry</b> , the options available are [Deny Internet access], [Delete the item] and [Submit report only]. When [Item Status] is set to <b>NOT contained in user registry</b> , the options available are [Deny Internet access], [Add the item] and [Submit report only].
Registry Item	Type the registry item. It refers to the file folder path to the registry item displayed on the left pane of the [Registry Editor] window.
Item Name	Type the name of the registry item.

Item Data	Type the data of the registry item.
Item Status	Specify the status of the registry. Options are [Contained in user registry] and [NOT contained in user registry].

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

## Add Scheduled Task Rule

[Scheduled Task Rule] is used to check the execution result of the scheduled task called by ingress client on user PC. The scheduled task can be an executable program, Jscript or Vbscript. The IAM device will take the corresponding action specified in the rule for different execution results.

To add a scheduled task rule, do as follows:

Step 1. On [Ingress Rule] page, click <Add> and select [Scheduled Task Rule] to open the [Scheduled Task Rule] page, as shown below:

Step 2. Set the following information.

**Table 12 Scheduled Task Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Rule Name	Type a name for the rule.
Rule Type	Specify the rule type. You can select a rule type from the drop-down list or define it by yourself.
Description	Type a brief description for the rule.
Program Type	Specify the type of the program. Options are [Executable program], [Jscript] and [Vbscript].
Program Path	Type the detailed saving path where the program or script is saved in user's computer. The program path must be a network address accessible to all the users associated with this rule.
Scheduled Task	There are two types of scheduled task: [Run periodically] and [Run once when ingress program is started on user PC].
Task Return Result Check	Set whether to check the execution result of the scheduled task script. Options are [Check return result] and [No check].
Return Result Timeout	Set the timeout for returning result.
If task return result=1/2, then	Specify the corresponding action for different return result of task. Options are [Only record], [Prompt], [Deny Internet access] and [Prompt&Deny Internet access].

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

## Add Other Rule

To add other rule, do as follows:

Step 1. On [Ingress Rule] page, click <Add> and select [Other Rule] to open the [Other Rule] page, as shown below:

Step 2. Set the following information.

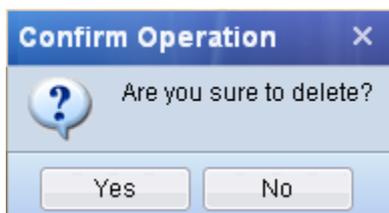
**Table 13 Other Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Rule Name	Type a name for the rule.
Rule Type	Specify the rule type. You can select a rule type from the drop-down list or define it by yourself.
Description	Type a brief description for the rule.
Block super admin (member of Administrator group) of user PC to access the Internet	Check it to block the user who logs in as administrator from accessing the Internet.
Verify IP/MAC login conditions of user PC on ingress program	Check it to realize the IP/MAC binding over layer 3 switch.

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

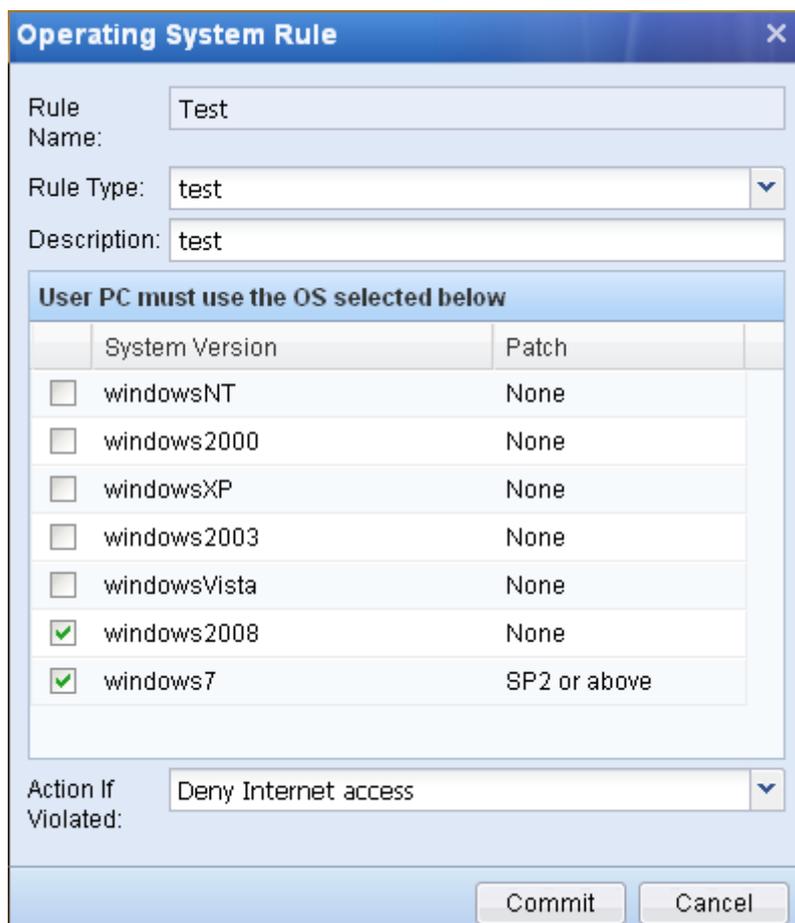
### 3.2.5.1.2 Delete Ingress Rule

To delete an ingress rule, select one of the defined ingress rules on the [Ingress Rule] page and click <Delete>. A dialogue will appear for confirmation, as shown below. Then click <Yes> to delete the rule.



### 3.2.5.1.3 Modify an Ingress Rule

To modify an ingress rule, select one of the defined ingress rules on the [Ingress Rule] page and click the name of the rule to open the page for editing, as shown below. Then modify the settings except for the rule name (rule name cannot be modified).

A configuration dialog box titled "Operating System Rule" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains several fields and a table.

Rule Name: Test

Rule Type: test

Description: test

**User PC must use the OS selected below**

	System Version	Patch
<input type="checkbox"/>	windowsNT	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	windows2000	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	windowsXP	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	windows2003	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	windowsVista	None
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	windows2008	None
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	windows7	SP2 or above

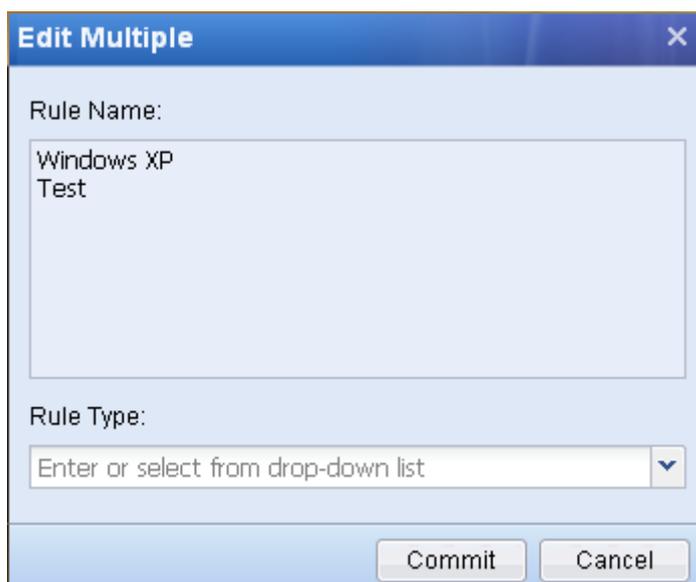
Action If Violated: Deny Internet access

Buttons: Commit, Cancel

### 3.2.5.1.4 Modify Multiple Ingress Rules

You can modify multiple ingress rules at a time; however, only the rule type can be modified in batch editing.

To modify multiple ingress rules, select two or more of the defined ingress rules on the [Ingress Rule] page and click the <Edit Multiple> button to open the page for editing, as shown below. Then modify the rule type.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Multiple". It has a blue header bar with a close button (X). The main area is light blue and contains two sections. The first section is labeled "Rule Name:" and has a text input field containing the text "Windows XP" and "Test" on two lines. The second section is labeled "Rule Type:" and has a dropdown menu with the text "Enter or select from drop-down list" and a downward arrow. At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: "Commit" and "Cancel".

### 3.2.5.1.5 Import/Export Ingress Rules

To import ingress rules, click the <Import> button and select the ingress rule file to import.

To export ingress rules, select one or more ingress rules on [Ingress Rule] page and click the <Export> button to export the selected ingress rules.



The internal ingress rules cannot be exported.

### 3.2.5.1.6 Update Internal Library Manually

The internal ingress rule library supports manual update. To update the internal library, obtain the internal library file and then click <Update Internal Library Manually> on [Ingress Rule] page to import the internal library into the device.

### 3.2.5.2 Combination Rule

You can combine several ingress rules into a new one. By doing this, you defines a combination rule containing multiple ingress rules of the AND or OR relationship.

#### 3.2.5.2.1 Add Combination Rule

To add a combination rule, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to the [Objects] > [Ingress Rule Library] > [Combination Rule] page, click <Add> to open the [Combine Ingress Rules] page, as shown below:

- Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 14 Combination Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Rule Name	Type a name for the combination rule.
Rule Type	Specify the type of the combination rule.

---

Action If Violated	Select the action that will be taken by IAM device to the user whose computer does not satisfy the requirements set here. Options are [Deny Internet access] and [Submit report only].
Condition	Specify the relationship among the ingress rules included in the combination rule. Options are [Any of the rules is satisfied] and [All of the rules are satisfied]. When the [Condition] set here is satisfied, the action specified in [Action If Violated] will be taken.
Combine Rules	Select the customized ingress rules from the [Available] list and click <Add> to add them to the [Selected] list.

---

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

**Case Study:** Suppose your company requires that all the computers in the intranet should install either Kaspersky or Rising anti-virus software. Only the computers running Kaspersky or Rising anti-virus software are allowed to access the Internet. If computers have not run any of them, they will be blocked from accessing the Internet.

To realize the anti-virus software detection and implement the control over Internet access, do as follows:

Step 1. Add two ingress rules for checking Kaspersky and Rising respectively to detect the process of the anti-virus software applications on user PC, as shown below:

**Process Rule** [X]

Rule Name:

Rule Type:  [v]

Description:

Action If Violated:  [v]

**User PC must meet the following conditions**

Process Name:  [i]

Window Name:  [i]

Program Path: Support system environment variable, for example, %system% [i]

Process Status:  [v]

[Advanced]

[Commit] [Cancel]

**Process Rule** [X]

Rule Name:

Rule Type:  [v]

Description:

Action If Violated:  [v]

**User PC must meet the following conditions**

Process Name:  [i]

Window Name:  [i]

Program Path: Support system environment variable, for example, %system% [i]

Process Status:  [v]

[Advanced]

[Commit] [Cancel]



The process names of the anti-virus software should be typed according to the actual situation.

- Step 2. Combine the above two ingress rules to define a combination ingress rule. Since the requirement is to only allow the computers running either Kaspersky or Rising to access the Internet, you need to set [Matching Condition] to **All of the rules are satisfied** and [Action If Violated] to **Deny Internet access**, indicating that computers not running any of them will be blocked from accessing the Internet.

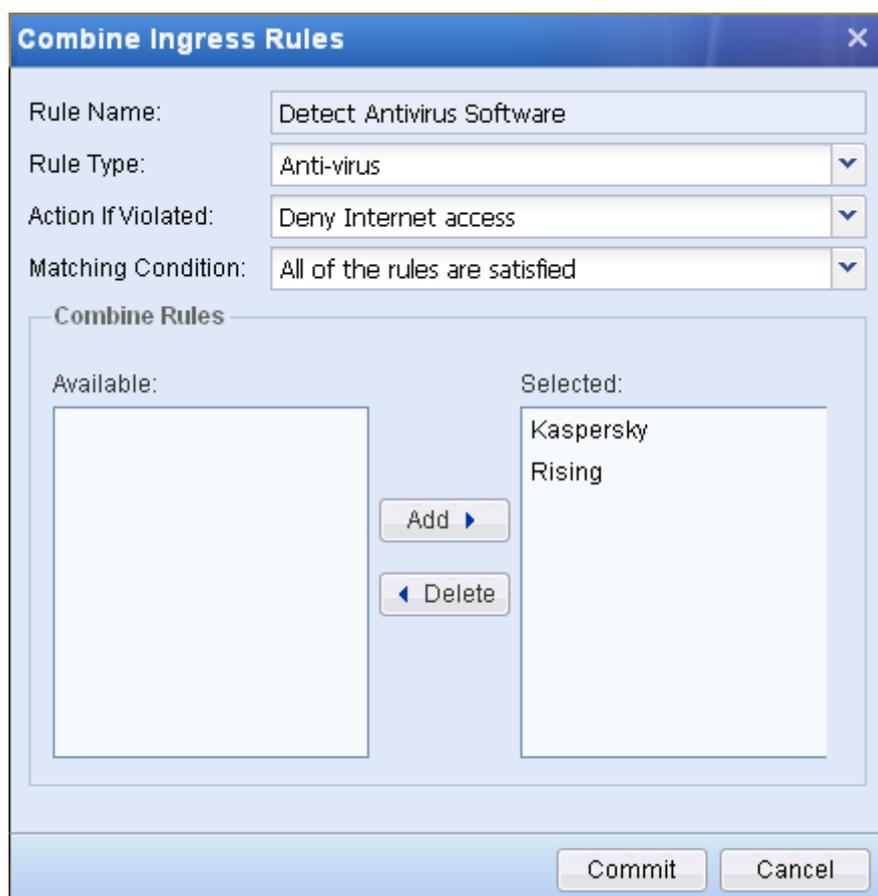
- Step 3. Go to [User/Policy] > [Access Management] page to add an ingress policy. Reference the combination ingress rule and then associate the ingress policy with the corresponding user/group.

No.	Type	Schedule	Delete
1	Anti-virus	All Day	X

### 3.2.5.2.2 Delete/Modify Combination Rule

To delete a combination rule, check the rule and click <Delete>.

To modify a combination rule, click the name of the combination rule to open the page for editing, as shown below. Then modify the settings except the rule name (rule name cannot be modified).



## 3.2.6 Service

The [Service] page allows you to define various network services, including the ports and protocols used by the services. The services defined here will be referenced in [Firewall] > [Firewall Rules] or in [User/Policy] > [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [App Control] > [Port Control].

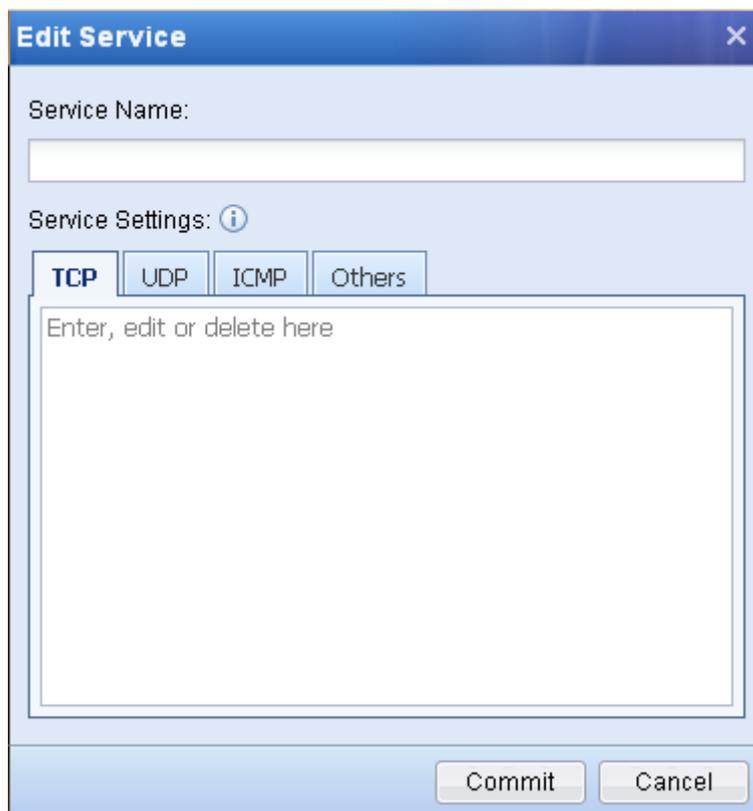
To add a service, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [Objects] > [Service] page, as shown below:



<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Service Name	Description	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	DNS	UDP: 53;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	HTTP	TCP: 80;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	HTTPS	TCP: 443;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	SMTP	TCP: 25;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	POP3	TCP: 110;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	SSH	TCP: 22;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	Telnet	TCP: 23;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	FTP	TCP: 20-21;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	NetMeeting	TCP: 1503,1720;	✘
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	RemoteDesktop	TCP: 3389;	✘

Step 2. Click <Add> to open the [Edit Service] page, as shown below:



**Edit Service** [X]

Service Name:

Service Settings: ⓘ

**TCP** | UDP | ICMP | Others

Enter, edit or delete here

Step 3. Type a name for the service, and then set the protocol type and port number used by the service under [Service Settings]. Click [TCP], [UDP], [ICMP] and [Others] tabs to select the protocol type and enter the corresponding port.

Step 4. Click <Commit> to save your settings.



In [Others] tab, you can enter the protocol number. The protocol number 0 indicates all protocols.

### 3.2.7 IP Group

The [IP Group] page allows you to define IP groups that include certain IP addresses, which can be IP ranges in an intranet or public network, or all IP addresses. The IP groups defined here will be referenced in:

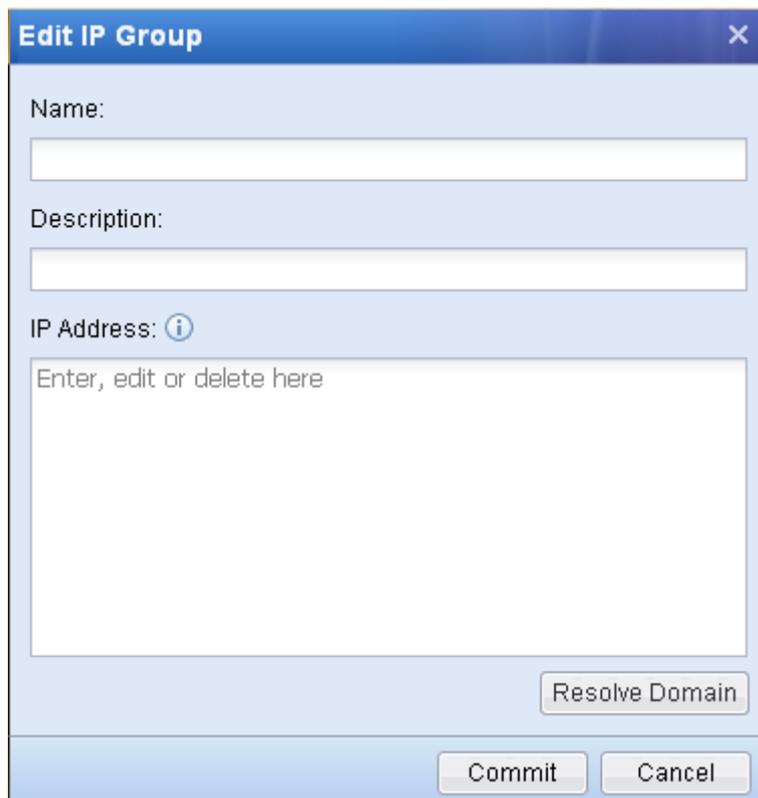
- ◆ [Firewall] > [Firewall Rules] to set the source IP, destination IP for the firewall rules.
- ◆ [User/Policy] > [User Management] > [Group/User] to set the IP address bound with the user through [Obtain from IP Group] when you add or edit a user (under [User Attribute] > [Bind IP/MAC] > [Bind IP]).
- ◆ [User/Policy] > [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [App Control] > [Port Control] to set destination IP.
- ◆ [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] to set the destination IP.

To add an IP group, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [Objects] > [IP Group] page, as shown below:

IP Group				
+ Add   X Delete				
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Description	Delete
-	1	ALL	Any IP, built in system, cannot be edited or deleted	X

Step 2. Click <Add> to open the [Edit IP Group] page, as shown below:



Step 3. Type a name and a brief description for the IP group.

Step 4. Type the IP addresses in the [IP Address] text box, with one IP address or IP range per row. The format of IP range is “start IP-end IP”, for example, 192.168.0.1-192.168.0.100.

Step 5. To obtain the IP address of a domain name, click the <Resolve Domain> to open the [Resolve Domain] page, as shown below. Then type the domain name and click <Resolve>. The IP address obtained by resolving the domain name will be added to the [IP Address] list.



Step 6. Click <Commit> to save your settings.



The [Resolve Domain] function is conducted by the local computer; therefore, to make the function work well, make sure the computer can connect to the Internet and resolve domain name.

## 3.2.8 Schedule

The [Schedule] page allows you to combine several commonly used time periods into one schedule. The schedules defined here will be referenced in [Firewall] > [Firewall Rules], [User/Policy] > [Access Management] and [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] > [Bandwidth Channel] as the valid period or invalid period for the rules.

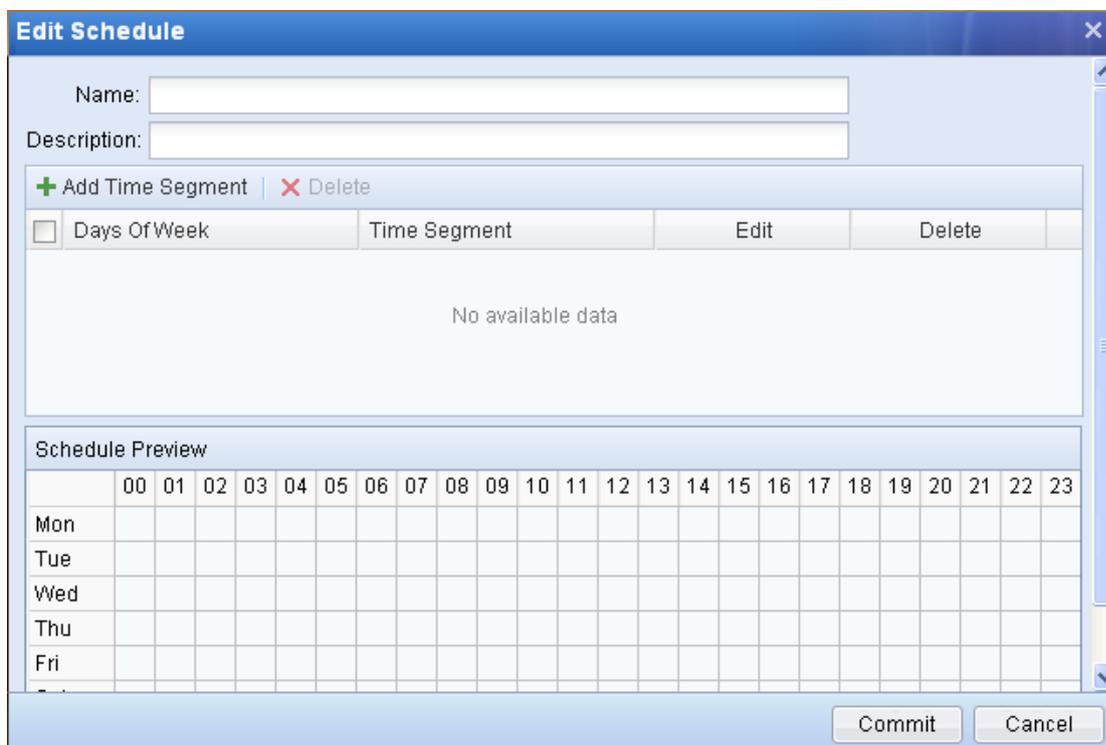
To add a schedule, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [Objects] > [Schedule] page, as shown below:



<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Time Segments	Description	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	All Day	Mon-Sun;Morning 0:00 - Afternoon 11:59(th...	Mon-Sun (0-24)	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Office Hours	Mon-Fri;Morning 9:00 - Morning 12:00 ...	Mon-Fri (9-12 and ...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Non-Office Hours	Mon-Fri;Morning 0:00 - Morning 9:00 ...	After hours and we...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Step 2. Click <Add> to open the [Edit Schedule] page, as shown below:



Name:

Description:

+ Add Time Segment | - Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Days Of Week	Time Segment	Edit	Delete
No available data				

Schedule Preview

	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
Mon																								
Tue																								
Wed																								
Thu																								
Fri																								

Commit Cancel

Step 3. Type a name and a brief description for the schedule.

Step 4. Click <Add Time Segment> to set the specific days of the week and time segments, as shown

below. To add several inconsecutive time segments, click <Add Time Segment> to add them one by one.

Step 5. To remove a time segment from the schedule, select it and click <Delete>. The [Schedule Preview] displays all the time segments added to the schedule, the horizontal axis indicating the time range and the vertical axis indicating the date range.

Step 6. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.2.9 Black/White List Group

The [Black/White List Group] page allows you define the black/white list groups of domain names. The black/white list groups defined here will be referenced in [Web Filter] > [Filter Type Filter], [Plugin Filter] and [Script Filter].

To add a black/white list group, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [Objects] > [Black/White List Group] page, as shown below:

No.	Name	Description	Delete

Step 2. Click <Add> to open the [Add Black/White List Group] page, as shown below:

- Step 3. Type a name and a brief description for the black/white list group.
- Step 4. Specify the URLs in the [URL] text box, one URL per row. You can enter up to 512 URL entries.
- Step 5. To reference the internal URL categories in the black/white list group, click the text box of [Include the following URL categories] to open the [URL Library] page and then select the URL categories according to your needs.
- Step 6. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.2.10 Keyword Group

The [Keyword Group] page allows you to define keyword groups that include specific keywords. The keyword groups defined here will be referenced in [User/Policy] > [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Web Filter] > [Keyword Filter] to restrict the search and upload of specified keywords.

To add a keyword group, do as follows:

- Step 1. Open [Objects] > [Keyword Group] page, as shown below:

Keyword Group				
+ Add   X Delete				
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Description	Delete

Step 2. Click <Add> to open the [Edit Keyword Group] page, as shown below:

**Edit Keyword Group** X

Name:

Description:

Keyword: ⓘ

Step 3. Type a name and a brief description for the keyword group.

Step 4. Specify the keywords in the [Keyword] text box. Enter 1 to 5 keywords per row and separate keywords by comma. Each row is taken as an independent element; only when all the keywords on a same row are matched will this independent element be satisfied. However, if any of the independent elements is satisfied, this keyword group is triggered.

Step 5. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

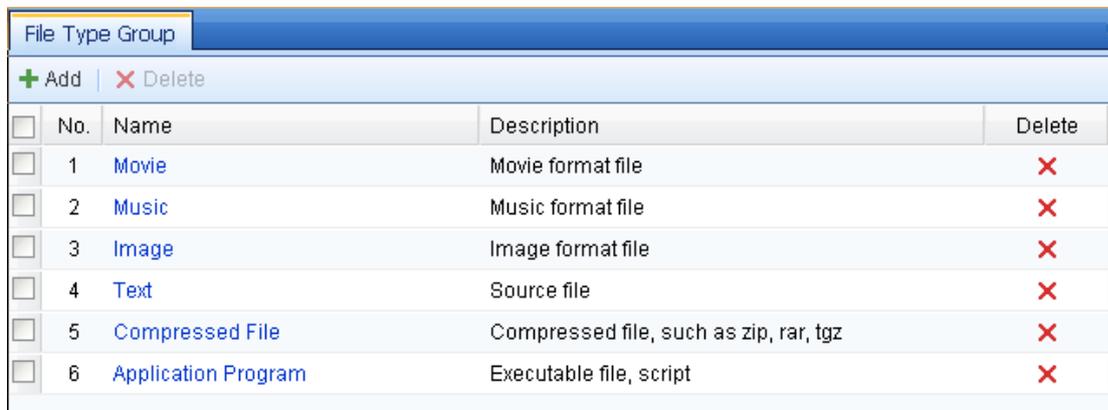
### 3.2.11 File Type Group

The [File Type Group] page allows you to define file type groups that include specific file types. The file type groups defined here will be referenced in [User/Policy] > [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [Web Filter] > [File Type Filter] to restrict the upload and download of the specified file types through

HTTP or FTP, and in [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] > [Bandwidth Channel] to implement flow control over the upload and download of the specified file types.

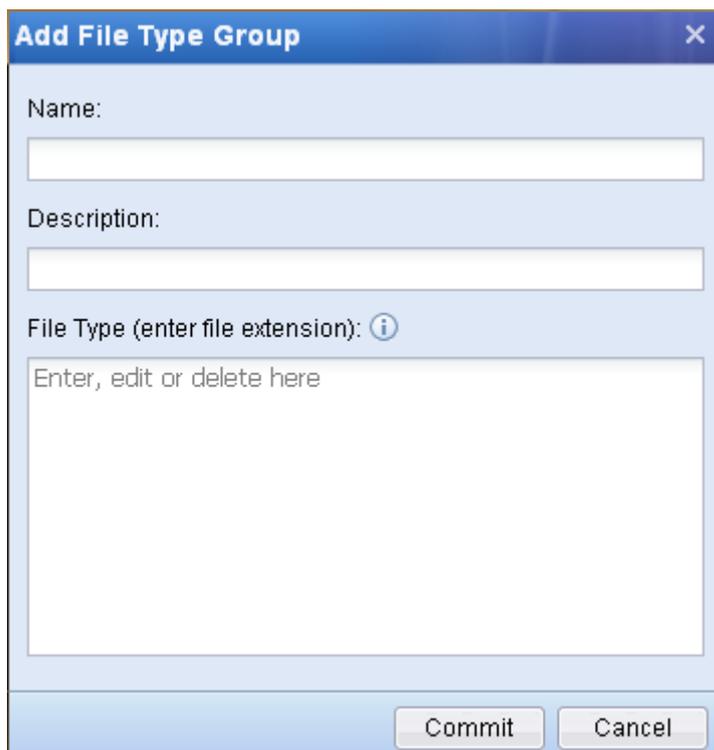
To add a file type group, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [Objects] > [File Type Group] page, as shown below:



<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Description	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Movie	Movie format file	✗
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Music	Music format file	✗
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Image	Image format file	✗
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Text	Source file	✗
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Compressed File	Compressed file, such as zip, rar, tgz	✗
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	Application Program	Executable file, script	✗

Step 2. Click <Add> to open the [Add File Type Group] page, as shown below:



**Add File Type Group**

Name:

Description:

File Type (enter file extension): ⓘ

Step 3. Type a name and a brief description for the file type group, and then specify the file extensions in the [File Type] text box, for example, **\*.mp3** or **mp3**.

Step 4. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.2.12 Trusted CA

The [Trusted CA] page displays the trusted certificates, which will be referenced in [User/Policy] > [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [SSL Management] > [SSL Security]. If [SSL Security] is enabled, all the root certificates in SSL certificate library are trusted. You can also import a certificate into the library or delete a certificate from the library.

To import a certificate, click <Add Trusted CA> on the [Trusted CA] page and then select the certificate to import. The supported certificate formats are **.crt** and **.cer**.

Trusted CA					
+ Add Trusted CA   X Delete					
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	CA	Start Date	End Date	D...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Xcert EZ by DST	Jul 14 16:14:18...	Jul 11 16:14:18...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	VeriSign Individual Software Publishers CA	Apr 9 00:00:00 ...	Jan 7 23:59:59 ...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Certiposte Classe A Personne	Jun 24 08:00:0...	Jun 24 08:00:0...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	CA 1	Mar 11 11:18:4...	Mar 11 11:48:4...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	C&W HKT SecureNet CA SGC Root	Jun 30 00:00:0...	Oct 15 23:59:0...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	C&W HKT SecureNet CA Root	Jun 30 00:00:0...	Oct 15 23:59:0...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class B	Jun 30 00:00:0...	Oct 15 23:59:0...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class A	Jun 30 00:00:0...	Oct 15 23:59:0...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	Belgacom E-Trust Primary CA	Nov 4 13:04:39...	Jan 21 13:04:3...	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	Baltimore EZ by DST	Jul 6 20:56:53 ...	Jul 3 19:56:53 ...	X

You can only import the certificate from the local computer and the same certificate cannot be imported again. When importing, the IAM device will check if the certificate already exists according to its MD5 value. If the MD5 is different, the certificate is unique.



Generally, the name of the certificate main body is the Common Name (CN) corresponding to the certificate subject in the IE browser. If there is no CN in the certificate subject, the name of the last field in the subject will be adopted (the sort order of subject fields may differ from that in IE).

## 3.3 User/Policy

The [User/Policy] module is used for managing users and access management policies. The users defined on the IAM device are end-point users in the local area network, who are the basic units to be allocated with network access privileges. The administrators can manage the users through [User Management] and their network access privileges through [Access Management], and configure different access management policies for different users according to their privilege features. Please note that the users and access

management policies are independent elements on the IAM device. If you want to apply some access management policies to specific users, you need associate the policies with the users through the [User/Policy] page.

## 3.3.1 Access Management

The [Access Management] page is used for managing all the access management policies. The administrators can set different access management policies for different users according to the privileges allocated to them. There are six types of access management policies, namely, [Access Control], [Audit Policy], [Security Policy], [Reminder Policy], [Flow/Duration Control], [Ingress Policy].

### 3.3.1.1 Introduction to Access Management Policies

#### 3.3.1.1.1 Access Control Policy

The access control policy includes the application control, web filter, SSL management and email filter functions.

##### Application Control

By setting [App Control], you can control the connections of LAN users to the applications over the Internet and determine whether to allow or deny the connections of some applications. The IAM device provides several ways of control over applications, including [App Control], [Port Control] and [Proxy Control], which are described in the following.

- ◆ [App Control] controls a certain application by analyzing the features of Internet data at application layer. The IAM device has already defined the application rules for various common network applications (see sections 3.2.1-3.2.3) and you can reference these rules in [App Control] to realize the application control.
- ◆ [Port Control] conducts control over Internet access data by detecting IP address, protocol number and port number of data packets. You can first define the destination IP group you want to control on the [Objects] > [IP Group] page, and define target protocols or ports on the [Objects] > [Service] page (see sections 3.2.6 and 3.2.7), and then reference these objects in [Port Control] to realize the control over Internet access data.
- ◆ [Proxy Control] specifies whether to allow LAN users to use HTTP proxy or SOCKS proxy. The [Deny other protocols at standard HTTP or SSL port] option is used to prevent some applications from using standard HTTP port (TCP 80) and SSL port (TCP 443) to transmit its own data to

evade the control and restrictions by the IAM device.

## Web Filter

By setting [Web Filter], you can control the behaviors of accessing websites using HTTP or HTTPS protocol. It enables you to filter the websites, keywords searched in search engine, keywords uploaded through HTTP and file types uploaded or downloaded through HTTP, as described in the following:

- ◆ [HTTP URL Filter] includes [Web Browsing Filter] and [Post Filter]. [Web Browsing Filter] conducts control over the behaviors of visiting websites by detecting the URLs of websites. The URLs set here are referenced from the URL groups defined on the [Objects] > [URL Library] page, on which there are built-in URL groups, collected and categorized by specialized staff. You can reference these built-in URL groups or define them according to your needs (for details, see section 3.2.4 "URL Library"). [Post Filter] implements control over the HTTP POST behaviors when users are accessing website by detecting the URLs of websites. If you want to allow some users to access a forum website but block them from sending posts to the forum, you need to configure a [Post Filter] policy.
- ◆ [HTTPS URL Filter] filters secure websites connected using HTTPS protocol. Similar to the [HTTP URL Filter], it references the URL groups defined on the [Objects] > [URL Library] page. The difference between them is that [HTTPS URL Filter] uses a different method to detect URL. Since data is encrypted when users are accessing secure websites using HTTPS protocol, the IAM device cannot detect the URL directly. However, the URL of a secure website is generally the same as that set in [Issued to] of the SSL certificate; therefore, the device can obtain the URL of the secure website by detecting the [Issued to] field in SSL certificate. Given the feature of the above detection method, if you are to define a URL of an HTTPS website, please set the URL according to the [Issued to] field in the certificate corresponding to the website.
- ◆ [Keyword Filter] includes two filters: [Search Keyword] filter and [HTTP Upload] filter. The former filters the keywords searched in search engine or generates corresponding alarms, while the latter filters the keywords uploaded through HTTP or generates corresponding alarms. The keywords set here are referenced from the [Objects] > [Keyword Group] page (for details, see section 3.2.10 "Keyword Group"). The two keyword filters are specific to HTTP websites and are not applicable to the keywords of specified URL.
- ◆ [File Type Filter] filters the types of files uploaded or downloaded through HTTP or FTP. The file types set here are referenced from the [Objects] > [File Type Group] page (for details, see section 3.2.11 "File Type Group").

## SSL Management

[SSL Management] includes [SSL Security] and [SSL Content Ident], which are described in the following:

- ◆ [SSL Security] determines whether a secure connection satisfies the specified conditions by detecting and verifying the certificate. If not, it denies the access to the application connected through SSL protocol. The conditions include black/white list, whether to allow expired certificate, whether the root certificate is trusted, etc.
- ◆ [SSL Content Ident] realizes content audit and control over the applications connected using SSL secure protocol, such as HTTPS, encrypted SMTP and encrypted POP3. Given the security of online banking, the websites involving online payment are exempted from the control.

## Email Filter

[Email Filter] filters the emails sent from LAN users using SMTP protocol. The filter criteria include email addresses of sender and receiver, email subject, keywords contained in email body, etc. You can also configure the email delay/audit rules to restrict some emails from being sent out until they are approved by the administrator.

### 3.3.1.1.2 Audit Policy

The audit policy includes the application audit, outgoing file alarm, flow/online duration audit and web content audit functions.

## Application Audit

[App Audit] audits the network behaviors and access contents of LAN users when they access the Internet through the IAM device. The audit objects include HTTP outgoing contents, website browsing, emails, IM chat logs, FTP, TELNET and application behaviors.

## Outgoing File Alarm

[Outgoing File Alarm] generates alarms when the corresponding outgoing files are recorded. If LAN users send files of specific types, the IAM device will send a notification email to the administrator. The file detection conducted by the IAM device is not simply based on file extensions, for the IAM device will also analyze the data feature in depth to obtain the type of the file. By detecting files in this way, the IAM device will successfully detect the files transferred by LAN users even if the file is compressed or file extension is changed.

## **Flow/Duration Audit**

[Flow/Duration Audit] enables you to make flow or online duration statistics of various applications. If you check the related options, you can go to the Data Center to search for the flow and online duration caused by LAN users when they are accessing various applications over the Internet.

## **Web Content Audit**

[Web Content Audit] audits the contents of the websites accessed by LAN users. You can set to audit website title and body contents, only audit contents of websites containing specified keywords or filter the websites containing specified keywords. Please note that when this module is enabled, it will consume large amount of device performance.

### **3.3.1.1.3 Security Policy**

The security policy includes the risk behavior identification, ActiveX filter and script filter functions.

#### **Risk Identification**

[Risk Ident] identifies and blocks risk network behaviors, including HTTP Trojan, SMTP Trojan, port scanning, HTTP flow anomaly and email sending anomaly.

#### **ActiveX Filter**

[ActiveX Filter] identifies and filters the ActiveX plugins downloaded when users are accessing websites. Some malicious ActiveX plugins on websites may cause the browser to malfunction, or even monitor network behaviors and steal your personal information. Usually, the malicious plugins are automatically installed on user PCs through the browser. However, by filtering the signature of ActiveX control, the [ActiveX Filter] function prevents untrusted plugins from being installed on the computers across the LAN and therefore ensures the security of the LAN.

#### **Script Filter**

As the network security problem becomes increasingly severe, user computers may be infected with various viruses or Trojan when accessing some malicious websites by accident. Most of these problems are caused by malicious scripts. Based on this situation, the [Script Filter] function, by identifying the features of the scripts on the websites visited by LAN users, blocks scripts before they are downloaded and executed on the browser and therefore protects the security of the LAN. It supports JavaScript filter and VBScript filter.

### 3.3.1.1.4 Reminder Policy

The reminder policy includes the online duration reminder, flow reminder and bulletin board functions.

#### **Online Duration Reminder**

[Duration Reminder] enables you to set online duration limit on LAN users according to different time periods. When the online duration limit is reached, the IAM device will display a reminder page to reminder LAN users.

#### **Flow Reminder**

[Flow Reminder] enables you to set the upper limit on average flow speed of users. When the upper limit is reached, the IAM device will display a reminder page to reminder LAN users.

#### **Bulletin Board**

[Bulletin Board] is used to periodically pop up the pages specified by administrator for LAN users.

### 3.3.1.1.5 Flow/Duration Control Policy

The flow/duration control policy includes the flow quota, online duration control and sessions control functions.

#### **Flow Quota**

[Flow Quota] limits the daily or monthly flow caused by a single user accessing the Internet through the IAM device. When the flow of a user in a specified time period exceeds the flow quota set here, the user will be blocked from accessing the Internet.

#### **Online Duration Control**

[Duration Control] limits the online duration of a single user in a specified time period. When the online duration of a user in a specified time period exceeds the limit set here, the user will be blocked from accessing the Internet.

#### **Concurrent Sessions Control**

[Sessions Control] limits the number of concurrent connections caused by a single user accessing the Internet through the IAM device. When the limit set here is reached, the redundant connections will be

discarded.

### **3.3.1.1.6 Ingress Policy**

#### **Ingress Policy**

[Ingress Policy] checks the operating system, process, file, registry or other information of the computers in the LAN by means of the ingress program installed at client end. Besides, it can be used to audit chat logs of encrypted IM tools. When the ingress system is enabled, the user computers should satisfy corresponding conditions before they are allowed to connect to the Internet.

#### **Illegal Gateway Detection**

[Illegal Gateway Detect] checks if the gateway address configured on the LAN computers is legal by means of the ingress program installed at client end. If the users access the Internet through an illegal gateway, the IAM device will record it in Data Center.

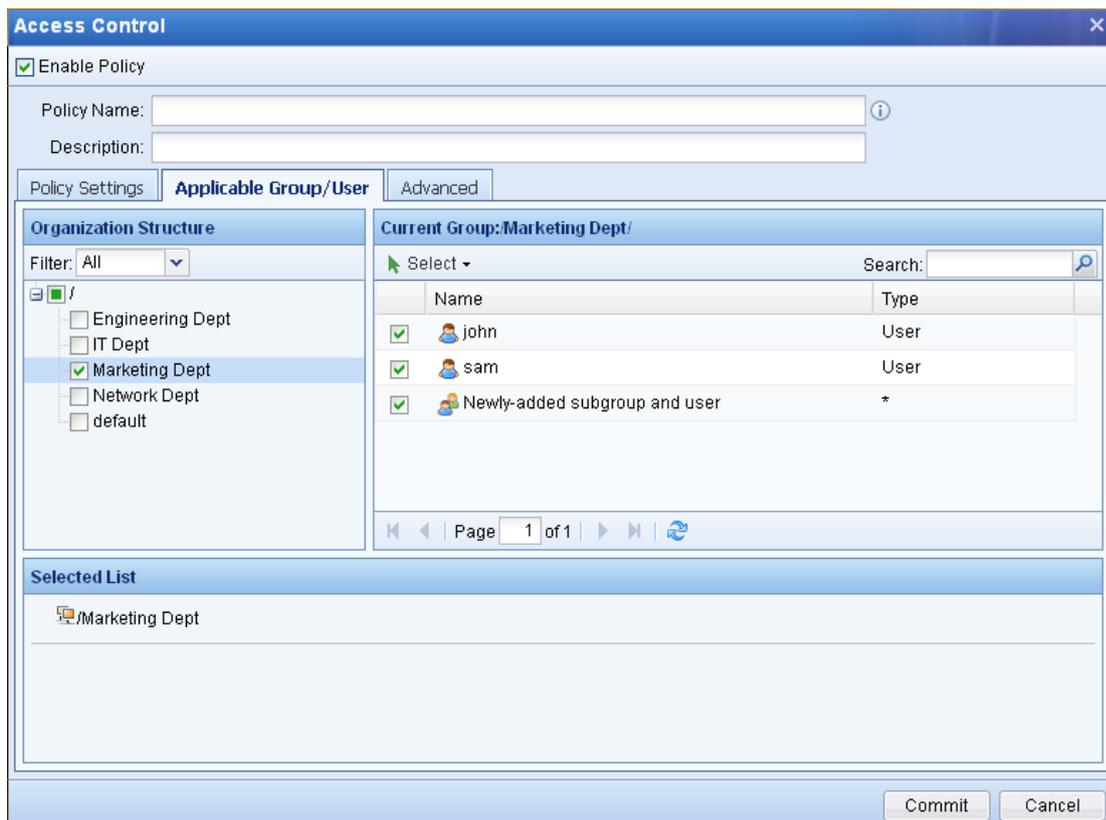
### **3.3.1.2 Associate Policy with User/Group**

The users/groups and access management policies are independent elements on the device. Therefore, you need to associate the access management policies with users/groups in both IPv4 and IPv6 environment to make the policies work so that when the users/groups are accessing the Internet, the corresponding access management policies will be matched. There are two ways to add access management policies for specific user/group, as described in the following.

#### **Associate Policy with User/Group When Creating Policy**

When creating an access management policy, you can associate it with a specific user/group. The procedures are as follows:

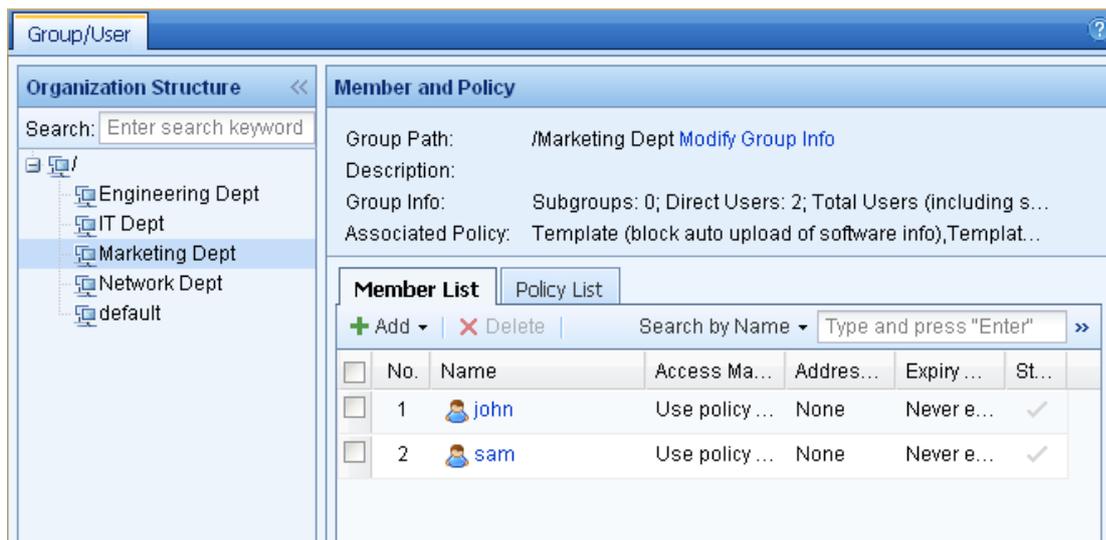
- Step 1. Click <Add> on the [Access Management] page to add a policy.
- Step 2. After setting the policy, click the [Applicable User/Group] tab, select your desired user group under [Organization Structure] on the left and then select the users or subgroups on the right. Check the [Newly-added subgroup/user] option to also apply this policy to the users and subgroups subsequently added into the current user group; otherwise, the policy only applies to the selected users/subgroups.  
All your selected users/groups will be listed under [Selected List] at the bottom.



Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

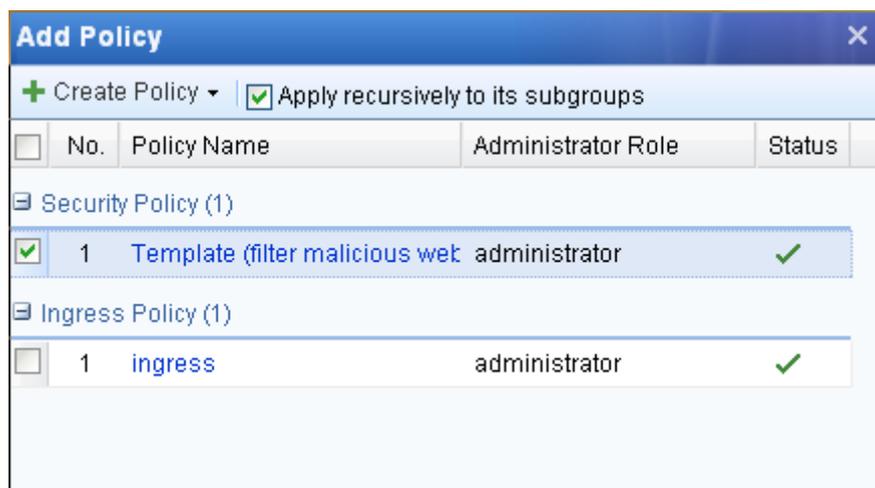
## Associate Policy with User/Group on [User/Group] Page

Step 1. Open the [User Management] > [Group/User] page, and then select your desired user group under [Organization Structure], as shown below:



Step 2. Click the [Policy List] tab page, and then click <Add Policy> to open the [Add Policy] page and select the your desired policies. Check the [Apply recursively to its subgroups] option to also apply the policy to all of its subgroups; otherwise, the policy only applies to its direct users and

subsequently added subgroups.



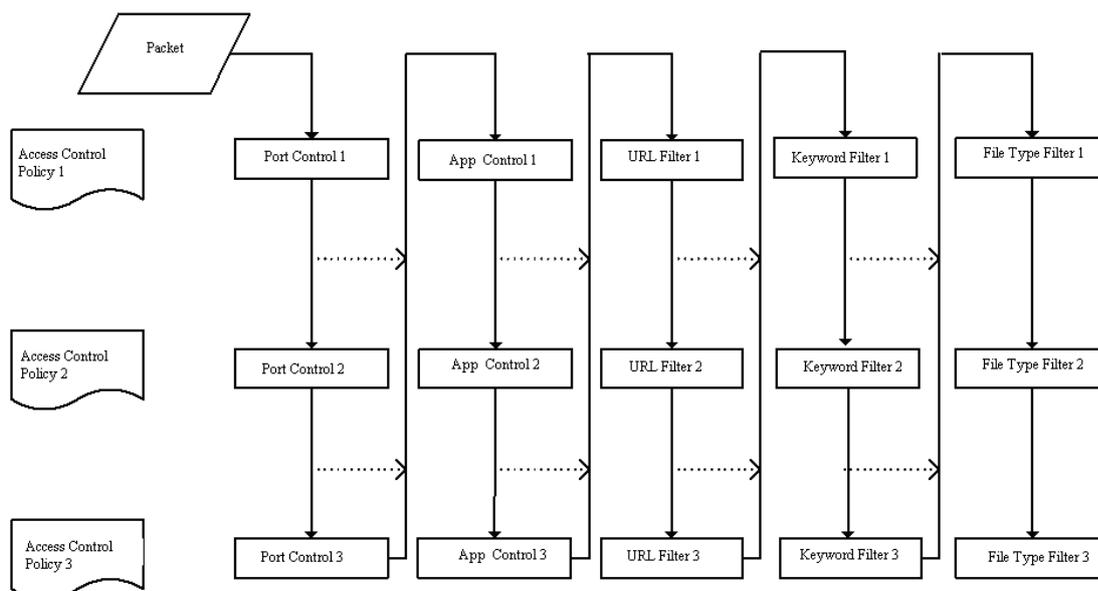
Step 3. After setting the policy, click <OK> to save and the [Policy List] page returns, displaying all the policies associated with the current user group. The [Apply to Its Users/Subgroups] column indicates whether the corresponding policy applies to all or some of its subgroups and users.



### 3.3.1.3 Match Policies

When a user/group is associated with multiple access management policies, there are two policy-matching rules: one is to match policies from the first one to the last one, supporting superposition of multiple policies; the other is to match the first available policy only, that is, it will stop matching downwards once there is an available policies matched.

The modules supporting superposition of multiple policies include: [App Control], [Port Control], [HTTP URL Filter], [HTTPS URL Filter], [Keyword Filter], [File Type Filter], [Ingress Policy], [App Audit], [Duration Reminder] and [Flow Reminder], among which most of the policies are matched from top to bottom but some of them are matched according to the sequence, as shown below:



The modules not supporting superposition of multiple policies include: [Proxy Control], [SSL Security], [SSL Content Ident], [Email Filter], [Outgoing File Alarm], [Flow/Duration Audit], [Web Content Audit], [Risk Ident], [ActiveX Filter], [Script Filter], [Bulletin Board], [Flow Quota], [Duration Control], [Sessions Control]. For these modules, the first available policy will prevail.



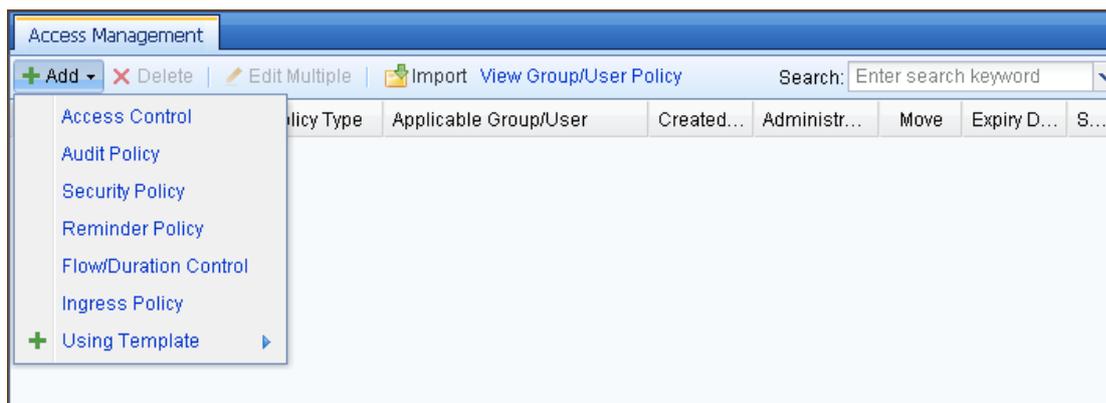
When the display order of policies on the [Access Management] page is adjusted, the display order of policies on the [User Management] > [User/Group] > [Policy List] page will be also adjusted accordingly, ensuring the same display order.

### 3.3.1.4 Add Access Management Policy

#### 3.3.1.4.1 Add Access Control Policy

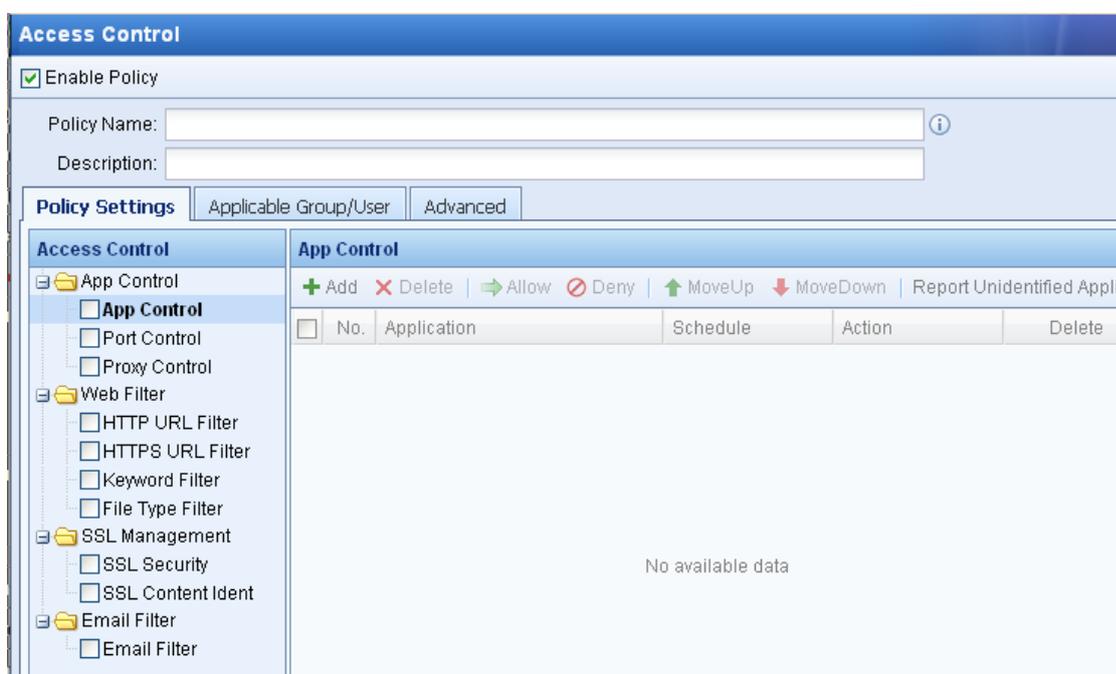
To add an access control policy, do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Access Management] page, click <Add> and select [Access Control] to open the [Access Control] page, as shown below:



Step 2. Check the [Enable Policy] option to enable the access control policy.

If this option is not checked, the policy will not take effect.

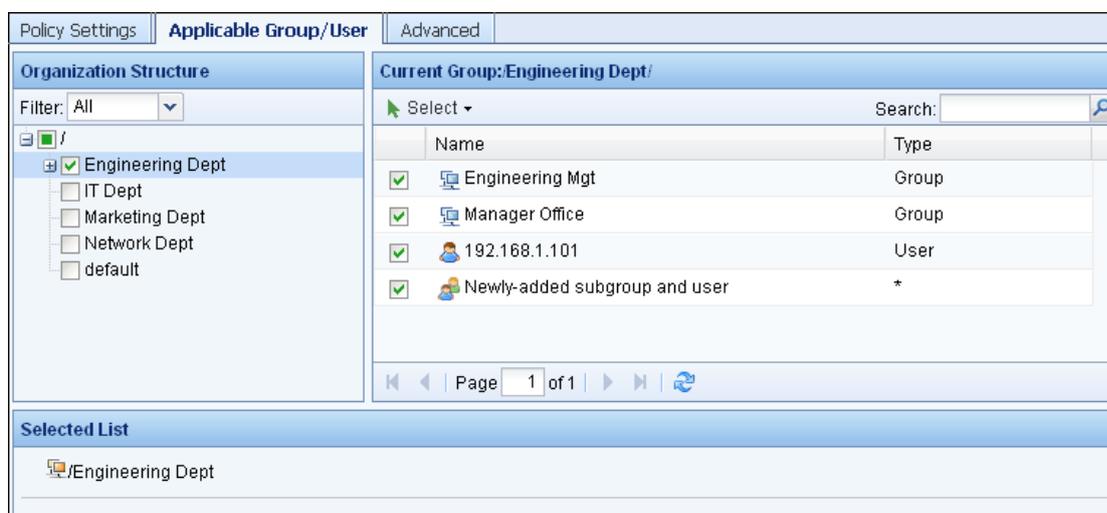


Step 3. Type the policy name and description. [Policy Name] is the unique identifier of the policy, which must be entered and unique. [Description] refers to descriptive information of the policy, which is optional.

Step 4. Open the [Policy Settings] tab and set the access control policy according to your needs. First, select the control type under [Access Control] on the left pane and then configure the policy on the right pane. The access control policy covers the following four control modules: [App Control], [Web Filter], [SSL Management] and [Email Filter] (for detailed settings of the modules, see the subsequent sections).

Step 5. Click to open the [Group/User] tab. Select your desired user group under [Organization Structure] on the left pane and then select the users or subgroups on the right pane. The user groups or users

selected on this tab will be associated with this access control policy. You can add multiple groups and users, and all the selected ones will be displayed under [Selected List] at the bottom.



Step 6. Click to open the [Advanced] tab and then specify the following information.

**Table 15 Advanced Settings (Access Management Policy)**

Field	Description
Expiry Date	<p>Specify the expiry date of the current policy. Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [Never Expire]: Indicates the current policy is valid permanently.</li> <li>◆ [Expired After]: Indicates this policy will be expired on a certain date and you need then specify the date. For example, if you select the date <b>2010-12-01</b>, it means this policy will expire on 2010-12-01 and it is no longer valid after this date.</li> </ul>
Same-Role Administrator Privilege	<p>Specify the privileges among administrators of the same role. Here, "Same-Role Administrator" means the administrators belong to the same role on the [System] &gt; [Administrator] page. Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [Allow to view]: Indicates the administrators of the same role are allowed to view this policy only.</li> <li>◆ [Allow to edit]: Indicates the administrators of the same role are allowed to view and edit this policy (the precondition is that their administrative scopes are the same or of the inclusion relation (for detailed instructions, see section 3.9.2 "Administrator").</li> </ul>

Allow administrator of lower role to view	Specify whether to allow administrators of lower role to view this policy. If you check it, the lower role administrators are allowed to view this policy (view-only). Here, “administrator of lower role” refers to the administrators on the [System] > [Administrator] page whose role level is lower than that of the administrator creating this policy.
---	---

Step 7. Click <Commit> to save the access control policy.

## Application Control

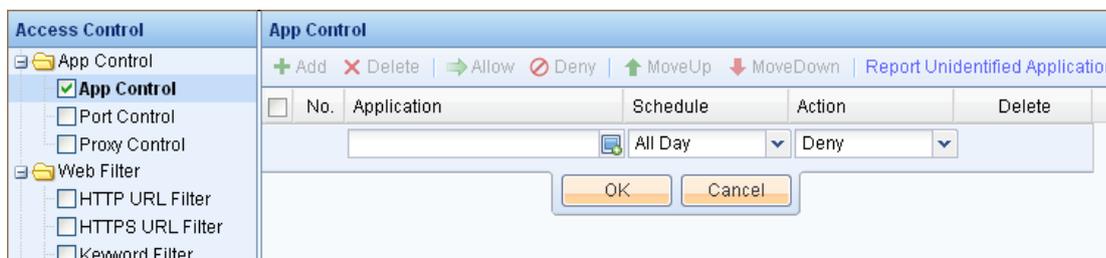
### App Control

Application control is a way to control some applications by detecting the contents of packets. It enables you to conduct control over various identified or unidentified application services, such as, P2P application, QQ, email, etc.

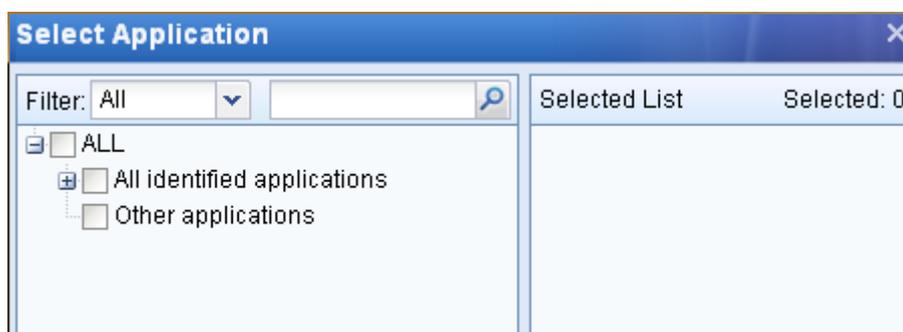
**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that denies P2P-relevant applications.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [App Control] on the left pane to open the [App Control] page on the right. The application control references the settings defined on [App Ident Library], [Intelligent Ident Lib], [App Customization] and [Schedule] pages (for details, see sections 3.2.1-3.2.3 and 3.2.8).

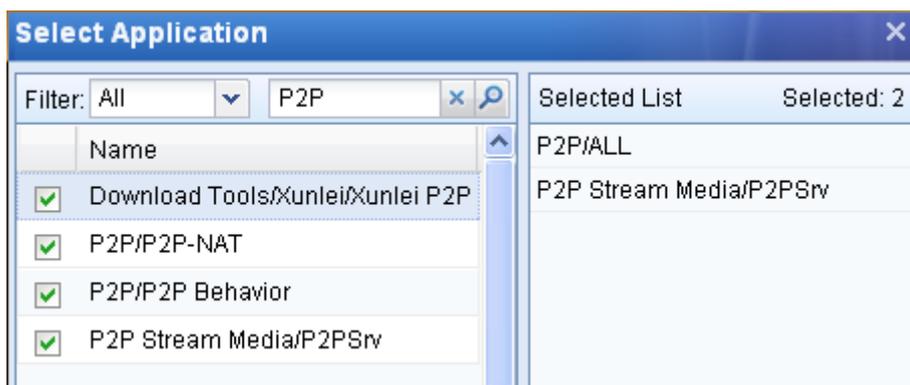


Step 2. Click <Add> and then click the  icon to open the [Select Application] page, as shown below:



Step 3. Select the target applications. You can select [All], [Selected] or [Unselected] from the [Filter] drop-down list to display all, selected or unselected applications. The left pane displays the

applications available, with a check box in front of each item. Check the box to select the corresponding application or type the keyword in the text box to quickly find your desired applications. In this example, type **P2P** in the text box and press **Enter** on your keyboard or click the  icon. The search will start and corresponding applications will be displayed. Then check all the relevant applications, and your selections will be displayed under [Selected List] on the right. Finally, click <OK> to save your settings.



Step 4. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **All Day** (for settings of schedule, see section 3.2.8 "Schedule"), and then click <OK> to save the application control rule.

App Control					
Add            Delete              Allow            Deny              Up            Down   <a href="#">Report Unidentified Application</a>					
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Application	Schedule	Action	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	P2P/ALL P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv	All Day	Deny	

Step 5. To manage the application control rule, check the rule entry and then click <Delete> to delete it, click <Allow>/<Deny> to change the action to [Deny]/[Allow], or click <Up>/<Down> to move this entry up/down to adjust the display order. Since the rules are matched from top to bottom, the rule entry displayed at the top will be preferentially matched.

Step 6. If you only want to conduct application control in this policy, click <Commit> to complete the policy settings; if you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.



By default, the IAM device allows the access to the application types that are not configured in the access control module.

## Port Control

Port control is a way to conduct control based on destination IP, port and time period, for instance, to block LAN users from accessing the port 80 of a certain IP group.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that denies the access to the services on ports 1000-1001 of the destination IP group 200.200.200.1-200.200.200.254 during office hours.

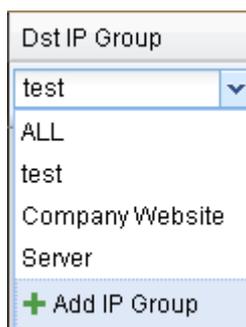
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Check [Port Control] on the left pane to open the [Port Control] page on the right. The port control references the settings defined on the [IP Group], [Service] and [Schedule] pages (for details, see sections 3.2.6-3.2.8).



- Step 2. Click <Add> and then select the destination IP group.

- a. Click the drop-down arrow to select one of the IP groups available. If you want to add your own IP group, click [Add IP Group] at the bottom of the drop-down list to open the [Add IP Group] page.



- b. Type the name and description for the IP group and type **200.200.200.1-200.200.200.254** in the [IP Address] text box, as shown below. Then click <Commit> to save your settings.



**Add IP Group**

Name:  
Restricted IP Group

Description:

IP Address: ⓘ  
200.200.200.1-200.200.200.254

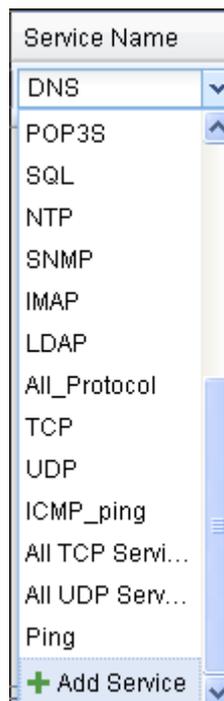
Resolve Domain

Commit Cancel

- c. Select the newly added IP group from the drop-down list.

Step 3. Select the service.

- a. Click the drop-down arrow to select one of the services available. If you want to add your own service, click [Add Service] at the bottom of the drop-down list to open the [Add Service] page.



- b. Type the service name, port and protocol number, as shown below. Then click <Commit> to save your settings.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Service". It has a "Service Name" field containing "Restricted Port 1000-1001". Below it, under "Service Settings", there are four tabs: "TCP", "UDP", "ICMP", and "Others". The "TCP" tab is selected, and a text area below it contains "1000" and "1001". At the bottom of the dialog are "Commit" and "Cancel" buttons.

- c. Select the newly added service from the drop-down list.

Step 4. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **Office Hours**, and then click <OK> to save the port control rule.

Access Control		Port Control				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> App Control</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> App Control</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Port Control</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Proxy Control</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Web Filter</li> </ul>		+ Add   X Delete   → Allow   ⚡ Deny   ↑ MoveUp   ↓ MoveDown				
No.	Dst IP Group	Service Name	Schedule	Action	Delete	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Restricted IP Group	Restricted Port ...	Office Hours	⚡ Deny   X	

Step 5. To manage the port control rule, check the rule entry and then click <Delete> to delete it, click <Allow>/<Deny> to change the action to [Deny]/[Allow], or click <Up>/<Down> to move this entry up/down to adjust the display order. Since the rules are matched from top to bottom, the rule entry displayed at the top will be preferentially matched.

Step 6. If you only want to conduct port control in this policy, click <Commit> to complete the policy settings; if you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.



By default, the IAM device allows access to the network services that are not configured in the port control module.

## Proxy Control

Proxy control enables you to set whether to disable HTTP proxy, Socks proxy and transparent proxy, and deny the use of other protocols at standard ports of HTTP or SSL protocol for the LAN users. You can also enable the Anti-Proxy Detection to detect if LAN users access Internet through other users.

Access Control	Proxy Control
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> App Control               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> App Control</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Port Control</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Proxy Control</b></li> </ul> </li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Web Filter               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> HTTP URL Filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS URL Filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Keyword Filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> File Type Filter</li> </ul> </li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> SSL Management               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> SSL Security</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> SSL Content Ident</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Disable HTTP proxy</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Disable Socks4 or Socks5 proxy</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Deny other protocols at HTTP or SSL standard port ⓘ</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Disable transparent proxy</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Anti-Proxy Detection (to detect if LAN users access Internet via other user) ⓘ</li> <li>Configure Detection Interval               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Lock user if proxy is detected</li> <li>Lockout Period (1-720 mins): <input type="text" value="0"/></li> </ul> </li> </ul>

The options displayed on the [Port Control] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 16 Proxy Control Settings**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Disable HTTP proxy	Specify whether to allow users in local area network (LAN) to access the Internet through HTTP proxy.
Disable Socks4 or Socks5 proxy	Specify whether to allow users in LAN to access the Internet through Socks proxy.
Deny other protocols at HTTP or SSL standard port	Specify whether to allow users to use other protocols at standards port of HTTP or SSL protocols. Some software already known or unknown will choose the common ports (such as TCP80, TCP443) for communicate to pass the firewall at the front end, but the communication contents are of its own protocol format, for example, QQ (IM tool) logs in through SSL. To deny this kind of behavior, check this option.
Disable transparent proxy	Specify whether to allow the users/groups associated with this policy to use the transparent proxy.
Enable Anti-Proxy Detection	Specify whether to enable the anti-proxy function to detect if LAN users access Internet via other user. Click the [Configure Detection Interval] link to configure the detection interval. If this option is checked, the system will conduct the anti-proxy detection, and will remind the user and record the log if proxy is detected. You can also check the [Lock user if proxy is detected] option and specify the lockout period to lock the corresponding user for a certain period.



The IAM device can deny the above proxy data only when the proxy server is placed at the WAN interface end of the IAM device and the data requested by proxy client to proxy server goes through the IAM device. If the proxy server is placed at the LAN interface end of the IAM device, the proxy data cannot be denied by setting the options here.

## Web Filter

### HTTP URL Filter

The HTTP URL filter module covers [Web Browsing Filter] and [Post Filter]. By detecting the URLs of websites, [Web Browsing Filter] implements control over website browsing. For instance, you can set it to block some users from accessing certain websites in a specified time period. [Post Filter] uses the same way to control HTTP POST behaviors of LAN users when they are visiting websites. For example, you can allow some users to access a forum website, but disallow them to post on to it.

In IPv6 environment, IAM device supports only GET, POST and SSL types of URL filtering. IAM device is able to recognize URL categories through in-cloud URL library. Self-define URL library is not supported in IPv6 environment. The IAM device can filter the URL and prompt customized webpage if URL access denied. The policies enforced through Group/User defined in both IPv4 and IPv6 environment. Figures below show the access control policy for HTTP and HTTPS and the applicable User/Group of the policy. The way to use access control policy in IPv6 environment is exactly same as in IPv4 environment.

**Access Control**

Enable Policy

Policy Name:

Description:

**Policy Settings** | Applicable Group/User | Advanced

**Access Control**

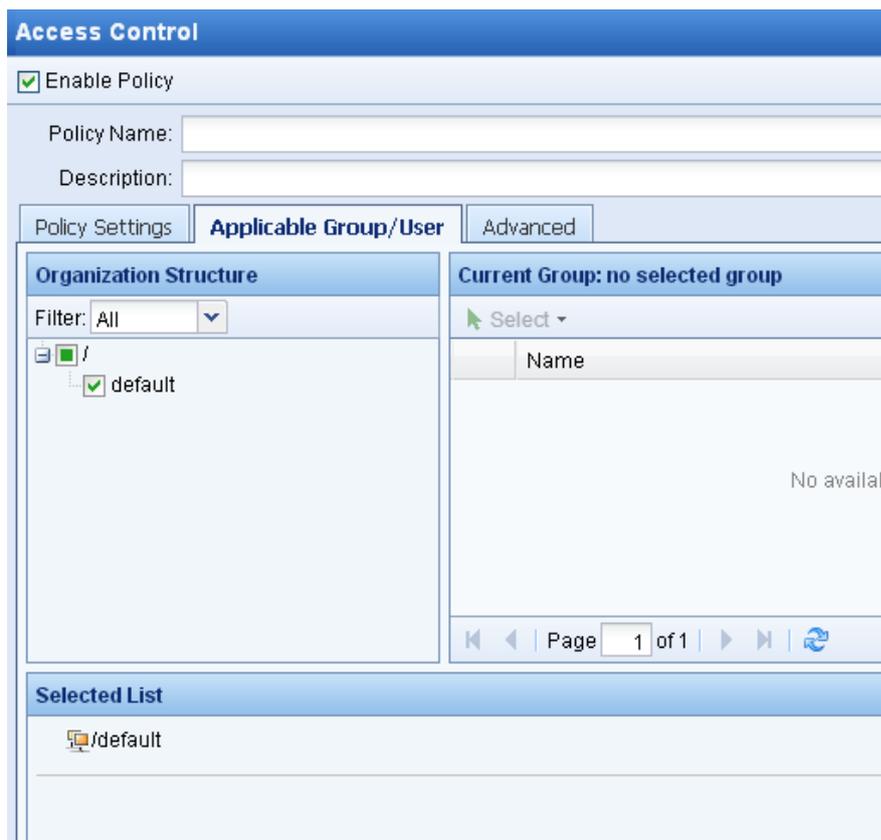
- App Control
  - App Control
  - Port Control
  - Proxy Control
- Web Filter
  - HTTP URL Filter**
  - HTTPS URL Filter
  - Keyword Filter
  - File Type Filter
- SSL Management
  - SSL Security
  - SSL Content Ident
- Email Filter
  - Email Filter

**HTTP URL Filter**

**Web Browsing Filter** | POST Filter

+ Add | X Delete | → Allow | ⊘ Deny | ↑ Up | ↓ Down

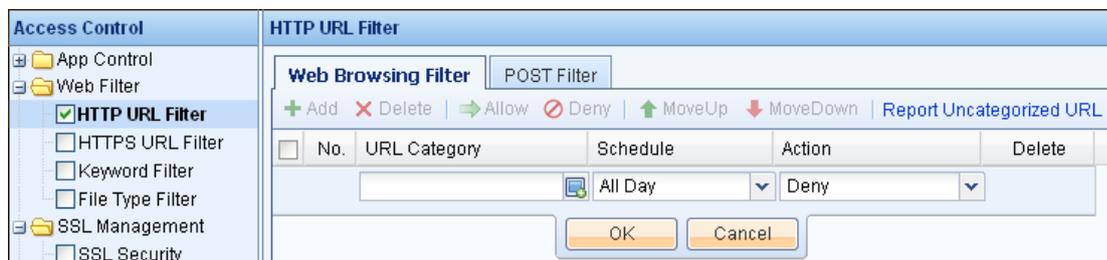
No.	URL Category	Schedule
No available data		



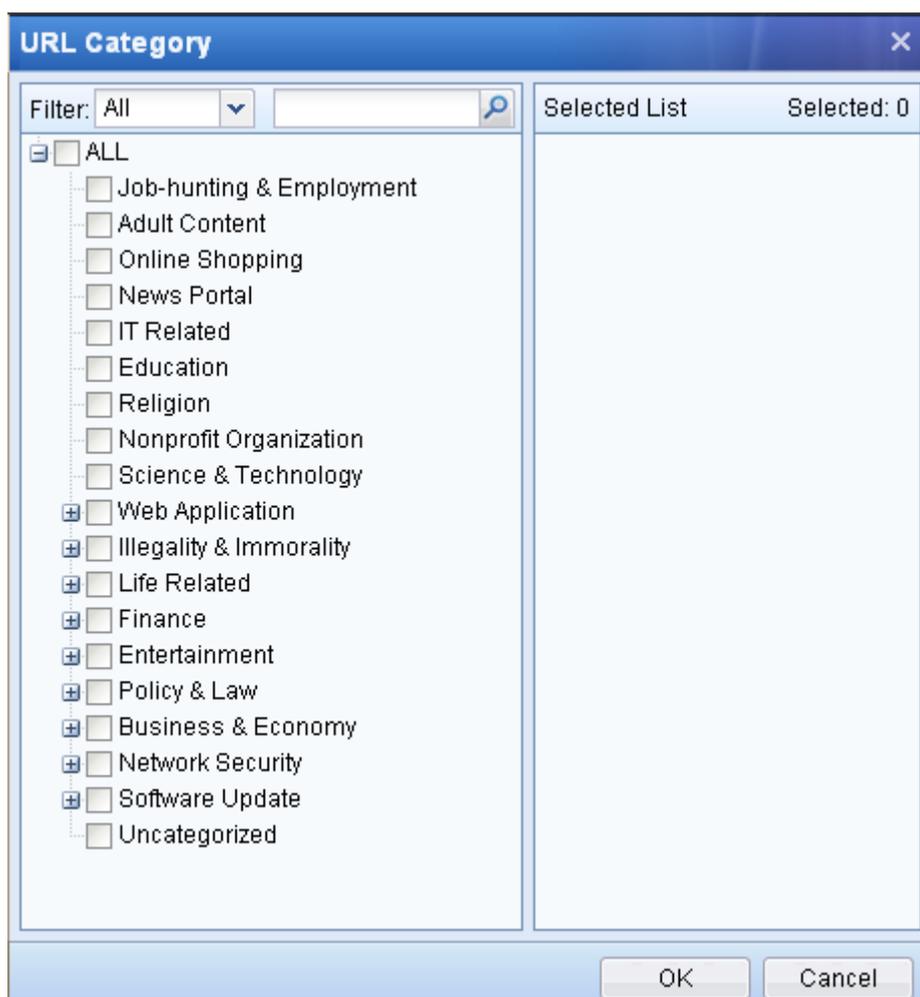
**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that blocks access to bank-related websites, allows access to forum websites but blocks posting during office hours.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

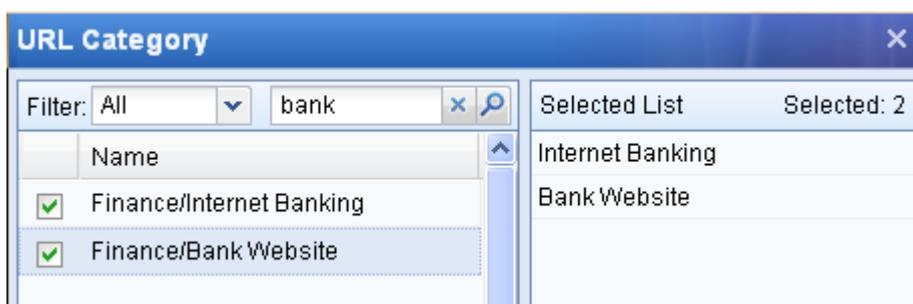
- Step 1. Check [HTTP URL Filter] on the left pane to open the [HTTP URL Filter] page on the right. The HTTP URL filter references the settings defined on the [URL Library] and [Schedule] pages (for details, see sections 3.2.4 and 3.2.8).



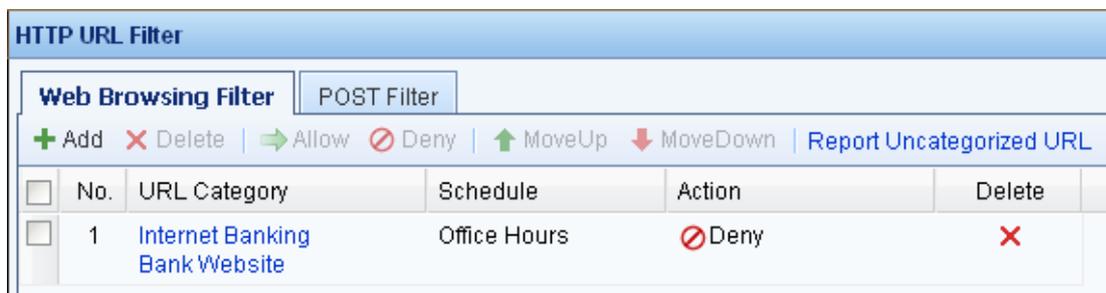
- Step 2. Click <Add> and then click the  icon to open the [URL Category] page, as shown below:



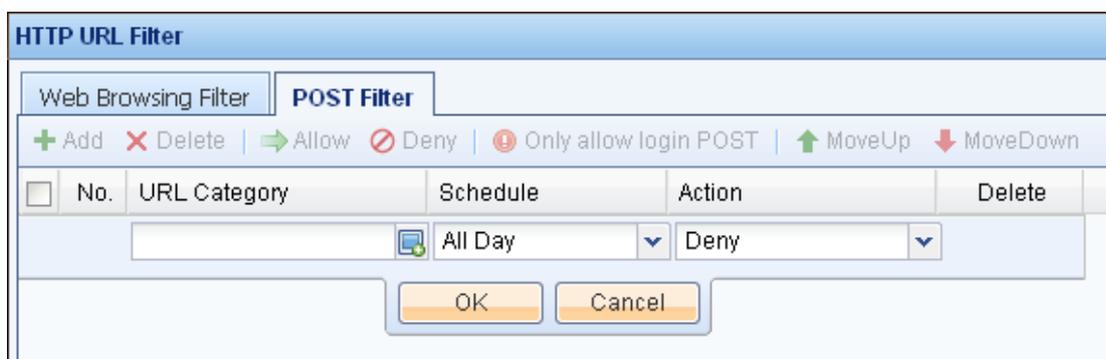
Step 3. Specify the target URL category. You can select [All], [Selected] or [Unselected] from the [Filter] drop-down list to display all, selected or unselected URL groups. The left pane displays the URL groups available, with a check box in front of each item. Check the box to select the corresponding URL group or type the keyword in the text box behind [Filter] to quickly find your desired URL group. In this example, type **bank** in the text box and press **Enter** on your keyboard or click the  icon. The search will start and corresponding URL groups will be displayed. Then check all the relevant URL groups, and your selections will be displayed under [Selected List] on the right. Finally, click <OK> to save your settings.



Step 4. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **Office Hours** (for settings of schedule, see section 3.2.8 "Schedule"), and click <OK> to save the HTTP URL filter rule.

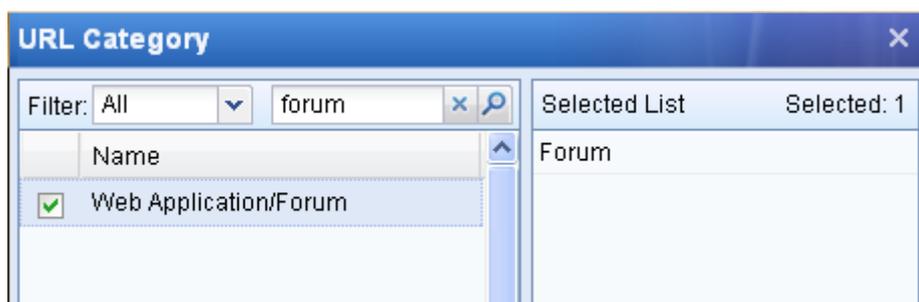


Step 5. To allow access to forum but deny posting onto it during office hours, click the [Post Filter] tab and click <Add> to add a post filter rule. The post filter references the settings defined on the [Objects] > [URL Library] page (see section 3.2.4 "URL Library").



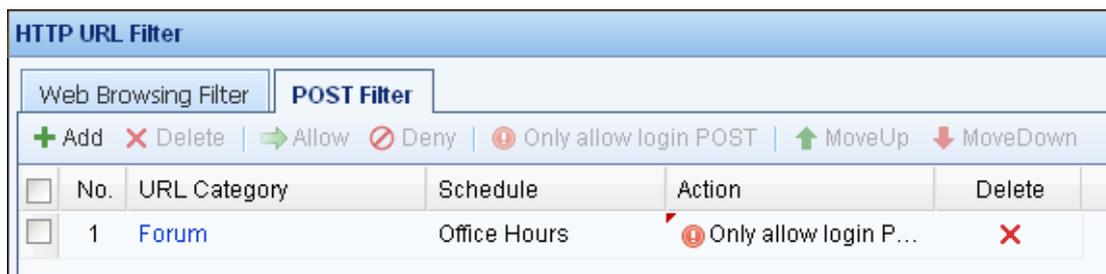
Step 6. Click the  icon to open the [URL Category] page.

Step 7. Specify the target URL groups. Type **forum** in the text box and press **Enter** on your keyboard or click the  icon. The search will start and corresponding URL groups will be displayed. Then check all the relevant URL groups, and your selections will be displayed under [Selected List] on the right. Finally, click <OK> to save your settings.



Step 8. Set [Action] to **Only allow login POST** and [Schedule] to **Office Hours** (for settings of schedule,

see section 3.2.8 "Schedule"), and then click <OK> to save the POST filter rule.



Step 9. Modify the [Web Browsing Filter] and [Post Filter] rules.

- ◆ To manage the Web browsing filter rule, check the rule entry and then click <Delete> to delete it, click <Allow>/<Deny> to change the action to [Deny]/[Allow], or click <Up>/<Down> to move this entry up/down to adjust the display order. Since the rules are matched from top to bottom, the rule entry displayed at the top will be preferentially matched. If you find some URLs uncategorized in the current URL library, click the [Report Uncategorized URL] link to send the uncategorized URLs to SANGFOR engineers by email to improve the current URL library.
- ◆ To manage the post filter rule, check the rule entry and then click <Delete> to delete it, click <Allow>/<Deny> to change the action to [Deny]/[Allow], or click <Up>/<Down> to move this entry up/down to adjust the display order. Since the rules are matched from top to bottom, the rule entry displayed at the top will be preferentially matched.

Step 10. Click <Commit> to complete the policy setting. If you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.



1. By default, the IAM device allows access to the URLs that are not configured in the web filter module.
2. [Post Filter] controls the HTTP Post behaviors of users when they are visiting the URLs. Available actions are:
  - ◆ **Allow**: To allow users to post when they are visiting the specified URLs.
  - ◆ **Deny**: To block users from posting when they are visiting the specified URLs.
  - ◆ **Only allow login POST**: To only allow the login POST and block other POST behaviors when users are visiting specified URLs. For example, you can allow LAN users to log into some forums to view posts or log into WebMail to view emails, but disallow them to make posts onto the forums or send emails by WebMail. If you select [Deny] in this case, it probably rejects all POST behaviors and may cause failure of the login to forums and WebMail, because most of the

login behaviors are by POST.

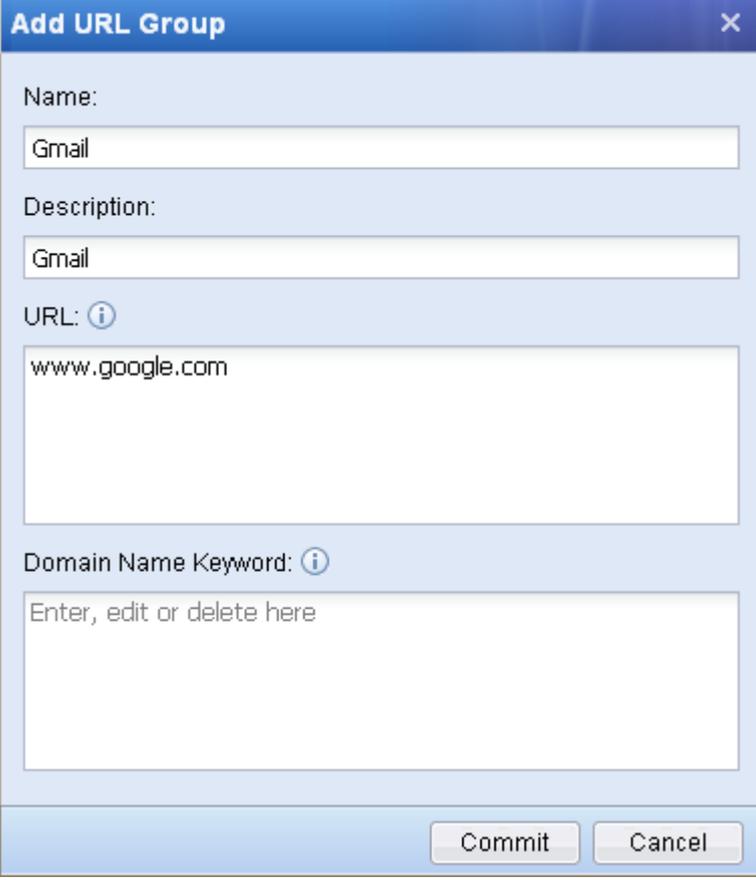
### **HTTPS URL Filter**

HTTPS URL filter is specific to URL filter by HTTPS GET, controlling the process of users visiting websites by encrypted method. For example, you can set an HTTPS filter rule to deny the GMail that requires HTTPS access. The setting of [HTTPS URL Filter] is similar to that of [HTTP URL Filter]. The [Clone Settings of HTTP Web Browsing Filter] option enables you to copy all the settings of HTTP URL filter to HTTPS URL filter, without the need to make the configurations again when you want to implement control over the same URLs.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that always blocks login to GMail.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. As there is no URL group corresponding to GMail in the internal URL library, you need to create a URL group and add the URL of GMail into it.
  - a. Go to the [Objects] > [URL Library] page and click <Add> to open the [Add URL Group] page.
  - b. Type the URL group name, description and URL entry, as shown below, and then click <Commit> to save your settings.



**Add URL Group** [X]

Name:  
Gmail

Description:  
Gmail

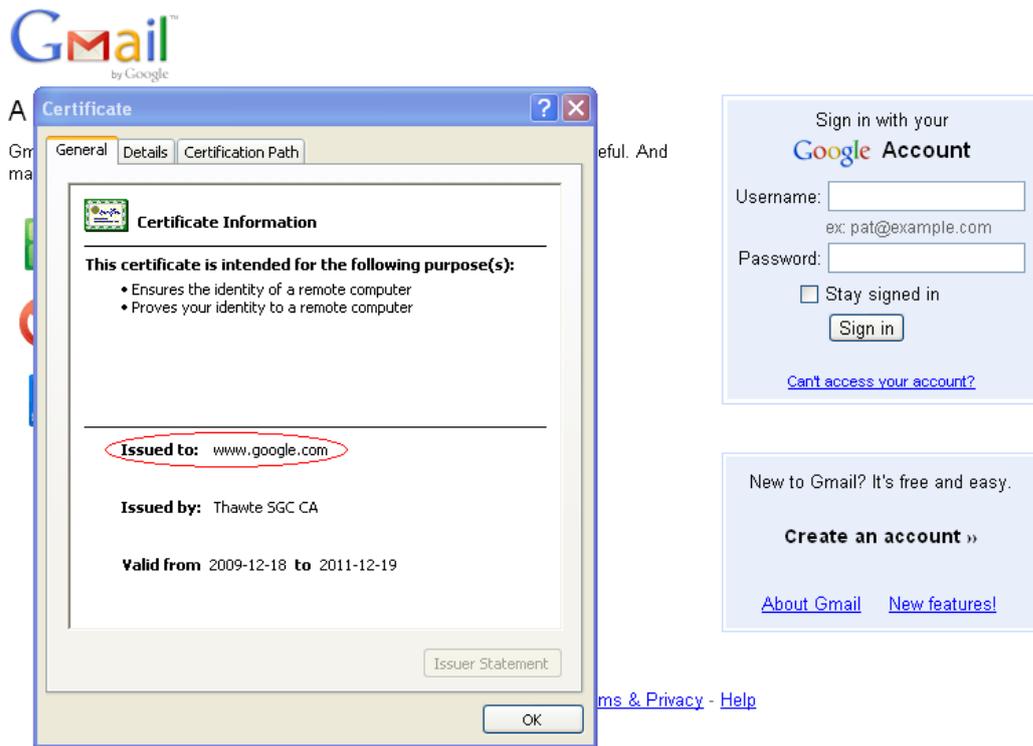
URL: ⓘ  
www.google.com

Domain Name Keyword: ⓘ  
Enter, edit or delete here

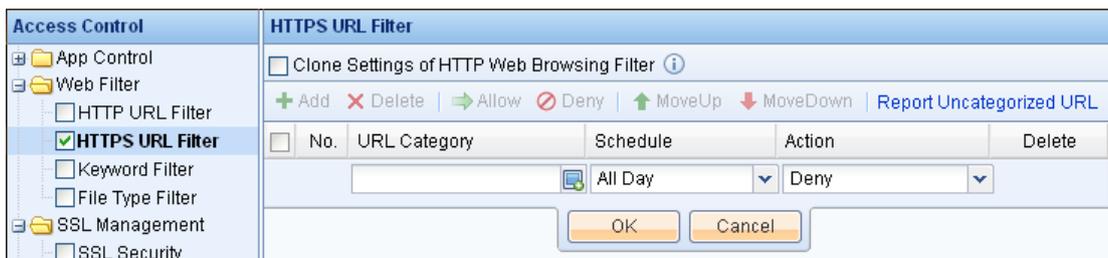
Commit Cancel



The URL entry typed here must be the same as that of [Issued to]" displayed in the security certificate of SSL secure website, as shown in the following figure; otherwise, the IAM device cannot identify the URL.

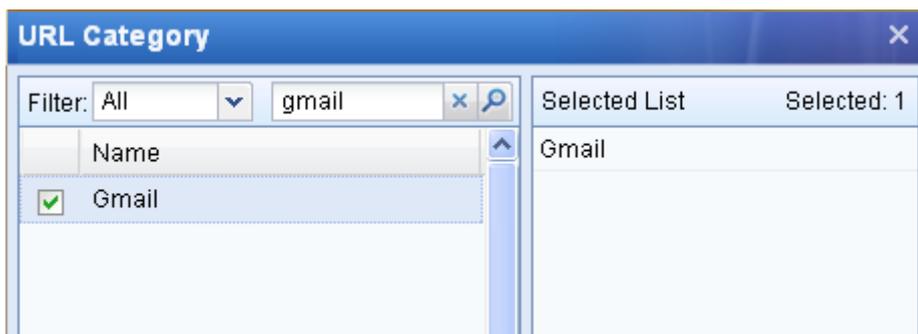


Step 2. Check [HTTPS URL Filter] on the left pane to open the [HTTPS URL Filter] page on the right. The HTTPS URL filter references the settings defined on the [URL Library] and [Schedule] pages (for details, see sections 3.2.4 and 3.2.8).



Step 3. Click <Add> and then click the  icon to open the [URL Category] page.

Step 4. Select your desired URL group. As in this example, you need to find out all URL groups related to Gmail, enter **GMail** in the text box and press **Enter** on your keyboard or click the  icon. The search will start and corresponding URL groups will be displayed. Then check all the relevant URL groups, and your selections will be displayed under [Selected List] on the right. Finally, click <OK> to save your settings.



Step 5. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **All Day**, and then click <OK> to save the HTTPS URL filter rule.



Step 6. To manage the [HTTPS URL Filter] rule. check the rule entry and then click <Delete> to delete it, click <Allow>/<Deny> to change the action to [Deny]/[Allow], or click <Up>/<Down> to move this entry up/down to adjust the display order. Since the rules are matched from top to bottom, the rule entry displayed at the top will be preferentially matched. If you find some URLs uncategorized in the current URL library, click the [Report Uncategorized URL] link to send the uncategorized URLs to SANGFOR engineers by email to improve the current URL library.

Step 7. If you only want to conduct HTTPS URL filter in this policy, click <Commit> to complete the policy setting; if you want to set other functions, continue to select the function type and further set the policy.



1. By default, the IAM device allows access to the URLs that are not configured in the web filter module.
2. Since data is encrypted when users are accessing secure websites using HTTPS protocol, the IAM device cannot detect the corresponding URL. However, the URL of a secure website is generally the same as that set in [Issued to] of the SSL certificate; therefore, the device can obtain the URL of the secure website by detecting the [Issued to] of SSL certificate. Given the feature of the above detection method, if you are to define a URL of an HTTPS website, please set the URL according to the [Issued to] field of the certificate corresponding to the website.

## Keyword Filter

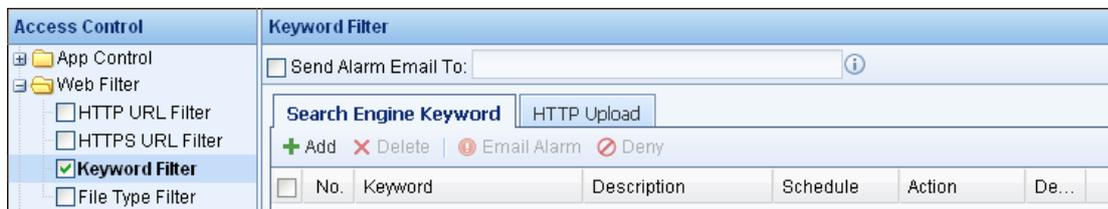
Keyword filter covers [Search Keyword] and [HTTP Upload]. [Search Keyword] filters the keywords searched in search engine or generates corresponding alarms. For instance, you can create a keyword filter rule to filter the searching of some keywords in Baidu, Google or other search engines. [HTTP Upload] filters the keywords uploaded through HTTP or generates corresponding alarms. For instance, you can create an HTTP upload filter rule to filter the contents containing some keywords to be posted onto some forums or Qzone. If you set the action to [Email Alarm], the IAM device will send an alarm email to the specified email address when the uploaded content contains the keywords.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that fulfills the following requirements:

- ◆ Always filter the searching of the keyword “Job”
- ◆ Allow the searching of the keyword “Game”, but when the keyword is searched, send an alarm email to the email address: sangfor@sangfor.com.cn
- ◆ Block the uploading of contents containing some politically sensitive keywords through HTTP

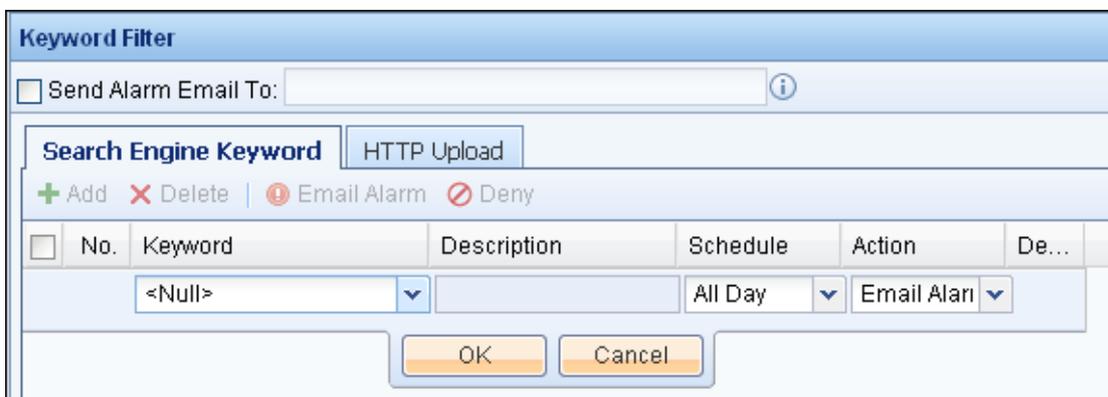
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [Keyword Filter] on the left pane to open the [Keyword Filter] page on the right pane. The keyword filter references the settings defined on the [Keyword Group] and [Schedule] pages (for details, see sections 3.2.8 and 3.2.10).



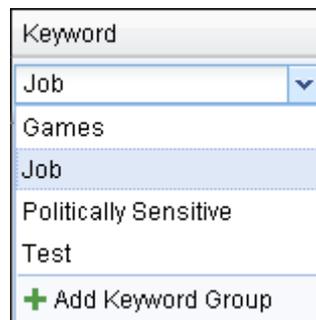
Step 2. Create the keyword filter rule to always block the searching of "Job".

- a. Open the [Search Engine Keyword] tab and click <Add>.



- b. Select the target keyword group. Click the drop-down arrow to select one of the keyword groups

available. If you want to add your own keyword group, click [Add keyword Group] at the bottom of the drop-down list to create a keyword group according to your needs.



- c. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **All Day**, as shown below. Then click <OK> to save your settings.

Search Engine Keyword						
HTTP Upload						
+ Add    ✕ Delete         ⓘ Email Alarm    ⓧ Deny						
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Keyword	Description	Schedule	Action	De...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Job		All Day	ⓧ Deny	✕

Step 3. Create the keyword filter rule to give an email alarm when the keyword "Game" is searched.

- a. Click <Add> and then select the corresponding keyword group (see the first two substeps of Step 2).
- b. Set [Action] to **Email Alarm** and [Schedule] to **All Day**, as shown below. Then click <OK> to save your settings.

Search Engine Keyword						
HTTP Upload						
+ Add    ✕ Delete         ⓘ Email Alarm    ⓧ Deny						
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Keyword	Description	Schedule	Action	De...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Games		All Day	ⓘ Email Al...	✕
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Job		All Day	ⓧ Deny	✕

Step 4. Create an HTTP upload filter rule to block the HTTP uploading of contents containing politically sensitive keywords.

- a. Open the [HTTP Upload] page and click <Add>.

- b. Select the keyword group. Click the drop-down arrow to select one of the keyword groups available. If you want to add your own keyword group, click [Add keyword Group] at the bottom of the drop-down list to create a keyword group according to your needs.

- c. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **All Day**, as shown below. Then click <OK> to save your settings.

- Step 5. Set the email address to which the alarm email will be sent. Check [Send Alarm Email To] and type **sangfor@sangfor.com.cn** in the text box, as shown below:



1. This option takes effect only when the [Outgoing Info Alarm] function is enabled on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm-Triggering Events] page.
2. If this option is checked but the email address is not set, the alarm email will be sent to the address

set on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm Email] page.

Step 6. To manage the keyword filter rule, check the rule entry and then click <Delete> to delete it, click [Email Alarm], or <Allow>/<Deny> to change the action to [Email Alarm] or [Deny]/[Allow], or click <Up> or <Down> to move this rule up or down to adjust the rule sequence. Since the rules are matched from top to bottom, the rule entry displayed at the top will be preferentially matched.

Step 7. If you only want to conduct keyword filter in this policy, click <Commit> to complete the policy setting; if you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.

## File Type Filter

File type filter includes [Upload] and [Download] two parts, which enable you to filter the upload or download of files of certain type through HTTP or FTP protocol.

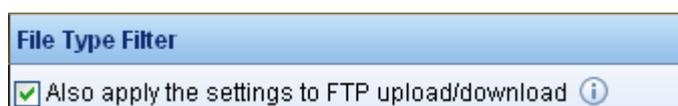
**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that blocks the uploading and downloading of the "Movie" files of through website or FTP.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [File Type Filter] on the left pane to open the [File Type Filter] page on the right. The file type filter references the settings defined on the [File Type Group] and [Schedule] pages (for details, see sections 3.2.8 and 3.2.11).



Step 2. Check the [Also apply the filter settings to FTP upload/download] option to apply the settings of file type filter to FTP upload and download as well.



Step 3. Create a file type filter rule to always block the upload of movie files through website and FTP.

a. Open the [Upload] tab and click <Add>, as shown below:

**File Type Filter**

Also apply the settings to FTP upload/download ⓘ

**Upload** | Download

+ Add | X Delete | => Allow | ⊘ Deny | ↑ MoveUp | ↓ MoveDown

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	File Type	Description	Schedule	Action	Del...
		ALL	ALL	All Day	Deny	

OK | Cancel

- b. Select the file type group. Click the drop-down arrow to select one of the file type groups available. If you want to add your own file type group, click [Add File Type Group] at the bottom of the drop-down list to create a file type group according to your needs.

File Type

ALL

ALL

Movie

**Music**

Image

Text

Compressed File

Application Program

+ Add File Type Group

- c. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **All Day**, and click <OK> to save your settings.

**Upload** | **Download**

+ Add | X Delete | => Allow | ⊘ Deny | ↑ MoveUp | ↓ MoveDown

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	File Type	Description	Schedule	Action	Del...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Movie	Movie format file	All Day	⊘ Deny	X

Step 4. Create a file type filter rule to always block the download of movie files through website and FTP.

- a. Open the [Download] tab and click <Add>, as shown below:

Upload		Download			
+ Add    × Delete         → Allow    ↻ Deny         ↑ MoveUp    ↓ MoveDown					
No.	File Type	Description	Schedule	Action	Del...
	ALL	ALL	All Day	Deny	
		OK		Cancel	

- b. Select the file type group. Click the drop-down arrow to select one of the file type groups available. If you want to add your own file type group, click [Add File Type Group] at the bottom of the drop-down list to create a file type group according to your needs.

File Type
ALL
ALL
Movie
Music
Image
Text
Compressed File
Application Program
+ Add File Type Group

- c. Set [Action] to **Deny** and [Schedule] to **All Day**, and click <OK> to save your settings.

Upload		Download			
+ Add    × Delete         → Allow    ↻ Deny         ↑ MoveUp    ↓ MoveDown					
No.	File Type	Description	Schedule	Action	Del...
1	Movie	Movie format file	All Day	Deny	×

Step 5. To manage the filter type filter rule, check the rule entry and then click <Delete> to delete it, click [Email Alarm], or <Allow>/<Deny> to change the action to [Email Alarm] or [Deny]/[Allow], or click <Up> or <Down> to move this rule up or down to adjust the rule sequence. Since the rules are matched from top to bottom, the rule entry displayed at the top will be preferentially matched.

Step 6. If you only want to conduct file type filter in this policy, click <Commit> to complete the policy setting; if you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.

## SSL Management

The SSL management module includes [SSL Security] and [SSL Content Ident] two functions.

## SSL Security

[SSL Security] determines whether a secure connection satisfies the specified conditions by detecting and verifying the certificate. If not, it denies the access to the applications connected through SSL protocol. The conditions include black/white list, whether to allow expired certificate and whether root certificate is trusted, etc. The [SSL Security] controls the connections of applications using SSL-based protocols, including HTTPS, SMTP, POP3, etc. You can specify the SSL black/white list, set whether to block expired certificate and check certificate chain to conduct the control over the access to relevant websites, further improving the security of SSL access.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that allows unexpired SSL certificate issued by Google.

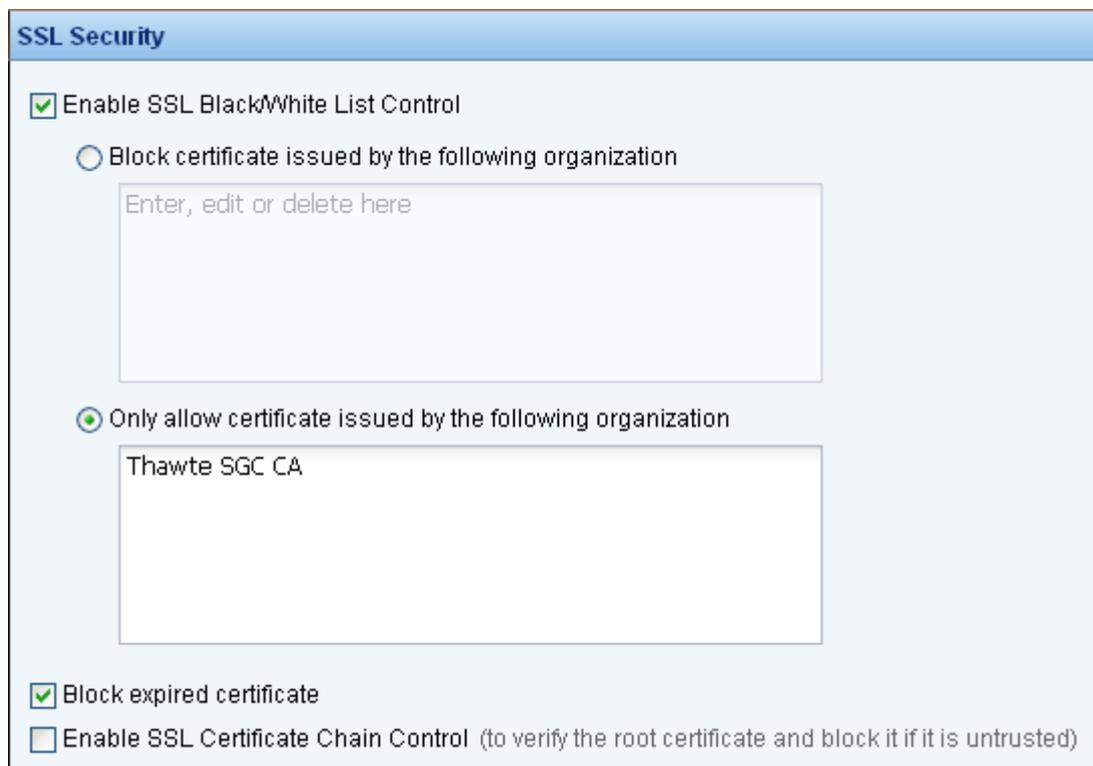
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [SSL Security] on the left pane to open the [SSL Security] page on the right. Check [Enable SSL Black/White List Control] to enable the SSL black/white list control. The two options are respectively described as follows:

- ◆ [Block certificate issued by the following organization]: Indicates the IAM device determines whether the connection is allowed by identifying the [Issued to] field in the security certificate. If the [Issued to] field matches the conditions set here, the corresponding connection will be denied; otherwise, it is allowed.
- ◆ [Only allow certificate issued by the following organization]: Indicates the IAM device determines whether the connection is allowed by identifying the [Issued to] field in the security certificate. If the [Issued to] field matches the conditions set here, the corresponding connection will be allowed; otherwise, it is denied.

Access Control	SSL Security
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>App Control</li> <li>Web Filter</li> <li>SSL Management               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Security</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> SSL Content Ident</li> </ul> </li> <li>Email Filter               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Email Filter</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable SSL Black/White List Control</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Block certificate issued by the following organization</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; margin-bottom: 10px;"></div> <p><input type="radio"/> Only allow certificate issued by the following organization</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; margin-bottom: 10px;"></div> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Block expired certificate</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable SSL Certificate Chain Control (to verify the root certificate and block it if it is untrusted)</p>

- Step 2. Select the [Only allow certificates issued by the following organizations] option and type **Thawte SGC CA** in the text box, as shown in the following figure (for the security certificate of Google, see section "HTTPS URL Filter" under Web Filter).



**SSL Security**

Enable SSL Black/White List Control

Block certificate issued by the following organization

Enter, edit or delete here

Only allow certificate issued by the following organization

Thawte SGC CA

Block expired certificate

Enable SSL Certificate Chain Control (to verify the root certificate and block it if it is untrusted)

- Step 3. Check the [Block expired certificate] option and click <Commit> to save the policy. If you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.

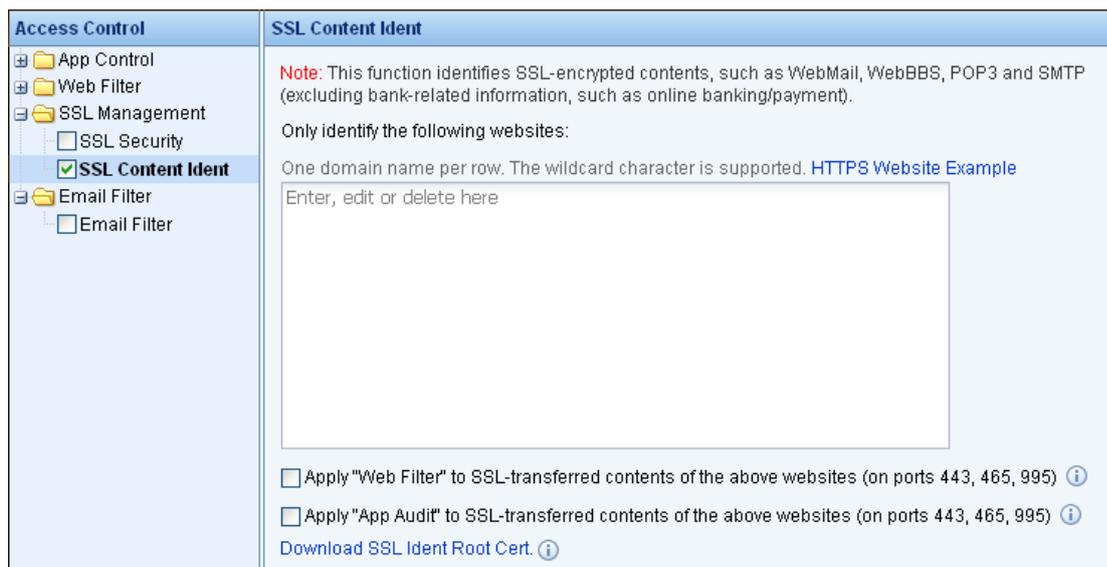
## SSL Content Ident

[SSL Content Ident] conducts content audit and control over the applications connected using SSL secure protocol, such as HTTPS, encrypted SMTP, encrypted POP3. Given the security of online banking, the bank-relevant websites will not be monitored.

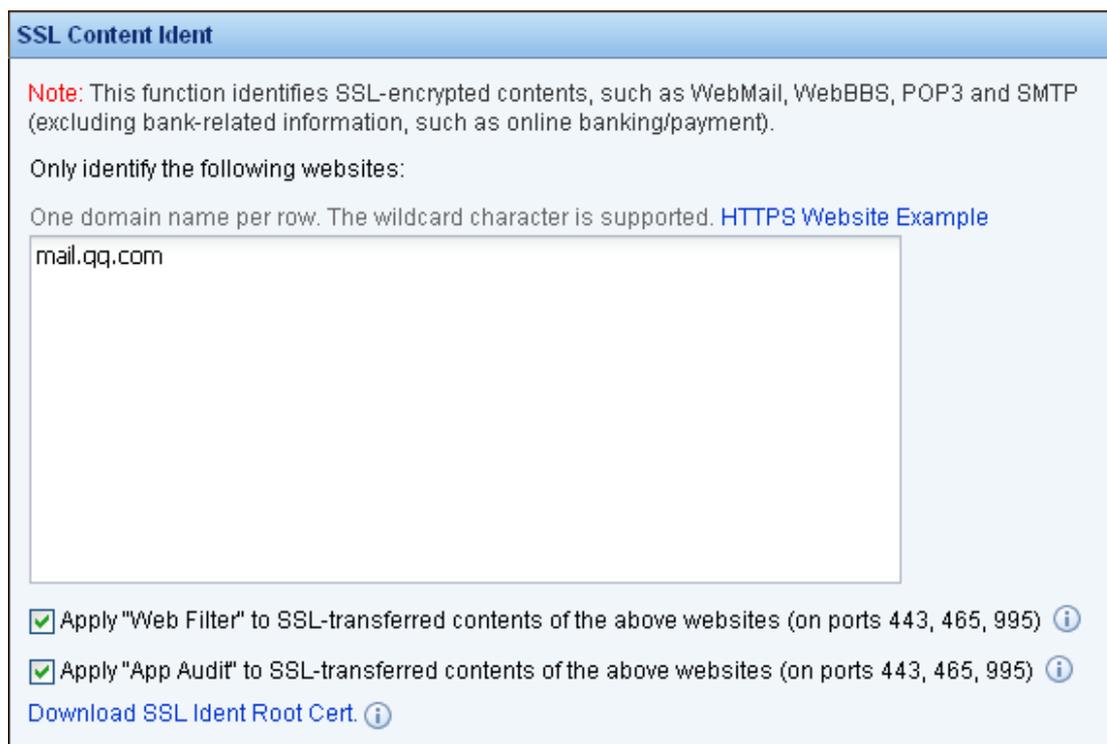
**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that identifies and controls the contents of QQ WebMail.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Check [SSL Content Ident] on the left pane to open the [SSL Content Ident] page on the right, as shown below:



Step 2. Type the domain you want to monitor and audit in the text box of [Only identify the following websites]. In this example, as the encrypted QQ webmail is to be audited, type the domain address of QQ webmail: **mail.qq.com**, as shown in the following figure:



Step 3. Check [Apply "Web Filter" to SSL-transferred contents of the above websites (on ports 443, 465, 995)] to enable the control over the contents of encrypted connection. After checking this option, you need go to [Access Control] > [App Control] > [Web Filter] to set relevant options to make it take effect (see section 3.3.1.4.1).

Step 4. Check [Apply "App Audit" to SSL-transferred contents of the above websites (on ports 443, 465,

995)] to enable the audit on the SSL-encrypted contents. After checking this option, you need go to [Audit Policy] > [App Audit] to set relevant options (see section 3.3.1.4.2).

Step 5. Click the [HTTP Website Example] link to download some website URLs suggested by the IAM device that can be audited.

Step 6. Click the [Download SSL Ident Root Cert.] link to download and install the root certificate on your computer to remove the security alert caused by enabling the SSL content identification from the browser.

Step 7. Click <Commit> to save the policy. If you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.



To prevent the sensitive financial information from being audited, the IAM device screens this kind of information, and therefore the SSL content identification will not apply to the bank-related contents.

## Email Filter

### Email Filter

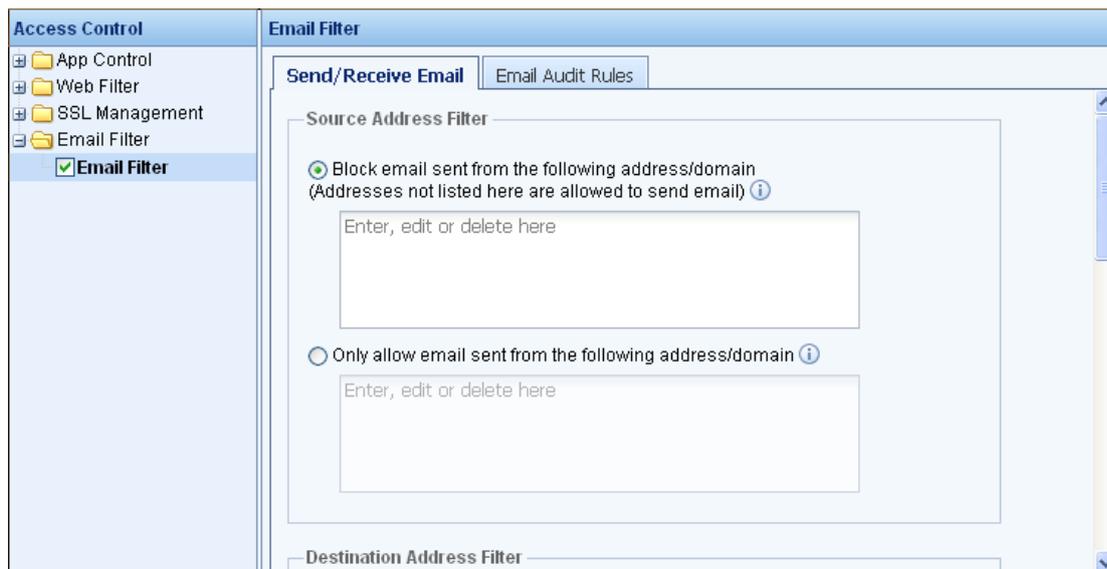
[Email Filter] filters the emails sent from or received by LAN users through SMTP or POP3 protocol. The filter criteria include email addresses of sender and receiver, email subject, keywords contained in email body, etc. You can also set the email delay/audit options to restrict some emails from being sent out until they are approved by the administrator. Email filter includes [Send/Receive Email] and [Email Audit Rules] two pages.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that meets the following requirements:

- ◆ Filter the emails sent to 163 email address or attached .exe file
- ◆ Delay/Audit emails sent to sina email address

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [Email Filter] on the left pane to open the [Email Filter] page.



Step 2. Click to open the [Send/Receive Email] page, and the options displayed on it are described in the following table.

**Table 17 Email Filter Settings (Send/Receive Email)**

Field	Description
Block email sent from the following address/domain	Filter emails based on sender address. Check it and specify the email address or domain name that is not allowed to send emails. The IAM device will block the email whose sender address matches any of the addresses or domain names set here.
Only allow email sent from the following address/domain	Filter emails based on sender address. Check it and specify the email address or domain name that is only allowed to send emails. The IAM device will only allow the emails whose sender address matches any of the addresses or domain names set here.
Block email sent to the following address/domain	Filter emails based on the receiver address. Check it and specify the email address or domain name to which emails are not allowed to be sent. The IAM device will block the email whose receiver address matches any of the addresses or domain names set here.
Only allow email sent to the following address/domain	Filter emails based on the receiver address. Check it and specify the email address or domain name to which emails are allowed to be sent. The IAM device will only allow the email whose sender address matches any of the addresses or domain names set here.
Block email containing the following keyword in title or body	Filter emails by checking if the specified keyword is contained in the email title or body. If the keyword is contained in an email, the IAM device will block the email from being sent out.  For example, if you want to filter the emails containing the keyword "Job", type <b>Job</b> in the text box.

Block email attached file of the following types	Filter emails by checking if the file of specified type is attached to the email. If yes, the IAM device will block the email from being sent out.
Block the email whose size is greater than	Filter emails based on email size. Check it and specify the email size threshold. The IAM device will block the email from being sent out when its size exceeds the threshold set here.
Block the email whose attached files exceed	Filter emails based on attachment count. Check it and specify the maximum number of attachments allowed. The IAM device will block the email from being sent out when the number of files attached to the email exceeds the threshold set here.



The above options are of the "OR" relationship and are matched from top to bottom. The IAM device will take the corresponding action once one of them is matched. If any conflict occurs, the option first matched will prevail.

Step 3. Configure the email filter options on the [Send/Receive Email] page to filter the emails sent to 163.com or attached .exe file.

- a. To filter the emails sent to 163 email address, type the domain name **@163.com** in the text box of [Block email sent to the following address/domain] under [Destination Address Filter], as shown below:

- b. To filter the emails attached .exe file, type **.exe** in the text box of [Block email attached file of the following types], as shown below:

Step 4. Click to open the [Email Audit Rules] page, and the options displayed on it are described in the following table.

**Table 18 Email Filter Settings (Email Audit Rules)**

Field	Description
Enable Email Delay/Audit	Check the option to enable the email delay/audit function.
Delay/Audit email sent to the following address/domain	Detect the receiver address of an email. If the receiver address matches the address set here, the email will be delayed/audited.
Delay/Audit emails containing the following keywords in title or body	Detect the email title and email body. If the keyword specified here is contained in title or body of an email, the email will be delayed/audited.
Delay/Audit the email whose size is greater than	Detect the email size. If the size of an email exceeds the limit set here, the email will be delayed/audited.
Delay/Audit the email when whose attached files exceed	Detect the number of files attached to an email. If the number of files attached to an email exceeds the limit set here, the email will be delayed/audited.
Delay/Audit the email whose Cc receivers exceed	Detect the number of Cc receivers of an email. If the number of Cc receivers of an email exceeds the limit set here, the email will be delayed/audited.
NOT delay/audit email sent to the following address/domain	Set the receiver addresses of emails that will be not delayed/audited. If the receiver address of an email matches any of the addresses set here, the email will not be delayed/audited.

Send a notification to the following address once an email is delayed

Set the email address to which the IAM device will send a notification message to notify the administrator once an email is delayed.



1. This option takes effect only when the [Email Audit Alarm] function is enabled on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm-Triggering Events] page.

2. If this option is checked but the email address is not set, the notification email will be sent to the address set on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm Email] page.



The [NOT delay/audit email sent to the following address/domain] option (audit-free address list) may conflict with those under the [Delay/Audit email when any of the following conditions is matched] section. There are three situations:

- ◆ If the audit-free address list conflicts with the audit address list ([Delay/Audit email sent to the following address/domain]), the audit address list takes precedence, that is, the corresponding email will be delayed/audited.
- ◆ If the audit-free address list conflicts with other options under [Delay/Audit email when any of the following conditions is matched] section, the audit-free address list takes precedence, that is, the corresponding email will NOT be delayed/audited.
- ◆ If only the audit-free address list is set and none of the audit options above it is set, the emails sent to the receivers specified in the audit-free list will NOT be delayed/audited, but other emails will be delayed/audited.

Step 5. Configure the email audit rules on the [Email Audit Rules] page to delay/audit emails sent to sina.com.

- a. Check the [Enable Email Delay/Audit] option to enable the email delay/audit function. The email that triggers the corresponding conditions will be delayed and cannot be sent out until it is approved by the administrator.



- b. To delay/audit emails sent to sina.com, type **@sina.com** in the text box of [Delay/Audit email sent to the following address/domain], as shown below:

Delay/Audit email when any of the following conditions is matched

Delay/Audit email sent to the following address/domain ⓘ

@sina.com

Delay/Audit email containing the following keyword in title or body ⓘ

Enter, edit or delete here

Step 6. Click <Commit> to save the policy. If you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set the policy.



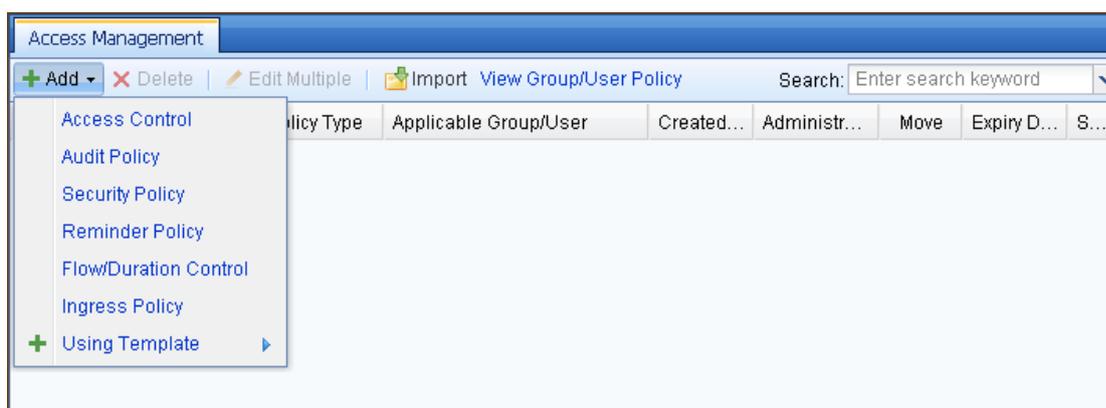
1. When setting email address in [Email Filter], you can type a complete email address, such as "xxx@abc.com", or just type an email domain name, such as "@abc.com" or "abc.com". Please note that if you enter "abc.com", it will match "abc.com" and "abc.com.cn". The format is one email address or domain name per row.
2. When setting keywords in [Email Filter], you can enter one or more keywords per row. The regular expression is supported. For example, if you type "key.\*d", it will match "keyd", "keyword", etc. There are two formats:
  - ◆ Type one keyword per row. The keyword on different rows are of the OR relationship, which means the email will be matched when it contains any of the keywords.
  - ◆ Type several keywords per row and separate keywords by comma. The keywords on the same row are of the AND relationship, which means the email will be matched only when it contains all the keywords on the same row.
3. [Email Filter] will not apply to WebMail. It only applies to emails sent using SMTP protocol on the condition that the email data goes through the IAM device. The standard port of SMTP protocol for sending email is TCP 25. If emails are sent using non-standard port, the email filter function does not work.
4. The SMTP authentication password of an email must contain at least 3 characters; otherwise, the email cannot be sent out even if it is approved by administrator.
5. When [Email Filter] is enabled, please make sure the IAM device can connect to the mail server; otherwise, emails may not be sent out.

### 3.3.1.4.2 Add Audit Policy

The audit policy audits the network behaviors of LAN users. It includes [App Audit], [Outgoing File Alarm], [Flow/Duration Audit] and [Web Content Audit] modules.

To create an audit policy, do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Access Management] page, click <Add> and select [Audit Policy] to open the [Audit Policy] page, as shown below:



- Step 2. Check the [Enable Policy] option to enable the audit policy.

If this option is not checked, the policy will not take effect.



- Step 3. Type the policy name and description. [Policy Name] is the unique identifier of the policy, which must be entered and unique. [Description] refers to descriptive information of the policy, which is optional.

- Step 4. Open the [Policy Settings] tab and set the audit policy according to your needs. First, select the audit type under [Audit Policy] on the left pane and then configure the policy on the right pane. The audit policy covers the following four modules: [App Audit], [Outgoing File Alarm], [Flow/Duration Audit] and [Web Content Audit] (for detailed settings of the modules, see the

subsequent sections).

Step 5. Open the [Group/User] tab to select the applicable user/group. The user groups or users selected on this tab will be associated with this audit policy.

Step 6. Go to the [Advanced] tab and set advanced options, including [Expiry Date], [Same-Role Administrator Privilege] and [Allow administrator of lower role to view].

## Application Audit

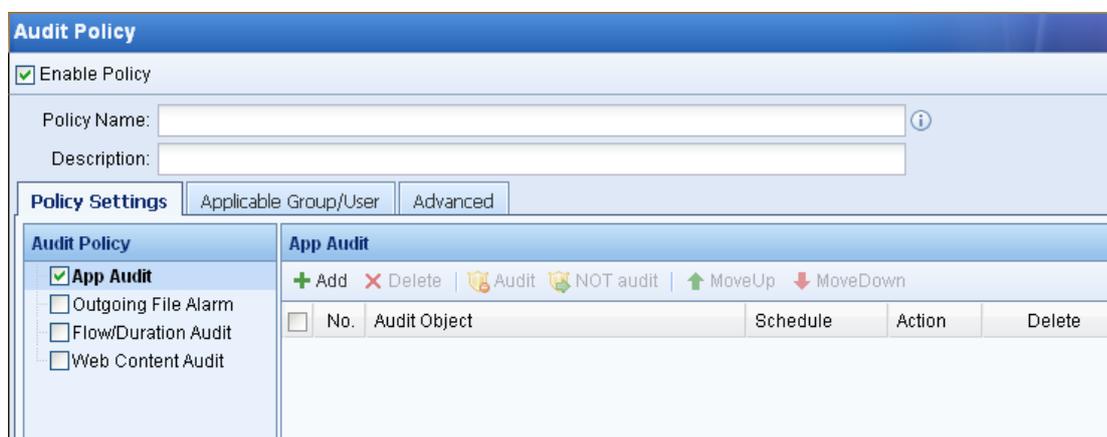
[App Audit] audits the network behaviors and contents accessed by LAN users when they access the Internet through the IAM device. The audit objects include HTTP outgoing contents, website browsing, emails, IM chat logs, FTP, TELNET, network application behavior, etc.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that meets the following requirements:

- ◆ Audit WebBBS posts, WebMail and the contents of WebMail attachment
- ◆ Audit the websites visited by LAN users and the name of the file downloaded from website
- ◆ Audit the behaviors of various applications already known

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [App Audit] on the left pane to open the [App Audit] page on the right, as shown below:



Step 2. Click <Add> on the right pane and then click the  icon to open the [Select Audit Object] page, and the options displayed on it are described in the following table.

**Table 19 Application Audit Settings (Select Audit Object)**

Field	Description
<b>HTTP Outgoing Content</b>	
Web BBS post	To audit the contents posted by LAN users to forums.

Outgoing WebMail content	To audit the body of the email sent by LAN users through web (attachment is excluded).
Attachment uploaded through web, including WebMail attachment	To audit the attachments uploaded through web. If you want to audit the attachment of WebMail, check this option.
Text uploaded through web	To audit text contents uploaded through HTTP protocol. Enabling this option may generate massive logs; therefore, it is recommended to enable the above three options only.

---

## URL/Filename

Visited URLs	<p>To audit URLs of websites visited by LAN users.</p> <p>If you want to audit all URLs, select the [All URLs] option; if you want to only audit the specified URLs, select [Specified URL] and click the [Select URL] link to open the [Select URL Type], and then select the URL groups you want to audit (for the settings of URL group, see section 3.2.4 "URL Library").</p> <p>For how detailed the URL is recorded, you can go to [System] &gt; [Advanced] &gt; [Web Audit Options] page to set (see section 3.9.10.2 "Log Record Options").</p>
Filename of downloaded file	To audit the name of the file downloaded from web (HTTP protocol). This option will not record the contents of the file.

---

## Email

Sent email (SMTP)	<p>To audit emails sent by LAN users, including the file attached to the emails.</p> <p> The protocol used for sending emails must be SMTP.</p>
Received email (POP3)	<p>To audit emails received by LAN users, including the file attached to the emails.</p> <p> The protocol used for receiving emails must be POP3.</p>

---

## IM Chat Logs

MSN	<p>To audit the chat behaviors and logs of LAN users through MSN.</p> <p>For the chat logs of encrypted IM tool, you can configure the ingress policy to audit them (for details, see section 3.3.1.4.6 "Add Ingress Policy").</p>
-----	--

Yahoo	To audit the chat behaviors and logs of LAN users through Yahoo Messenger.
GTalk	To audit the chat behaviors and logs of LAN users through GTalk.
Fetion	To audit the chat behaviors and logs of LAN users through Fetion.

### FTP

File uploaded through FTP (file name and content)	To audit the name and contents of the file uploaded by LAN users through FTP protocol.
File downloaded through FTP (file name only)	To only audit the name of the file downloaded by LAN users through FTP protocol.

### TELNET

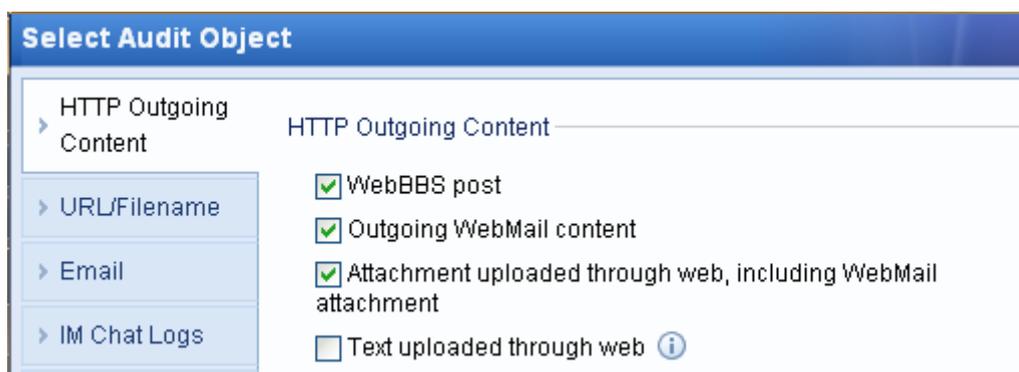
Commands executed through TELNET	To audit the commands executed by LAN users through Telnet. Here, the port of Telnet must be 23.
----------------------------------	--

### Application Behavior

All identified application behaviors (exclusive of content)	To audit the application behaviors that can be identified by the IAM device. This option only records the behaviors. To audit contents, set the relevant options above.
Unidentified application behaviors (including access to an address or port; it will generate massive logs)	To audit the application behaviors that cannot be identified by the IAM device. Since the IAM device cannot identify the application, it will record such information as destination IP address and port of the behavior, which will generate massive logs. It is not recommended to enable this option.

Step 3. Select the audit objects. It covers the following seven menus: [HTTP Outgoing Content], [URL/Filename], [Email], [IM Chat Logs], [FTP], [TELNET] and [Application Behavior]. Click one of them to quickly link to the corresponding section.

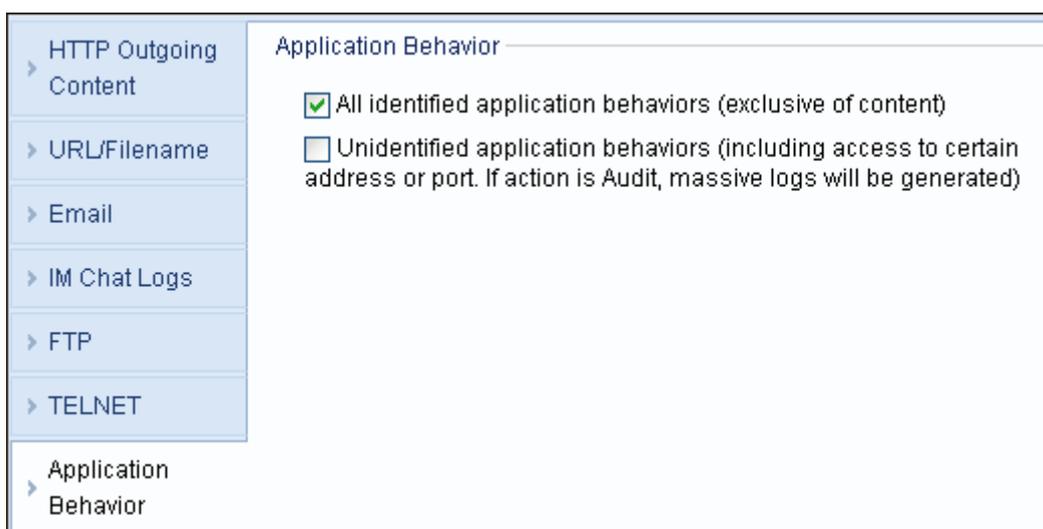
- a. Go to [HTTP Outgoing Content] section. To audit WebBBS posts, WebMail and the contents of its attachment, select the first three options, as shown in the following figure:



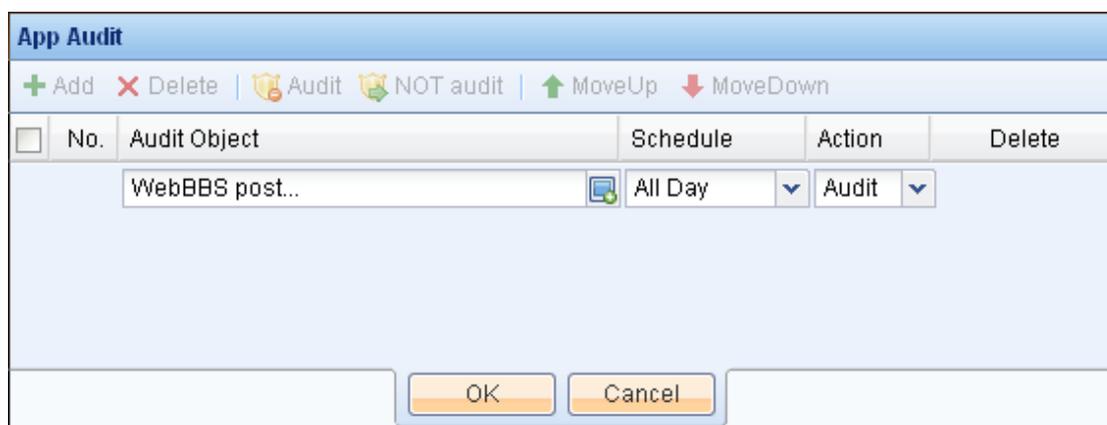
- b. Go to [URL/Filename] section. To audit the websites visited by LAN users and the name of the file downloaded from website, check [Visited URLs] to select [All URLs], and then select [Filename of downloaded file], as shown in the following figure:



- c. Go to [Application Behavior] section. To audit the behaviors of various applications already known, check the first option, as shown in the following figure:



- Step 4. Click <OK> to save the selected audit objects, and then set [Schedule] to **All Day** and [Action] to **Audit**, as shown below:



Step 5. Click <OK> to save the application audit rule.

## Outgoing File Alarm

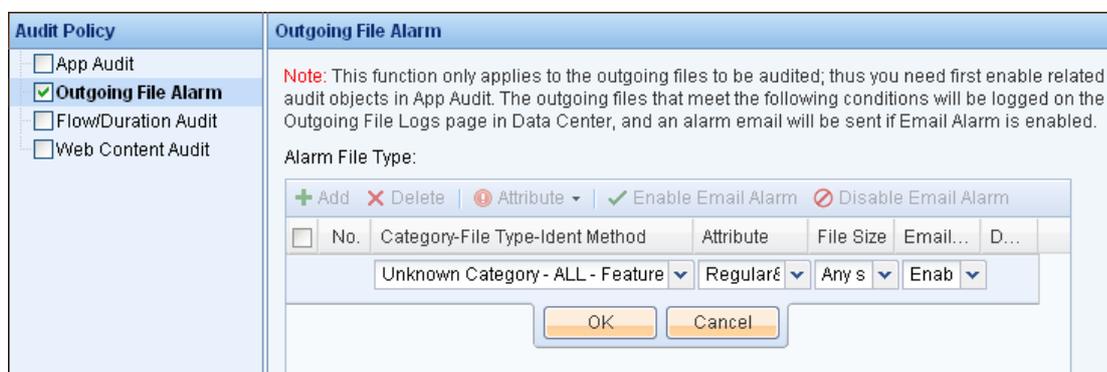
[Outgoing File Alarm] generates alarms when the corresponding outgoing files are recorded. If LAN users send files of specific file types, the IAM device will send an alarm notification to the administrator. You can also set to record the contents and relevant information of files when they are transferred. The file detection conducted by the IAM device is not simply based on file extensions. The IAM device will analyze the data feature in depth to obtain the type of the file. By detecting files in this way, the IAM device will successfully detect the files transferred by LAN users even if their file extensions are changed or they are compressed.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that generates alarms when the Engineering & Manufacturing files are sent and sends the alarm email to sangfor@sangfor.com.

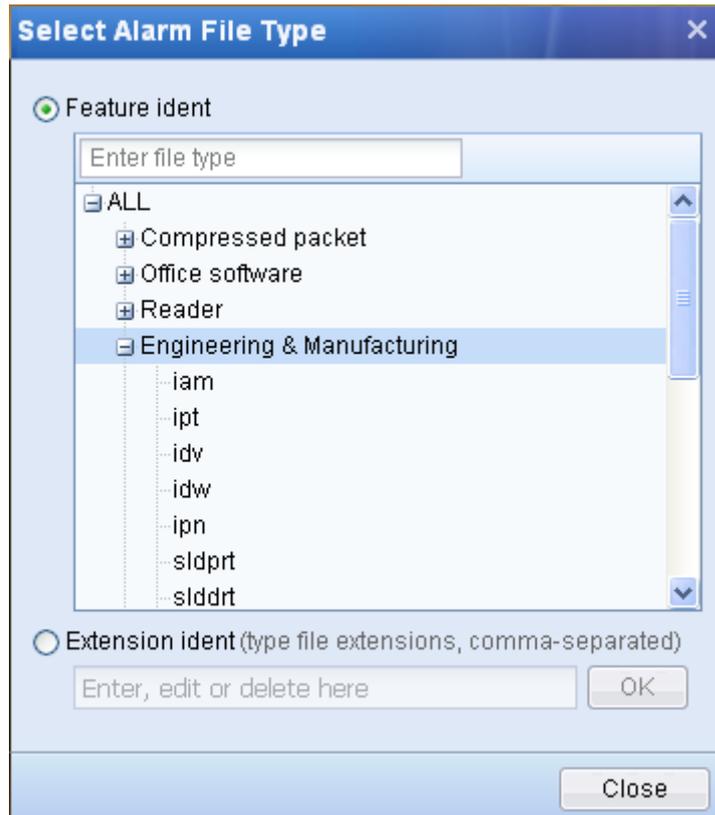
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Go to [App Audit] to check the related options to audit files uploaded through FTP, HTTP and SMTP.

Step 2. Check [Outgoing File Alarm] on the left pane to open the [Outgoing File Alarm] on the right, and then click <Add>, as shown below:



Step 3. Click the drop-down arrow of [Category-File Type-Feature ident] to open the [Select Alarm File Type] page. Then select [Feature ident], locate the **Engineering & Manufacturing** file type and click <OK>, as shown below:



Step 4. You can also type the specific file extension in the text box right below [Feature ident] to search. The identification methods for file types includes [Feature ident] and [Extension ident], which are introduced below:

- ◆ [Feature ident] identifies files according to their features. There are seven common file categories: compressed packets, office software, reader, engineering & manufacturing, video & image, program source file, text file and unknown type. The IAM device has built in the features of these file categories, and therefore can identify them even if their extensions are changed or they are compressed. However, the files compressed with encryption are excepted.
- ◆ [Extension ident] identifies files based on file extensions. You can enter the file extensions. When typing multiple extensions, use comma to separate.

Step 5. Set [Attribute] to **Regular&encrypted**, [File size] to **Any size** and [Email Alarm] to **Enable**, as shown below. These three items are respectively described below:

- ◆ [Attribute]: It only has one available option, that is, [Regular&encrypted file].
- ◆ [File Size]: It has two options available: [Any size] and [Greater than]. To generate an alarm for any file that matches the specified condition regardless of the file size, select [Any size]; to generate alarms for the files of specified size, select [Greater than] and enter the size threshold. In this case, the IAM will only generate alarms for the files that mach the

specified condition and that are greater than the threshold set here.

- ◆ [Email Alarm]: When it is enabled, it means when there is a file matches the criteria, the IAM device will sent an alarm email to the specified email address; if it is disabled, the alarm email will not be sent.

### Outgoing File Alarm

**Note:** This function only applies to the outgoing files to be audited; thus you need first enable related audit objects in App Audit. The outgoing files that meet the following conditions will be logged on the Outgoing File Logs page in Data Center, and an alarm email will be sent if Email Alarm is enabled.

Alarm File Type:

<span style="font-size: small;">+ Add</span> <span style="font-size: small; color: red;">✖ Delete</span> <span style="font-size: small; color: red;">ⓘ Attribute</span> <span style="font-size: small; color: green;">✔ Enable Email Alarm</span> <span style="font-size: small; color: red;">✘ Disable Email Alarm</span>							
No.	Category-File Type-Ident Method	Attribute	File Size	Email...	D...		
1	Engineering & Manufacturing - ALL - F	Regular&...	Any size	✔ En...	✘		

Step 6. Set the following two configuration items according to your needs. In this example, you can ignore them.

- ◆ [Enable email alarm on multi-layer nested compressions (more than 2 layers)]: To enable the alarm for the file with multiple compressions. If a file is compressed repeatedly (more than 2 layers of nested compressions), the IAM device will not detect the file, but will send alarm email to the specified email address.
- ◆ [Ignore outgoing files of the following extensions]: To set the file extensions that will exempt from the file alarm. The IAM device will not generate an alarm for the file whose file extension is listed here.

Enable email alarm on multi-layer nested compressions (more than 2 layers)

Ignore outgoing files of the following extensions (comma-separated)

doc,pdf

Step 7. Set the email address to which the alarm email will be sent. Check [Send alarm email to the following address] and type **sangfor@sangfor.com** in the text box, as shown below:

Send alarm email to the following email address ⓘ

sangfor@sangfor.com



1. This option takes effect only when the [Outgoing Info Alarm] function is enabled on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm-Triggering Events] page.

2. If this option is checked but the email address is not set, the alarm email will be sent to the address set on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm Email] page.

Step 8. Click <Commit> to save the policy. If you want to set other functions, continue to select the function and further set this policy.



[Outgoing File Alarm] only applies to the file uploaded through HTTP, SMTP or FTP protocol, and it works only when the relevant audit options for FTP, HTTP or SMTP are checked in [App Audit] > [Select Audit Object].

## Flow/Duration Audit

[Flow/Duration Audit] enables you to make flow or online duration statistics of various applications. If you check the related options, you can go to the Data Center to search for the flow and online duration caused by LAN users when they are accessing various applications over the Internet.

To configure the flow/online duration audit, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [Flow/Duration Audit] on the left pane to open the [Flow/Duration Audit] page on the right, as shown below:

Audit Policy	Flow/Duration Audit
<input type="checkbox"/> App Audit	<input type="checkbox"/> Make flow statistics of applications
<input type="checkbox"/> Outgoing File Alarm	<input type="checkbox"/> Make online duration statistics of applications
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Flow/Duration Audit</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Web Content Audit	

Step 2. Check the [Make flow statistics of applications] option to have the IAM device make statistics of the flow caused by LAN users when they are accessing various applications through the IAM device; otherwise, the IAM device will not collect the flow statistics and total flow, which means you cannot search the flow information and ranking in the Data Center.

Step 3. Check the [Make online duration statistics of applications] option to have the IAM device make statistics of the online duration of LAN users when they are accessing various applications through the IAM device; otherwise, the IAM device will not collect the online duration statistics and total online duration, which means you cannot search the information and ranking of online duration in the Data Center.

## Web Content Audit

[Web Content Audit] audits the contents of the websites accessed by LAN users. You can set to audit

website title, body contents, only audit contents of websites containing specified keywords or filter the websites containing specified keywords. Please note that when this module is enabled, it will consume large amount of device performance.

To configure the web content audit, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [Web Content Audit] on the left pane to open the [Web Content Audit] page on the right, as shown below:



Step 2. Select one of the following audit options, as described below:

- ◆ [NOT audit]: Check it to not record the title or content of any webpage visited by LAN users.
- ◆ [Only audit webpage title]: Check it to only audit the title of the webpage visited by LAN users (the webpage contents will not be audited).
- ◆ [Audit webpage title and content]: Check it to audit the title and contents of the webpage visited by LAN users.

Step 3. Check the [Exceptions, specify action for website containing certain keyword] option to adopt specified action for websites containing the corresponding keyword. The precondition is that either [Only audit webpage title] or [Audit webpage title and content] is checked. There are three actions: [Record], [Deny] and [Record&Deny].

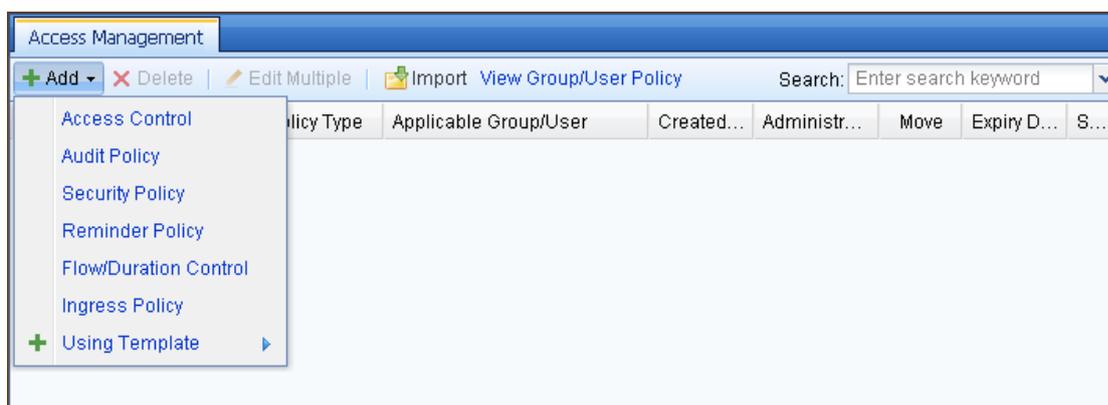
To add a rule entry, click <Add>. Then select the keyword group (for the settings of keyword group, see section 3.2.10) under [Name] column, select the valid period under [Schedule] (for the settings of schedule, see section 3.2.8), and specify the action that will be taken when the corresponding keyword is detected on webpages.



### 3.3.1.4.3 Add Security Policy

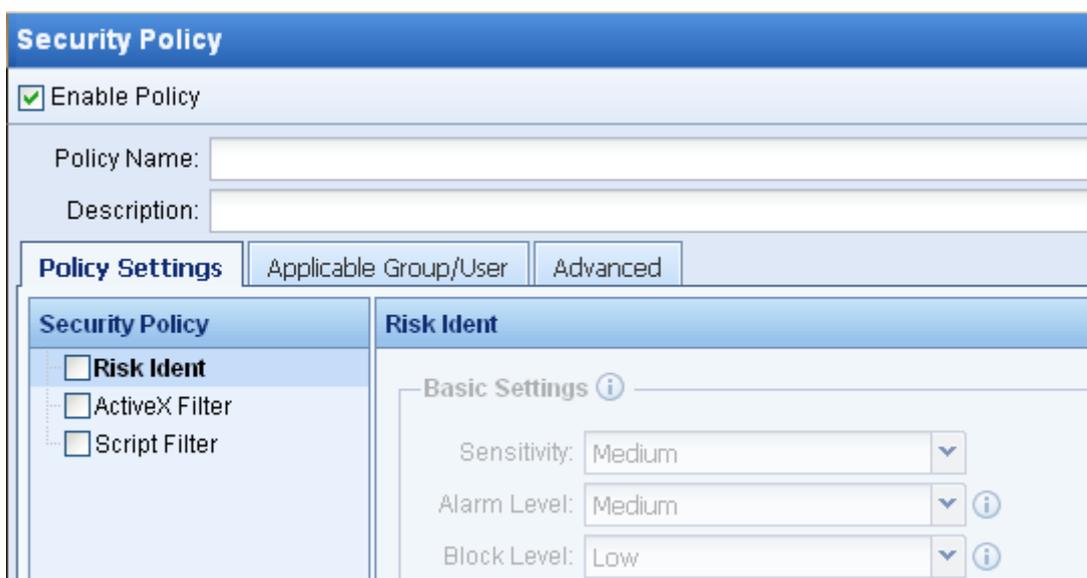
To create a security policy, do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Access Management] page, click <Add> and select [Security Policy] to open the [Security Policy] page, as shown below:



- Step 2. Check the [Enable Policy] option to enable the security policy.

If this option is not checked, the policy will not take effect.



- Step 3. Type the policy name and description. [Policy Name] is the unique identifier of the policy, which must be entered and unique. [Description] refers to descriptive information of the policy, which is optional.
- Step 4. Open the [Policy Settings] tab and set the security policy according to your needs. First, select the security type under [Security Policy] on the left pane and then configure the policy on the right pane. The security policy covers the following three modules: [Risk Ident], [ActiveX Filter] and [Script Filter] (for detailed settings of the modules, see the subsequent sections).
- Step 5. Open the [Group/User] tab to select the applicable user/group. The user groups or users selected on this tab will be associated with this security policy.
- Step 6. Go to the [Advanced] tab and set advanced options, including [Expiry Date], [Same-Role Administrator Privilege] and [Allow administrator of lower role to view].

## Risk Ident

[Risk Ident] identifies and blocks risk network behaviors, including HTTP Trojan, SMTP Trojan, port scan, HTTP flow anomaly and email sending anomaly. The configuration of [Risk Ident] covers three parts: [Basic Settings], [Email Sending Anomaly Ident] and [Send alarm email to the following address].

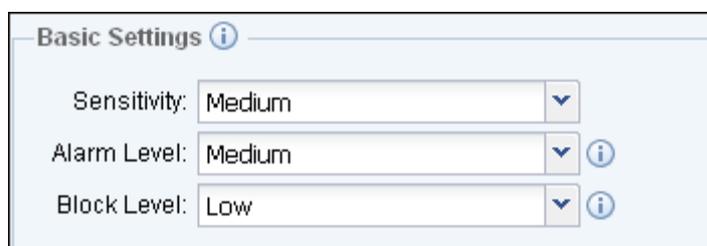
Security Policy	Risk Ident
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Risk Ident <input type="checkbox"/> ActiveX Filter <input type="checkbox"/> Script Filter	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Basic Settings</b> ⓘ</p> <p>Sensitivity: <input type="text" value="Medium"/> ▼</p> <p>Alarm Level: <input type="text" value="Medium"/> ▼ ⓘ</p> <p>Block Level: <input type="text" value="Low"/> ▼ ⓘ</p> <hr/> <p><b>Email Sending Anomaly Ident</b> ⓘ</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Limit sending frequency of same-sized email per IP</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Email Count: <input type="text" value="30"/> ▲▼</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Interval (mins): <input type="text" value="3"/> ▲▼</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Limit email sending frequency per IP</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Email Count: <input type="text" value="30"/> ▲▼</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Interval (mins): <input type="text" value="3"/> ▲▼</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Lock IP when it reaches any of the above limits</p> </div>

### Basic Settings

Under the [Basic Settings] section, you can set the identification sensitivity level, alarm level and block level of risk behaviors, including the following parameters:

- ◆ [Sensitivity]: It has three levels: high, medium and low.

- ◆ [Alarm Level]: It has four options: high, medium, low and not alarm. Please note that the alarm level cannot be higher than the sensitivity level.
- ◆ [Block Level]: It has four options: high, medium, low and not block. Please note that the block level cannot be higher than the alarm level.



Different levels correspond to detection of different risk behaviors. The risk behaviors detected by each level are described as follows:

- ◆ Low: To detect suspected HTTP Trojan flow (detect HTTP Trojan to prevent information leakage through HTTP channel).
- ◆ Medium: To detect suspected HTTP and SMTP Trojan flow (detect HTTP or SMTP Trojan to prevent information leakage by HTTP or SMTP).
- ◆ High: To detect suspected HTTP, SMTP Trojan flow (detect HTTP or SMTP Trojan to prevent information leakage by HTTP or SMTP), port scanning (to prevent attacks caused by scanning hosts in extranet and avoid the risks that the LAN may be screened), HTTP flow anomalies (commonly caused by non-browser network software) and non-standard protocol flow at common ports (21, 25, 80, 110, 443).

### **Email Sending Anomaly Ident**

The [Outgoing Email Anomaly Ident] monitors the anomalous email sending behaviors of LAN users. The detection is implemented from the two aspects: [Limit sending frequency of same-sized email per IP] and [Limit email sending frequency per IP]. You can set the two options according to your needs and then set the [Lock IP when it reaches any of the above two limits] option to block email sending when email sending anomaly is detected.

**Email Sending Anomaly Ident** ⓘ

Limit sending frequency of same-sized email per IP  
 Email Count: 30  
 Interval (mins): 3

Limit email sending frequency per IP  
 Email Count: 30  
 Interval (mins): 3

Lock IP when it reaches any of the above limits  
 Lockout Period (mins): 10

The settings of the three options are respectively described in the following:

- ◆ [Limit sending frequency of same-sized email per IP]: To limit the number of emails of the same size that are allowed to be sent by each IP address in a specified time period. For example, if you set [Email Count] to **10** and [Interval] to **1**, it indicates that when a same IP address sends 10 or more than 10 emails of the same size during one minute, the IAM device will regard this behavior as an email sending anomaly.

Limit sending frequency of same-sized email per IP  
 Email Count: 10  
 Interval (mins): 1

- ◆ [Limit email sending frequency per IP]: To limit the number of emails that are allowed to be sent by each IP address in a specified time period. For example, if you set [Email Count] to **20** and [Interval] to **1**, it indicates that when a same IP address sends 20 or more than 20 emails during one minute, the IAM device will regard this behavior as an email sending anomaly.

Limit email sending frequency per IP  
 Email Count: 20  
 Interval (mins): 1

- ◆ [Lock IP when it reaches any of the above two limits]: To block the IP address from sending emails for a certain period when any of the above email sending anomalies is detected. For example, if you set [Lockout Period] to **5**, it means that when an IP address triggers any of the above two conditions, the IAM device will block the IP address from sending emails for 5 minutes.

[Send alarm email to the following address] refers to the email address to which the alarm email will be sent. If you check this option and type an email address, for example, sangfor@sangfor.com, the IAM device will send an alarm email to this address when any risk behavior is detected. You can enter only one

email address here.




1. This option takes effect only when the [Risk Ident Alarm] function is enabled on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm-Triggering Events] page.
2. If this option is checked but the email address is not set, the alarm email will be sent to the address set on [System] > [Alarm Options] > [Alarm Email] page.

## Active X Filter

[ActiveX Filter] identifies and filters the ActiveX plugins downloaded when users are accessing websites. Some malicious ActiveX plugins on websites may cause the browser to malfunction, or even monitor network behaviors and steal your personal information. Usually, the malicious plugins are automatically installed on user PCs through the browser. However, by filtering the signature of ActiveX control, the [ActiveX Filter] function prevents untrusted plugins from being installed on the computers across the LAN and therefore ensures the security of the LAN. It covers the following two sections: [ActiveX Filter Option] and [Excluded Website].

### ActiveX Filter Options

The configuration of [ActiveX Filter Options] covers [Verify digital signature of ActiveX] and [Only allow the following ActiveX], as described below:

#### 1. [Verify digital signature of ActiveX]

This option verifies the digital signature of ActiveX. After checking this option, select relevant options right below it to filter the ActiveX that fails the verification. It provides five configuration items, which are introduced below:

- ◆ [Block unsigned ActiveX]: To filter the ActiveX that uses an unsigned certificate.
- ◆ [Block altered ActiveX]: To filter the ActiveX that has been altered.
- ◆ [Block ActiveX that uses expired certificate]: To filter the ActiveX that uses an expired certificate.
- ◆ [Block ActiveX that fails the verification]: To filter the ActiveX whose certificate is not in the trusted certificate library. When verifying the certificate of the ActiveX, the IAM device will check if the certificate exists in the trusted certificate library displayed on the [Trusted CA] page

(see section 3.2.12)). If not, the ActiveX will be filtered.



- ◆ [Block ActiveX List]: To set the keywords used to filter ActiveX plugin. If an ActiveX plugin contains any keyword set here, it will be blocked. Type one plugin or issuer name per row. For example, if you want to filter the ActiveX plugin issued by Beijing Jiangmin New Sci,&Tec.Co.Ltd, enter **Beijing Jiangmin New Sci,&Tec.Co.Ltd** here.



## 2. [Only allow the following ActiveX]

This option specifies the ActiveX controls that are only allowed by the IAM device and other ActiveX controls not listed here will be filtered by default. The IAM device has built in some common plugin types, such as Online Antivirus Plugin, Player Plugin and Entertainment Plugin. You can check the option to allow the installation of the corresponding ActiveX plugins:

- ◆ [safe plugins (e.g. Beijing Rising)]: When it is selected, the ActiveX plugins belonging to online antivirus type are allowed to install.
- ◆ [player plugins (e.g. flash player)]: When it is selected, the ActiveX plugins belonging to players type are allowed to install.
- ◆ [recreational plugins (e.g. NetEase)]: When it is selected, the ActiveX plugins belonging to

entertainment type are allowed to install.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	safe plugins(e.g. Beijing Rising)
<input type="checkbox"/>	player plugins(e.g. flash player)
<input type="checkbox"/>	recreational plugins(e.g. NetEase)

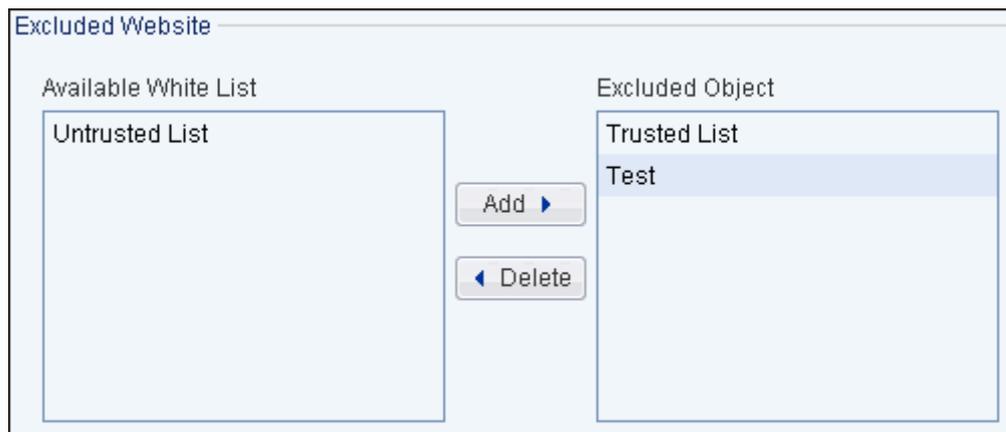
- ◆ [Custom ActiveX List] specifies the ActiveX plugins that are only allowed by the IAM device. Type one plugin or issuer name per row. If an ActiveX plugin contains any keyword set here, it will be regarded as secure and allowed to be installed.




1. The ActiveX keyword (plugin or issuer name) does not support the wildcard character. Each keyword should contain less than 64 bytes and the total number of keywords allowed is 32.
2. In bypass mode, the [ActiveX Filter] only detects and records the ActiveX plugins, and does not support the filtering function.

### Excluded Website

[Excluded Website] is used to specify the websites whose plugins will not be filtered. Select the objects displayed under [Available White List] and click <Add> to add the relevant websites to the text box under [Excluded Object]. The websites listed under [Excluded Object] will exempt from ActiveX filter. If you want to delete some websites from this list, select it and click <Delete> to remove it (for the setting of white list, see section 3.2.9 "Black/White List Group").

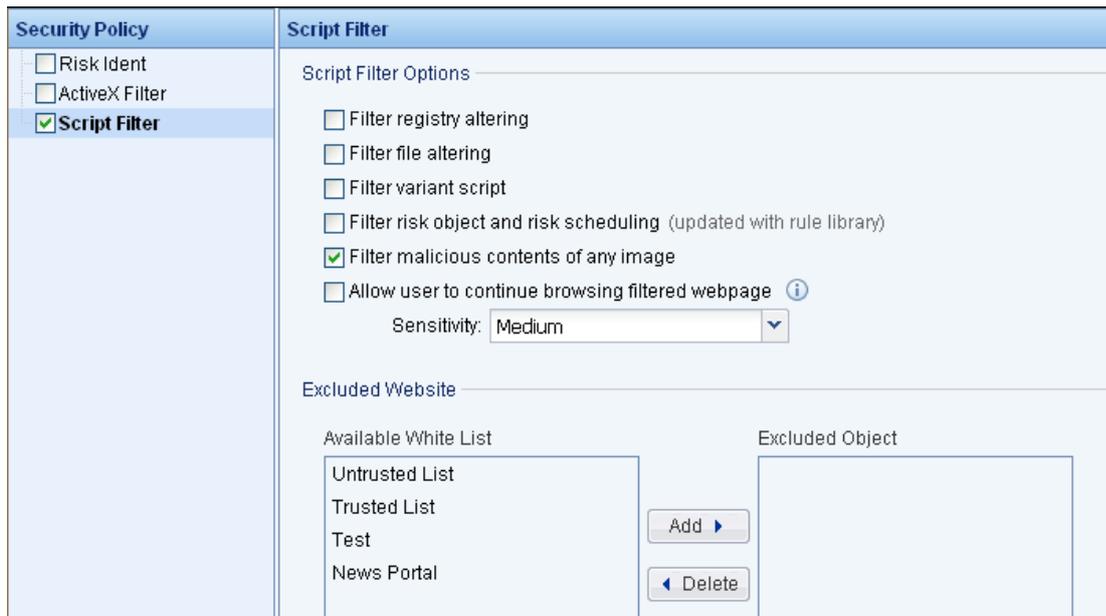


1. [ActiveX Filter] is only applicable to ActiveX controls.
2. Some ActiveX controls are not downloaded from the current website, but are links to the plugins on other websites. When LAN users access this type of website, you can go to Data Center and open the [Website Access Logs] page to view where the plugin is downloaded. If the plugin is filtered, the [ActiveX/Script Filter Logs] page will record detailed address of the plugin.

## Script Filter

As the network security problem becomes increasingly severe, user computers may be infected with various viruses or Trojan when accessing some malicious websites by accident. Most of these problems are caused by malicious scripts. Based on this situation, the [Script Filter] function, by identifying the features of the scripts on the websites visited by LAN users, blocks scripts before they are downloaded and executed on the browser and therefore protects the security of the LAN. It supports JavaScript filter and VBScript filter.

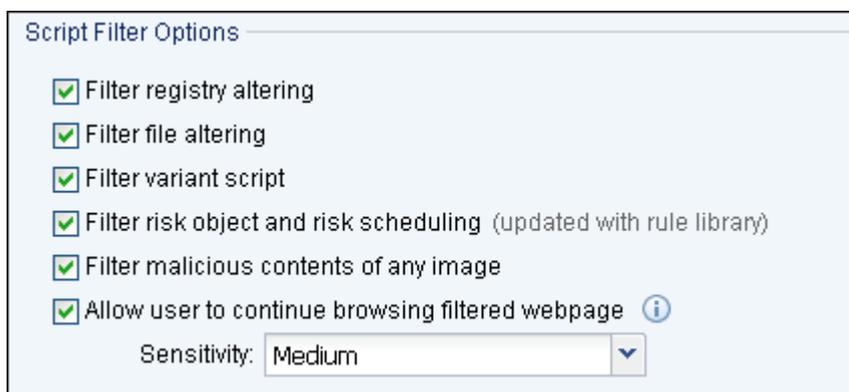
When [Script Filter] is enabled, the built-in script filter rules will take effect and control the illegal scripts. These script filter rules will be updated periodically. For other filter settings, set them on the [Script Filter] page, as shown below:



### Script Filter Option

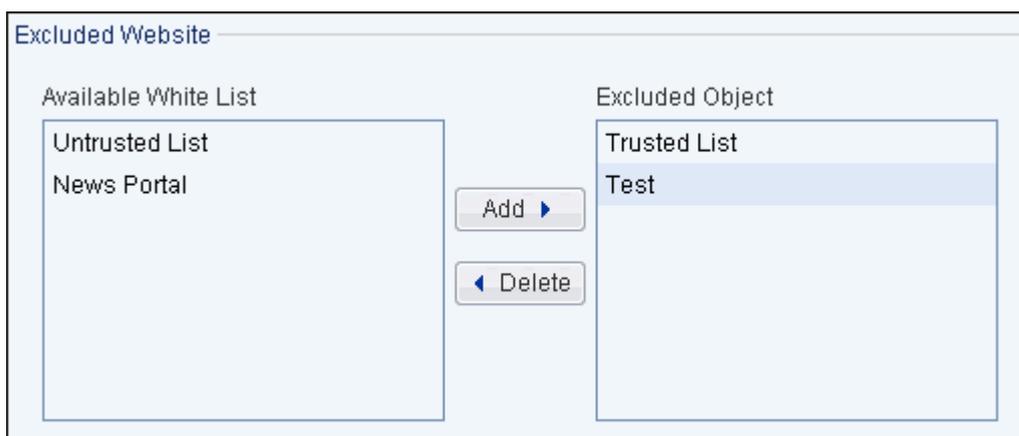
The configuration of [Script Filter Option] covers the following six options:

- ◆ [Filter registry altering]: To filter the script that alters the registry.
- ◆ [Filter file altering]: To filter the script that alters the file.
- ◆ [Filter variant script]: To filter the variant script. This option helps prevent malicious scripts from evading the security detection, but may make some misjudgement.
- ◆ [Filter risk object and risk scheduling (updated with rule library)]: To filter the script that contains risk object or risk scheduling. The detection rules of this option will be updated with the built-in script filter rules.
- ◆ [Filter malicious contents of any image]: To filter the malicious contents of any image.
- ◆ [Allow user to continue browsing filtered webpage]: To allow user to continue browsing the filtered webpage. After the website is filtered, it displays a link and allows the user to ignore the risk and continue browsing.



## Excluded Website

[Excluded Website] is used to specify the websites whose scripts will not be filtered. Select the objects displayed under [Available White List] and click <Add> to add the relevant websites to the text box under [Excluded Object]. The websites listed under [Excluded Object] will exempt from script filter. If you want to delete some websites from this list, select it and click <Delete> to remove it (for the setting of white list, see section 3.2.9 "Black/White List Group").

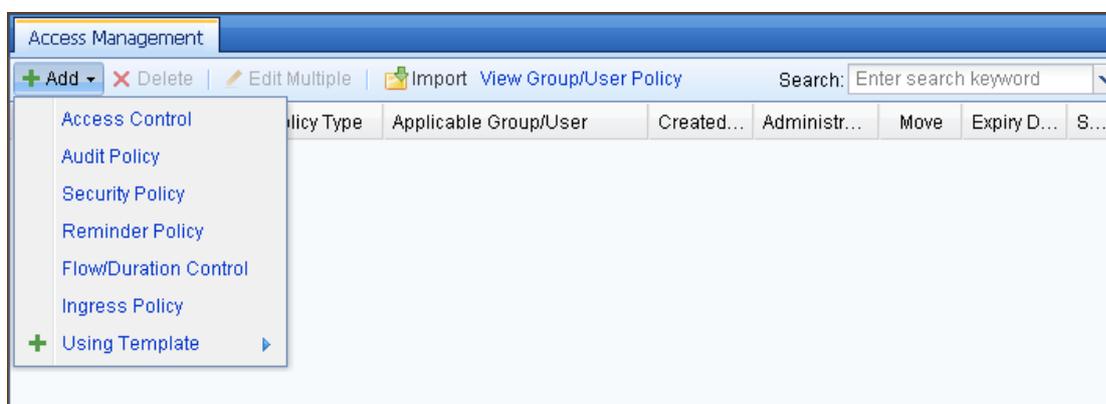


### 3.3.1.4.4 Add Reminder Policy

The reminder policy enables you to remind the users of the flow, online duration and other bulletin messages. It covers the three aspects: [Duration Reminder], [Flow Reminder] and [Bulletin Board].

To add an endpoint reminder policy, do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Access Management] page, click <Add> and select [Reminder Policy] to open the [Reminder Policy] page, as shown below:



- Step 2. Check the [Enable Policy] option to enable the reminder policy.

If this option is not checked, the policy will not take effect.

Step 3. Type the policy name and description. [Policy Name] is the unique identifier of the policy, which must be entered and unique. [Description] refers to descriptive information of the policy, which is optional.

Step 4. Open the [Policy Settings] tab and set the reminder policy according to your needs. First, select the reminder type under [Reminder Policy] on the left pane and then configure the policy on the right pane. The reminder policy covers the following three modules: [Duration Reminder], [Flow Reminder] and [Bulletin Board] (for detailed settings of the modules, see the subsequent sections).

Step 5. Open the [Group/User] tab to select the applicable user/group. The user groups or users selected on this tab will be associated with this reminder policy.

Step 6. Go to the [Advanced] tab and set advanced options, including [Expiry Date], [Same-Role Administrator Privilege] and [Allow administrator of lower role to view].

## Online Duration Reminder

[Duration Reminder] enables you to set the online duration reminder, including the following four configuration items:

- ◆ [Schedule]: To specify the valid period in which the online duration of selected applications will be detected and calculated. If it is not in the time period set here, the online duration will not be detected.
- ◆ [Online Duration Threshold]: To specify the online duration threshold that triggers the reminder. When the online duration of selected applications reaches the threshold set here, the system will give a reminder. The value range is 0 to 1440 minutes. When you enter 0 here, it means the

system will remind the user immediately.

- ◆ [Reminder Interval]: To set the interval for reminding. The value range is 0 to 1440 minutes. After the reminder, the system will detect if the selected application is still online. If yes, the system will remind the user again after the interval set here. When you enter **0** here, it means the system will remind the user only once.
- ◆ [Application]: To select the applications whose online duration will be detected and calculated.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that reminds user of the online duration when the duration that the user plays games reaches 180 minutes during office hours and reminds user again every 30 minutes.

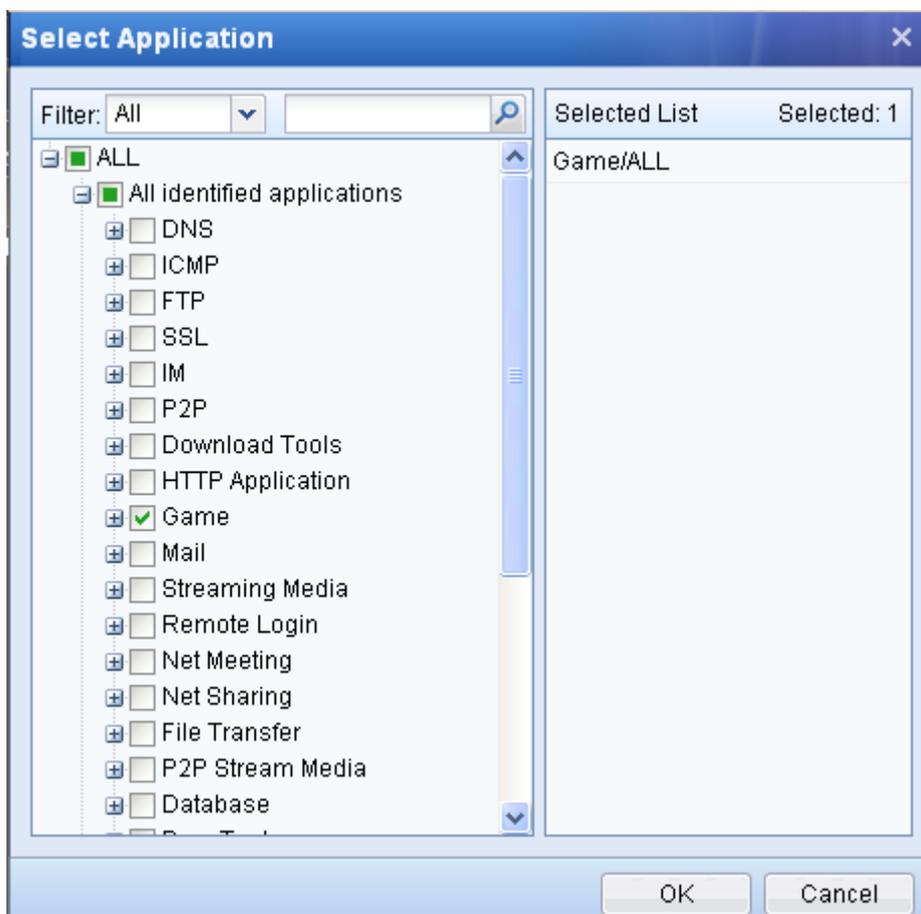
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Check [Duration Reminder] on the left pane to open the [Duration Reminder] page on the right, as shown below:

- Step 2. Set [Schedule] to **Office Hours** (the schedules listed here are predefined on the [Objects] > [Schedule] page, see section 3.2.8 "Schedule").

- Step 3. Enter **180** in the [Online Duration Threshold] text box and **30** in the [Reminder Interval] text box, as shown below:

Step 4. Click the [Please Select] link to select the [Game] item on the displayed [Select Application] page and click <OK>. Here, when multiple applications are selected, the overlapped online duration of applications will be counted only once.



Step 5. Click <Commit> to save this policy.

Duration Reminder	
Schedule:	Office Hours <input type="button" value="v"/>
Online Duration Threshold:	180 <input type="button" value="i"/>
Reminder Interval:	30 <input type="button" value="i"/>
Application:	<a href="#">Game/...</a>



1. The reminder is realized by returning a webpage to the client; therefore, the reminder page appears only when the users are accessing website.

2. You can modify the reminder page on the [System] > [Custom Prompt Page] page. For detailed settings, see section 3.9.8 "Custom Prompt Page".

## Flow Reminder

[Flow Reminder] enables you to set the flow reminder, including the following configuration items:

- ◆ [Schedule]: To specify the valid period in which the flow of selected applications will be detected and calculated. If it is not in the time period set here, the flow will not be detected.
- ◆ [Reminder Interval]: To set the interval for reminding. The value range is 0 to 60 minutes. After the reminder interval, the system will calculate the average flow speed again. If it still exceeds the threshold, the system will remind the user again. When you enter 0 here, it means the system will remind the user only once.
- ◆ [Flow Direction]: To select the type of flow to be calculated. There are three options: uplink flow, downlink flow and total flow.
- ◆ [Flow Statistics Period]: To set the time period in which the flow will be calculated. The value range is 0 to 60 minutes.
- ◆ [Average Flow Speed Threshold]: To specify the flow speed threshold that triggers the reminder. The unit can be Kbps or Mbps, and the value range is 0-1048576Kbps. When you enter 0 here, it means the system will remind the user immediately once the flow of selected applications is detected.
- ◆ [Application]: Indicates the application whose flow will be detected and calculated.

Reminder Policy	Flow Reminder
<input type="checkbox"/> Duration Reminder <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Flow Reminder</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Bulletin Board	Schedule: <input type="text" value="All Day"/> Reminder Interval: <input type="text" value="0"/> ⓘ <hr/> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Remind user when average flow speed reaches the threshold</b></p> Flow Direction: <input type="text" value="Total Flow"/> Flow Statistics Period: <input type="text" value="0"/> ⓘ Average Speed Threshold: <input type="text" value="0"/> Kbps ⓘ Application: <a href="#">Please select</a>

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that reminds user of the flow speed when the flow speed of downloading reaches 200kbps during the whole day and reminds the user again every 10 minutes.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check [Flow Reminder] on the left pane to open the [Flow Reminder] page on the right, as shown below:

**Flow Reminder**

Schedule: All Day

Reminder Interval: All Day

Remind user when average flow speed reaches the threshold

Flow Direction: + Add Schedule

Flow Statistics Period: 0

Average Speed Threshold: 0 Kbps

Application: [Please select](#)

Step 2. Set [Schedule] to **All Day** (the schedules listed here are predefined on the [Objects] > [Schedule] page, see section 3.2.8 "Schedule"), and enter **10** in the [Reminder Interval] text box, as shown below:

Schedule: All Day

Reminder Interval: 10

Step 3. Select [Downlink flow] from the [Flow Direction] drop-down list, enter **10** in the [Flow Statistics Period] text box and **200** in the [Average Flow Speed Threshold] text box, as shown below:

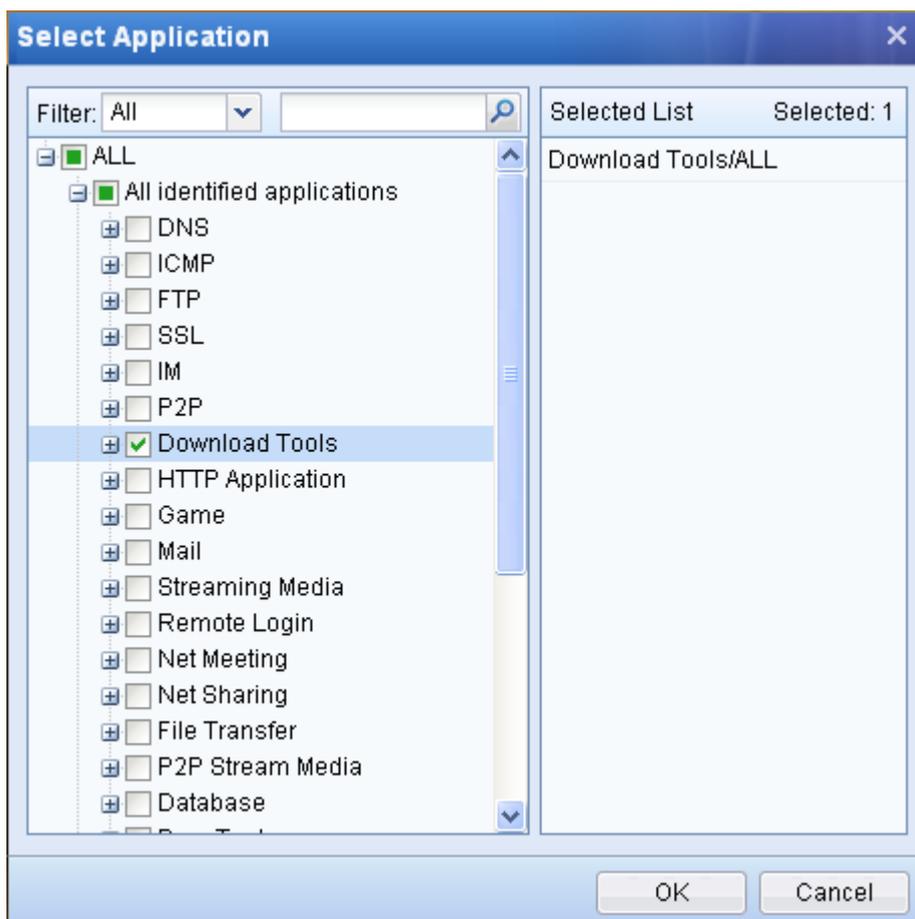
Remind user when average flow speed reaches the threshold

Flow Direction: Uplink Flow

Flow Statistics Period: 10

Average Speed Threshold: 200 Kbps

Step 4. Click the [Please Select] link to select the [Download Tools] item on the displayed [Select Application] page and click <OK>.



Step 5. Click <Commit> to save this policy.



1. The reminder is realized by returning a webpage to the client; therefore, the reminder page appears only when the users are accessing website.
2. You can modify the reminder page on the [System] > [Custom Prompt Page] page. For detailed settings, see section 3.9.8 "Custom Prompt Page".

## Bulletin Board

[Bulletin Board] is used to pop up pages when users are accessing the Internet. The configuration covers the following three items:

- ◆ [Redirection Interval]: To set the time interval after which the bulletin board will pop up. The value range is 1 to 1440 minutes. When the users associated with this policy are accessing the Internet, the system will display the bulletin board periodically after the internal.
- ◆ [Use internal bulletin board]: To use the built-in bulletin. For detailed settings, see section 3.9.8 "Custom Prompt Page".
- ◆ [Use external bulletin board]: To define the URL of bulletin board by yourself. The system will

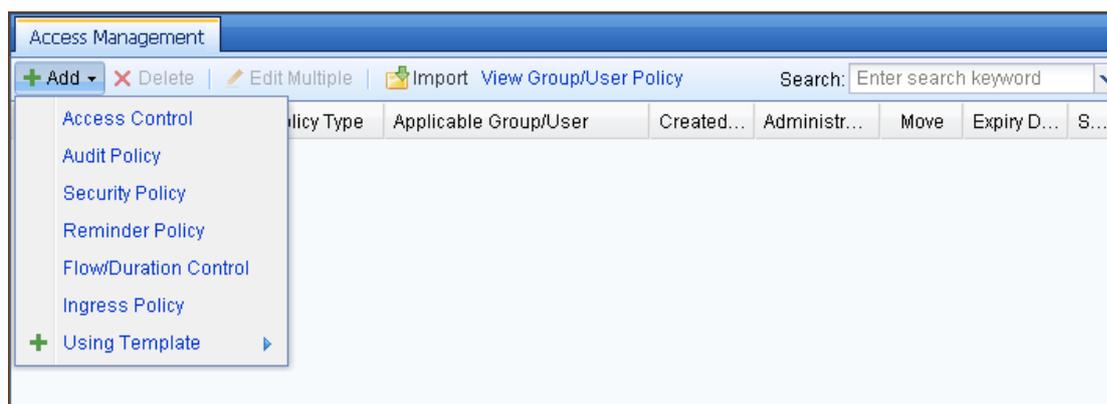
link to the bulletin page corresponding to the URL.

Reminder Policy	Bulletin Board
<input type="checkbox"/> Duration Reminder <input type="checkbox"/> Flow Reminder <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Bulletin Board</b>	<p><b>Note:</b> This function periodically redirects HTTP flow to the specified bulletin board so as to deliver the bulletin message to end user through browser.</p> <p>Redirection Interval: <input type="text" value="120"/> ⓘ</p> <p>Select Bulletin Board (make sure it is accessible to end user)</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Use internal bulletin board ⓘ</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Use external bulletin board</p> <p>URL: <input type="text" value="http://www.sangfor.com.cn"/> ⓘ</p>

### 3.3.1.4.5 Add Flow Quota/Duration Control Policy

To add a flow quota/online duration control policy, do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Access Management] page, click <Add> and select [Flow Quota/Duration Control Policy] to open the [Flow Quota/Duration Control Policy] page, as shown below:



- Step 2. Check the [Enable Policy] option to enable the flow quota/duration control policy.  
 If this option is not checked, the policy will not take effect.

Step 3. Type the policy name and description. [Policy Name] is the unique identifier of the policy, which must be entered and unique. [Description] refers to descriptive information of the policy, which is optional.

Step 4. Open the [Policy Settings] tab and set the flow quota/duration control policy according to your needs. First, select the function type under [Flow Quota/Duration Control Policy] on the left pane and then configure the policy on the right pane. The flow quota/duration control policy covers the following three modules: [Flow Quota], [Duration Control] and [Sessions Control] (for detailed settings of the modules, see the subsequent sections).

Step 5. Open the [Group/User] tab to select the applicable user/group. The user groups or users selected on this tab will be associated with this flow quota/duration control policy.

Step 6. Go to the [Advanced] tab and set advanced options, including [Expiry Date], [Same-Role Administrator Privilege] and [Allow administrator of lower role to view].

## Flow Quota

[Flow Quota] enables you to limit the daily or monthly flow of a single user when the user is accessing the Internet through the IAM device. When the flow of a user in a specified time period exceeds the flow quota set here, the user will be blocked from accessing the Internet. It covers the following configuration items:

- ◆ [Start Date of Month]: To specify the start day of a month from which the flow will be calculated. For instance, if you enter 3 here, it means the period counts from the 3<sup>rd</sup> day of current month to the 3<sup>rd</sup> day of next month and the flow quota will be cleared and allocated again on the 3<sup>rd</sup> day of every month. This option is a global setting, which means once the start day of a month is set in one policy, it will be adopted by other [Flow Quota] policies.

- ◆ [Monthly Flow Quota Per User]: To limit the total flow allocated to each user every month. The flow quota here refers to the total of uplink flow and downlink flow.
- ◆ [Daily Flow Quota Per User]: To limit the total flow allocated to each user every day. The flow quota here refers to the total of uplink flow and downlink flow.

Flow/Duration Control	Flow Quota
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Flow Quota <input type="checkbox"/> Duration Control <input type="checkbox"/> Sessions Control	Start Date of Month: 3 <small>(If you type 8, a month counts from May 8 to June 8)</small> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Monthly Flow Quota Per User Flow Quota: 10 GB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Daily Flow Quota Per User Flow Quota: 500 MB

## Online Duration Control

[Duration Control] enables you to limit the online duration of a single user in a specified time period. When the online duration of a user in a specified time period exceeds the limit set here, the user will be blocked from accessing the Internet.

To enable online duration control, first, you need to check the [Enable Online Duration Control] option. It is the master switch of the online duration control function. Then set the following configuration items:

- ◆ [Schedule]: To specify the valid period in which the online duration will be calculated. Only in this period will the online duration be calculated.
- ◆ [Max Online Duration]: To specify the maximum online duration allowed. The maximum value is 1440 minutes.
- ◆ [Excluded Port]: To set the ports that will be exempt from online duration control, that is, the online duration of the ports typed here will be not controlled. Type one port per row. You can type up to 20 ports.

Flow/Duration Control	Duration Control
<input type="checkbox"/> Flow Quota <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Duration Control</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Sessions Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Online Duration Control  Schedule: <input type="text" value="Office Hours"/> Max Online Duration: <small>Limit daily online duration per user. Value range is 1-1440 minutes.</small> <input type="text" value="180"/> Excluded Port: <small>Applications destined to the following ports will be ignored, that is, no online duration control. Format: Type 1 to 20 ports per row, separated by space.</small> <input type="text" value="110 80 53"/>

### Concurrent Sessions Control

[Sessions Control] enables you to limit the number of concurrent sessions of a single user when the user is accessing the Internet through the IAM device. When the limit set here is reached, the redundant connections will be discarded. This function restricts users from using scanning tools or the tools that may establish a large number of connections simultaneously, such as P2P and therefore decreases the chances that the viruses may spread widely by scanning computers to build massive connections.

To enable concurrent sessions control, first, you need to check the [Limit Concurrent Sessions Per User] option and then type the maximum number of concurrent sessions allowed in the text box of [Max Concurrent Sessions]. The maximum value is 65535 sessions.

Flow/Duration Control	Sessions Control
<input type="checkbox"/> Flow Quota <input type="checkbox"/> Duration Control <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Sessions Control</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Limit Concurrent Sessions Per User  Max Concurrent Sessions: <input type="text" value="100"/> ⓘ

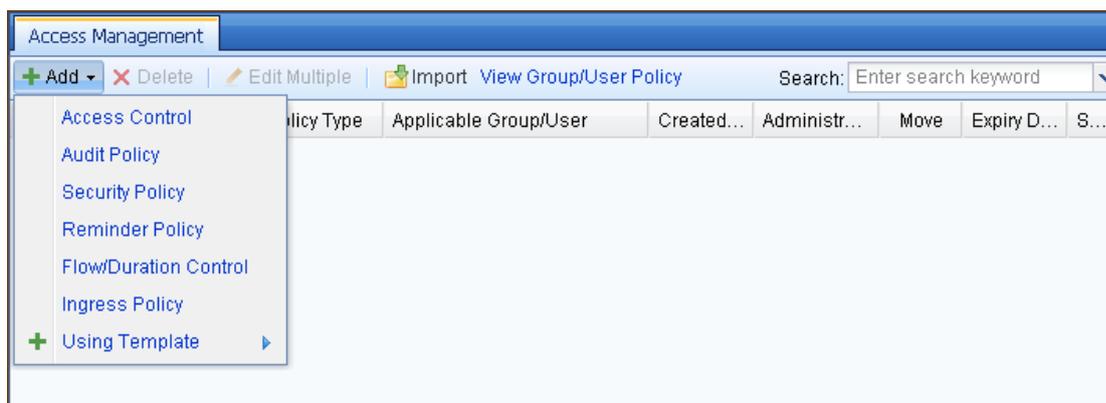
#### 3.3.1.4.6 Add Ingress Policy

[Ingress Policy] checks the operating system, process, file, registry or other information of the computers in the local area network by means of the ingress program installed at client end. Besides, it can be used to audit chat logs of encrypted IM tools. When the ingress system is enabled, the user computers should satisfy corresponding conditions before they are allowed to connect to the Internet.

To add an ingress policy, do as follows:

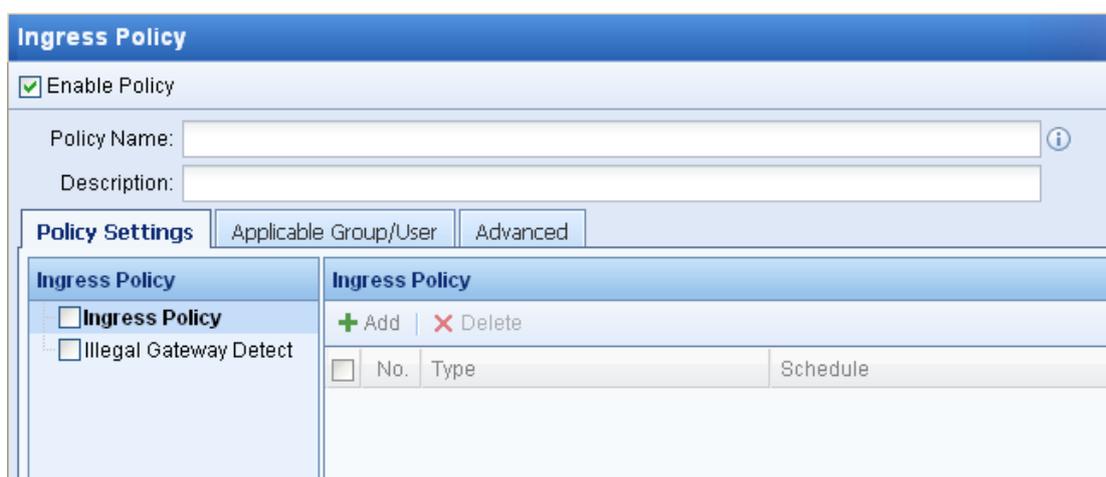
Step 1. On the [Access Management] page, click <Add> and select [Ingress Policy] to open the [Ingress

Policy] page, as shown below:



Step 2. Check the [Enable Policy] option to enable the ingress policy.

If this option is not checked, the policy will not take effect.



Step 3. Type the policy name and description. [Policy Name] is the unique identifier of the policy, which must be entered and unique. [Description] refers to descriptive information of the policy, which is optional.

Step 4. Open the [Policy Settings] tab and set the ingress policy according to your needs. First, select the function type under [Ingress Policy] on the left pane and then configure the policy on the right pane. The ingress policy covers the following two modules: [Ingress Policy] and [Illegal Gateway Detect] (for detailed settings of the modules, see the subsequent sections).

Step 5. Open the [Group/User] tab to select the applicable user/group. The user groups or users selected on this tab will be associated with this ingress policy.

Step 6. Go to the [Advanced] tab and set advanced options, including [Expiry Date], [Same-Role Administrator Privilege] and [Allow administrator of lower role to view].

## Ingress Policy

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a policy that monitors the chat logs of users by QQ (instant messaging tool).

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check the [Ingress Policy] option on the left and click <Add> on the right, as shown below:

No.	Type	Schedule	Delete
	IM Monitor	All Day	

Step 2. Click [Type] to **IM Monitor** and [Schedule] to **All Day**.

Step 3. Click <OK> to save the ingress policy.

No.	Type	Schedule	Delete
1	IM Monitor	All Day	X



1. For the setting of [Type], see section 3.2.5 "Ingress Rule Library".
2. The users associated with the ingress policy need to install the ingress program on their computers and cannot connect to the Internet before the ingress program is successfully installed. When they access the Internet for the first time, the IAM device will automatically redirect their browsers to the installation of ingress client.

## Illegal Gateway Detection

[Illegal Gateway Detect] checks if the gateway address configured on the LAN computers is legal by means of the ingress program installed at client end. If the users access the Internet through an illegal gateway, that is, the gateway not allowed by the IAM device, the IAM device will record it in Data Center.

**Ingress Policy**

Enable Policy

Policy Name:  ⓘ

Description:

**Policy Settings** | Applicable Group/User | Advanced

**Ingress Policy**

Ingress Policy

**Illegal Gateway Detect**

**Illegal Gateway Detect**

Legal Gateway List (One gateway IP address per row; maximum 128 IP addresses):

Action If Violated

Enable offline detection

You can specify the legal gateway address(es) in the [Legal Gateway List] text box. The Ingress Program will check if the gateway addresses configured on LAN computers are specified here. If their gateway addresses are not any of the specified ones and their access data does not go through the IAM device, the IAM device will regard that the LAN computers access Internet via illegal gateway and log the behaviors in Data Center. You can go to the [Logs] > [Ingress Logs] page and select the [Illegal Gateway] rule type to search for the corresponding logs, as shown below:

Current Gateway:

Refresh Auto Refresh

Options Favorites Export Log

**Search Ingress Logs**

Search By:  Group Name  User  Host IP   Include Subgroup

Excluded Object:  Group Name  User  Host IP  (Use semicolon to separate objects)

Rule Type:  (Dropdown menu open showing: ALL, Process, Registry, File, Operating System, Others, Scheduled Task, Combination Rule, **Illegal Gateway**)

Action:

Date Range:

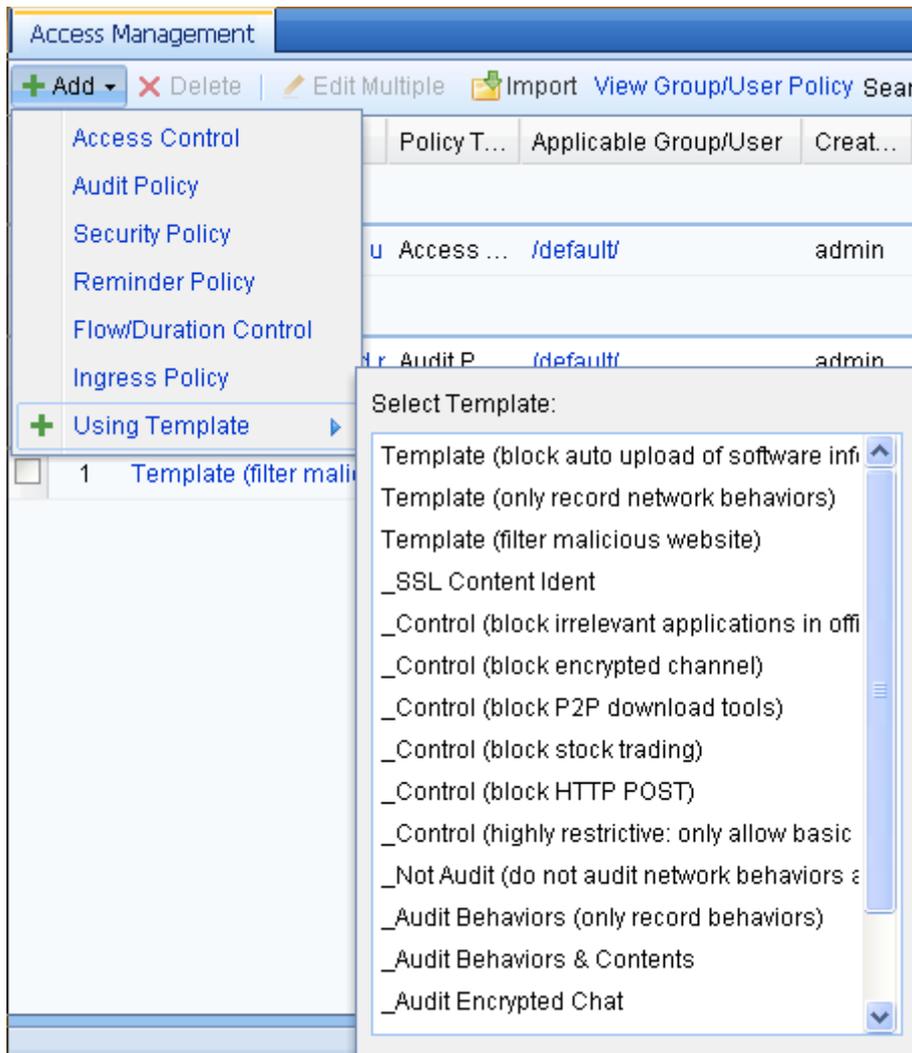
Time:  -

Search Hide Options  Advanced Search

If you check the [Enable offline detection] option, the Ingress Client installed on user computer will continue detecting the user computer's gateway when the computer moves out of the network where the IAM device locates and is disconnected from the IAM device. When the user computer moves back to the network, the Ingress Client will reconnect to the IAM device and report the user's Internet access via illegal gateway. If you uncheck this option, the Ingress Client will not detect the gateway when the user computer is disconnected from the IAM device.

### 3.3.1.5 Add Policy Using Template

You can use a policy already defined or a built-in policy as template to add policy. The settings of a policy added in this way are the same as those of the template it uses. This is a convenient way to add similar access management policies. The built-in templates are as shown in the following figure:



For example, if you use the [\_Audit Behaviors & Contents] policy as template to add a policy, all the policies settings of the template will be copied to this policy. You can modify the following configuration items: [Policy Name], [Description], [Policy Settings], [Group/User] and [Advanced].

**Audit Policy**

Enable Policy

Policy Name:

Description: Record all the Internet behaviors and contents, such as posting, emails, chat logs (Audit F

**Policy Settings** | Applicable Group/User | Advanced

**Audit Policy**

- App Audit
- Outgoing File Alarm
- Flow/Duration Audit
- Web Content Audit

**App Audit**

+ Add X Delete | Audit NOT audit | Up Down

No.	Audit Object	Schedule	Action	Delete
1	WebBBS post Outgoing WebMail content Attachment uploaded through web, including ' Text uploaded through web Visited URL->All .....	All Day	Audit	X



If the [Allow administrator of lower role to view] option on the [Advanced] tab is not checked, the administrator of lower role cannot use this policy as template to add policy.

### 3.3.1.6 Delete Policy

You can delete the access management policies already configured on the [Access Management] page. After the deletion, the policies will be permanently deleted and the users/groups referencing these policies will automatically cancel the association with them.

To delete one or several access management policies, do as follows:

Step 1. Select the policies you want to delete, as shown below:

**Access Management**

+ Add X Delete | Edit Multiple | Import View Group/User Policy Search:

No.	Policy Name	Policy Type	Applicable Group/User	Created...	Administr...	Move	Expiry D...	S...
Audit Policy (1)								
1	Audit	Audit Policy	None	admin	administr...	Up Down	Never e...	✓

Step 2. Click the <Delete> button and then click <Yes> to confirm the deletion.

After the policies are deleted, the Web Console will pop up a message to prompt the operation result, as shown below:

**Info**

Operation success  
Delete Policy :Audit



An administrator of higher role can delete the policies created by administrators of lower role when its administrative scope covers that of the latter. An administrator can delete the policies created by another same-role administrator on the condition that its administrative scope cover that of latter and the [Allow to edit] option is selected (on [Advanced] tab) in the policies.

### 3.3.1.7 Edit Multiple Policies

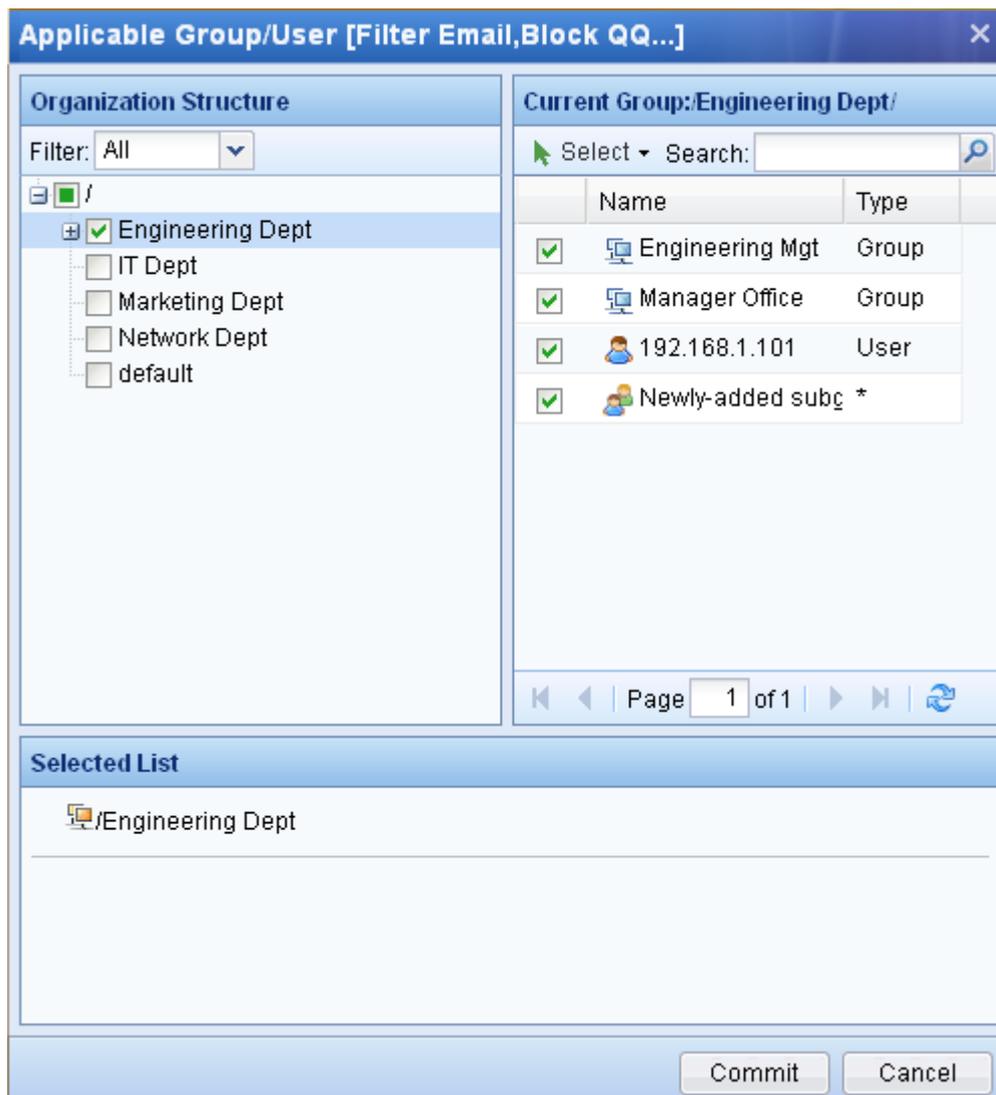
You can edit multiple access management policies at a time. When editing multiple policies simultaneously, you can only edit the [Group/User] option. This is very convenient if you need to edit all the policies associated with a specific user/group.

To edit multiple policies simultaneously, do as follows:

Step 1. Select the access management policies you want to edit simultaneously, as shown below:

Access Management										
+ Add		X Delete		Edit Multiple		Import		View Group/User Policy		Search: Enter search keyword
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Policy Type	Applicable Group/User	Created...	Administr...	Move	Expiry D...	S...	
Access Control (2)										
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Filter Email	Access C...	None	admin	administr...	↑ ↓	Never e...	✓	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	Block QQ	Access C...	None	admin	administr...	↑ ↓	Never e...	✓	
Audit Policy (1)										
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit	Audit Policy	None	admin	administr...	↑ ↓	Never e...	✓	

Step 2. Click the <Edit Multiple> button to open the page for batch editing, as shown below:



Step 3. Select the users/groups to be associated with these selected policies, and then click <Commit> to save your settings.

Access Management									
<span>+ Add</span> <span>✗ Delete</span> <span>✎ Edit Multiple</span> <span>📁 Import</span> <span>👁 View Group/User Policy</span> <span style="float: right;">Search: <input type="text" value="Enter search keyword"/></span>									
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Policy Type	Applicable Group/User	Created...	Administr...	Move	Expiry D...	S...
[-] Access Control (2)									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Filter Email	Access C...	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administr...	↑ ↓	Never e...	✓
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	Block QQ	Access C...	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administr...	↑ ↓	Never e...	✓
[-] Audit Policy (1)									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit	Audit Policy	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administr...	↑ ↓	Never e...	✓



1. The groups and users selected in batch editing will override the original ones of the policies.
2. An administrator of higher role can simultaneously edit a batch of policies created by

administrators of lower role when its administrative scope covers that of the latter. An administrator can simultaneously edit a batch of policies created by another same-role administrator only when its administrative scope cover that of the latter and the [Allow to edit] option is selected (on [Advanced] tab) in the policies.

### 3.3.1.8 Enable/Disable Policy

Each policy is either enabled or disabled. If enabled, the policy is available, and all its settings will take effect when the policy is referenced. If disabled, the policy is unavailable, and all the settings of the policy are still ineffective when it is referenced.

To enable/disable policies, select the policies and then click the <Enable> or <Disable> button to enable or disable the policies. In the [Status] column, the  icon indicates Disabled and the  icon indicates Enabled.

Access Management									
<input type="checkbox"/> Add <input type="checkbox"/> Delete <input type="checkbox"/> Edit Multiple <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> Disable <input type="checkbox"/> Import <input type="checkbox"/> View Group/User Policy <input type="text" value="Search: Enter search keyword"/>									
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Policy Type	Applicable Group/User	Created By	Administrator ...	Move	Expiry Date	Status
Access Control (2)									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Filter Email	Access Control	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	 	Never expire	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Block QQ	Access Control	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	 	Never expire	
Audit Policy (1)									
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit	Audit Policy	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	 	Never expire	



An administrator of higher role can enable/disable the policies created by administrators of lower role when its administrative scope covers that of the latter. An administrator can enable/disable the policies created by another same-role administrator only when its administrative scope cover that of the latter and the [Allow to edit] option is selected (on [Advanced] tab) in the policies.

### 3.3.1.9 Move Policy

You can move the access management policies to adjust their display order. As the policies are matched from top to bottom, you can move the policies to adjust the priority of the policies.

There are two ways to move policies: One is to select the desired policy and click <Up> or <Down> to move the policy up or down; the other is to click the  or  icon under the [Move] column to move the corresponding policy up or down.

Access Management									
<span>+ Add</span> <span>- Delete</span> <span>Edit Multiple</span> <span>Enable</span> <span>Disable</span> <span>MoveUp</span> <span>Import</span> <span>View Group/User Policy</span>									
									Search: Enter search keyword
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Policy Type	Applicable Group/User	Created By	Administrator Role	Move	Expiry Date	Status
Access Control (2)									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Block QQ	Access Control	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	↑ ↓	Never expire	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Filter Email	Access Control	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	↑ ↓	Never expire	⊘
Audit Policy (1)									
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit	Audit Policy	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	↑ ↓	Never expire	✓



1. When the policies here are moved, the policies on the [User Management] > [Group/User] > [Policy List] page will be moved accordingly.
2. The moving operation among policies created by administrators of different roles cannot be performed randomly. The priority of the policies should conform to the priority of administrators creating them. The moving operation among policies created by administrators of the same role can be performed.
3. An administrator of higher role can move the policies created by administrators of lower role when its administrative scope covers that of the latter. An administrator can move the policies created by another same-role administrator only when its administrative scope cover that of the latter and the [Allow to edit] option is selected (on [Advanced] tab) in the policies.

### 3.3.1.10 Import/Export Policy

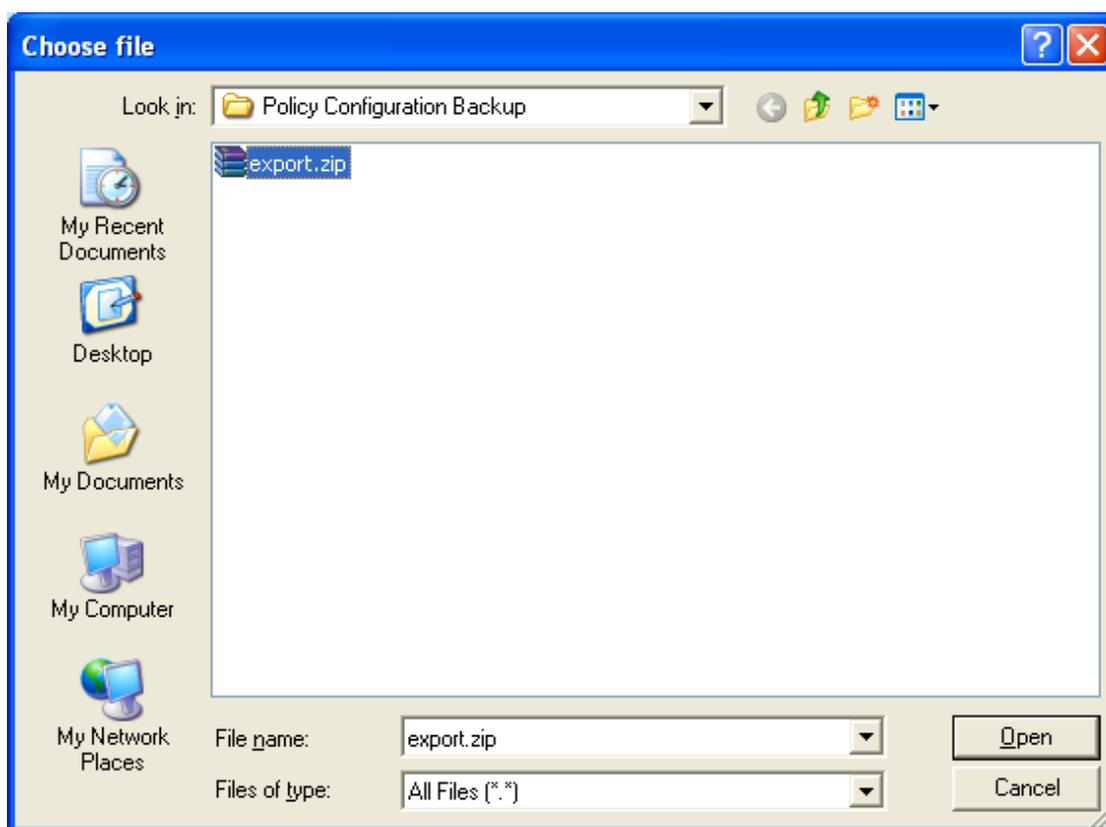
The [Import/Export] function enables you to back up the policies already configured on the IAM device and import them when they are needed. If there are several IAM devices of the same version that require the same policy configurations, you just need to configure the policies on one of the IAM devices and then import the policy configurations into other devices, without the need to configure them repeatedly.

To export access management policies, select one or several access management policies, click the <Export> button to export them, as shown below, and then save the exported policies to your desired location.

Access Management									
<span>+ Add</span> <span>- Delete</span> <span>Edit Multiple</span> <span>Enable</span> <span>Disable</span> <span>MoveUp</span> <span>Import</span> <span>View Group/User Policy</span>									
									Search: Enter search keyword
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Policy Type	Applicable Group/User	Created By	Administrator Role	Move	Expiry Date	Status
Access Control (2)									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Block QQ	Access Control	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	↑ ↓	Never expire	✓
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	Filter Email	Access Control	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	↑ ↓	Never expire	⊘
Audit Policy (1)									
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit	Audit Policy	/Engineering Dept/	admin	administrator	↑ ↓	Never expire	✓

To import access management policies, click the <Import> button and select the policies you want to

import, as shown below, and then click <Open> to import them into the IAM device.



When policies are imported or exported, their associated objects will also be imported or exported. If the object name in the imported file conflicts with that on the IAM device, the IAM device will prompt whether to replace the object on the device.

### 3.3.1.11 Case Studies of Policy Configuration

#### 3.3.1.11.1 Configure a Policy That Blocks P2P for a Certain Group

Suppose you need to create a policy to block all P2P behaviors of the users and subgroups under the **Marketing Dept** group during office hours.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to the [User/Policy] > [Access Management] page, and then click <Add> and select [Access Control] to open the [Access Control] page.
- Step 2. Type the policy name and description, as shown below:

Access Control	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Policy	
Policy Name:	Block P2P
Description:	For marketing department

Step 3. Go to the [Policy Settings] page, click [App Control] on the left pane to open the [App Control] page on the right and then click <Add>, as shown below:

Access Control	App Control										
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> App Control</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Port Control</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Proxy Control</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Web Filter               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> HTTP URL Filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS URL Filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Keyword Filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> File Type Filter</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <span>+ Add</span> <span>✕ Delete</span> <span>➡ Allow</span> <span>⊘ Deny</span> <span>⬆ Up</span> <span>⬇ Down</span> <span>Report Unidentified Application</span> </div> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>No.</th> <th>Application</th> <th>Schedule</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Delete</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>All Day</td> <td>Deny</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <span>OK</span> <span>Cancel</span> </div> </div>	No.	Application	Schedule	Action	Delete			All Day	Deny	
No.	Application	Schedule	Action	Delete							
		All Day	Deny								

Step 4. Click the  icon to open the [Select Application] page, as shown below:

Select Application	
Filter: All <span style="margin-left: 20px;">Fuzzy search </span>	Selected List Selected: 0
<input type="checkbox"/> All applications	

Step 5. Type **P2P** in the text box and press **Enter** on your keyboard or click the  icon to search for all the applications related to P2P. Then check the applications displayed, as shown below:

Select Application								
Filter: All <span style="margin-left: 20px;">P2P <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">x</span> </span>	Selected List Selected: 2							
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Download Tools/Xunlei/Xunlei P2P</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P/P2P-NAT</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P/P2P Behavior</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Download Tools/Xunlei/Xunlei P2P	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P/P2P-NAT	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P/P2P Behavior	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tbody> <tr> <td>P2P/ALL</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	P2P/ALL	P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv
Name								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Download Tools/Xunlei/Xunlei P2P								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P/P2P-NAT								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P/P2P Behavior								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv								
P2P/ALL								
P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv								

Step 6. Click <OK> to return to the [App Control] page, set [Schedule] to **Office Hours** and [Action] to **Deny**, and then click <OK> to save your settings.

App Control					
+ Add    ✕ Delete    ➡ Allow    ⚡ Deny    ⬆ Up    ⬇ Down         Report Unidentified Application					
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Application	Schedule	Action	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	P2P/ALL P2P Stream Media/P2PSrv	Office Hours	⚡ Deny	✕

Step 7. Go to the [Group/User] page, select the **Marketing Dept** group and check all the users and subgroups under it, as shown below:

Policy Settings	Applicable Group/User	Advanced												
<b>Organization Structure</b> Filter: All <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> /</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Engineering Dept</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> IT Dept</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Marketing Dept</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Network Dept</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> default</li> </ul>			<b>Current Group: Marketing Dept/</b> Select ▾    Search: <input type="text"/> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Management Group</td> <td>Group</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> john</td> <td>User</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> sam</td> <td>User</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Newly-added subgroup and user</td> <td>*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Name	Type	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Management Group	Group	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> john	User	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> sam	User	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Newly-added subgroup and user	*
Name	Type													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Management Group	Group													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> john	User													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> sam	User													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Newly-added subgroup and user	*													
<b>Selected List</b> <input type="checkbox"/> /Marketing Dept														

Step 8. Click <Commit> to save the policy.

### 3.3.1.11.2 Configure a Policy That Monitors IM for a Certain Group

Suppose you need to create a policy to apply to the **Marketing Dept** and **Engineering Dept** groups with the following purposes:

- ◆ Monitor the chat logs of all IM tools, including encrypted QQ chat logs
- ◆ Record all the chat logs in Data Center

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [User/Policy] > [Access Management] page.

Step 2. Create an audit policy to record all the chat logs.

- a. Click <Add> and select [Audit Policy] to open the [Audit Policy] page, and then type the policy name and description, as shown below:

Audit Policy	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable Policy
Policy Name:	Audit IM
Description:	For marketing and engineering departments

- b. Go to the [Policy Settings] page, click [App Audit] on the left pane to open the [App Audit] page and then click <Add>, as shown below:

Audit Policy											
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable Policy										
Policy Name:	Audit IM										
Description:	For marketing and engineering departments										
<div style="display: flex; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc;"> <span style="border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding-right: 5px;">Policy Settings</span> <span style="border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding-right: 5px;">Applicable Group/User</span> <span>Advanced</span> </div>											
<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <b>Audit Policy</b>  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> App Audit  <input type="checkbox"/> Outgoing File Alarm  <input type="checkbox"/> Flow/Duration Audit  <input type="checkbox"/> Web Content Audit         </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <b>App Audit</b>  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; font-size: small;"> <span>+ Add</span> <span>✕ Delete</span> <span>🛡️ Audit</span> <span>🚫 NOT audit</span> <span>⬆️ Up</span> <span>⬆️ Down</span> </div> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30px;">No.</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Audit Object</th> <th style="width: 15%;">Schedule</th> <th style="width: 10%;">Action</th> <th style="width: 5%;">Delete</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td>All Day</td> <td>Audit</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;"> <span>OK</span> <span>Cancel</span> </div> </div>	No.	Audit Object	Schedule	Action	Delete		<input type="text"/>	All Day	Audit	
No.	Audit Object	Schedule	Action	Delete							
	<input type="text"/>	All Day	Audit								

- c. Click the  icon to open the [Select Audit Object] page and select all the options under [IM Chat Logs] section, as shown below:

Select Audit Object	
<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; HTTP Outgoing Content</li> <li>&gt; URL/Filename</li> <li>&gt; Email</li> <li>&gt; IM Chat Logs</li> </ul> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <b>IM Chat Logs</b> <span style="float: right;">i</span>  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MSN  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yahoo  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GTalk  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Identify encrypted chat logs  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fetion         </div>

- d. Click <OK> to save your settings.

App Audit				
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; font-size: small;"> <span>+ Add</span> <span>✕ Delete</span> <span>🛡️ Audit</span> <span>🚫 NOT audit</span> <span>⬆️ Up</span> <span>⬆️ Down</span> </div>				
No.	Audit Object	Schedule	Action	Delete
1	MSN Yahoo GTalk GTalk->Identify encrypted chat logs Fetion	All Day	🛡️ Audit	✕

- e. Go to the [Group/User] page, and select the **Marketing Dept** and **Engineering Dept** groups, as

shown below:

**Audit Policy**

Enable Policy

Policy Name:  ⓘ

Description:

Policy Settings | **Applicable Group/User** | Advanced

**Organization Structure**

Filter: All ▾

- /
- Engineering Dept
- IT Dept
- Marketing Dept
- Network Dept
- default

**Current Group: Engineering Dept/**

Select ▾ Search:

Name	Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> director	User
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> public user	User
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Newly-added subgroup and user	*

Page 1 of 1

**Selected List**

- /Engineering Dept
- /Marketing Dept

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save the audit policy.

Step 4. Create an ingress policy to monitor the chat logs of all IM tools, including encrypted QQ chat logs.

- a. On the [Access Management] page, click <Add> and select [Ingress Policy] to open the [Ingress Policy] page, and then type the policy name and description, as shown below:

**Ingress Policy**

Enable Policy

Policy Name:  ⓘ

Description:

Policy Settings | **Applicable Group/User** | Advanced

**Ingress Policy**

Ingress Policy

Illegal Gateway Detect

**Ingress Policy**

+ Add | X Delete

No.	Type	Schedule
<input type="checkbox"/>	IM Monitor	All Day

OK Cancel

- b. Set [Type] to **IM Monitor** and [Schedule] to **All Day**

- c. Go to the [Group/User] page, and select the **Marketing Dept** and **Engineering Dept** user groups,

as shown below:

**Ingress Policy**

Enable Policy

Policy Name:  ⓘ

Description:

Policy Settings | **Applicable Group/User** | Advanced

**Organization Structure**

Filter: All ▾

- Engineering Dept
- IT Dept
- Marketing Dept
- Network Dept
- default

**Current Group: Engineering Dept/**

Select ▾ Search:

Name	Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> director	User
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> public user	User
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Newly-added subgroup and user	*

Page 1 of 1

**Selected List**

- /Engineering Dept

d. Click <Commit> to save the ingress policy.

Step 5. After the above two policies are configured, the users in the **Marketing Dept** or **Engineering Dept** groups will be required to install the Ingress Client before connecting to Internet. When they are connecting to the Internet, the following prompt page will pop up, as shown below:

**⚠ Network Ingress System**

According to the network security policy, you need to install the ingress system to access the Internet. After being installed, the Ingress System will check your computer to ensure the security.

Install the Ingress System online Downloading and installing.....

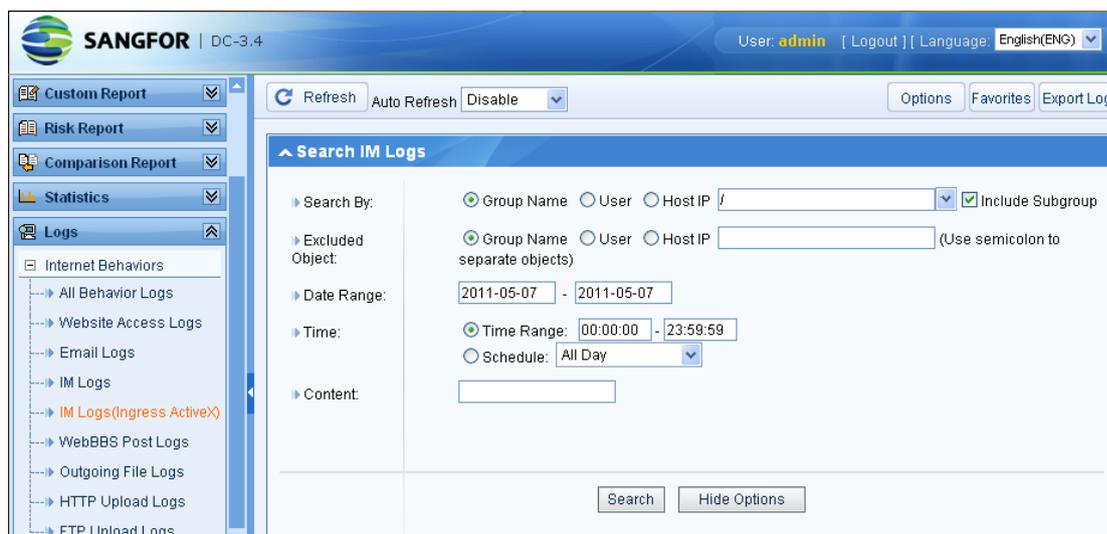
**How to install:**

1. Click the information bar to install as instructed by the prompt popup on the top of the browser (IE browser only).
2. Click [Download](#) to download the installation package and then install it manually.



To install the Ingress Client, the users must log in as administrators of their computers. The users cannot connect to the Internet until the Ingress Client is installed on their computers.

Step 6. To view the IM chat logs, type **http://Device IP:85** (here, **Device IP** should be replaced by the IP address of the IAM device) in the IE browser to enter the Data Center, and type the username and password to login (username and password are the same as those for Web Console). Then go to [Logs] > [Internet Behaviors] > [IM Logs] to view the chat logs of unencrypted IM tools, and go to [Logs] > [Internet Behaviors] > [IM Logs (Ingress ActiveX)] to view the chat logs of encrypted IM tools, as shown below:



### 3.3.1.11.3 Configure an Audit Policy for a Certain Group

Suppose you need to create a policy to apply to the **Network Dept** group with the following purposes:

- ◆ Audit all the network behaviors
- ◆ Audit all the websites visited during the office hours

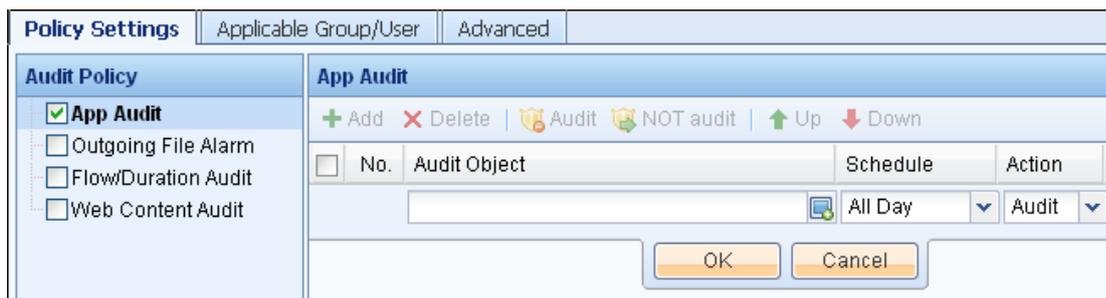
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [User/Policy] > [Access Management] page, and then click <Add> and select [Audit Policy] to open the [Audit Policy] page.

Step 2. Type the policy name and description, as shown below:

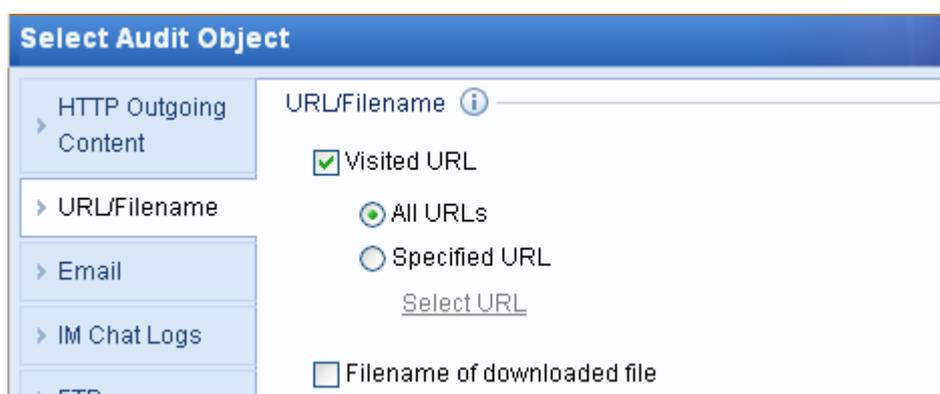
Audit Policy	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable Policy
Policy Name:	Audit
Description:	For network department

Step 3. Go to the [Policy Settings] page, click [App Audit] on the left pane to open the [App Audit] page, as shown below:

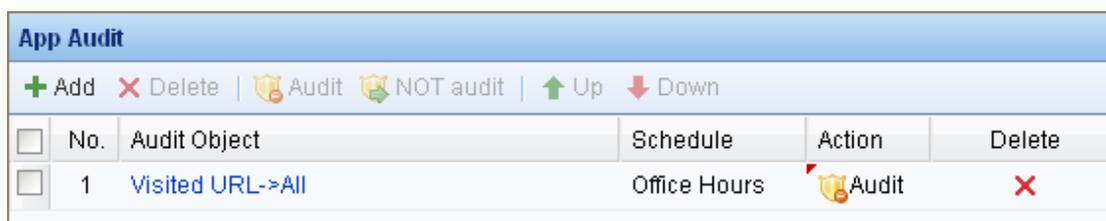


Step 4. Add an application audit rule to audit all the visited websites in office hours.

- a. Click <Add> and then click the  icon to open the [Select Audit Object] page.
- b. Click the [URL/Filename] section, and then check the [Visited URL] and [All URLs] options, as shown below:



- c. Click <OK> to return to the [App Audit] page. Then set [Schedule] to **Office Hours** and click <OK> to save to the application audit rule.



Step 5. Add another application audit rule to audit all network application behaviors.

- a. Click <Add> and then click the  icon to open the [Select Audit Object] page.
- b. Click the [Application Behavior] section, and then check the [All identified application behaviors] option, as shown below:

**Select Audit Object**

HTTP Outgoing  
Content

URL/Filename

Email

IM Chat Logs

FTP

TELNET

Application  
Behavior

Application Behavior

All identified application behaviors (exclusive of content)

Unidentified application behaviors (including access to an address or port; it will generate massive logs)

- c. Click <OK> to return to the [App Audit] page. Then set [Schedule] to **All Day** and click <OK> to save to the application audit rule.

App Audit					
<span style="color: green;">+</span> Add <span style="color: red;">×</span> Delete        Audit    NOT audit     <span style="color: green;">↑</span> Up <span style="color: red;">↓</span> Down					
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Audit Object	Schedule	Action	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	All identified application behaviors (exclusive	All Day	Audit	×
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Visited URL->All	Office Hours	Audit	×

Step 6. Go to the [Group/User] page, and select the **Network Dept** group, as shown below:

**Audit Policy**

Enable Policy

Policy Name:  ⓘ

Description:

Policy Settings | **Applicable Group/User** | Advanced

**Organization Structure**

Filter: All ▾

- /
- Engineering Dept
- IT Dept
- Marketing Dept
- Network Dept
- default

**Current Group: Network Dept/**

Select ▾ Search:

Name	Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Newly-added subgroup and user	*

Page 1 of 1

**Selected List**

- /Network Dept

Step 7. Click <Commit> to save the policy.

## 3.3.2 User Management

### 3.3.2.1 Overview

The users managed by the IAM device are end users who access the Internet through the IAM device; therefore, the users are the basic units to be allocated with network access privileges. The administrators can manage users and their privileges through the [Group/ User] page.

### 3.3.2.2 Principle

#### 3.3.2.2.1 User Authentication Methods

The traditional network devices implement management based on IP addresses, while the IAM device conducts management based on users, which is more intuitive and accurate than that based on IP addresses.

To realize the user-based management, the IAM device need know who the user of a certain IP address is at a certain moment and therefore authenticate the user when it accesses the Internet.

The IAM device provides four types of authentication, as described in the following sections:

## Username/Password Authentication

The username/password authentication will redirect the browser to the authentication page and require user to enter correct username and password before they can connect to the Internet. There are two types of password authentication: password authenticated on local computer and that on external server.

After the user enters username and password, the device will first check if the username and password are correct according to the local user list. If it cannot find the user in the local user list and external authentication server has been configured, the device will try to check the username and password on the external server.



Only the accounts that have checked the [Local password] option will adopt local password authentication. If the accounts have not checked the option, their username and password will be sent to external server for authentication.

## SSO Authentication

SSO indicates that if the network already deploys the authentication system, the IAM device will combine the authentication system to identify the user corresponding to a certain IP address, so that when the user connects to the Internet, it will not be required to type the username/password again.

At present, the following types of SSO are supported (see section 3.3.3.2.1 "SSO Options"):

- ◆ Active Directory Domain SSO
- ◆ Proxy SSO
- ◆ POP3 SSO
- ◆ Web SSO

## Authentication Based on IP, MAC/Hostname

This authentication identifies users according to the source IP address, MAC address or computer name. The advantage of this authentication is that the authentication dialogue will not appear to require users to type username and password, so that the users will not perceive the existence of the IAM device. The disadvantage is that this authentication cannot identify the specific name of the user and thus cannot locate the specific user of network behaviors, especially in an environment where addresses are dynamically allocated. In this situation, policies will fail to implement accurate control on the user.

## DKey Authentication

The users adopting DKey authentication need submit the user information saved in DKey to IAM device, which will then identify the user according to the DKey authentication information. Among the four

authentications, the DKey authentication has the highest priority. If you insert the DKey into a computer that is already authenticated using other method, the identity of the computer will be changed into DKey user with the corresponding privileges.

There are two types of DKey: One is authentication DKey; the other is audit-free DKey. The audit-free DKey has not only the authentication function, but also the privilege to be exempt from being audited by the IAM device, which means the IAM device will not monitor nor record the behaviors of the audit-free DKey user.

### **3.3.2.2.2 User Type**

According to the source of user, users can be divided into the following types:

- ◆ Users found and automatically created by the IAM device
- ◆ Users created by administrator
- ◆ Users imported from CSV file
- ◆ Users imported from external LDAP server
- ◆ Users imported by scanning LAN computers

According to the authentication methods, users can be divided into the following types:

- ◆ Users adopting no authentication (bound with IP/MAC)
- ◆ Users adopting local password authentication
- ◆ Users adopting external password authentication
- ◆ Users adopting DKey authentication
- ◆ Users adopting SSO (combined with external authentication system)

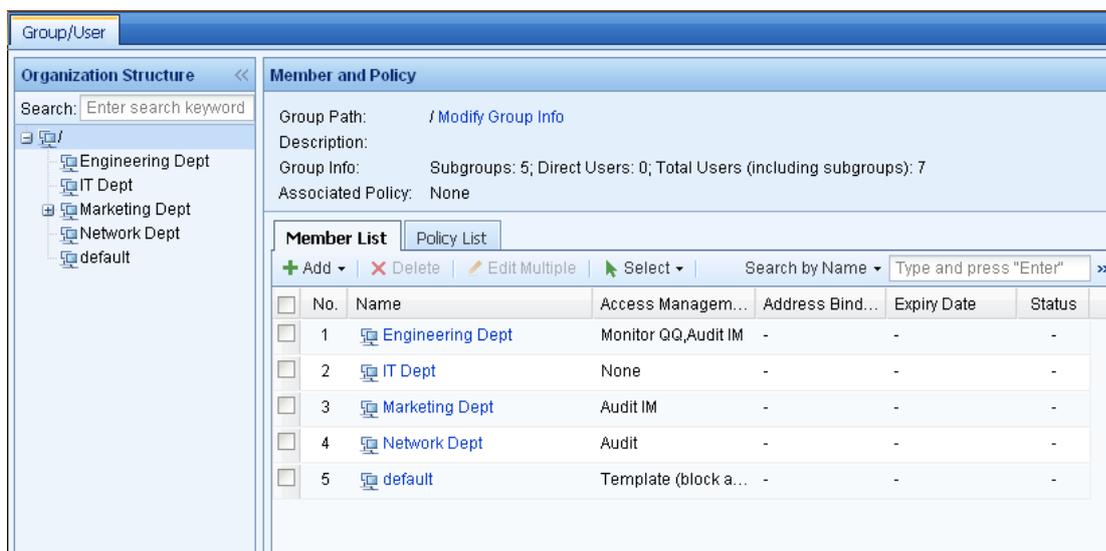
### **3.3.2.3 Group/User**

#### **3.3.2.3.1 View Group/User**

To view the information of users and groups that already exist on the IAM device, select the user group you want to view under [Organization Structure] and the information of the selected group will be displayed on the [Member and Policy] page on the right. Displayed information includes the group to which it belongs, description, group information, associated access management policy, etc.

The [Member List] page enables you to view detailed information of the subgroups and users included in a certain group, such as group to which they belong, access management policy, binding information (IP or MAC address bound with the user), expiry date (of user), description, status (enabled or disabled), etc. You

can also click the column to filter the information you want to view.



[Select] Function: The [Select] button displayed above the member list is used to quickly select the users or groups on the current page or all the pages. Click this button and the following page appears:



Search Function: The search function is used to quickly find out the users or groups. Click the button to select one of the search methods: [Search by Name], [Search by IP] or [Search by MAC], then enter the corresponding contents in the text box and press **Enter** on your keyboard.



Advanced Search: The advanced search function is only applicable to users. When you want to set several conditions to search for a specific user, use the advanced search function. The search conditions include [Basic Conditions] and [Others]. All the conditions set are of the "AND" relationship, which means all the conditions must be satisfied at the same time.

[Basic Conditions] includes [Username], [IP] and [MAC]. You can select one of them to specify the condition, as shown below:

[Others] includes [Expiry Date], [User Status] and [Allow multi-user login], as shown below:

The [Policy List] page enables you to view the access management policies associated with the current user group, as shown below:

Member List		Policy List		
<a href="#">+ Add Policy</a> <a href="#">X Delete</a> <a href="#">View Result Set of Policies</a>				
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Apply to Its Users/Subgroups	Delete
[-] Audit Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit IM	ALL	X
[-] Ingress Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Monitor QQ	ALL	X

The display order of policies on [Policy List] page is the same as that on the [Access Management] page (see section 3.3.1 "Access Management"). As the policies are matched according to the policy sequence, if you want to change the sequence of policies, please go to [Access Management] page and click <Up> or <Down> to adjust the sequence of the policies.

In the policy list, you can only view the names of the access management policies associated with the user/group. If you want to view the detailed settings of the policies, you need to click to open the policies

one by one, which is very troublesome. However, the <View Result Set of Policies> button provides a very convenient way for you to view details of all the policies associated with the user/group. Click the button to view the policy result set of the group, and all the policies associated with the group will be integrated and detailed settings will be listed.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to generate the policy result set of the **Engineering Dept** group.

To generate the policy result set, do as follows:

Step 1. Select the **Engineering Dept** group in the organization structure.

Step 2. Open the [Policy List] tab page to display the policies associated with this group, as shown below:

Member and Policy				
Group Path:	/Engineering Dept <a href="#">Modify Group Info</a>			
Description:				
Group Info:	Subgroups: 0; Direct Users: 2; Total Users (including subgroups): 2			
Associated Policy:	Block QQ,Audit			
<input type="button" value="Member List"/> <input checked="" type="button" value="Policy List"/>				
<input type="button" value="+ Add Policy"/> <input type="button" value="X Delete"/> <input type="button" value="View Result Set of Policies"/>				
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Apply to Its Users/Subgroups	Delete
[-] Access Control (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<a href="#">Block QQ</a>	ALL	<input type="button" value="X"/>
[-] Audit Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<a href="#">Audit</a>	ALL	<input type="button" value="X"/>

Step 3. Click the <View Result Set of Policies> button, and the result set of policies associated with the **Engineering Dept** group will be generated, as shown below:

Result Set of Policies (combined all the policies associated with the group) -Engineering Dept				
Name:	Engineering Dept			
Description:				
Included Po...	Block QQ,Audit			
Policy Menu	App Control			
▶ Access Control	No.	Application	Schedule	Action
▶ Audit Policy	1	IM/qq	All Day	<input type="button" value="Deny"/>
▶ Security Policy				
▶ Reminder Policy				
▶ Flow/Duration Control				
▶ Ingress Policy				

### 3.3.2.3.2 Add User/Group

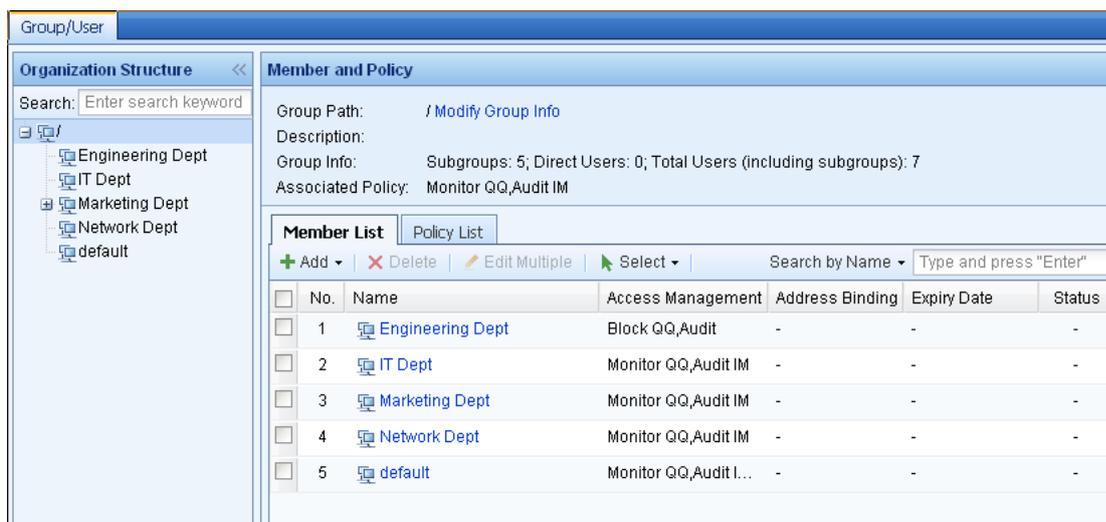
#### Add Subgroup

The default group built in the IAM device is **root** (root group). The root group cannot be deleted and its name cannot be modified. All the groups created by administrators are subgroups under the **root** group. In order to conform to the organization structure of a company for convenient management, the user groups are graded in the IAM device: the root group is the first level group, the direct subgroup of the root group is second level group, and so on.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to add a subgroup named **Engineers** under the root group and associate the subgroup with the access management policy named **Policy For Engineers**.

To add the subgroup, do as follows:

- Step 1. Select the root group "/" to which you want to add the subgroup under [Organization Structure], as shown below:



- Step 2. Click <Add> and select [Group] on the [Member List] page to open the [Add Group] page. Then set related information, as shown below:

**Add Group**

Group Name:  ⓘ

Description:

Path:

+ Add Policy - Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Apply to Its Users/Subg...	Delete
[-] Audit Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit IM	Some	✖
[-] Ingress Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Monitor QQ	Some	✖

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save the subgroup, which is then added to the member list, as shown below:

**Member and Policy**

Group Path:  [Modify Group Info](#)

Description:

Group Info: Subgroups: 6; Direct Users: 0; Total Users (including subgroups): 7

Associated Policy: Monitor QQ,Audit IM

**Member List** | Policy List

+ Add | - Delete | Edit Multiple | Select | Search by Name

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Access Management	Address Binding	Expiry Date	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Engineering Dept	Block QQ,Audit	-	-	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Engineers	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-	-	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	IT Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-	-	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Marketing Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-	-	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Network Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-	-	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	default	Monitor QQ,Audit I...	-	-	-



The IAM device supports organization structure of up to 61 levels, including the root group.

Step 4. Select the user group **Engineers** for which you want to set the access management policy under [Organization Structure] and then open the [Policy List] page, as shown below:

**Member and Policy**

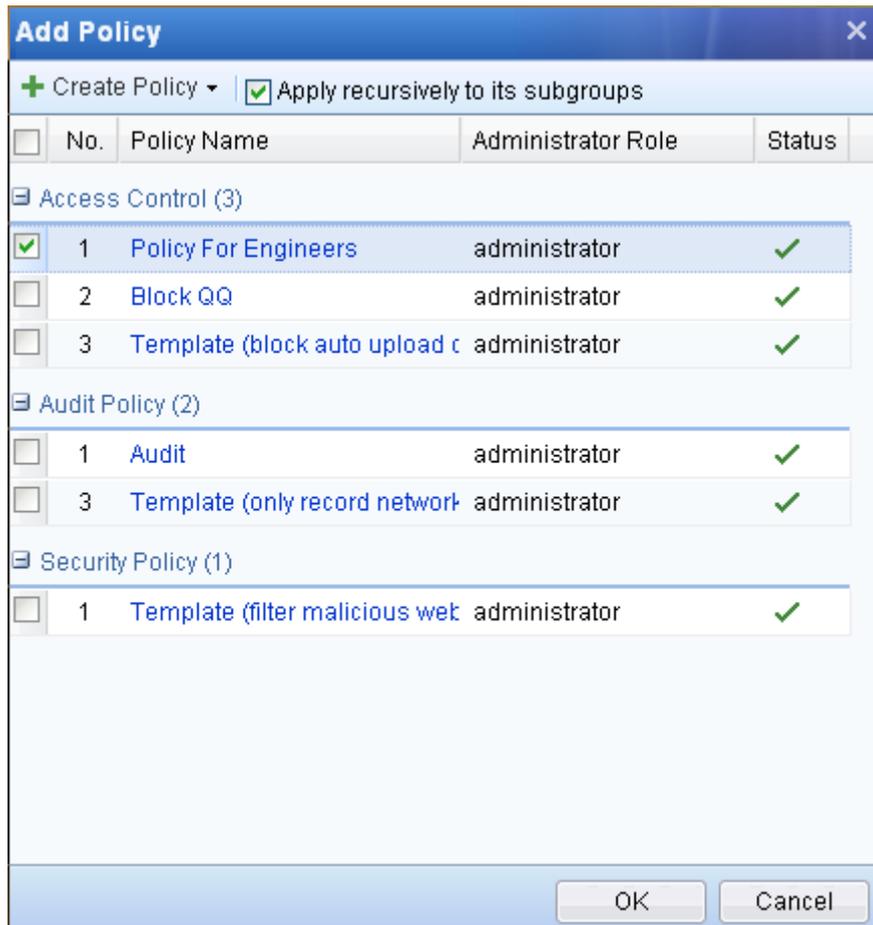
Group Path: /Engineers [Modify Group Info](#)  
 Description: For data transmission  
 Group Info: Subgroups: 0; Direct Users: 0; Total Users (including subgroups): 0  
 Associated Policy: Monitor QQ,Audit IM

Member List | **Policy List**

+ Add Policy | × Delete | View Result Set of Policies

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Apply to Its Users/Subgroups	Delete
[-] Audit Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<a href="#">Audit IM</a>	ALL	×
[-] Ingress Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<a href="#">Monitor QQ</a>	ALL	×

Step 5. Click <Add Policy> to open the [Add Policy] page and then check the **Policy For Engineers** policy to associate it with the group **Engineers**. For the [Apply recursively to its subgroups] option, you can check it to also apply the policy to all the subgroups under the **Engineers** group or uncheck it to only apply it to its direct users and subsequently added subgroups.



Step 6. Click <Commit> to save the policy, which is then added to the policy list, as shown below:

Member List		Policy List		
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Apply to Its Users/Subgroups	Delete
+ Add Policy   X Delete   View Result Set of Policies				
Access Control (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Policy For Engineers	ALL	X
Audit Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Audit IM	ALL	X
Ingress Policy (1)				
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Monitor QQ	ALL	X

## Add a Single User

You can add a single user or multiple users at a time.

When adding a single user, you can set the user attributes such as username, group to which it belongs, access management policy, password, binding IP/MAC address, etc. However, you cannot set the authentication for the user here. The authentication methods of LAN users are configured on [User

[Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page. The IAM device will determine the authentication of user according to the IP or MAC address configured.

**Case Study 1:** Suppose the customer has the following requirements:

- ◆ All the computers on the 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet should adopt username/password authentication.
- ◆ Add a user named **Public Account** into the **Engineers** group and the user should adopt username/password authentication, unidirectionally bind with the IP range 192.168.1.2-192.168.1.100 (that is, the user can only login from this IP range), and allow multiple users to login simultaneously.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. To have all the computers on the subnet 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 adopt the username/password authentication, configure an authentication policy for the users.

- a. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page, click <Add> to open the [Authentication Policy] page.
- b. Type a name for the policy, type **192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0** in the [IP/MAC Range] text box and check the [Local/external password authentication/SSO] option, as shown below:

- c. Click <Commit> to save the authentication policy.

Step 2. Add the user **Public Account** into the **Engineers** group.

- a. Go to the [User Management] > [Group/User] page, and then select the user group **Engineers** under [Organization Structure], as shown below:

- b. Click <Add> and select [User] on the [Member List] to open the [Add User] page. Then specify [Login Name], [Description] and [Display Name], as shown below:

**Add User**

Enable User

Login Name:

Description:

Display Name:

Group:

- c. On the [User Attribute] tab, check the [Local password] option and enter the password for authentication, as shown below:

**User Attribute** | Policy List

Local password ⓘ

Password:

Confirm Password:

- d. To have the user unidirectionally bind the IP range 192.168.1.2-192.168.1.100, check the [Bind IP/MAC] option, and click the [Binding Mode] link to select [Unidirectional binding of user/address]. Then check the [Bind IP] option and enter **192.168.1.2-192.168.1.100** in the text box, as shown below:

Bind IP/MAC: [Binding Mode](#)

Bind IP ⓘ     Bind MAC ⓘ     Bind IP/MAC ⓘ

One entry per row. "#" is an annotation symbol, for example, #200.200.0.1

- e. To have the user account allow multiple users to log in, check the [Allow multi-user login] option, as shown below:

Allow multi-user login (inapplicable to authentication-free users)

- f. Check the [Display Logout page after successful password authentication] option to display the Logout page for the user after it logs in. This option is specific to user with the username/password authentication.

Display Logout page after successful password authentication

g. Set the expiry date for the user account in [Expiry Date].

Expiry Date:  Never Expire  
 Expired On

Step 3. Add the access management policy for the user. Open the [Policy List] page and click <Add Policy> to open the [Add Policy] page and then select the policies to be associated with the user.

User Attribute		Policy List	
+ Add Policy		X Delete	
View Result Set of Policies			
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Delete

Step 4. Click <Commit> to save the user.

Member and Policy						
Group Path:	/Engineers <a href="#">Modify Group Info</a>					
Description:	For data transmission					
Group Info:	Subgroups: 0; Direct Users: 1; Total Users (including subgroups): 1					
Associated Policy:	Monitor QQ					
Member List		Policy List				
+ Add		X Delete		Edit Multiple		Select
Search by Name		Type and press "Enter"				
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Access Manage...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	public account	Audit	192.168.1.2-...	Never expire	✓

After the configurations are completed, when any of the users on the subnet 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 opens the browser to connect to the Internet, the browser will be redirected to the authentication page of the IAM device, as shown below:

The users need to enter username and password and then click <Login>. If the username and password are correct and the IP address satisfies the conditions set, the user will pass the authentication and be allowed to connect to the Internet. If the username and password are correct, but the login IP address does not fall within the IP range bound with the user, the user will fail the authentication and the following prompt will appear:



There are two modes of IP/MAC binding: unidirectional binding and bidirectional binding. Unidirectional binding indicates that the user can only use the specified address(es) to login, while the address(es) can also be used by other users. Bidirectional binding indicates that the user can only use the specified address(es) to login, and the address(es) can only be used by the specified user.

**Case Study 2:** Suppose the customer has the following requirements:

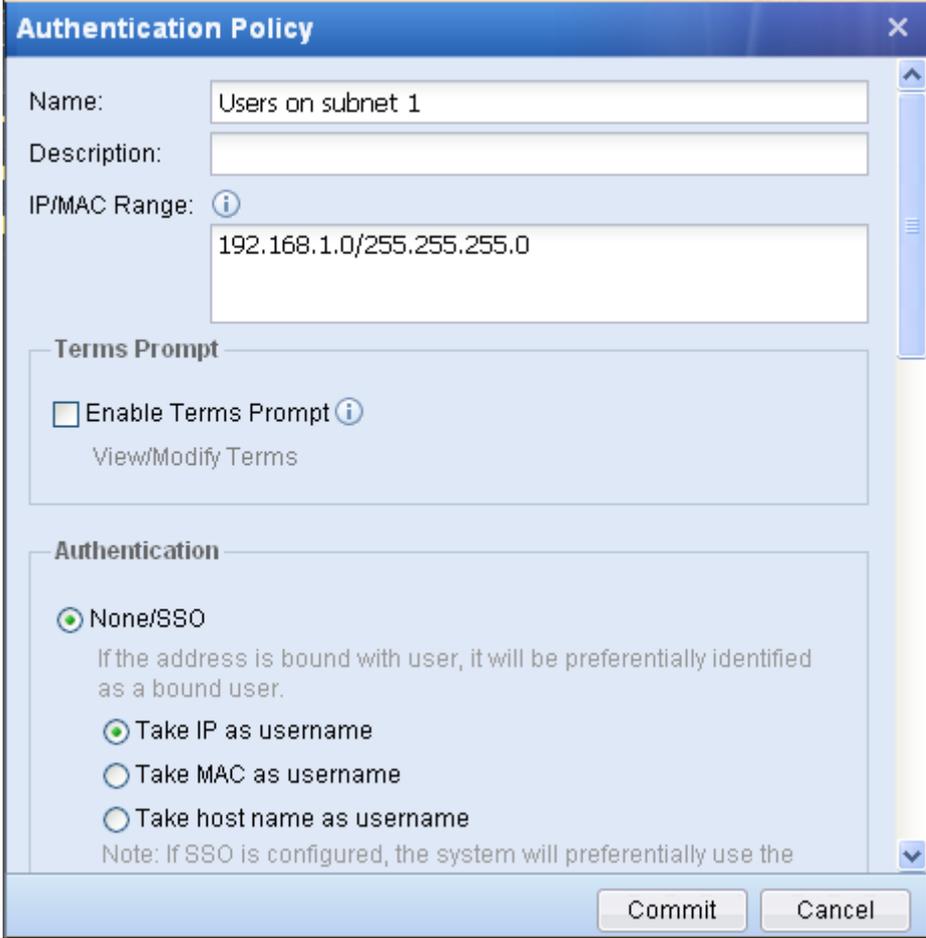
- ◆ All of the computers on the 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet should adopt username/password authentication
- ◆ Add a new user named **Engineer Li** into the **Engineers** group and the user should adopt username/password authentication, and bidirectionally bind with IP/MAC 192.168.1.117/00-1C-25-AC-4C-44 (that is, the user account must use the IP /MAC for

authentication, and other users cannot use it).

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. To have all the computers on the subnet 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 adopt the username/password authentication, configure an authentication policy for the users.

- a. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page, click <Add> to open the [Authentication Policy] page.
- b. Type a name for the policy, type **192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0** in the [IP/MAC Range] text box and check the [Local/external password authentication/SSO] option, as shown below:

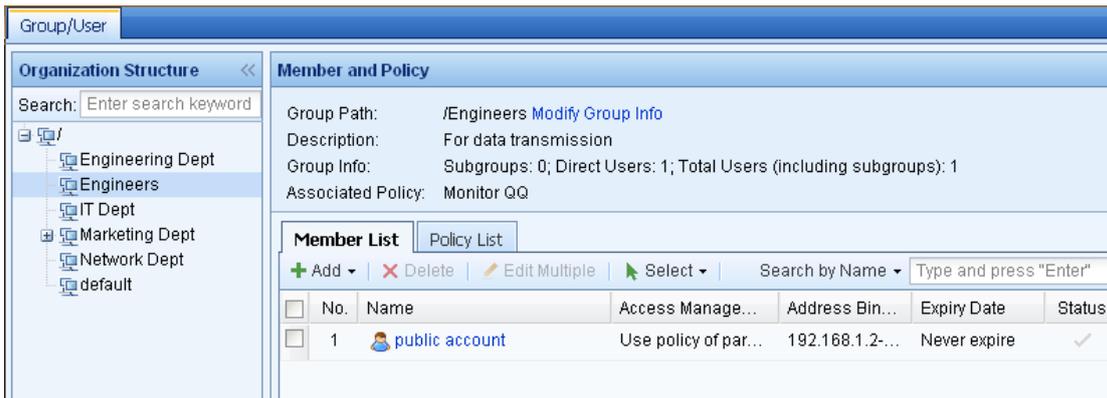


The screenshot shows the 'Authentication Policy' configuration window. The 'Name' field is 'Users on subnet 1'. The 'IP/MAC Range' field is '192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0'. Under 'Terms Prompt', the 'Enable Terms Prompt' checkbox is unchecked. Under 'Authentication', the 'None/SSO' radio button is selected. Below it, 'Take IP as username' is selected, and 'Take MAC as username' and 'Take host name as username' are unselected. A note at the bottom states: 'Note: If SSO is configured, the system will preferentially use the'. The 'Commit' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

- c. Click <Commit> to save the authentication policy.

Step 2. Add the user **Engineer Li** into the **Engineers** group.

- a. Go to the [User Management] > [Group/User] page, and then select the user group **Engineers** under [Organization Structure], as shown below:



- b. Click <Add> and select [User] on the [Member List] to open the [Add User] page. Then specify [Login Name], [Description] and [Display Name], as shown below:

The 'Add User' dialog box is shown with the following fields:

- Enable User
- Login Name: Engineer Li
- Description: Professor Li
- Display Name: (empty)
- Group: /Engineers/

- c. On the [User Attribute] tab, check the [Local password] option and enter the password for authentication, as shown below:

The 'User Attribute' tab is shown with the following fields:

- Local password ⓘ
- Password: (masked with dots)
- Confirm Password: (masked with dots)

- Step 3. To have the user bidirectionally bind the IP/MAC 192.168.1.117/00-1C-25-AC-4C-44, check the [Bind IP/MAC] option, and click the [Binding Mode] link to select [Bidirectional binding of user/address]. Then check the [Bind IP/MAC] option and enter **192.168.1.117(00-1C-25-AC-4C-44)** in the text box, as shown below:

Bind IP/MAC: [Binding Mode](#)

Bind IP ⓘ     
 Bind MAC ⓘ     
 Bind IP/MAC ⓘ

One entry per row. "#" is an annotation symbol, for example, #200.200.0.1

192.168.1.117(00-1C-25-AC-4C-44)

Step 4. Since the user is bound with only one IP/MAC address, the user account is a private account by default.

Step 5. Check the [Display Logout page after successful password authentication] option to display the Logout page for the user after it logs in. This option is specific to user with the username/password authentication.

Display Logout page after successful password authentication

Step 6. Set the expiry date for the user account in [Expiry Date].

Expiry Date:       Never Expire

Expired On

Step 7. Add the access management policy for the user. Open the [Policy List] page and click <Add Policy> to open the [Add Policy] page and then select the policies to be associated with the user.

User Attribute		Policy List	
+ Add Policy		X Delete	
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Delete

Step 8. Click <Commit> to save the user.

**Member and Policy**

Group Path: /Engineers [Modify Group Info](#)  
 Description: For data transmission  
 Group Info: Subgroups: 0; Direct Users: 2; Total Users (including subgroups): 2  
 Associated Policy: Monitor QQ

**Member List**

Policy List

+ Add | X Delete | ✎ Edit Multiple | ▶ Select | Search by Name

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Access Manage...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	engineer li	Audit	192.168.1.11...	Never expire	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	public account	Audit	192.168.1.2-...	Never expire	✓

After the configurations are completed, when any of the users on the subnet 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 opens the browser to connect to the Internet, the browser will be redirected to the authentication page of the IAM device.

The user needs to enter username and password and then click <Login>. If the username and password are correct and the login IP/MAC address is same as that bound with the user, the user will pass the authentication and be allowed to access the Internet. If the username and password are correct, but the login IP/MAC address does not match the IP/MAC address bound with the user, the user will fail the authentication and the following prompt will appear:

**Internet Access Authentication System - Authentication failure!**

Username: engineer li  
 IP address: 192.168.76.200  
 Failed to get authenticated! Possible reason: IP or MAC address is not allowed.

[Relogin](#)

If other user uses this IP/MAC address for authentication, the user will also fail the authentication and the following prompt will appear:

**Internet Access Authentication System - Authentication failure!**

Username: public account  
 IP address: 192.168.1.117  
 Failed to get authenticated! Possible reason: IP or MAC address is not allowed.

[Relogin](#)



If you have checked the [None/SSO] option for a user on the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page, the user can connect to the Internet without typing the username and password. In this situation, the IAM device identifies the user according to the IP address, MAC address or computer name. To create a user with no authentication required, the typical configurations are:

1. Select bidirectional binding of user and IP/MAC address when creating the user. Since in bidirectional binding, user and IP/MAC are biunique, the IAM device can identify the user according to the IP/MAC address.
2. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page, check the [None/SSO] option and select to take IP, MAC or host name as username. When the user is being authenticated, the IAM device will match the username according to the IP address, MAC address or host name.

**Case Study 3:** Suppose you need to add a user named **Director** into the **Engineers** group with the following requirements:

- ◆ The **Director** user does not need to be authenticated.
- ◆ Bidirectionally bind the user with the IP/MAC address 192.168.1.117/00-1C-25-AC-4C-44 of its computer (that is, the **Director** user account can be used only on the director's computer).

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Configure an authentication policy for the user.

- a. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page, click <Add> to open the [Authentication Policy] page.
- b. Type a name for the policy, type **192.168.1.117** in the [IP/MAC Range] text box and check the [None/SSO] option, as shown below:

- c. Click <Commit> to save the authentication policy.

Step 2. Add the user **Director** into the **Engineers** group.

- a. Go to the [User Management] > [Group/User] page, and then select the user group **Engineers** under [Organization Structure], as shown below:

No.	Name	Access Manage...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status
1	public account	Audit	192.168.1.2-...	Never expire	✓

- b. Click <Add> and select [User] on the [Member List] to open the [Add User] page. Then specify [Login Name], [Description] and [Display Name], as shown below:

**Add User** [X]

Enable User

Login Name:

Description:

Display Name:

Group:

- c. To have the user bidirectionally bind with the IP range IP/MAC 192.168.1.117/00-1C-25-AC-4C-44, check the [Bind IP/MAC] option, and click the [Binding Mode] link to select [Bidirectional binding of user/address]. Then check the [Bind IP/MAC] option and enter **192.168.1.117(00-1C-25-AC-4C-44)** in the text box, as shown below:

Bind IP/MAC: [Binding Mode](#)

Bind IP     Bind MAC     Bind IP/MAC

One entry per row. "#" is an annotation symbol, for example, #200.200.0.1

- d. Set the expiry date for the user account in [Expiry Date].

Expiry Date:  Never Expire

Expired On

- Step 3. Add the access management policy for the user. Open the [Policy List] page and click <Add Policy> to open the [Add Policy] page and then select the policies to be associated with the user.

User Attribute		Policy List	
+ Add Policy		X Delete	
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Delete

- Step 4. Click <Commit> to save the user.

Member List		Policy List									
+ Add		X Delete		Edit Multiple		Select		Search by Name		Type and press "Enter"	
No.	Name	Access Manage...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1  director	Use policy of par...	192.168.1.11...	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						
<input type="checkbox"/>	2  public account	Audit	192.168.1.2-...	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						

After the configurations are completed, when the **Director** user connects to the Internet through the IAM device, the IAM device will verify if the IP/MAC address of the user matches that bound with the user. If yes, the **Director** user will pass the authentication directly and connect to the Internet successfully with no authentication page displayed. If not, the **Director** user will fail the authentication. In this case, the user can connect to the Internet with no prompt page displayed to notify the user.



The SANGFOR DKey saves the user information for authentication and the user can use the DKey to pass the authentication. DKey authentication has the highest priority, which means once a user logs into the computer using DKey, the computer will access the Internet using the privileges of the DKey user even if it is authenticated using any other authentication method. When configuring other authentication methods for user, you need to go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] to add a corresponding authentication policy; however, to configure DKey authentication for user, you can configure it when creating the user on the [Group/User] page.

**Case Study 4:** Suppose you need to create a user who adopts DKey authentication and show the login process of the DKey user.

To meet the requirements: do as follows:

- Step 1. Select the user group to which you want to add the user under [Organization Structure], and the [Member List] on the right displays the member information of the group.
- Step 2. Click <Add> and select [User] on the [Member List] to open the [Add User] page. Then specify [Login Name], [Description] and [Display Name], as shown below:

**Add User**
>

Enable User

Login Name:

Description:

Display Name:

Group:  

Step 3. On the [User Attribute] tab, check the [DKey authentication] option. If it is an audit-free DKey, also check the [Not audit network applications of user if it logs in using this DKey) option.



The screenshot shows the 'User Attribute' configuration window. The 'DKey authentication' checkbox is checked. Below it, the 'Not audit network applications of user if it logs in using this DKey' checkbox is unchecked. A 'Generate DKey' button is visible at the bottom.

Step 4. Click the <Generate DKey> button to download and install the DKey driver. Then enter the DKey initial password and click <Write Into DKey> to write the user information into the DKey.



The screenshot shows the 'Generate DKey' dialog box. It contains a note: "Note: Please insert DKey, enter password and click "Write Into DKey" button." There are two password input fields: "DKey Initial Password" and "Confirm Password", both showing three dots. A blue link "(Download DKey Driver)" is present. At the bottom, there are "Write Into DKey" and "Cancel" buttons.

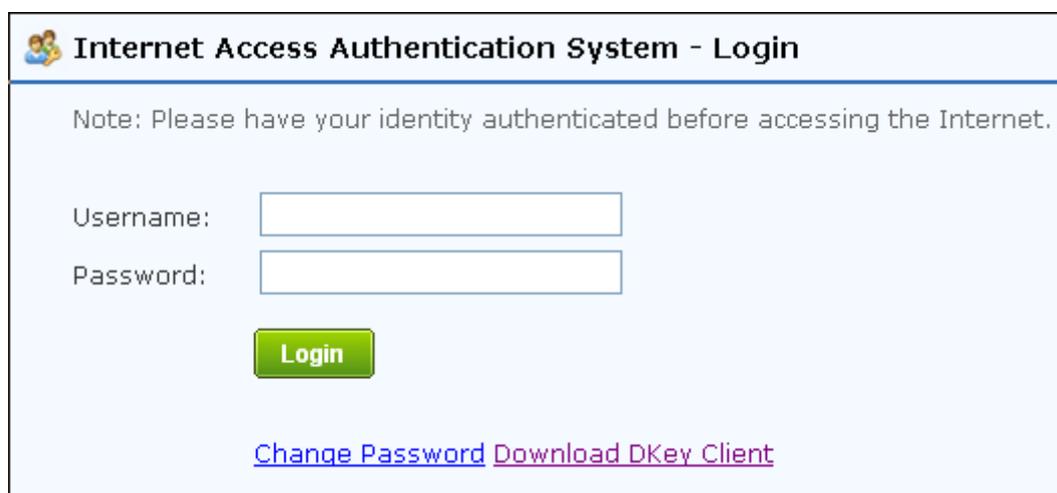
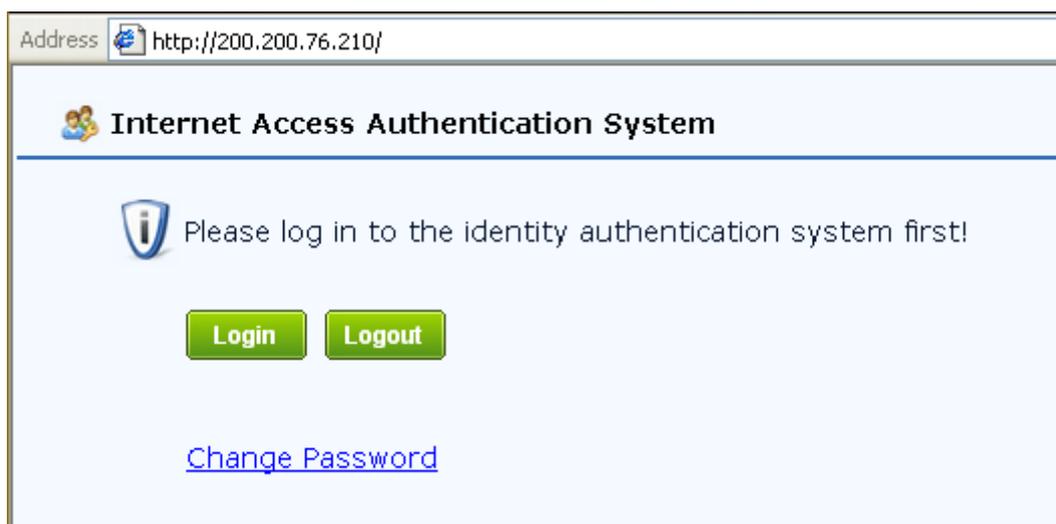
Step 5. Click <Commit> to save the DKey user.

Step 6. Download and install the DKey authentication client. The user adopting DKey authentication must install the DKey authentication client. To download it, you can:

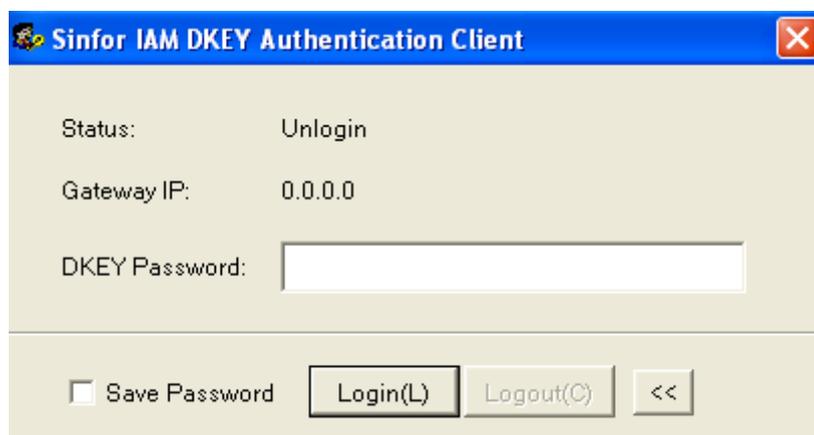
- ◆ Go to the following download website: <http://Device IP/DKeyauth.exe> (the **Device IP** should be replaced by the IP address of the IAM device)



- Visit <http://Device IP> to enter the Internet Access Authentication System and then click <Login> to open the download page.



Step 7. After the DKey authentication client is installed, when the DKey user starts the computer, a dialogue will appear for the user to enter DKey password, as shown in the following figure. If the [Save Password] option is checked, the user will automatically login after inserting the DKey into the computer without the need to enter the password again.



Step 8. Click <Login> to get authenticated. If the password is correct, the DKey user will pass the authentication and a prompt indicating the authentication success will pop up at the lower corner of the computer.

Step 9. After the DKey user logs in, the login status of the DKey user is as shown below:

User List									
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Username	Group	IP Address	Authentication	Terms Prompt	Login/Lock Time	Online Duration	Oper...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	dkey user	/	192.168.76.200	DKEY	Not required	2011-6-21 14:45:49Login	15 seconds	

## Add Multiple Users

The [Add Multiple Users] is used to add several users simultaneously. Different from [Add User], the user attributes [DKey authentication] and [Bidirectional binding of user/address] are unavailable when you add multiple users, because the two options are unique and cannot be set when you add multiple users.

When you add multiple users at a time, the attributes and policies of the users are exactly the same except the user names. You can type several usernames in the [Username List] text box and separate them from each other by comma, as shown in the following figure. Other configurations for adding multiple users are the same as those for adding a single user. Please refer to the previous section.

### 3.3.2.3.3 Delete Group/User

The [Delete] button enables you to delete unnecessary users or groups on the [User/Group] page.

To delete user/group, do as follows:

Step 1. Select the user or group that you want to delete.

Member List		Policy List									
+ Add		X Delete		Edit Multiple		Select		Search by Name		Type and press "Enter"	
No.	Name	Access Manage...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status						
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Engineering Dept	Block QQ,Audit	-	-						
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Engineers	Monitor QQ	-	-						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	3	IT Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-	-						
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Marketing Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-	-						
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Network Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-	-						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	6	default	Monitor QQ,Audit I...	-	-						

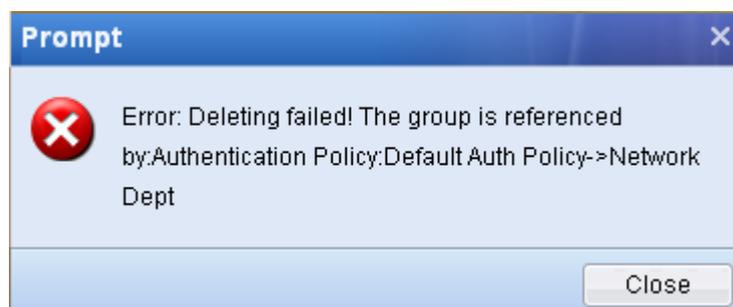
Step 2. Click the <Delete> button, and a dialogue appears, as shown below:

Step 3. Click <Yes> to confirm the deletion. After the user or group is deleted, a prompt will pop up to inform you of the successful deletion.



If a user group is referenced by any authentication policy on the [Authentication Policy] page, it cannot be deleted directly. When you delete it, a prompt will pop up to inform you of the deletion failure, as shown in the following figure. To delete the group, you need first delete the authentication

policy that references it on the [Authentication Policy] page and then delete the user group (for settings of [Authentication Policy], see section 3.3.3.1 "Authentication Policy").



### 3.3.2.3.4 Edit Multiple Groups/Users

When editing multiple users or groups simultaneously, you cannot edit the two user attributes [DKey authentication] and [Bidirectional binding of user/address], because the two options are unique.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to edit the following information of the six users **User1**, **User2**, **User3**, **User4**, **User5** and **User6** at a time:

- ◆ Change their description into **Engineer**.
- ◆ Change their authentication passwords into a same one.
- ◆ Unidirectionally bind the six users with the IP range 192.168.1.1-192.168.1.255.
- ◆ Change their account expiry date to 2012-1-1.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Check the six users, and then click the <Edit Multiple> button, as shown below:

Member List		Policy List									
+ Add ▾		✗ Delete		✍ Edit Multiple		🖱 Select ▾		Search by Name ▾		Type and press "Enter"	
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Access Manage...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	user1	Use policy of par...	None	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	user2	Use policy of par...	None	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	3	user3	Use policy of par...	None	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4	user4	Use policy of par...	None	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	5	user5	Use policy of par...	None	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	6	user6	Use policy of par...	None	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					

Step 2. On the displayed [Edit Multiple Users], check the [Description] option and enter **Engineer** in the text box. Then check [Password Settings], select [Local password] and type the password, as shown below:

**Edit Multiple Users**

**User Attribute** | Policy List

Username:  ⓘ

User Status

Enable  
 Disable

Description

Password Settings

Local password ⓘ

Password:

Confirm Password:

Change password after the initial authentication

Step 3. Check [Bind IP/MAC], select the [Enable IP/MAC Binding] option and select [Unidirectional binding of user/address]. Then check [Modify IP/MAC address], select [Bind IP] and type **192.168.1.1-192.168.1.255** in the text box, as shown below:

Bind IP/MAC

Enable IP/MAC Binding

Bidirectional binding of user/address ⓘ  
 Unidirectional binding of user/address ⓘ

Modify IP/MAC address

Bind IP       Bind MAC       Bind IP/MAC

One entry per row. It cannot be null. The users can login only from these addresses.

Step 4. Check [Expiry Date], select [Expired On] and set it to **2012-01-01 00:00**, as shown below:

Step 5. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.3.2.3.5 Export and Import Group/User

The [Export/Import] button enables you to export or import users/groups in a batch.

To import users, click the <Export/Import> button to select [Import] and the page will link to the [User Import] page, on which you can import the users. For detailed procedures, see section 3.3.2.4 "User Import".

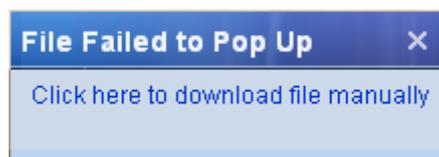
**Case Study:** Suppose you need to export the **Engineering Dept** group and its users.

To meet the requirement, do as follow:

Step 1. Select the **Engineering Dept** group on the [Member List] page, and then click the <Export/Import> button to select [Export], as shown below:

Member List		Policy List	
+ Add		X Delete	
Edit Multiple		Select	
Import/Export		Search by Name	
Type and press "Enter"			
No.	Name	Access	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1 Engineering Dept	Block	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	2 Engineers	Monitor QQ	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	3 IT Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	4 Marketing Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	5 Network Dept	Monitor QQ,Audit IM	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	6 default	Monitor QQ,Audit IM,Te...	-

Step 2. The console will give a prompt and displays a dialogue, as shown below:



Step 3. Click the link to download and save the exported file into the local computer.



When a group contains no user, it cannot be exported.

### 3.3.2.3.6 Move Group/User

The <Move> button enables you to move use/subgroup from a group to another group. If moving is successful, the user/subgroup will be removed from the original group and added into the target one. After being moved, the user/group will not use the access management policies of its own but those associated with the target group.

To move a user or subgroup, do as follows:

Step 1. Select the user or subgroup you want to move, as shown below:

No.	Name	Access Managem...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status
1	test1	Use policy of pare...	None	Never expire	✓

Step 2. Click the <Move> button, and the [Select Group] dialog appears, as shown below:

Step 3. Select your target group, and the user/subgroup will be moved to the target group.

No.	Name	Access Managem...	Address Bin...	Expiry Date	Status
1	sam	Use policy of pare...	None	Never expire	✓
2	test1	Use policy of pare...	None	Never expire	✓

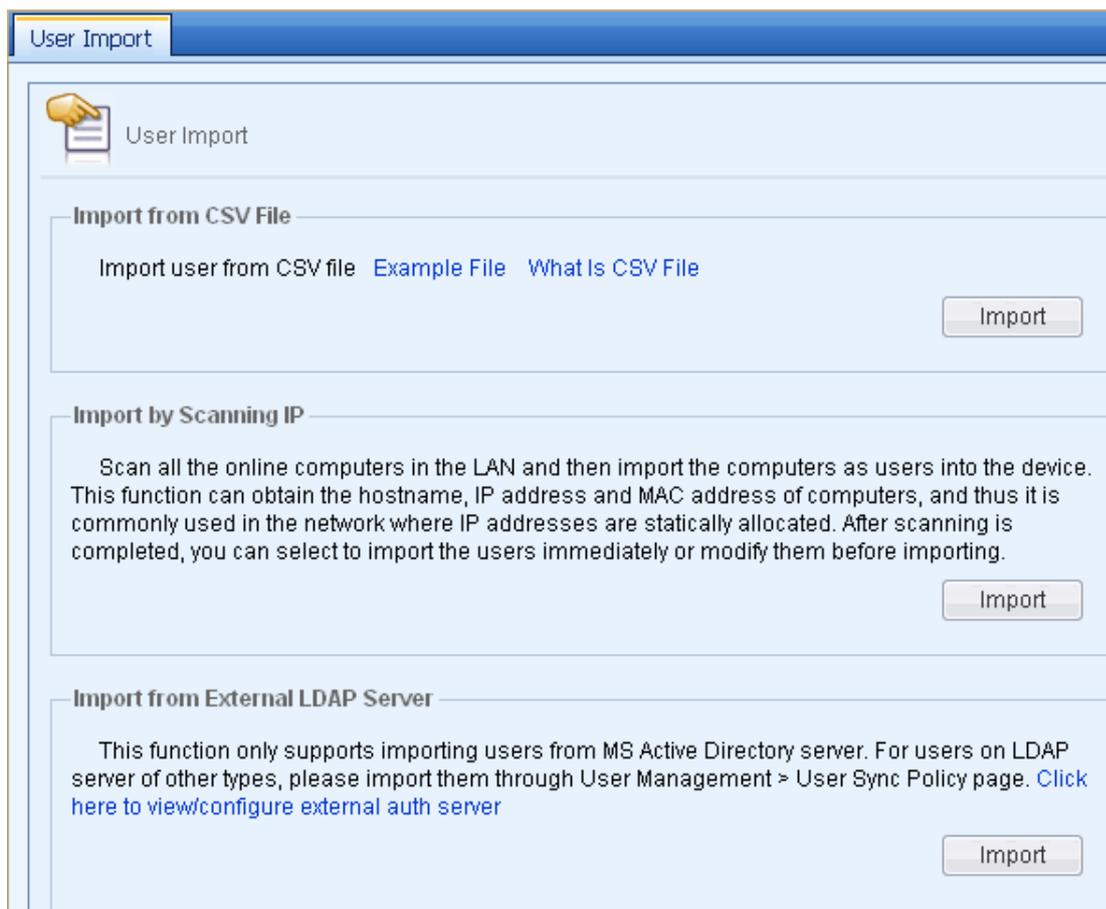


Some common administrators may only have the privilege to manage specified groups; therefore, they cannot move users/groups to a user group that is beyond their management privileges.

### 3.3.2.4 User Import

The [User Import] page enables you to import users in batches. It provides three ways to import users, as described in the following:

- ◆ [Import from CSV File] enables you to import users from a CSV file. When importing users, you can also import the user information such as display name, authentication method, binding IP/MAC address, password, etc. If the specified group to which the user belongs does not exist, it supports creating the group automatically.
- ◆ [Import by Scanning IP] enables you to import users that are bound with IP/MAC by scanning the corresponding MAC addresses in the local area network. The users imported in this way belong to the root group by default, no authentication, bound with IP/MAC. Their usernames are their host names obtained by scanning. When the IP address of a user to be imported conflicts with that bound with a user already existing on the device, the user cannot be imported.
- ◆ [Import from External LADP Server] enables you to synchronize the users from the LDAP server. It supports importing users from MS Active Directory server, in which the security groups on the Active Directory server will be imported as user groups, users imported into the corresponding security groups.



### 3.3.2.4.1 Import from CSV File

When importing users from a CSV file, you can import user information, such as display name, authentication method, binding IP/MAC address, password, etc. If the specified group to which the user belongs does not exist, it supports creating the user group automatically.

What is CSV file? CSV is a simple data format, which can be edited and saved by almost all spreadsheet software. For example, Microsoft EXCEL can edit the CSV file and conveniently convert an xls file a CSV file. The CSV file is very simple and does not support editing the attributes such as column width, font and color. To conveniently edit and manage users, you can first edit the user information in xls file and then convert it to CSV when importing it.



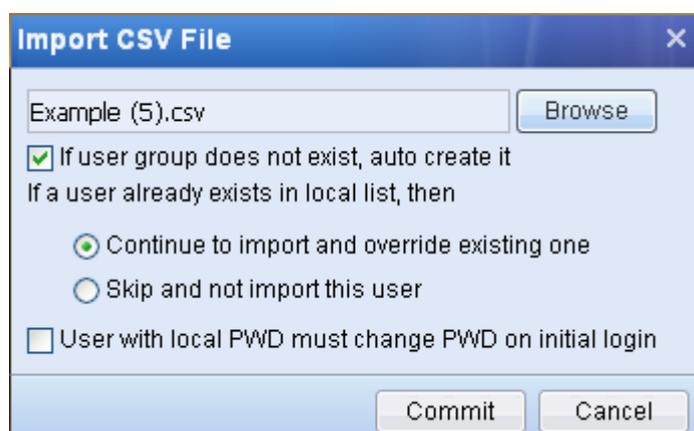
To import users from CSV file, do as follows:

Step 1. Set the user information in the specified format. For the format, click the [Example File] link to download an example file and set the user information to be imported according to the format in the example file.

Login Name	Display Name	Group(*)	Description	Local Password	Bind Address	Bind Address	Allow Multi-User Login	Enable Account	Expiry Time
Zhang Shan		/HQ/Market	New member	password					
Li Si		/HQ/HR	Local password is null		10.0.10.10		N	N	
ID_95471	Wang Wu	/Default Group	This user ad	N/A	10.0.1.0-10.0.1.255,192.		Y	Y	
Zhao Liu		/Default Group	password		00-A1-B2-C3-D4-E5,00		Y	Y	
Qian Qi		/Default Group		123	10.0.0.2(00-A1-B2-C3-D4-E5)		Y		2012-1-1 12:00
Mail Server		/Server		N/A	10.0.0.1		N		2012-5-1 12:00

Step 2. Import the CSV file.

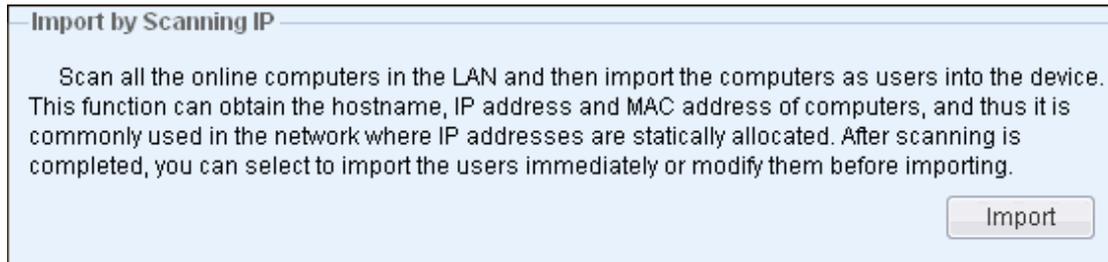
- Click the <Import> button to open the [Import CSV File] dialog and click <Browse> to select the CSV file to be imported.
- If you check the [If user group does not exist, auto create it] option, the system will automatically create the group if the user group corresponding to a user does not exist; otherwise, the user group will not be created and the corresponding user will be imported to the root group by default.
- The [If a user already exists in local list, then] item has two options. When a user already exists in the local user list, you can select [Continue to import and override existing one] to continue importing the user and update the attributes of the existing one, or select [Skip and not import this user] to skip the user, not updating the user attributes.



Step 3. Click <Commit> to import the users from the CSV file.

### 3.3.2.4.2 Import by Scanning IP

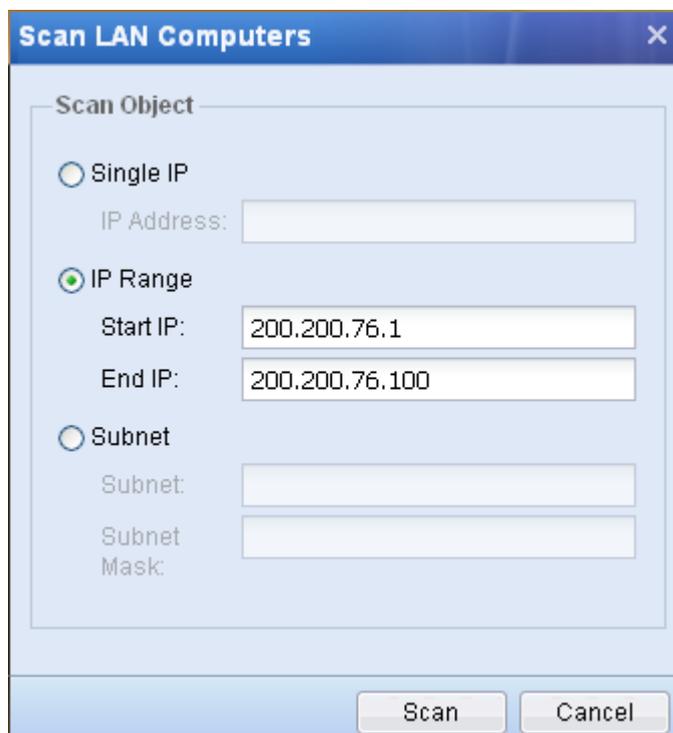
This function enables you to scan the MAC addresses according to the IP addresses in the local area network and then import them as users into the IAM device, with computer names as their user names. These users will be imported into the root group by default, with IP address and MAC address bound and no authentication required.



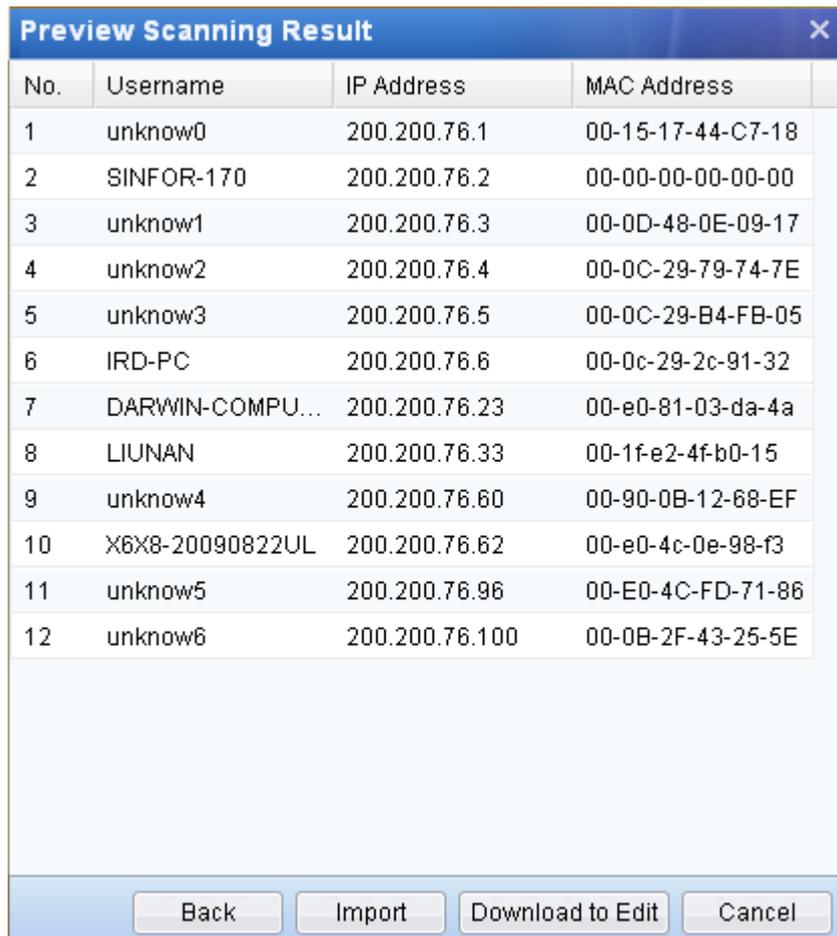
**Case Study:** Suppose you need to scan the computers in the IP range 200.200.76.1-200.200.76.100 and import them into the user list on the IAM device.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Click <Import> under the [Import by Scanning IP] section, and then type the IP range you want to scan, as shown below:



- Step 2. Click <Scan> to scan all the computers in the IP range, and the corresponding active computers are scanned out, with host names as their user names, as shown in the following figure:

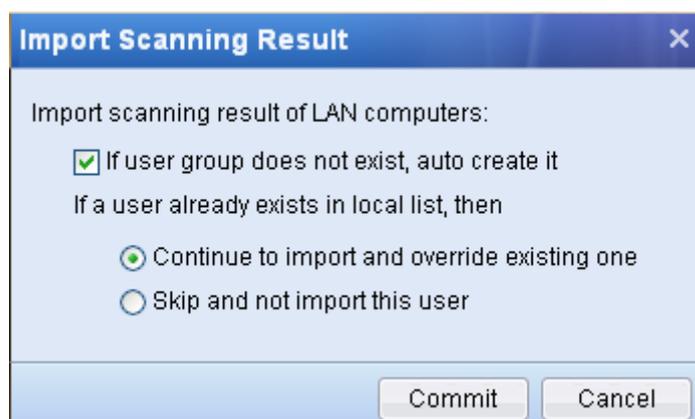


The image shows a dialog box titled "Preview Scanning Result" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains a table with 12 rows of scanning results. The columns are "No.", "Username", "IP Address", and "MAC Address". Below the table are four buttons: "Back", "Import", "Download to Edit", and "Cancel".

No.	Username	IP Address	MAC Address
1	unknow0	200.200.76.1	00-15-17-44-C7-18
2	SINFOR-170	200.200.76.2	00-00-00-00-00-00
3	unknow1	200.200.76.3	00-0D-48-0E-09-17
4	unknow2	200.200.76.4	00-0C-29-79-74-7E
5	unknow3	200.200.76.5	00-0C-29-B4-FB-05
6	IRD-PC	200.200.76.6	00-0c-29-2c-91-32
7	DARWIN-COMPU...	200.200.76.23	00-e0-81-03-da-4a
8	LIUNAN	200.200.76.33	00-1f-e2-4f-b0-15
9	unknow4	200.200.76.60	00-90-0B-12-68-EF
10	X6X8-20090822UL	200.200.76.62	00-e0-4c-0e-98-f3
11	unknow5	200.200.76.96	00-E0-4C-FD-71-86
12	unknow6	200.200.76.100	00-0B-2F-43-25-5E

Step 3. Import the scanning results into the IAM device.

- a. Click <Import>, and the following page appears:



The image shows a dialog box titled "Import Scanning Result" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The text inside reads: "Import scanning result of LAN computers:". Below this is a checked checkbox labeled "If user group does not exist, auto create it". Underneath, it says "If a user already exists in local list, then" followed by two radio button options: "Continue to import and override existing one" (which is selected) and "Skip and not import this user". At the bottom right are "Commit" and "Cancel" buttons.

- b. If you check the [If user group does not exist, auto create it] option, the system will automatically create the group when the user group corresponding to a user does not exist; otherwise, the user group will not be created and the corresponding user will be imported to the root group by default.

- c. The [If user already exists in local list, then] item has two options. When a user already exists in the local user list, you can select [Continue to import and override existing one] to continue importing the user and update the attributes of the existing user, or select [Skip and not import this user] to skip the user, not updating the user attributes.
- d. Click <Commit>, and the users are imported into the root group, as shown in the following figure:

Member List		Policy List							
+ Add		X Delete		Edit Multiple		Search by Name		Type and press "Enter"	
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Access Manag...	Address Bi...	Expiry Date	Status			
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	 ird-pc	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	 liunan	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	 sinfor-170	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	 unknow0	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	 unknow1	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	 unknow2	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	 unknow3	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	 unknow4	Use policy of p...	200.200.76...	Never expire	✓			

Step 4. Or, click <Download to Edit> in step 3 to save the scanning results as a CSV file into the local computer, then edit the scanning results and user attributes in the file, and finally click <Import> under the [Import from CSV file] section to import them into the IAM device (see section 3.3.2.4.1 "Import from CSV File").

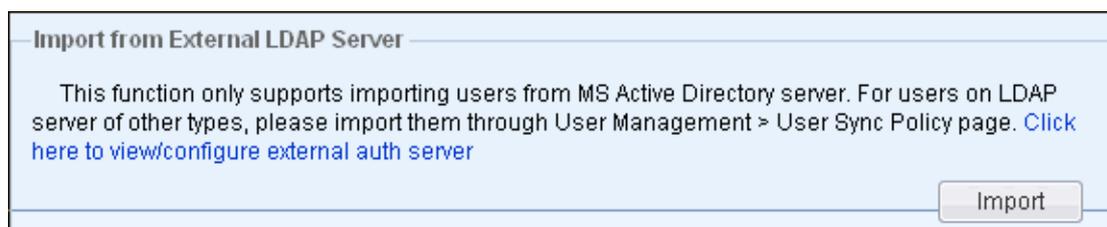


1. The IAM device obtains the MAC addresses corresponding to the IP addresses by sending ARP requests; therefore, to scan the MAC addresses of a certain IP range, you need to make sure the IAM device locates in the IP range.
2. The unknown username displayed in the scanning results indicates that the host name is not obtained. The hostname is obtained by the computer that has logged into the Web Console, using the NetBIOS protocol. If the hostname is not obtained, please check the following:
  - ◆ Whether the target computer has enabled the NetBIOS protocol;
  - ◆ Whether the target computer has configured multiple IP addresses;
  - ◆ Whether a firewall on the target computer has filtered the NetBIOS protocol;
  - ◆ Whether a device deployed in the network path has filtered the NetBIOS protocol.

### 3.3.2.4.3 Import from External LDAP Server

This function enables you to synchronize the users from the LDAP server to the IAM device. This function only supports importing users from the MS Active Directory server. For users on LDAP server of other types, please import them through the LDAP synchronization policy configured on [User Management] > [User Sync Policy] page (see section 3.3.2.5 "User Synchronization Policy").

To import users from LDAP server, first you need to configure the LDAP server (for detailed configurations, see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").



1. When importing users from LDAP server, you need install a control, which is only supported by the IE browser. Thus, please use the IE browser to import users from LDAP server.
2. To successfully import users from LDAP server, make sure the IAM device can connect to the TCP 389 port of the LDAP server to read and import the user information from the server.

### 3.3.2.5 User Synchronization Policy

The [User Sync Policy] function enables you to synchronize the users and groups from LDAP server, database server or H3C CAMS server to the IAM device. You can select the automatic synchronization mode and specify the synchronization interval so that the IAM device will automatically synchronize the users and groups with the server.

#### 3.3.2.5.1 Add Synchronization Policy

You can add three types of synchronization policies, namely, LDAP synchronization policy, database synchronization policy and H3C CAMS synchronization policy.

#### LDAP Synchronization Policy

For LDAP synchronization policy, there are two synchronization modes: [Sync by OU] and [Sync by security group (AD domain only)]. Their respective features and functions are described in the following

sections.

To synchronize the users, organizational units (OUs) or security groups from LDAP server to the IAM device, first, you need to configure the synchronization policy so that they will be synchronized according to the settings of the policy.

### Synchronize by OU

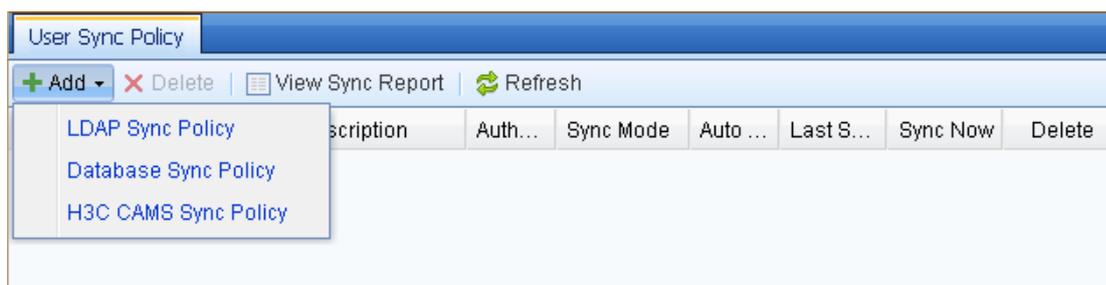
The [Sync by OU] mode is applicable to all types of LDAP server. By this mode, the OUs on the LDAP server will be synchronized in the form of user groups to the IAM device and the organization structure of OUs synchronized in the same way, ensuring the users still belongs to their respective groups after the synchronization.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a synchronization policy that automatically synchronizes the three OUs: OU=Engineering Dept, OU=Marketing Dept and OU=IT Dept, together with their sub OUs and users from the LDAP server to the IAM device. The organization structure on the LDAP server is as shown in the following figure:



To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Set the LDAP server from which you want to synchronize the OUs. Type the IP address, port, login username and password, and other information (for detailed configurations, see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Management] > [User Sync Policy] page, click <Add> and select [LDAP Sync Policy] to open the [LDAP Sync Policy] page.



Step 3. Type the policy name and description, set [Sync Mode] to **Sync by OU**, check the [Enable Auto Sync] option and specify the synchronization interval, as shown below:

**LDAP Sync Policy**

Policy Name: Sync1

Description: Sync engineering marketing and IT departments

Sync Mode: Sync by OU

Enable Auto Sync

Time Interval: 24 hours

Step 4. Configure the fields under [Sync Source], which are relevant information of the OUs to be synchronized from the LDAP server.

**Sync Source (Remote)**

LDAP Server: LDAP1

Synchronized Remote Target:

Select

OU=IT Dept,DC=train,DC=com  
 OU=Engineering Dept,DC=train,DC=com  
 OU=Marketing Dept,DC=train,DC=com

Create local OU from root directory of remote target

Create local OU from selected remote target

Create local OU from subdirectory of remote target

OU Import Depth: 16

Filter:

- Specify the LDAP server from which you want to synchronize the OUs. Here, select the LDAP server configured in Step 1.
- Specify the OUs to be synchronized. Click <Select> under [Synchronized Remote Target] to open the [Select Group] page and select the three OUs: Engineering Dept, Marketing Dept and IT Dept, and then click <OK> to confirm.
- Specify the starting point of synchronization. In this example, select the second option, that is, [Create local OU from selected remote target]. The meanings of the three options are respectively introduced in the following:

- ◆ [Create local OU from root directory of remote target]: Indicates the root domain on the LDAP server will be also synchronized as group together with the target OUs, with their hierarchical structure unchanged.
  - ◆ [Create local OU from selected remote target]: Indicates the synchronization will start from the selected OU.
  - ◆ [Create local OU from subdirectory of selected remote target]: Indicates the synchronization will start from the sub OU of the selected OU, while the selected OU and its direct users will not be synchronized to the IAM device.
- d. Specify the OU synchronization depth in [OU Import Depth]. If you set it to 10 and the synchronization starts from the selected OU, it means the sub OUs of up to 9 levels under the selected OU will be synchronized as user groups to the IAM device, while other sub OUs deeper than 9 levels will not be synchronized as user groups, but their users will be synchronized to the user group corresponding to sub OU of level 9 after the synchronization.
- e. Set the filter parameter in the [Filter] text box.

Step 5. Configure the fields under [Sync Destination], including import method, location to which the OUs and users will be synchronized, and attributes of synchronized users.

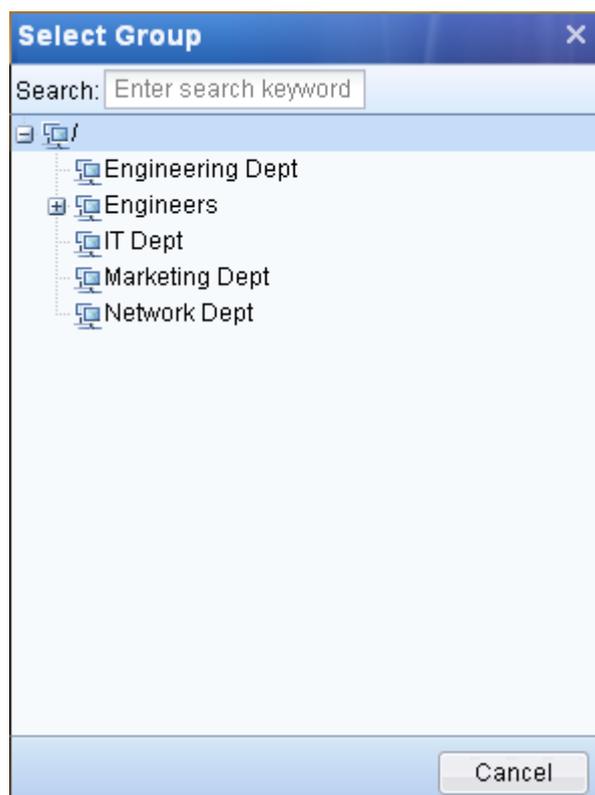
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Sync Destination (Local)". It contains the following elements:

- Sync Method:** Three radio button options:
  - Synchronize LDAP OU and user to local
  - Synchronize LDAP user to local, OU ignored
  - Synchronize LDAP OU to local, user ignored ⓘ
- Sync Remote Target To:** A text input field containing the character "/" and a small computer icon on the right.
- Synchronized accounts support multi-user login

- a. Select the synchronization method. In this example, select the first option, that is, [Synchronize LDAP OU and user to local]. The meanings of the three options are respectively introduced in the following:
- ◆ [Synchronize LDAP OU and user to local]: Indicates the OUs will be synchronized as user groups to the IAM device, with their respective users synchronized to the corresponding user groups.
  - ◆ [Synchronize LDAP user to local, OU ignored]: Indicates only the users in the OUs will be

synchronized to the IAM device, OUs ignored.

- ◆ [Synchronize LDAP OU to local, user ignored]: Indicates only the OUs will be synchronized as user groups to the IAM device, their users ignored.
- b. Set [Sync Remote Target To] to select a user group to which the OUs will be synchronized as sub groups. Click the  icon to open the [Select Group] page and select your desired user group. Then click <OK> to confirm.



- c. Check the [Synchronized accounts support multi-user login] option to set the synchronized domain accounts as public accounts, which means they can be used to login on multiple computers simultaneously; or uncheck it to set the synchronized accounts as private ones, which means they can be used on only one computer at a time.

Step 6. Click <Commit>, and the synchronization policy is listed the [User Sync Policy] page. You can click the  icon to start the synchronization immediately or wait for the automatic synchronization occurring once per day.

User Sync Policy									
+ Add   X Delete   View Sync Report   Refresh									
No.	Policy Name	Description	Authentica...	Sync Mode	Auto Sync	Last Sync ...	Sync Now	Delete	
1	Sync1	Sync engineering ...	LDAP	OU	Yes	Synchroniz...			

Step 7. After the OUs are synchronized, you can go to [User Management] > [Group/User] to view the synchronization results. Under [Organization Structure], the synchronized OUs are the same as those on the LDAP server.

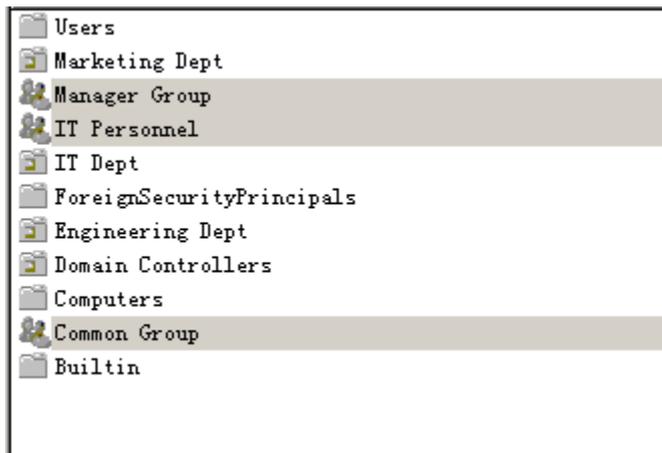


If the OU or user on the LDAP server has the same name with that of the user group or user already existing on the IAM device, the synchronization will fail.

### Synchronize by Security Group (AD Domain Only)

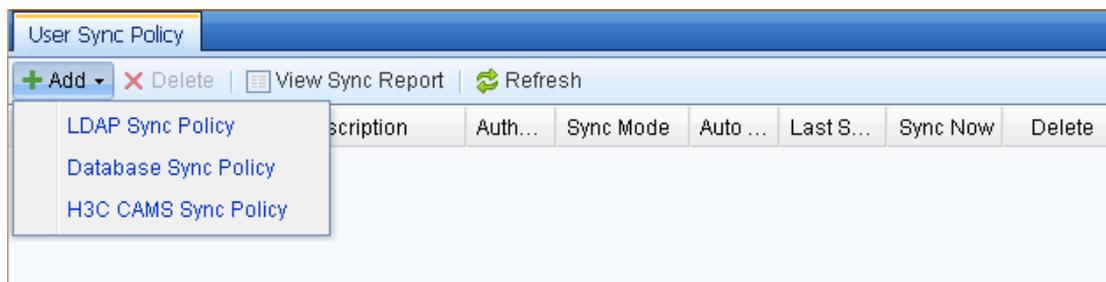
The [Sync by security group (AD domain only)] mode is only applicable to the Microsoft LDAP server, that is, AD domain. By this mode, the security groups on the AD domain server will be synchronized in the form of user groups to the IAM device. Since the security groups have no organization structure, all the security groups will be of the same level after being synchronized into the IAM device.

**Case Study:** Suppose you need to create a synchronization policy that automatically synchronizes the three security groups: CN=IT Personnel, CN=Manager Group and CN=Common Group, together with their users from the LDAP server to the IAM device. The security groups on the LDAP server are as shown in the following figure:



To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Set the LDAP server from which you want to synchronize the OUs. Type the IP address, port, login username and password, and other information (for detailed configurations, see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Management] > [User Sync Policy] page, click <Add> and select [LDAP Sync Policy] to open the [LDAP Sync Policy] page.



- Step 3. Type the policy name and description, set [Sync Mode] to **Sync by security group (AD domain only)**, check the [Enable Auto Sync] option and specify the synchronization interval, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the configuration form for an LDAP Sync Policy. The fields are as follows:

- Policy Name: Sync2
- Description: Sync IT personnel manager and common groups
- Sync Mode: Sync by security group (AD domain only) (selected from a dropdown menu)
- Enable Auto Sync (with an information icon)
- Time Interval: 24 hours (selected from a dropdown menu)

- Step 4. Configure the fields under [Sync Source], which are relevant information of the security groups to be synchronized from the LDAP server.

**Sync Source (Remote)**

LDAP Server:  
LDAP1

Synchronized Remote Target:

Select

CN=IT Personnel,DC=train,DC=com  
CN=Common Group,DC=train,DC=com  
CN=Manager Group,DC=train,DC=com

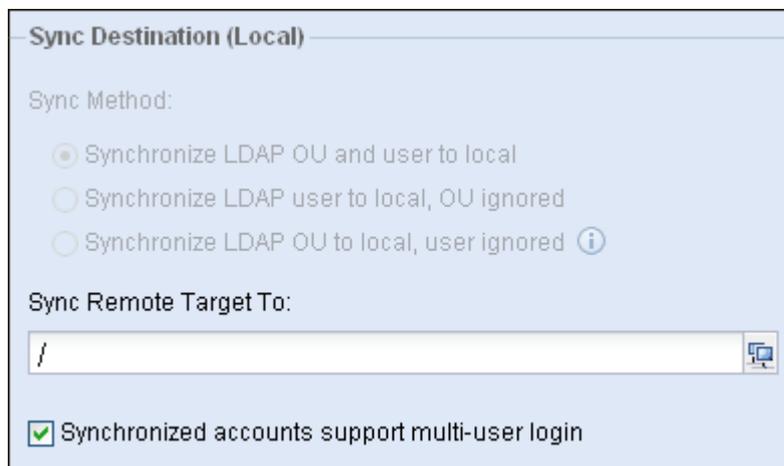
Create local OU from root directory of remote target ⓘ  
 Create local OU from selected remote target ⓘ  
 Create local OU from subdirectory of remote target ⓘ

OU Import Depth: 10 ⓘ  
Filter: ⓘ

- a. Specify the LDAP server from which you want to synchronize the security groups. Here, select the LDAP server configured in Step 1.
- b. Specify the security groups to be synchronized. Click <Select> under [Synchronized Remote Target] to open the [Select Group] page and select the three security groups: CN=IT Personnel, CN=Manager Group and CN=Common Group, and then click <OK> to confirm.
- c. Specify the starting point of synchronization. In this example, select the second option, that is, [Create local OU from selected remote target]. The meanings of the three options are respectively introduced in the following:
  - ◆ [Create local OU from root directory of remote target]: Indicates the root domain on the LDAP server will be also synchronized as group together with the target security groups, with their hierarchical structure unchanged.
  - ◆ [Create local OU from selected remote target]: Indicates the synchronization will start from the selected security groups.
  - ◆ [Create local OU from subdirectory of selected remote target]: Indicates the synchronization will start from the sub directory of the selected security group, while the selected security groups and its direct users will not be synchronized to the IAM device.
- d. Ignore the [OU Import Depth] option, because it is useless when synchronizing security groups.

- e. Set the filter parameter in the [Filter] text box.

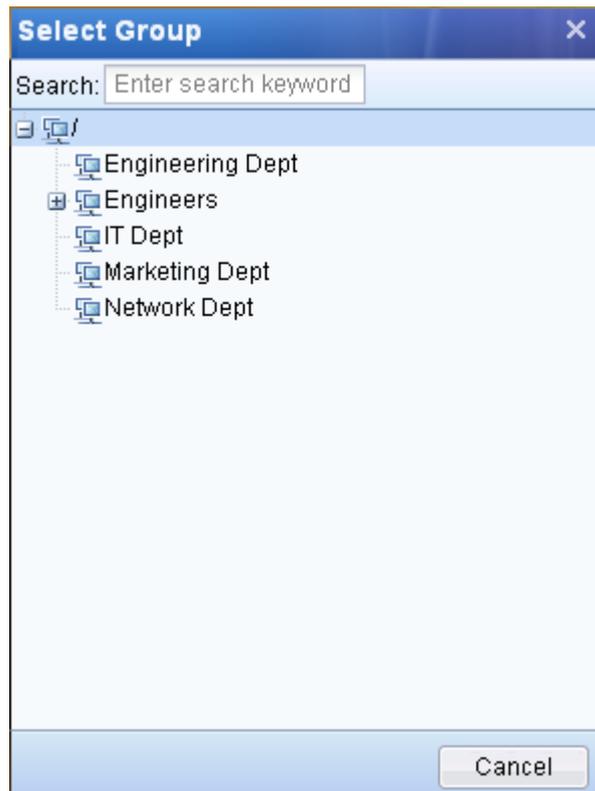
Step 5. Configure the fields under [Sync Destination], including the location to which the security groups and users will be synchronized, and attributes of synchronized users.



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Sync Destination (Local)". It contains the following elements:

- Sync Method:** Three radio button options:
  - Synchronize LDAP OU and user to local
  - Synchronize LDAP user to local, OU ignored
  - Synchronize LDAP OU to local, user ignored ⓘ
- Sync Remote Target To:** A text input field containing a forward slash (/) and a small icon of a computer monitor.
- Synchronized accounts support multi-user login

- a. The options of [Sync Method] are unavailable under the [Sync by security group] mode. By default, the system will synchronize both the security groups and their users to the IAM device.
- b. Set [Sync Remote Target To] to select a user group to which the security groups will be synchronized as sub groups. Click the  icon to open the [Select Group] page and select your desired user group. Then click <OK> to confirm.



- c. Check the [Synchronized accounts support multi-user login] option to set the synchronized domain accounts as public accounts, which means they can be used to login on multiple computers simultaneously; or uncheck it to set the synchronized accounts as private ones, which means they can be used on only one computer at a time.

Step 6. Click <Commit>, and the synchronization policy is added on the [User Sync Policy] page. You can click the  icon to start the synchronization immediately or wait for the automatic synchronization occurring once per day.

User Sync Policy									
+ Add   X Delete   View Sync Report   Refresh									
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Policy Name	Description	Authentica...	Sync Mode	Auto Sync	Last Sync ...	Sync Now	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Sync1	Sync engineering ...	LDAP	OU	Yes	Synchroniz...		
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Sync2	Sync IT personnel ...	LDAP	GROUP	Yes	Synchroniz...		

Step 7. After the security groups are synchronized, you can go to [User Management] > [Group/User] to view the synchronization results. Under [Organization Structure], the synchronized OUs are the same as those on the LDAP server.



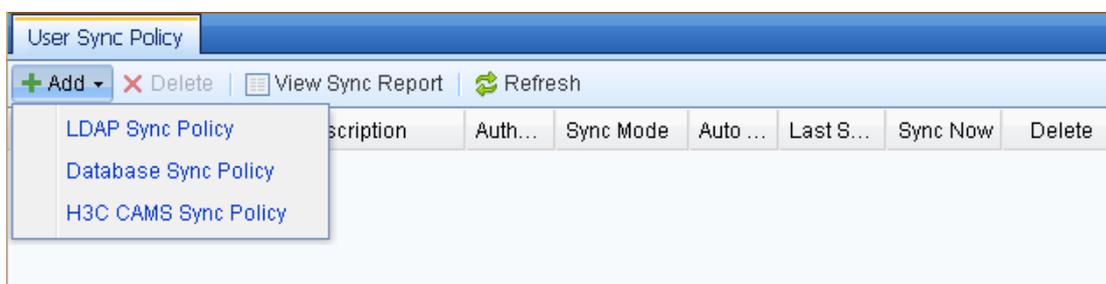
If the security group or user on the LDAP server has the same name with that of the user group or user already existing in the IAM device, the synchronization will fail.

## Database Synchronization Policy

To synchronize users and groups from database server to the IAM device, first, you need to configure the synchronization policy so that they will be synchronized according to the settings of the policy.

To add a database synchronization policy, do as follows:

- Step 1. Configure the database server from which you want to synchronize the users and groups. Type the IP address, port, login username and password, and other information (for detailed configurations, see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Management] > [User Sync Policy] page, click <Add> and select [Database Sync Policy] to open the [Database Sync Policy] page.



- Step 3. Type the policy name and description, check the [Enable Auto Sync] option and specify the synchronization interval, as shown below:

- Step 4. Configure [Sync Source]. Select the database server configured in Step 1, type the SQL statement for obtaining users and specify the group path separator. The [Group Path Separator] specifies the separator to be used to separate groups and subgroups when the user groups are stored in the format of "**Group**"+"Separator"+"**Subgroup**" in the database table. If you type "-", as shown in the following figure, it means the groups and subgroups will be separated by hyphen (-). If the field only contains groups of one level, that is, no subgroup is contained, leave [Group Path Separator] blank.

**Sync Source (Remote)**

Database Server:  
 dbserver

SQL Statement for Obtaining User: ⓘ  
 select username, groupname from ou;

Group Path Separator: ⓘ  
 /

Step 5. Configure [Sync Destination]. Select a local user group (to which the users will be synchronized) in the [Sync Remote Target To] text box. Check the [Synchronized accounts support multi-user login] option to set the synchronized domain accounts as public accounts, which means they can be used to login on multiple computers simultaneously; or uncheck it to set the synchronized accounts as private ones, which means they can be used on only one computer at a time.

**Sync Destination (Local)**

Sync Remote Target To:  
 /

Synchronized accounts support multi-user login

Step 6. Click [Test Validity], and it will list the users obtained, the corresponding group path and the time taken by executing SQL.

Step 7. Click <Commit>, and the synchronization policy is added on the [User Sync Policy] page. You can click the  icon to start the synchronization immediately or wait for the automatic synchronization occurring once per day.

### H3C CAMS Synchronization Policy

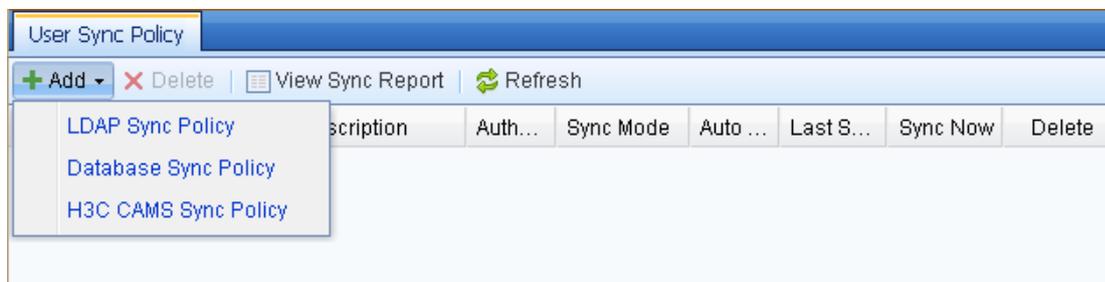
To synchronize users and groups from H3C CAMS server to the IAM device, first, you need to configure the synchronization policy so that they will be synchronized according to the settings of the policy.

To add an H3C CAMS synchronization policy, do as follows:

Step 1. Configure the H3C CAMS server from which you want to synchronize the users and groups. Type the IP address, port, login username and password, and other information (for detailed

configurations, see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").

- Step 2. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Management] > [User Sync Policy] page, click <Add> and select [H3C CAMS Sync Policy] to open the [H3C CAMS Sync Policy] page.



- Step 3. Type the policy name and description, check the [Enable Auto Sync] option and specify the synchronization interval, as shown below:

- Step 4. Configure [Sync Source]. Select the H3C CAMS server configured in Step 1.

- Step 5. Configure [Sync Destination]. Select a local user group (to which the users will be synchronized) in the [Sync Remote Target To] text box. Check the [Synchronized accounts support multi-user login] option to set the synchronized domain accounts as public accounts, which means they can be used to login on multiple computers simultaneously; or uncheck it to set the synchronized accounts as private ones, which means they can be used on only one computer at a time.

Step 6. Click <Commit>, and the synchronization policy is added on the [User Sync Policy] page. You can click the  icon to start the synchronization immediately or wait for the automatic synchronization occurring once per day.

### 3.3.2.5.2 Delete Synchronization Policy

If some synchronization policies are useless, you can delete them.

To delete a certain synchronization policy, select the policy on the [User Sync Policy] page and then click the <Delete> button. The deletion of synchronization policy will cause no effect on the groups and users already synchronized to the IAM device.

### 3.3.2.5.3 View Synchronization Report

Every time when the IAM device synchronizes users from LDAP server, Database server or H3C CAMS server, the system will generate a synchronization report for you to check the synchronization details.

To view synchronization report, click the <View Sync Report> on the [User Sync Policy] page, and then select and download the report you want to view.

Synchronization Report				
✘ Clear Sync Report				
No.	Report Name	Sync Mode	Sync Time	Sync Status
1	1308640256-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 15:10:56	Failure
2	1308640186-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 15:09:46	Failure
3	1308639434-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 14:57:14	Success
4	1308639433-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 14:57:13	Failure
5	1308639372-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 14:56:12	Failure
6	1308639311-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 14:55:11	Failure
7	1308639250-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 14:54:10	Failure
8	1308639189-2011-	Auto Sync	2011-06-21 14:53:09	Failure

## 3.3.3 User Authentication

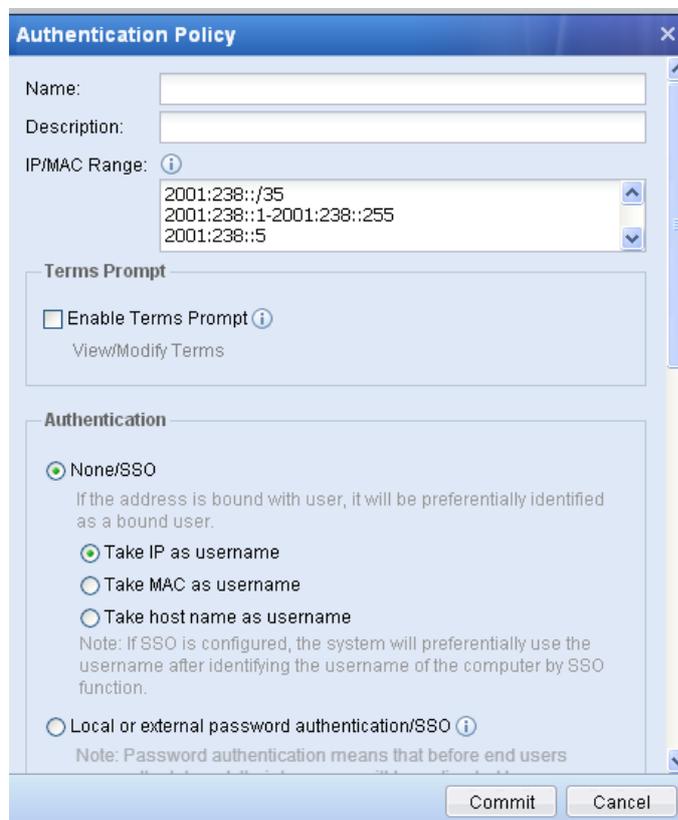
The [User Authentication] module enables you to configure the parameters related to user authentication, including the three configuration pages: [Authentication Policy], [Authentication Options] and [External Auth Server].

### 3.3.3.1 Authentication Policy

#### 3.3.3.1.1 Overview

Before connecting to the Internet, all the computers in the LAN must be authenticated so that the IAM device can identify the computers. [Authentication Policy] determines the authentication method of the computers corresponding to a certain IP/MAC address or the computers on a certain subnet. You can set the authentication method for LAN users and the authentication policy for new users on the [Authentication Policy] page. You can also set different authentication methods for computers on different network segments.

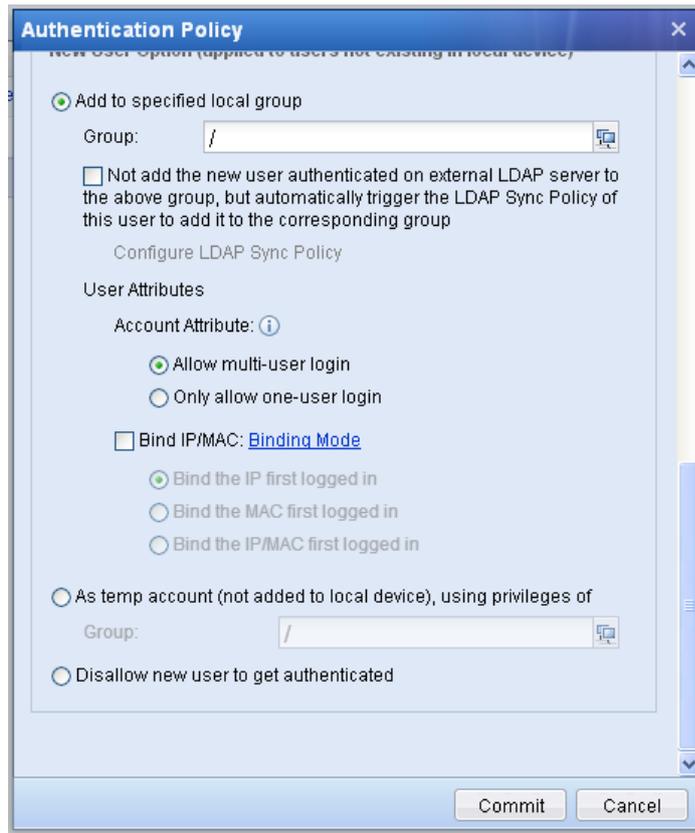
Authentication Policy is also applicable for IPv6 addresses by inserting the IPv6 addresses into the [IP/MAC Range]. There are three supported formats: single IPv6 address, a range of IPv6 addresses and a subnet of Ipv6 address. All users are temporary users by selecting [As temp account (not added to local device), using privilege of] and the users will be assigned into a specific group temporary. The users can be assigned into group by select [Add to specified local group]. IAM device does not support [Disallow new user to get authenticated] for IPv6 address at the moment.



The screenshot shows the 'Authentication Policy' configuration window. It includes the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Description:** A text input field.
- IP/MAC Range:** A list box containing three entries: '2001:238::/35', '2001:238::1-2001:238::255', and '2001:238::5'. An information icon is present to the left.
- Terms Prompt:** A section with an unchecked checkbox for 'Enable Terms Prompt' and a 'View/Modify Terms' link.
- Authentication:** A section with four radio button options:
  - None/SSO: If the address is bound with user, it will be preferentially identified as a bound user.
  - Take IP as username
  - Take MAC as username
  - Take host name as usernameA note below states: 'Note: If SSO is configured, the system will preferentially use the username after identifying the username of the computer by SSO function.'
- Local or external password authentication/SSO: A note below states: 'Note: Password authentication means that before end users'.

At the bottom right, there are 'Commit' and 'Cancel' buttons.



The authentication policies are matched from top to bottom; therefore, you can adjust the matching priority of an authentication policy by adjusting its display order.

## Authentication Method

The IAM device provides the following four authentications:

- ◆ None (no authentication required)
- ◆ Password authentication (local password authentication/external server authentication)
- ◆ SSO
- ◆ DKey authentication

The DKey authentication can be set directly in the user attributes when you are creating a user, and there is no need to set the [Authentication Policy] for DKey authentication. Besides, the DKey authentication takes the highest the priority among the four authentications. The other three authentications (that is, None, password authentication and SSO) are configured in authentication policy. For SSO, you also need to set relevant options on the [Authentication Options] page.

The available authentication options on the [Authentication Policy] page are [None/SSO], [Local or external password authentication/SSO] and [SSO only]. All the three authentication options include the SSO authentication. If SSO is configured on the [Authentication Options] page, the username will be

preferentially used to access Internet after it is identified through SSO.

The supported authentication option in IPv6 environment is [None/SSO] only. [Local or external password authentication/SSO] and [SSO only] are not supported.

#### 1. [None/SSO]

When this authentication option is selected and the SSO is configured on the [Authentication Options] page, the username will be preferentially used to access Internet after it is identified through SSO.

If the SSO is not configured, the IAM device will identify the user according to the source IP address, source MAC address and computer name contained in the packets. The advantage of this authentication (no authentication required) is that the authentication dialogue will not pop up to require users to enter username and password, so that the user will not perceive the existence of the IAM device.

To create a user with no authentication required, do any of the following:

- ◆ Select bidirectional binding of user and IP/MAC address when creating the user, and then select the [None/SSO] option when creating the authentication policy for the user. As the IP/MAC address and user are biunique in bidirectional binding, the IAM device can identify the user according to the IP/MAC address (please note that the IP/MAC address bound with the user must be included in the IP/MAC range specified in the corresponding authentication policy).
- ◆ Select the [None/SSO] option and take IP address, MAC address or host name as username when creating the authentication policy. When the LAN user is being authentication, the IAM device will match the corresponding username according to the IP/MAC address or host name.

#### 2. [Local or external password authentication/SSO]

If the SSO is not configured or SSO failed, the authentication process of the users adopting this authentication option is as follows:

Step 1. When a user is connecting to the Internet, the browser will be redirected to an authentication dialogue and the user is required to enter username and password. The user cannot connect to the Internet until it enters the correct username and password. Suppose the user types **test** and **password** respectively in the text boxes.

Step 2. The system then tries to find the **test** user in the local user list. If it exists in the local user list and the user has set a local password (that is, has set the [Local password] option in user attribute), the system will check whether the local password is **password**. If yes, the user will pass the authentication; otherwise, the user will fail the authentication.

Step 3. If there is no **test** user in the local user list, or it exists but the user has not set local password, the

system will go to external authentication server to verify the username and password. If both are correct, the user will pass the authentication; otherwise, the user will fail the authentications.

In brief, users adopting this authentication option will be first authenticated on the local IAM device. If the local authentication fails, they will be then authenticated on external authentication server.

### 3. [SSO only]

When this authentication option is selected, the users in the specified address range must use SSO to pass the authentication.

The configuration procedures are as follows:

- Step 1. Select the [SSO only] option when creating the authentication policy for a specified subnet or address range.
- Step 2. Enable SSO on the [Authentication Options] page. If it is domain SSO, you need also configure the domain server (see section 3.3.3.2.1 "SSO Options").
- Step 3. If SSO is not required for some users, you can specify the users in the [User Exception] text box. These users need to enter username and password manually to pass the authentication.

## New User Handling

The new users refer to the users who do not exist in the IAM device. For these users, the IAM device will match the authentication policy according to their IP or MAC addresses and determine whether to add the new users to the IAM device according to the settings under [New User Option] of the authentication policy.

Users who have passed the authentication will be automatically added to the IAM device. These users include users adopting none authentication (with IP/MAC or hostname as their usernames), users using SSO and users using external password authentication.

According to you needs, you can select one of the three handling ways for new user: [Add to specified local group], [As temp account] and [Disallow new user to get authenticated].

### 3.3.3.1.2 Add Authentication Policy

**Case Study 1:** Suppose your company has the following requirements for authentication:

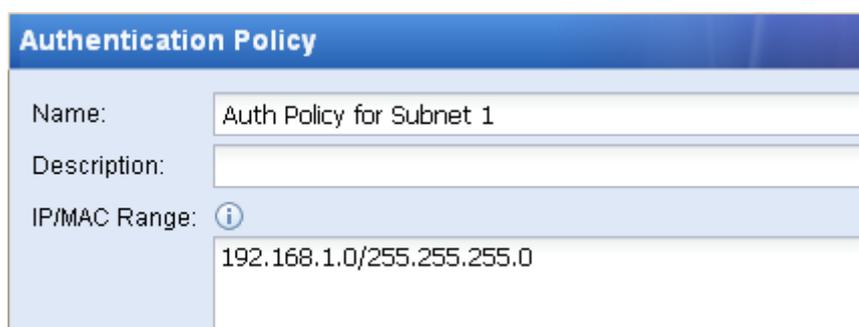
- ◆ The users in the **Engineering Dept** (subnet: 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0) adopt password authentication on third-party LDAP server, and new users should be added to the “/ Engineers” group with username bidirectionally bound with IP address.

- ◆ Users on other subnets adopt none authentication and take IP address as username, and new users should be added to the "/Default Group".

This configuration takes LDAP as an example to show how to configure external server authentication. For other types of external server, the configuration procedures are similar.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to the [External Auth Server] page to configure the LDAP authentication server (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page, and click <Add> to configure the authentication policy. Type the policy name and description information. [Name] is required and [Description] is optional.
- Step 3. Specify the IP/MAC address range to which this authentication policy applies. You can enter IP address, IP range or MAC address in the [IP/MAC Range] text box. When users access the Internet through the IAM device before they pass the authentication, the IAM device will match the corresponding authentication policy according to the IP or MAC address contained in the packets of the users. In this example, type **192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0**, as shown below:



The screenshot shows a web form titled "Authentication Policy". It contains three input fields: "Name" with the value "Auth Policy for Subnet 1", "Description" which is empty, and "IP/MAC Range" with the value "192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0". An information icon (i) is visible next to the IP/MAC Range field.

- Step 4. Specify the authentication method under [Authentication]. There are three options: [None/SSO], [Local or external password authentication/SSO] and [SSO only] (for the introduction to the three authentication methods, see section 3.3.3.1.1 "Overview"). In this example, as the requirement is to adopt password authentication on third party server, select the second option, as shown, below:

**Authentication Policy**

**Authentication**

None/SSO  
If the address is bound with user, it will be preferentially identified as a bound user.

Take IP as username  
 Take MAC as username  
 Take host name as username  
Note: If SSO is configured, the system will preferentially use the username after identifying the username of the computer by SSO function.

Local or external password authentication/SSO ⓘ  
Note: Password authentication means that before end users access the Internet, their browsers will be redirected to an Authentication page, on which username and password are required; otherwise, they cannot access the Internet.  
[Click to Configure External Auth Server](#)

SSO only ⓘ

User Exception:

Step 5. Specify the method for handling new users under [New User Option].

**New User Option (applied to users not existing in local device)**

Add to specified local group

Group:  ⓘ

Not add the new user authenticated on external LDAP server to the above group, but automatically trigger the LDAP Sync Policy of this user to add it to the corresponding group  
[Click to Configure LDAP Sync Policy](#)

**User Attributes**

Account Attribute: ⓘ

Allow multi-user login  
 Only allow one-user login

Bind IP/MAC [Binding Mode](#)

Bind the IP first logged in  
 Bind the MAC first logged in  
 Bind the IP/MAC first logged in

- a. The [Add to specified local group] option indicates whether to automatically add new users to the local user list. In this example, check this option and select the "/Engineers" user group in [Group], which means the new users authenticated on third party server will be added to this user

group.

Add to specified local group

Group:

Not add the new user authenticated on external LDAP server to the above group, but automatically trigger the LDAP Sync Policy of this user to add it to the corresponding group

[Click to Configure LDAP Sync Policy](#)

- b. The [Not add the new user authenticated on external LDAP to the above group, but automatically trigger the LDAP Sync Policy of this user to add it to the corresponding group] option means that the user authenticated on third-party LDAP server or using SSO will be synchronized according to the LDAP synchronization policy (if configured) to the corresponding group. If this option is checked, the user group selected in [Group] will be ineffective.
- c. Set user attribute, including [Account Attribute] and [Bind IP/MAC].
- ◆ For [Account Attribute], you can select [Allow multi-user login] or [Only allow one-user login]. This attribute only works for users with authentication required and has no effect on users who need not be authenticated.
  - ◆ For [Bind IP/MAC], there are two binding modes: unidirectional binding and bidirectional binding. Unidirectional binding indicates the user can only the specified address for authentication, and other users are also allowed to use it for authentication. Bidirectional binding indicates that user can only the specified address for authentication and only this user can use it. In this example, click [Binding Mode] to select bidirectional binding and then select the [Bind the IP first logged in] option, as shown below:

User Attributes

Account Attribute: ⓘ

Allow multi-user login

Only allow one-user login

Bind IP/MAC [Binding Mode](#)

Bind the IP first logged in

Bind the MAC first logged in

Bind the IP/MAC first logged in

- d. The [As temp account] option indicates the new users will not be added to local user list and they will access the Internet as temporary users using the privileges of the selected group.

- e. The [Disallow new user to get authenticated] option indicates new users are not allowed to be added to the local user list. The users who are no in the local user list cannot pass the authentication and therefore cannot connect to the Internet. They only have the privileges specified in [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [Other Options].

Step 6. If you want to add the users manually, go to the [User/Policy] > [User Management] > [Group/User] page, click <Add> to add the user. Type the username displayed on the external server in the [Login Name] text box, uncheck the [Local password] option (because if you check it, the user will adopt local password authentication and will not be authenticated on external server), and check [Bind IP/MAC] to bind the IP address, as shown below:

**Add User**

Enable User

Login Name:

Description:

Display Name:

Group:

**User Attribute** | Policy List

Local password ⓘ

Password:

Confirm Password:

Change password after the initial authentication

DKey authentication

Not audit network applications of user if it logs in using this DKey  
(supported only by specified DKey; please contact the device provider)

Bind IP/MAC: [Binding Mode](#)

Bind IP ⓘ     Bind MAC ⓘ     Bind IP/MAC ⓘ

One entry per row. "#" is an annotation symbol, for example,  
#200.200.0.1

Step 7. Configure authentication policy for users on other subnet. Since the requirement is that users on other subnet need not be authenticated, with IP as username and new users added to the “/Default Group” user group, go to the [Authentication Policy] page and click the [Default Policy] to edit

the default policy.

- a. Under [Authentication] section, check the [None/SSO] option and click [Take IP as username], as shown below:

- b. Under the [New User Option] section, check [Add to specified local group] and select “/Default Group”, as shown below:

**New User Option (applied to users not existing in local device)**

Add to specified local group

Group:

Not add the new user authenticated on external LDAP server to the above group, but automatically trigger the LDAP Sync Policy of this user to add it to the corresponding group

[Click to Configure LDAP Sync Policy](#)

c. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

Step 8. Adjust the sequence of the authentication policies. Since the authentication policies are matched from top to bottom, the two policies configured in this example should be displayed in the order as shown below:

Authentication Policy									
<a href="#">+ Add</a>   <a href="#">Edit Multiple</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>   <a href="#">Up</a>   <a href="#">Down</a>   <a href="#">Import</a>   <a href="#">Example File</a>									
<input type="checkbox"/>	...	Name	IP/MAC	Authentica...	New Us...	Terms ...	Description	Move	...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Password Authentication	0.0.0.0-0.0.0.1	Password ...	Add to g...	Disable	Example p...	↑ ↓ ×	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Require Joining Domain	0.0.0.0-0.0.0.1	SSO only	Add to g...	Disable	Example p...	↑ ↓ ×	
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Auth Policy for Subnet 1	192.168.1.0...	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Default Policy	0.0.0.0-255...	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable	Default Policy	↑ ↓ ×	

**Case Study 2:** Suppose your company requires that all the computers in the IP range 192.168.2.1-192.168.2.255 will be added as new users to the “/Marketing Dept” group, with no authentication required, host name as their usernames and bidirectionally bound with MAC address.

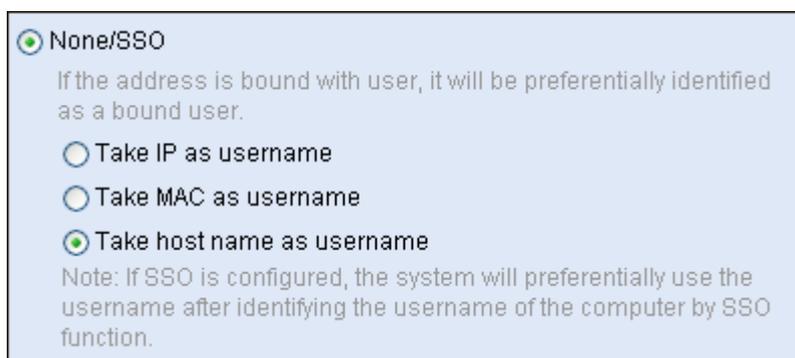
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [Obtain MAC through SNMP] page to set the relevant options (see section 3.3.3.2.4 "Obtain MAC Through SNMP").
- Step 2. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page and click <Add> to configure the authentication policy. Type the policy name, description information, and applicable IP/MAC range, as shown below:



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Authentication Policy". It contains three input fields: "Name" with the value "Auth Policy for Marketing Dept", "Description" with the value "authentication policy for marketing department", and "IP/MAC Range" with the value "192.168.2.1-192.168.2.255". An information icon (i) is located to the left of the IP/MAC Range field.

Step 3. Under the [Authentication] section, check the [None/SSO] option and select [Take host name as username], as shown below:



The screenshot shows a section with four radio button options. The first option, "None/SSO", is selected and has a sub-note: "If the address is bound with user, it will be preferentially identified as a bound user." The other three options are "Take IP as username", "Take MAC as username", and "Take host name as username". A note at the bottom states: "Note: If SSO is configured, the system will preferentially use the username after identifying the username of the computer by SSO function."

Step 4. Configure the [New User Option]. Check the [Add to specified local group] and select the “/Marketing Dept/” group. Then check the [Bind IP/MAC] option and select [Bind the MAC first logged in]. In this example, since the intranet crosses over the layer 3 switch, the MAC address must be obtained through the SNMP protocol from the switch (configure the related options on the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [Obtain MAC through SNMP] page).

**New User Option (applied to users not existing in local device)**

Add to specified local group

Group:

Not add the new user authenticated on external LDAP server to the above group, but automatically trigger the LDAP Sync Policy of this user to add it to the corresponding group

[Click to Configure LDAP Sync Policy](#)

User Attributes

Account Attribute: ⓘ

Allow multi-user login

Only allow one-user login

Bind IP/MAC [Binding Mode](#)

Bind the IP first logged in

Bind the MAC first logged in

Bind the IP/MAC first logged in

Step 5. Click <Commit> to save the authentication policy.



1. The IAM device obtains the host name of the computers through the NetBIOS protocol. When the IAM device fails to obtain the host name, it will take the computer as temporary user with the username being **Unknown Computer** and will not add it into the local group. You can only view this user on [Online Users] page. In case the hostname is not obtained, please check the following:

- ◆ Whether the target computer has enabled the NetBIOS protocol;
- ◆ Whether the target computer has configured multiple IP addresses;
- ◆ Whether a firewall on the target computer has filtered the NetBIOS protocol;
- ◆ Whether a device deployed in the network path has filtered the NetBIOS protocol.

2. If the data requested by user computers go through the IAM device by way of one or more layer 3 switches, the source MAC addresses will change and IAM device cannot obtain the correct source MAC addresses. In this case, you can use the following two methods to identify the correct source MAC address:

- ◆ Use the SNMP protocol to obtain the ARP table of the layer 3 switch that is nearest to the local computer (that is, the gateway device that the computer directs to) and therefore to obtain the real source MAC address.
- ◆ Enable the Ingress System and install the Ingress Client on local computers to obtain real

source MAC address (this method is NOT recommended, because the real MAC address obtained by Ingress Program is not applicable for automatically adding user with MAC address as username or adding user with MAC address bound).

**Case Study 3:** Suppose your company requires that:

- ◆ The computers on the 192.168.3.0/255.255.255.0 subnet use AD domain SSO for authentication (that is, once the users pass the AD domain authentication, they also pass the authentication on the IAM device).
- ◆ The AD domain users should be synchronized to the IAM device.
- ◆ If the users on the subnet fails the SSO login or have not logged into the domain, they should be automatically added to the “/Default Group”, with IP address as username and no authentication required.

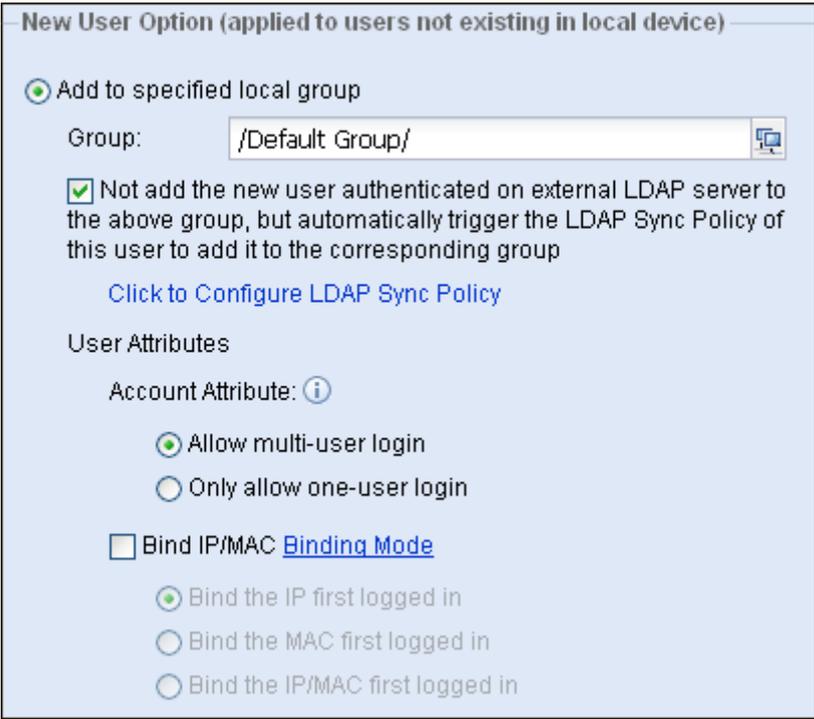
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Configure external authentication server and LDAP synchronization policy (see sections 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server" and 3.3.2.5 "User Synchronization Policy").

Step 2. Go to the [Authentication Policy] page and click <Add> to configure the authentication policy. Type the policy name, description information, and applicable IP/MAC range, as shown below:

Step 3. Under the [Authentication] section, check the [None/SSO] option and select [Take IP as username], as shown below:

- Step 4. Configure the [New User Option].
- Check the [Add to specified local group] and select the “/Default Group/” group, indicating the users having not configured SSO will be automatically added to the **Default Group**, adopting the access management policy of Default Group.
  - Check the [Not add the new user authenticated on external LDAP to the above group, but automatically trigger the LDAP Sync Policy of this user to add it to the corresponding group] option, indicating the users using domain SSO will be added to the corresponding groups according to the synchronization policy.
  - In this example, you cannot select bidirectional binding, because after the user who has not configured SSO is added and bound with IP/MAC bidirectionally, the IP/MAC address can be used only by this user and cannot conduct SSO authentication any longer. However, you can select unidirectional binding.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "New User Option (applied to users not existing in local device)". It contains the following configuration options:

- Add to specified local group
  - Group: /Default Group/
- Not add the new user authenticated on external LDAP server to the above group, but automatically trigger the LDAP Sync Policy of this user to add it to the corresponding group
  - [Click to Configure LDAP Sync Policy](#)
- User Attributes
  - Account Attribute: ⓘ
    - Allow multi-user login
    - Only allow one-user login
  - Bind IP/MAC [Binding Mode](#)
    - Bind the IP first logged in
    - Bind the MAC first logged in
    - Bind the IP/MAC first logged in

Step 5. Click <Commit> to save the authentication policy.

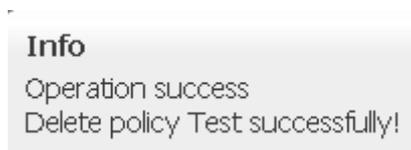
### 3.3.3.1.3 Delete Authentication Policy

You can delete useless authentication policies.

To delete authentication policy, select one or several authentication policies you want to delete, click

<Delete> and then click <Yes> to confirm.

After the policy is deleted, the Web console gives a prompt, as shown below:



### 3.3.3.1.4 Edit Multiple Authentication Policies

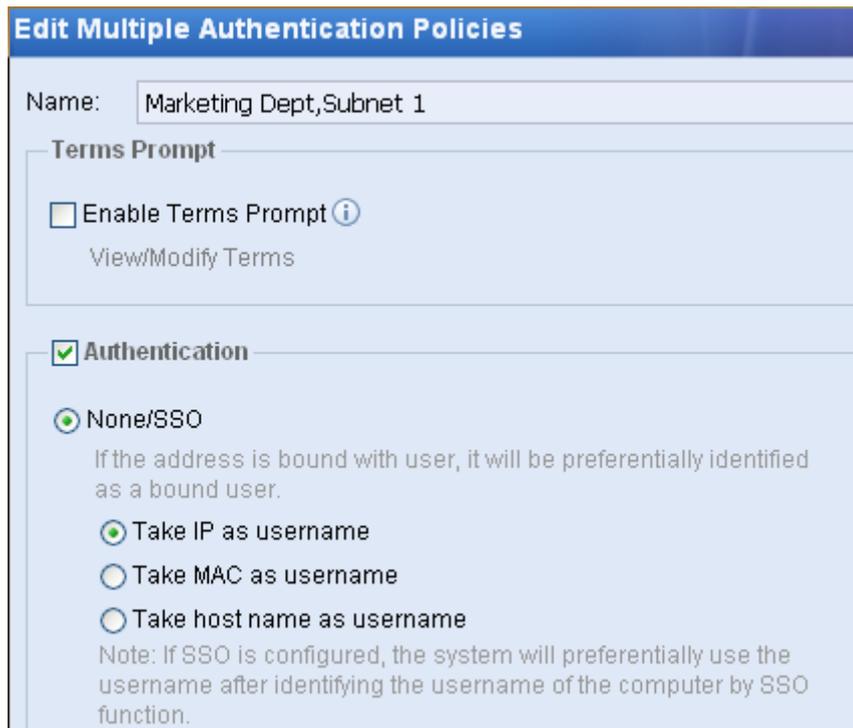
You can edit multiple authentication policies simultaneously. In this case, you can edit all the attributes except [Name] and [Description].

**Case Study:** Suppose you want to change the authentication method of the authentication policies **Marketing Dept** and **Subnet 1** to "None", and new user option to [Take hostname as new user].

Step 1. Select the two authentication policies, as shown below:

Authentication Policy									
<span>+ Add</span> <span>✎ Edit Multiple</span> <span>✖ Delete</span> <span>↑ Up</span> <span>↓ Down</span> <span>📁 Import</span> <a href="#">Example File</a>									
<input type="checkbox"/>	...	Name	IP/MAC	Authentica...	New Us...	Terms ...	Description	Move	...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Marketing Dept	200.200.1.10	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ✖	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	Subnet 1	1.1.1.2	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ✖	

Step 2. Click <Edit Multiple> to enter [Edit Multiple Authentication Policies] page, check the [Authentication] section and select [None/SSO] and [Take hostname as username], as shown below:



**Edit Multiple Authentication Policies**

Name: Marketing Dept,Subnet 1

**Terms Prompt**

Enable Terms Prompt ⓘ  
View/Modify Terms

**Authentication**

None/SSO  
If the address is bound with user, it will be preferentially identified as a bound user.

Take IP as username  
 Take MAC as username  
 Take host name as username

Note: If SSO is configured, the system will preferentially use the username after identifying the username of the computer by SSO function.

Step 3. Click <Commit> to complete batch editing.



In batching editing, if you only edit the options under [Authentication] section, the settings under [New User Option] will keep unchanged; likewise, if you only edit the options under [New User Option] section, the settings under [Authentication] will keep unchanged.

### 3.3.3.1.5 Adjust Priority of Authentication Policy

Like access management policy, the authentication policies are also matched from top to bottom. The lower the sequence number is, the higher the priority of the policy is. When a user is being authenticated, the system will match the authentication policies from top to bottom according to the IP/MAC address of the user. Once a policy is matched, the system will adopt the authentication method configured in the policy for the user.

For example, suppose the applicable IP range configured in the authentication policy **Marketing Group1** is 192.168.2.1-192.168.2.10, while that in authentication policy **Marketing Dept** is 192.168.2.1-192.168.2.255. Obviously, the applicable IP range of **Marketing Group1** is included in that of **Marketing Dept**, which will cause that the users in the IP range 192.168.2.1-192.168.2.10 may adopt the authentication policy **Marketing Dept**.

Authentication Policy									
<a href="#">+ Add</a> <a href="#">Edit Multiple</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a> <a href="#">Import</a> <a href="#">Example File</a>									
<input type="checkbox"/>	...	Name	IP/MAC	Authentica...	New Us...	Terms ...	Description	Move	...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Marketing Dept	200.200.1.10	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	Marketing Group1	192.168.1.20	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	

To change the situation, check the **Marketing Group1** authentication policy, click <Up> to move it above the **Marketing Dept** policy, ensuring that **Marketing Group1** policy takes higher priority than **Marketing Dept** policy and the users in the IP range 192.168.2.1-192.168.2.10 will first adopt the **Marketing Dept** authentication policy.

Authentication Policy									
<a href="#">+ Add</a> <a href="#">Edit Multiple</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a> <a href="#">Import</a> <a href="#">Example File</a>									
<input type="checkbox"/>	...	Name	IP/MAC	Authentica...	New Us...	Terms ...	Description	Move	...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Marketing Group1	192.168.1.20	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Marketing Dept	200.200.1.10	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	

### 3.3.3.1.6 Import Authentication Policy

When there are a number of authentication policies, you can import them through a CSV file.

Authentication Policy									
<a href="#">+ Add</a> <a href="#">Edit Multiple</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a> <a href="#">Import</a> <a href="#">Example File</a>									
<input type="checkbox"/>	...	Name	IP/MAC	Authentica...	New Us...	Terms ...	Description	Move	...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Marketing Group1	192.168.1.20	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Marketing Dept	200.200.1.10	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Subnet 1	1.1.1.2	None (tak...	Add to g...	Disable		↑ ↓ ×	

For the format of the CVS file, please click the [Example File] link to download the example file and view the format, and then edit the authentication policies according to the specified format. The example file is as shown below:

#IP/MAC: this field cannot be left blank, multiple entries are supported and separated from each other by comma. It supports the following form					
#Authentication Method: filled in with "IP authentication" or "Password authentication", being left blank means IP authentication.					
#New User Option: filled in with "Add to local group", "Deny Internet access" or "Temp account", being left blank means "Add to local group".					
Policy Name	Description	IP/MAC	Authentication Method	New User Option	Group
policy1	policy1	200.200.20.0-200.200.20.123	IP Authentication	Temp account	/
policy1.1	policy1.1	200.200.20.24	IP Authentication	Temp account	/
policy1.2	policy1.2	200.200.20.126-200.200.20.128	IP Authentication	Temp account	
policy2	policy2	00-1C-F1-09-50-1A		Deny Internet access	/Default Group
policy2.1	policy2.1	200.200.20.245,200.200.20.5		Deny Internet access	Default Group/
policy3	policy3	200.200.20.0/255.255.255.0,192.168.30.0/2	Password Authentication		Default Group
policy4	policy4	00-1C-F1-09-69-1A,00-2C-F2-09-69-1A	Password Authentication	Add to local group	/
policy5	policy5	00-1c-f1-09-69-1b	Password Authentication	Add to local group	/

After editing and saving the policy file according to the example file, click <Import> to import the file.

### 3.3.3.2 Authentication Options

The [Authentication Option] is used to set relevant information of user authentication on the IAM device, including the settings of [SSO Options], [Auth Page Redirection], [Authentication Conflict], [Obtain MAC Through SNMP] and [Other Options].

#### 3.3.3.2.1 SSO Options

When LAN users are authenticated on a third-party server, they can use SSO to pass the authentication on the IAM device as long as they pass the authentication on third-party server and obtain relevant privileges to access the Internet. The username and password for authentications on the IAM device are the same as those on the third-party server. Currently, the IAM device supports the following types of SSO: AD domain SSO, Proxy SSO, POP3 SSO and Web SSO. The settings configured on this page only fulfill the basic method to realize the SSO. To complete the configurations of SSO, you need also configure users, authentication methods of users, and authentication servers respectively on the [Group/User], [Authentication Policy] and [External Auth Server] pages (see sections 3.3.2.3 "Group/User", 3.3.3.1 "Authentication Policy" and 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").

#### Domain SSO

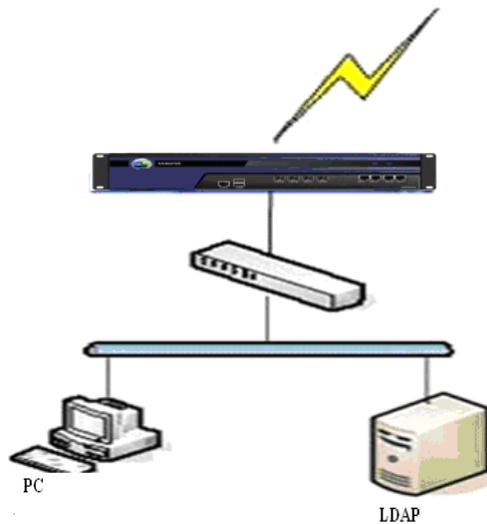
If there is a Microsoft Active Directory (AD) domain server for managing users in the network and LAN users uses domain accounts to log into the computers, the domain Single Sign-On (SSO) can be used to enable the LAN users to pass the authentication on the IAM device after they log into the domain. In other words, by using the domain SSO, the LAN users can access Internet once they log into the domain, no need to be authenticated by the IAM device.

There are two ways to realize domain SSO: one is by executing domain script and the other is by monitoring the packets of users logging into the domain. The domain SSO is only applicable to the Microsoft Active Directory domain.

#### By Executing Domain Script

To realize domain SSO by executing domain script, you need to configure the logon (logon.exe) and logoff (logoff.exe) scripts on the domain server. After that, when users log in to or log out of the domain, the domain policy will be sent to execute the logon or logoff script and complete the login to or logout of the IAM device at the same time.

Topology:



In this mode, the data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC requests for logging into the domain.
2. Domain returns the "successful login" to the PC.
3. PC runs the logon.exe and reports the "successful login to domain" to the IAM device.

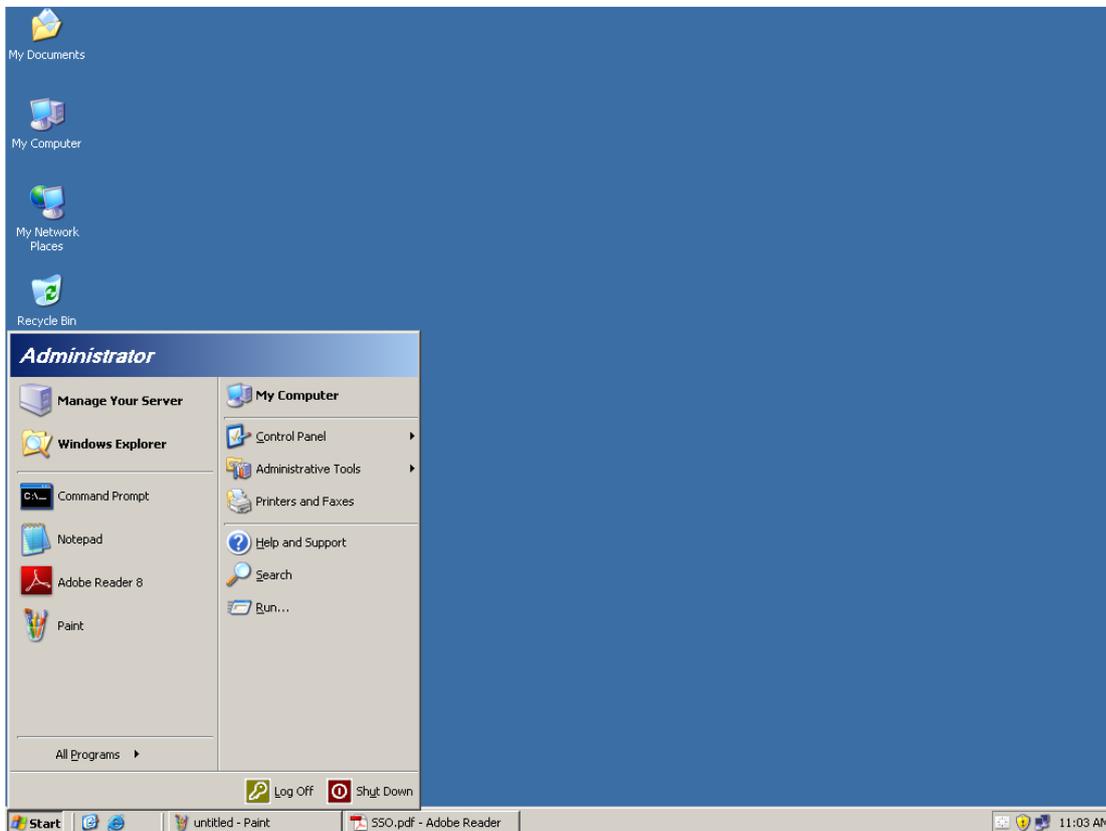
To achieve the AD domain SSO by executing domain script, do as follows:

- Step 1. Configure the AD domain server. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [External Auth Server] page to configure (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Configure the domain SSO function on the IAM device.
  - a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Domain] page, and check the [Enable Domain SSO] option.
  - b. Check the [Obtain login profile by executing logon script through domain] option (indicating achieving SSO by executing domain script) and type the shared key (used for encrypted communication between AD domain server and IAM device) in [Shared Key] text box. The shared key set in the logon script must be the same as this one.
  - c. Click the [click here to download] link to download the logon and logoff scripts which will be used in Step 3 and Step 4.

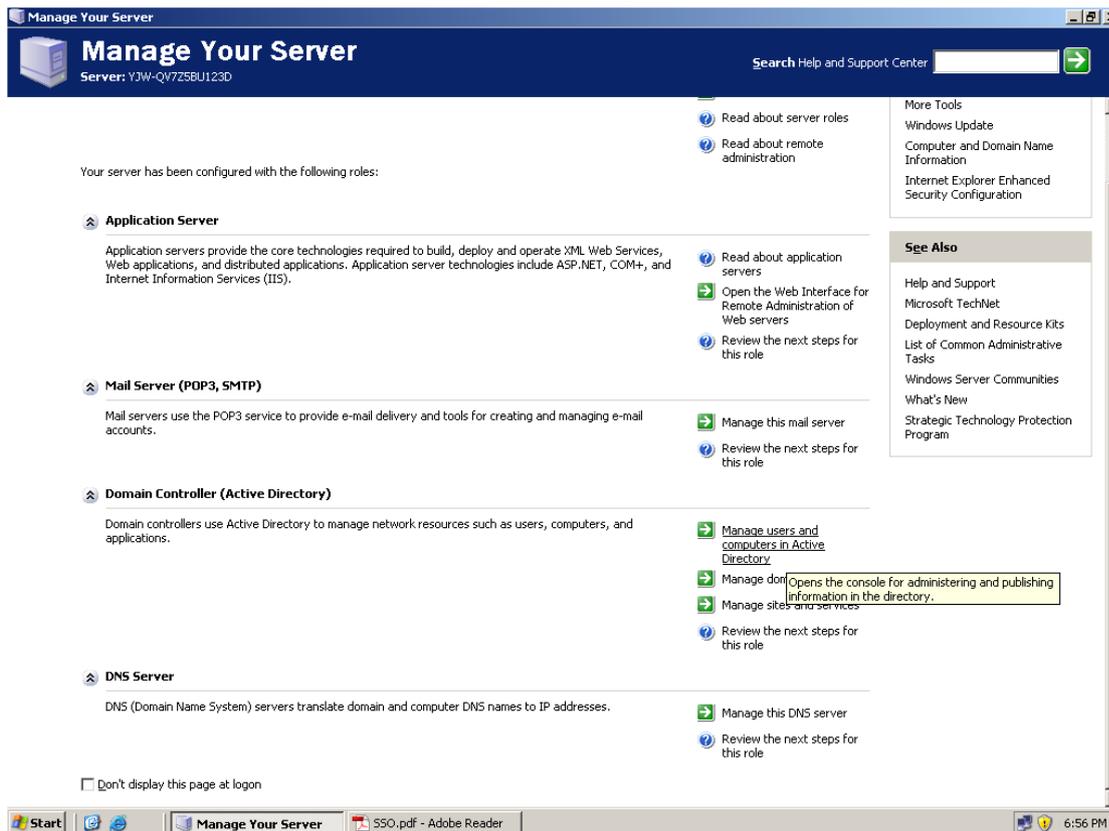


Step 3. Configure the logon script on the AD domain server.

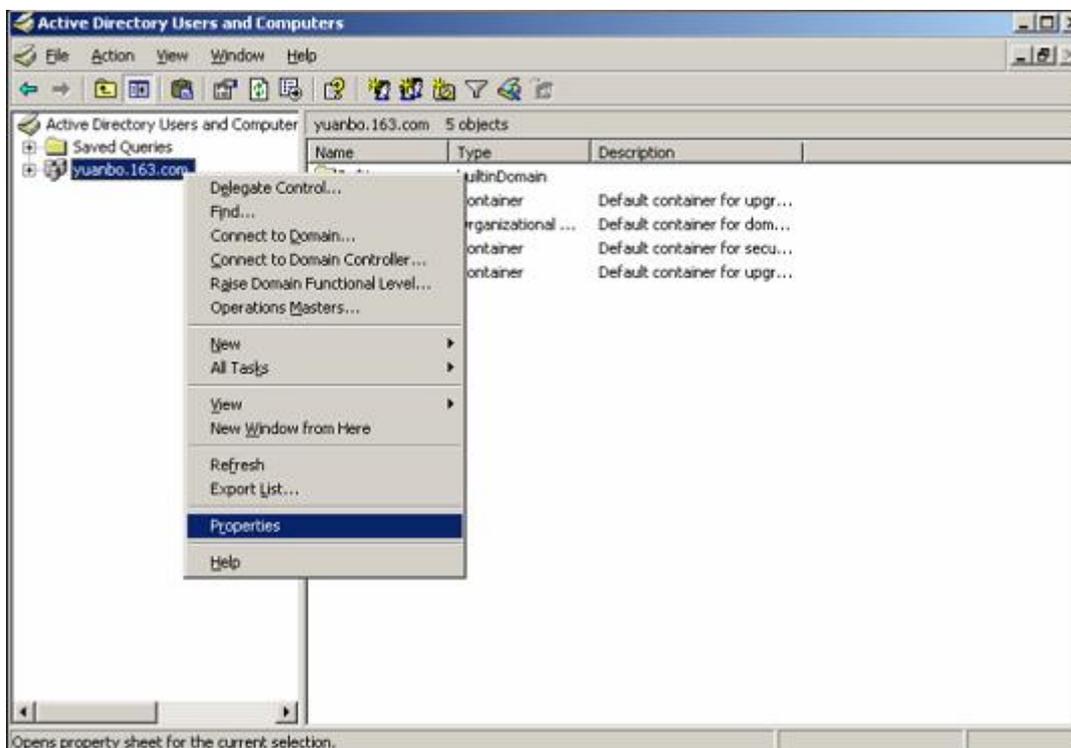
- a. Log into the domain server and select [Manage Your Server] menu, as shown below:



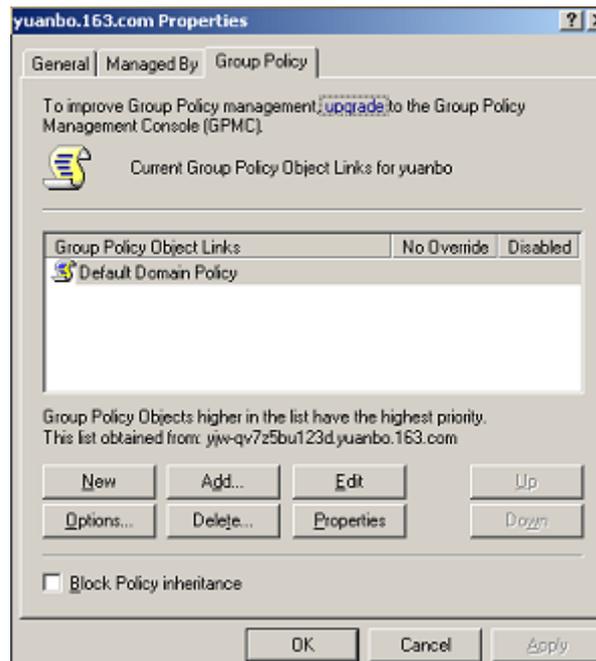
- b. Select [Manage users and computers in Active Directory], as shown below:



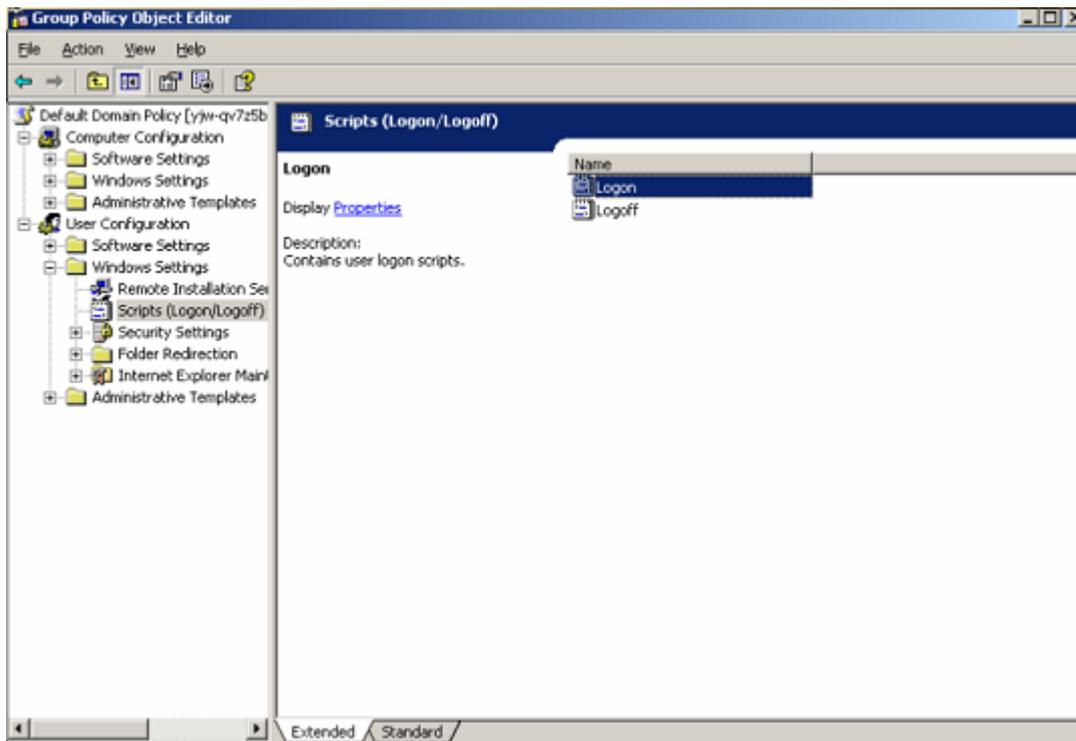
- c. Right-click the to-be-monitored domain in the pop-up window, and select [Properties], as shown below:



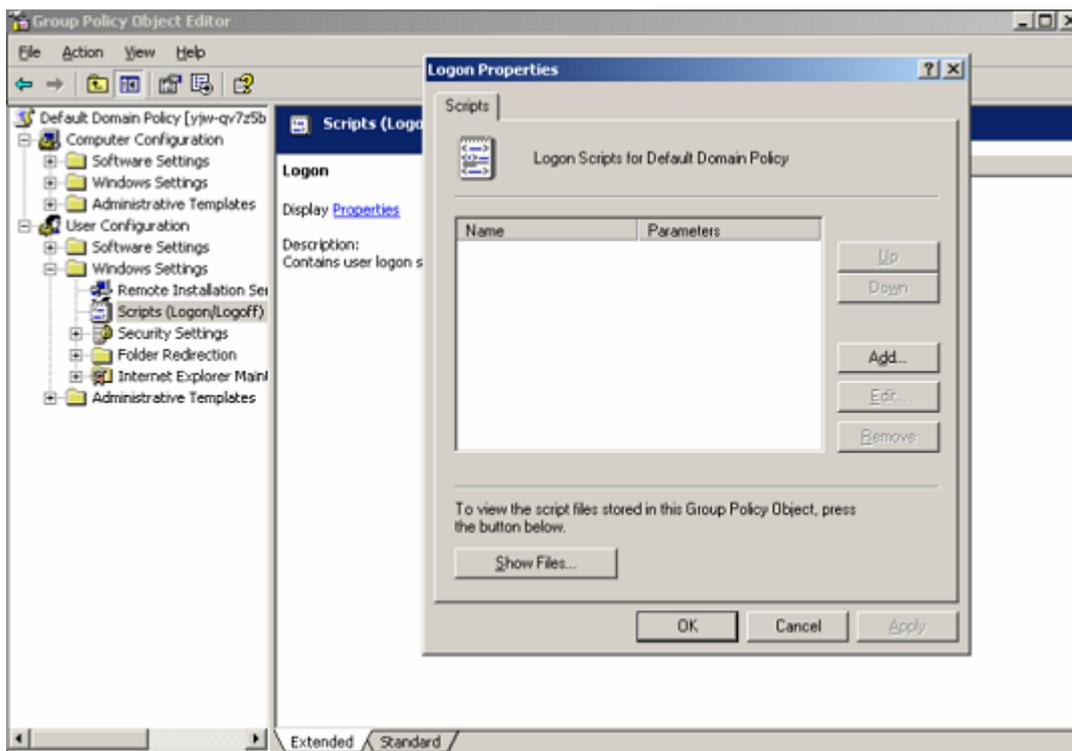
- d. Open the [Group Policy] tab and then double-click [Default Domain Policy], as shown below:



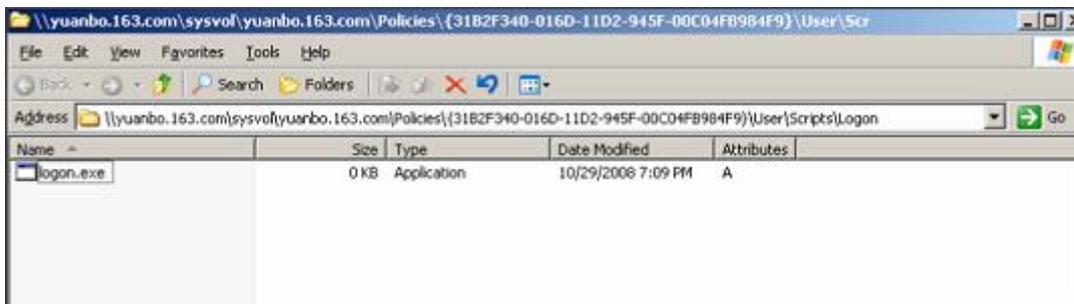
- e. In displayed [Group Policy Object Editor] window, select [User Configuration] > [Windows Settings] > [Scripts (Logon/Logoff)], as shown below:



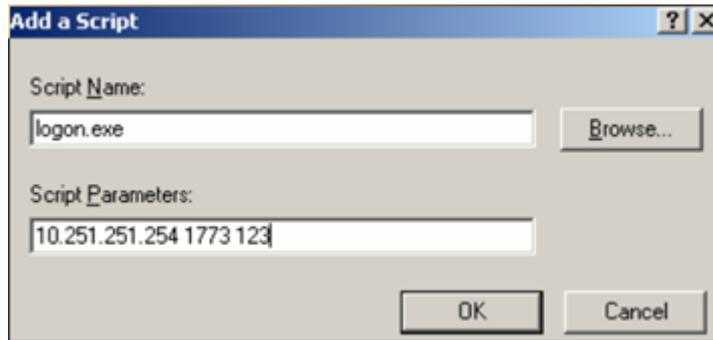
- f. Double-click the [Logon] item to open the [Logon Properties] window, as shown below:



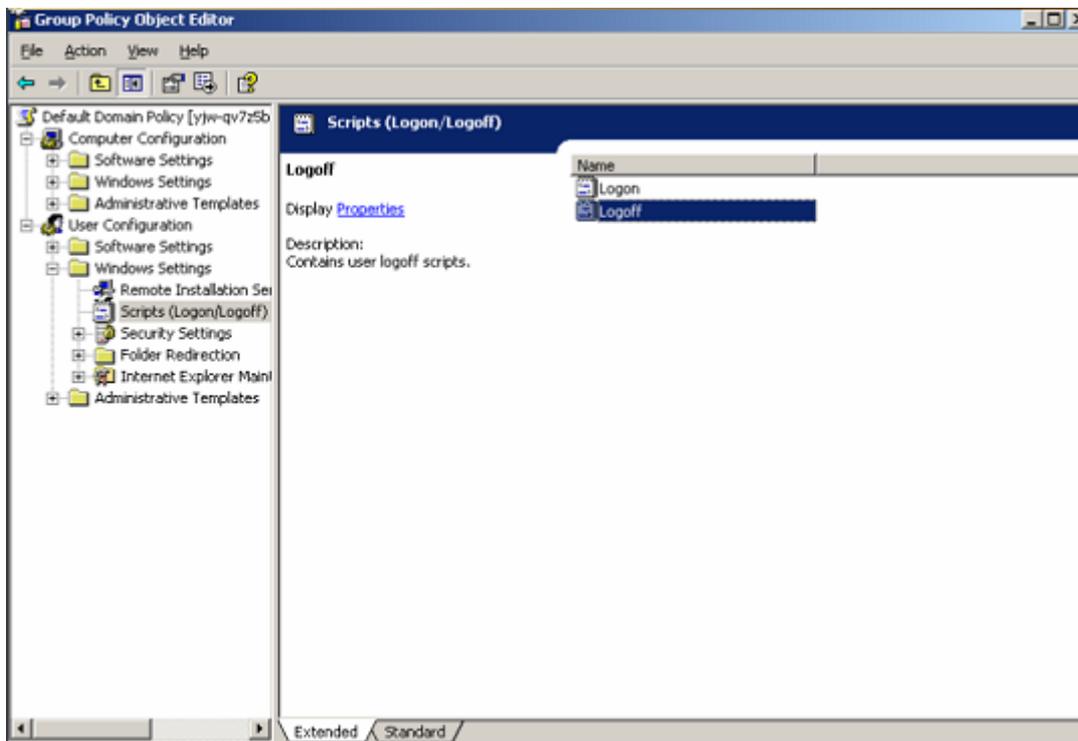
- g. Click the <Show Files> button, and a directory opens. Then save the logon script file (logon.exe) into this directory and close the directory.



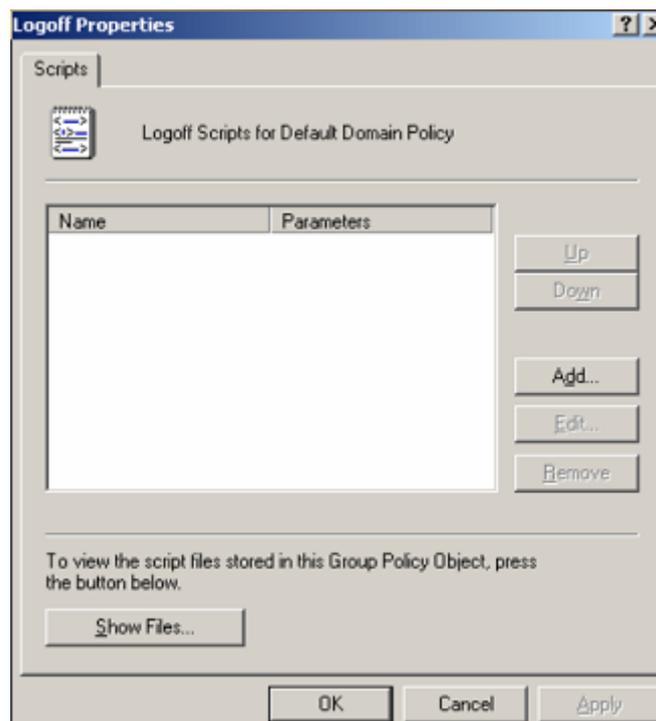
- h. In the [Logon Properties] window, click the <Add> button to open the [Add a Script] dialog. Then click <Browse> to locate and open the logon script file (logon.exe), and type the IP, port number and shared key (separated from each other by spaces) in the [Script Parameters] text box. Please note that the IP here refers to the IP address of the IAM device, the port number is 1773 and the shared key must be the same as that set on the IAM device (see Step 2). Finally, click <OK> to save and close all the relevant windows.



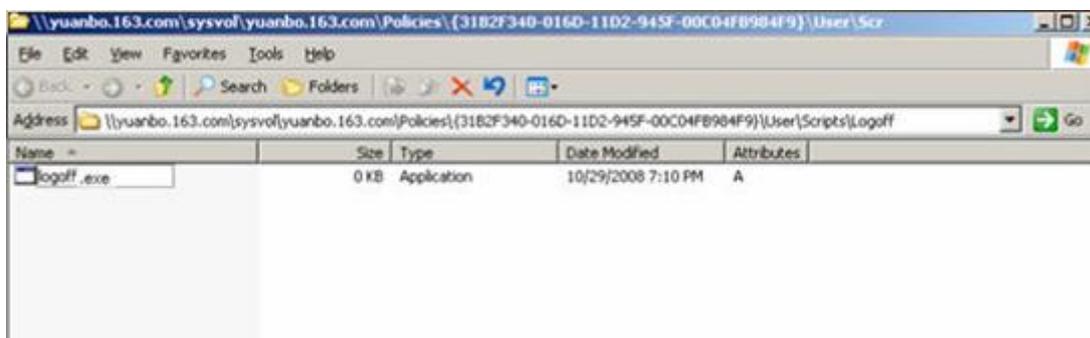
- Step 4. Configure the logoff script on the AD domain server. The logoff script will enable the users to log out of the IAM device once it logs out of the domain.
- a. Repeat the first 5 substeps for configuring the logon script (see Step 3) to open the following window:



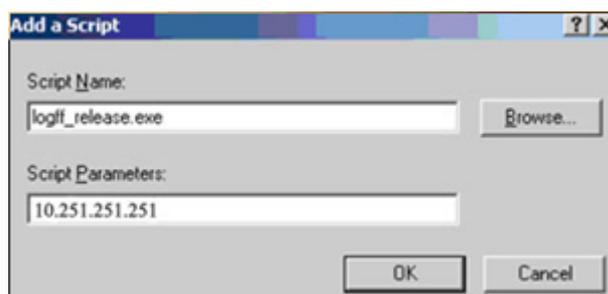
- b. Double-click the [Logoff] item to open the [Logoff Properties] window, as shown below:



- c. Click the <Show Files> button, and a directory opens. Then save the logoff script file (logff\_release.exe) into this directory and close the directory.



- d. In the [Logon Properties] window, click the <Add> button to open the [Add a Script] dialog. Then click <Browse> to locate and open the logoff script file (logff\_release.exe), and type the IP address (10.251.251.251) in the [Script Parameters] text box. Please note that the IP here refers to the IP address of the IAM device, same as that set in logon script. Finally, click <OK> to save and close all the relevant windows.



- e. Select [Start] > [Run] on the desktop of your computer, type **gpupdate** and click <OK> to apply the group policy.

Step 5. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they log into the domain.



1. The primary DNS on the user computers must be set to the IP address of the domain server; otherwise, the domain IP address cannot be resolved and therefore may cause that the users cannot log into the domain server.
2. If a user modifies the DNS address or IP address after logging into the domain successfully, the SSO will not work. Although it seems that the user can log into the domain and enter Windows using the correct password. However, the user actually has not logged into the domain, and the authentication dialog will still pop up to require the user to type the username and password when the user accesses the Internet. This is because Windows can remember the password typed last time and the user can enter Windows even if it does not log into the domain.
3. The IP addresses of the domain server, IAM device and user computers should be able to communicate with one another.

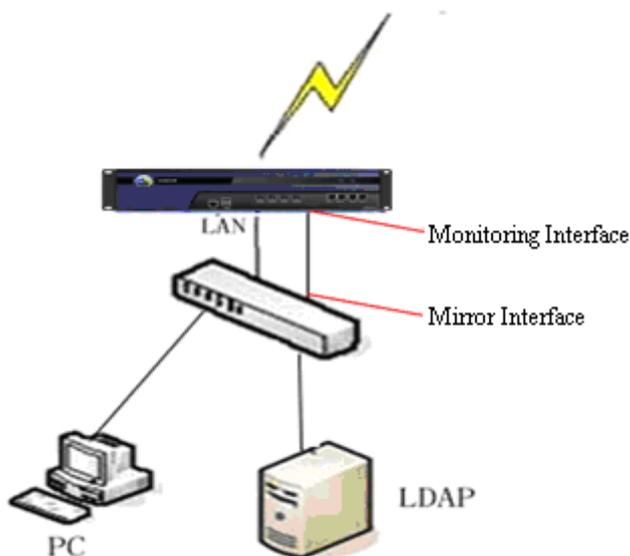
### By Monitoring

The monitoring mode means that the IAM device obtains the login profiles of the users by monitoring the data of computers logging into the domain server and therefore realize SSO. Using this mode, you need not install any component on the domain server, but it must be ensured that the data of LAN computers logging into the domain must go through the IAM device or be mirrored to the IAM device through the mirror interface. By monitoring the login information on UDP 88 port, the IAM device will not authenticate the users again if they have logged into the domain, that is, the users can access the Internet once they logs into the domain successfully. This monitoring mode is applicable no matter whether the

domain server is located in the local area network (LAN) or wide area network (WAN).

The subsequent sections will respectively illustrate how to configure the domain SSO when the domain server is located in LAN and in WAN.

### 1. Domain Server Locates in LAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. The IAM monitors the whole process of PC logging into the domain.
2. The user automatically passes the authentication on the IAM device once it logs into the domain successfully.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the AD domain SSO:

Step 1. Configure the AD domain server. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [External Auth Server] page to configure (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").

Step 2. Configure the domain SSO function on the IAM device.

- a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Domain] page, and check the [Enable Domain SSO] option.
- b. Check the [Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into domain] option (indicating achieving SSO by monitoring data), and type the IP address and port number of the domain server (in the format of "IP:Port") in [Domain Controller List], as shown below. If there are several domain servers, type one entry per row.

**SSO Options**

Domain Proxy POP3 Web Third-party Database Others

Enable Domain SSO

Domain SSO Program: [click here to download](#)

Obtain login profile by executing logon script through domain ⓘ

Shared Key: ⓘ

Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into domain ⓘ

If packets of LAN users logging into domain do not go through the device, you need mirror them to the device and go to "Others" tab to enable mirror interface.

Domain Controller List: ⓘ

Step 3. If the login data does not go through the IAM device, you need to set the mirror interface on the device and then connect it to the mirror interface of the switch that will forward the login data. Click the [Others] tab and select an idle interface as the mirror interface of the IAM device. Do NOT select an interface that is being used.

**SSO Options**

Domain Proxy POP3 Web Third-party Database **Others**

If SSO requires external authentication server and the packets of users logging into the external server do not go through the IAM device, you need mirror the packets to an idle interface of the IAM device. Specify the mirror interface here.

Enable Mirror Interface

Mirror Interface List (selected interface will be monitored):

eth0

eth1

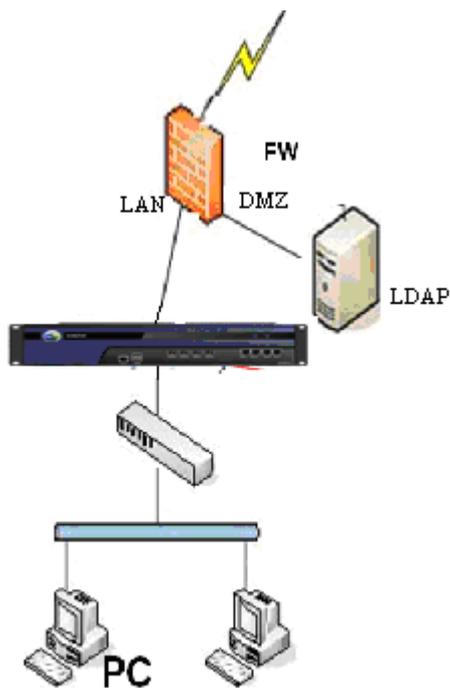
eth2

eth3

Step 4. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use domain SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they log into the domain.

## 2. Domain Server Locates in WAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC logs into the domain, the login data going through the IAM device.
2. The LAN interface of the IAM device works as the monitoring interface, no need to set other monitoring interface.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the AD domain SSO:

- Step 1. Configure the AD domain server. Go to the [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page to configure (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Configure the domain SSO function on the IAM device.
  - a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Domain] page, and check the [Enable Domain SSO] option.
  - b. Check the [Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of logging into domain] option (indicating achieving SSO by monitoring data), and type the IP address and port number of the domain server (in the format of "IP:Port") in [Domain Controller List], as shown below. If there are several domain servers, type one entry per row.

**SSO Options**

Domain Proxy POP3 Web Third-party Database Others

Enable Domain SSO

Domain SSO Program: [click here to download](#)

Obtain login profile by executing logon script through domain ⓘ

Shared Key: ⓘ

Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into domain ⓘ

If packets of LAN users logging into domain do not go through the device, you need mirror them to the device and go to "Others" tab to enable mirror interface.

Domain Controller List: ⓘ

192.168.1.10:88

Step 3. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use domain SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they log into the domain.



Using the monitoring mode, the IAM device can only monitor the login data of users. As there is no data when users log out, the IAM device cannot monitor the logout status of users. Therefore, the situation may occur that when a user already logs out of the domain, it may still exist in the online user list of the IAM device.

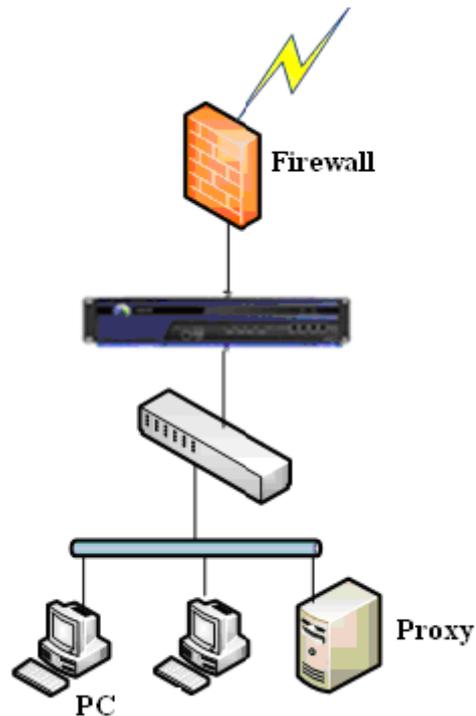
## Proxy SSO

The proxy SSO function is commonly applied to the network environment in which the LAN users access the Internet through the proxy server and each of them is allocated with a proxy server account. If users adopt the proxy SSO authentication, they will pass the authentication on the IAM device once passing the authentication on the proxy server.

### By Monitoring

The monitoring mode of proxy SSO achieves the proxy SSO also by monitoring the login data. There are two cases: proxy server located in LAN and that in WAN.

#### 1. Proxy Server Locates in LAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC accesses the Internet through the proxy server, the IAM device monitoring the communication between PC and proxy server.
2. When PC passes the authentication on the proxy server, it will automatically pass the authentication on the IAM device.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the proxy SSO:

Step 1. Configure the Proxy SSO function on the IAM device.

- a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Proxy] page, and check the [Enable Proxy SSO] option.
- b. Check the [Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into proxy server] option (indicating achieving SSO by monitoring data), and type the IP address and port number of the domain server (in the format of "IP:Port") in [Proxy Server List], as shown below. If there are several domain servers, type one entry per row.

**SSO Options**

Domain **Proxy** POP3 Web Third-party Database Others

Enable Proxy SSO

Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into proxy server i

If packets of LAN users logging into Proxy server do not go through the device, you need mirror them to the device and go to "[Others](#)" tab to enable mirror interface.

Compatible with Kerberos authentication  
Only applicable to the situation that login packets go through the IAM device instead of being mirrored.

Proxy Server List: i

192.168.1.88:808

Step 2. If the login data does not go through the IAM device, you need to set the mirror interface on the device and then connect it to the mirror interface of the switch that will forward the login data. Click the [Others] tab and select an idle interface as the mirror interface of the IAM device. Do NOT select an interface that is being used.

**SSO Options**

Domain Proxy POP3 Web Third-party Database **Others**

If SSO requires external authentication server and the packets of users logging into the external server do not go through the IAM device, you need mirror the packets to an idle interface of the IAM device. Specify the mirror interface here.

Enable Mirror Interface

Mirror Interface List (selected interface will be monitored):

eth0

eth1

eth2

eth3

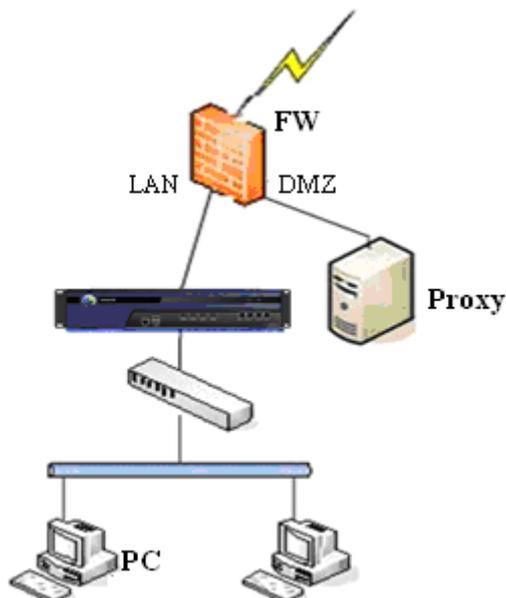
Step 3. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use proxy SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they log into the proxy server.



When the proxy server locates in the LAN, the login data of user does not go through the IAM device and the IAM device adopts the mirroring mode. In this case, the [Compatible with Kerberos authentication] function is not supported.

## 2. Proxy Server Locates in WAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC accesses the Internet through the proxy server, the IAM device monitoring the communication between PC and proxy server.
2. When PC passes the authentication on the proxy server, it will automatically pass the authentication on the IAM device.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the proxy SSO:

Step 1. Configure the Proxy SSO function on the IAM device.

- a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Proxy] page, and check the [Enable Proxy SSO] option.
- b. Check the [Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into proxy server] option (indicating achieving SSO by monitoring data), and type the IP address and port number of the domain server (in the format of "IP:Port") in [Proxy Server List], as shown below. If there are several domain servers, type one entry per row.

The screenshot shows the 'SSO Options' configuration window with the 'Proxy' tab selected. The 'Enable Proxy SSO' checkbox is checked. Below it, the 'Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into proxy server' checkbox is also checked, with an information icon. A text box explains that if LAN user packets do not go through the device, a mirror interface must be enabled in the 'Others' tab. The 'Compatible with Kerberos authentication' checkbox is unchecked, with a note that it only applies when login packets go through the IAM device. At the bottom, the 'Proxy Server List' field contains the IP address '192.168.1.88:808'.

Step 2. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use proxy SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

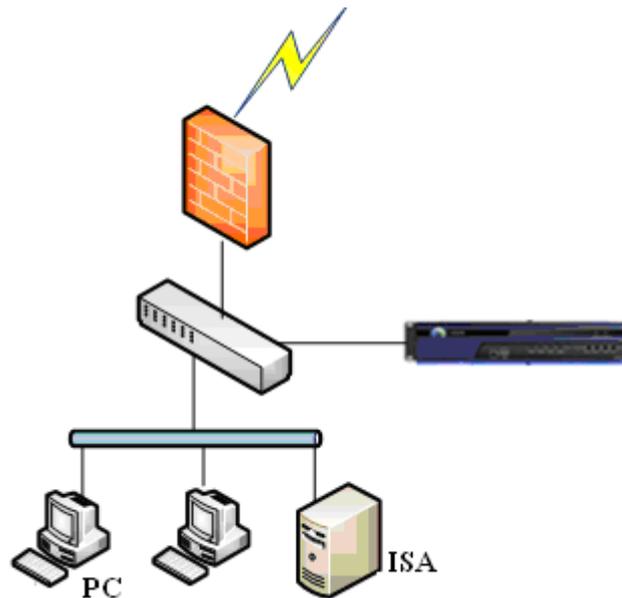
After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they log into the proxy server.



If the Proxy server is an ISA server and adopts "Integrated Windows Authentication", you need check the [Compatible with Kerberos authentication] option to achieve the proxy SSO. This function is only applicable to the situation when the login data goes through the IAM device. It does not apply to the mirroring mode and is not supported in Bypass mode.

### By Using ISA Control

The ISA control mode applies to the situation when the ISA server locates in the LAN and the data for logging into the ISA server does not go through the IAM device. This mode registers the extended plugin on ISA server, and the extended plugin will then report the message that the PC logs into the ISA server successfully to the IAM device, completing the login to the IAM device.



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC passes the proxy authentication of the ISA through the HTTP proxy.
2. ISA reports the successful login of the PC to the IAM device.
3. The IAM device automatically lets the PC pass the authentication and allows its access data.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the proxy SSO:

Step 1. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use proxy SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

Step 2. Configure the Proxy SSO function on the IAM device.

- a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Proxy] page, and check the [Enable Proxy SSO] option.
- b. Check the [Obtain login profile by executing logon control through proxy] option (indicating achieving SSO by using ISA control) and type the shared key in [Shared Key] text box, as shown below:

**SSO Options**

Domain **Proxy** POP3 Web Third-party Database Others

Enable Proxy SSO

Obtain login profile by monitoring the data of computer logging into proxy server i  
 If packets of LAN users logging into Proxy server do not go through the device, you need mirror them to the device and go to "Others" tab to enable mirror interface.

Compatible with Kerberos authentication  
 Only applicable to the situation that login packets go through the IAM device instead of being mirrored.

Proxy Server List: i  
 Enter, edit or delete here

Obtain login profile by executing logon control through proxy i  
 ISA SSO Control: [click here to download](#)

Shared Key: i  
 ...

Step 3. Download the ISA SSO control and the configuration file from the IAM device. Then configure the ISA server, register the plugin and configure the **SangforAC.ini** file.

- a. Put the file **MyAuthFilter.dll** under the ISA installation direction (for example, C:\Program Files\ISA server\).
- b. Select Start > Run, and type the following command to register the control:  
**regsvr32 "C:\Program Files\ISA server\MyAuthFilter.dll"**
- c. Place the configuration file **SangforAC.ini** under the root of your C: drive. The parameters in the file are described in the following table.

**Table 20 Fields in the SangforAC.ini File**

Field	Description
acip=192.168.0.1	Indicates IP address of the IAM device.
key=123	Indicates the encrypted key of the data packet for logging into the ISA device. This key must be the same as that configured on the IAM device.

cycle=30	Indicates the minimum interval (in seconds) that the login data packet is sent from an IP address. It prevents an IP address from sending login packets at a too high frequency, for the IP address may send login packet every time it initiates a new session or visits a new website.
logpath=	Indicates the path to the debug log file. If it is null, it means the log function is disabled, that is, the debug information will not be logged; if it is filled with a path, it means the debug information will be logged. By default, the log function is disabled. Please enable it if necessary. In addition, make sure that the NETWORK SERVICE users have the right to read and write the directory where this file locates.
maxlogsize=1	Indicates the maximum capacity (MB) of the file storing the debug logs. Once it reaches the threshold, the logs will be cleared automatically.
charset=UTF-8	Indicates the charset. The supported encodings are UTF-8, UTF-16, GB2312, GB18030 and BIG5.

- d. Make sure the "Sangfor ISA Auth Filter" plugin is enabled on the ISA plugin panel.

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they log into the proxy server.



1. You need to register the plugin again every time when you modify the SangforAC.ini file.
2. The ISA control will not help the domain user log out of the IAM device when the user logs off or turns off the computer. However, you can configure the timeout interval on the IAM device to have the user automatically logged out of the IAM device after a certain time period. Go to the [Authentication Options] > [Other Options] page, check the first option and specify the timeout, as shown below:

Authentication Settings <<	Other Options
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; SSO Options</li> <li>&gt; Auth Page Redirection</li> <li>&gt; Authentication Conflict</li> <li>&gt; Obtain MAC By SNMP</li> <li style="color: red;">&gt; Other Options</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Auto logout the user who causes no flow in a specified period Time Period (mins): <input type="text" value="120"/> ⓘ</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Submit username and password by POST</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Open DNS service to users before authentication</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Open basic service (root group privilege, HTTP excluded) to users before authentication</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Authenticate again when MAC address is changed</li> </ul>

3. The shared key configured on the IAM device must be the same as that configured in the ISA configuration file and it cannot be the same as the shared key for any other SSO.
4. The ISA server should be configured to allow the data to be sent between the server itself and the UDP 1773 port of the IAM device.

5. If the proxy is located in the WAN, to enable the proxy SSO, you need allocate the privileges for accessing the proxy server to the root group (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.1.4.1 "Add Access Control Policy") and then go to the [Authentication Options] > [Other Options] page to check the [Open basic service (root group privilege, HTTP excluded) to users before authentication] option, as shown below:

Authentication Settings <<	Other Options
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; SSO Options</li> <li>&gt; Auth Page Redirection</li> <li>&gt; Authentication Conflict</li> <li>&gt; Obtain MAC By SNMP</li> <li style="color: red;">&gt; Other Options</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Auto logout the user who causes no flow in a specified period Time Period (mins): <input type="text" value="120"/> ⓘ</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Submit username and password by POST</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Open DNS service to users before authentication</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Open basic service (root group privilege, HTTP excluded) to users before authentication</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Authenticate again when MAC address is changed</li> </ul>

Or, select the [None/SSO] authentication in the authentication policy, as shown below:

### Authentication Policy

Name:

Description:

IP/MAC Range: ⓘ

---

**Terms Prompt**

Enable Terms Prompt ⓘ  
[View/Modify Terms](#)

---

**Authentication**

None/SSO  
If the address is bound with user, it will be preferentially identified as a bound user.

- Take IP as username
- Take MAC as username
- Take host name as username

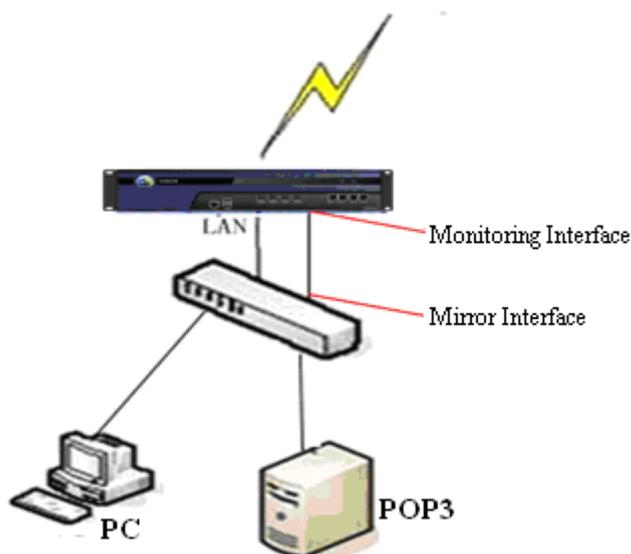
## POP3 SSO

The proxy SSO function is commonly applied to the network environment in which there is a mail server and user information is stored on the POP3 server. If users adopt the POP3 SSO authentication, they will pass the authentication on the IAM device and can access the Internet without typing the username and password again once they log into the POP3 server to send/receive an email using mail client such as

Outlook and Foxmail, for the IAM device will obtain the login profiles of the users by monitoring and automatically identify and authenticate the users.

The POP3 SSO is applicable no matter whether the POP3 server is located in the local area network (LAN) or wide area network (WAN). The subsequent sections will respectively illustrate how to configure the POP3 SSO when the POP3 server is located in LAN and in WAN.

### 1. POP3 Server Locates in LAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC communicates with the POP3 server through the mail client, the IAM device monitoring the whole communication process.
2. When the mail client successfully logs into the POP3 server, the IAM device automatically authenticates the user, who then can access the Internet without typing the password again.
3. As the data interacts in the LAN and the data of users logging into the POP3 server does not go through the IAM device, you need set a monitoring interface on the IAM device.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the POP3 SSO:

- Step 1. Configure the authentication POP3 server. Go to the [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page to configure (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Configure the POP3 SSO function on the IAM device.
  - a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [POP3] page, and check the [Enable POP3 SSO] option.

- b. Type the IP address and monitoring port of the POP3 server (in the format of "IP:Port") in [Mail Server List], as shown below. Here, the port refers to the POP3 authentication port, which is TCP 110 port generally. If there are several POP3 servers, type one entry per row.

The screenshot shows the 'SSO Options' configuration page with the 'POP3' tab selected. The 'Enable POP3 SSO' checkbox is checked. Below it, a text box contains the IP address and port '192.168.1.20:110'. The 'Mail Server List' label has an information icon.

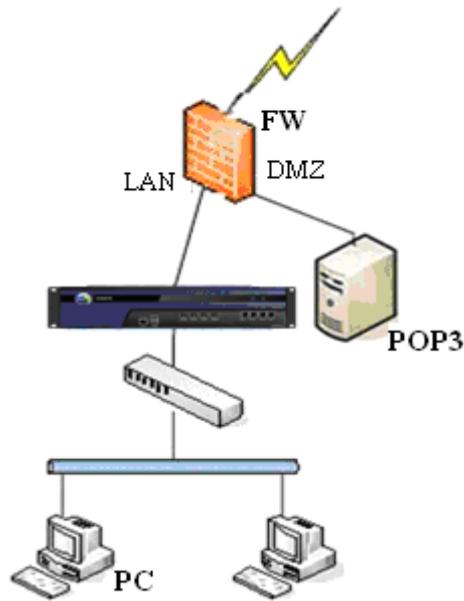
- Step 3. If the login data does not go through the IAM device, you need to set the mirror interface on the device and then connect it to the mirror interface of the switch that will forward the login data. Click the [Others] tab and select an idle interface as the mirror interface of the IAM device. Do NOT select the interface that is being used.

The screenshot shows the 'SSO Options' configuration page with the 'Others' tab selected. The 'Enable Mirror Interface' checkbox is checked. Below it, the 'Mirror Interface List (selected interface will be monitored):' section shows a list of interfaces: eth0, eth1, eth2, and eth3. The 'eth2' checkbox is checked.

- Step 4. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use POP3 SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they logs into the POP3 server successfully by sending/receiving an email through mail client.

## 2. POP3 Server Locates in WAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC logs into the POP3 server, the login data going through the IAM device.
2. The LAN interface of the IAM device works as the monitoring interface, no need to set other monitoring interface.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the POP3 SSO:

- Step 1. Configure the authentication POP3 server. Go to the [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page to configure (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Configure the POP3 SSO function on the IAM device.
  - a. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [POP3] page, and check the [Enable POP3 SSO] option.
  - b. Type the IP address and monitoring port of the POP3 server (in the format of "IP:Port") in [Mail Server List], as shown below. Here, the port refers to the POP3 authentication port, which is TCP 110 port generally. If there are several POP3 servers, type one entry per row.

SSO Options	
Domain	Proxy
<b>POP3</b>	Web
Third-party	Database
Others	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable POP3 SSO	
If packets of LAN users logging into POP3 server (mail server) do not go through the device, you need mirror them to the device and go to " <a href="#">Others</a> " tab to enable mirror interface.	
Mail Server List: ⓘ	
192.168.1.20:110	

Step 3. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who need use POP3 SSO. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet once they logs into the POP3 successfully by sending/receiving an email through mail client.



If the POP3 server is located in the WAN, to enable the POP3 SSO authentication, you need allocate the privileges for accessing the POP3 server to the root group (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.1.4.1 "Add Access Control Policy") and then go to the [Authentication Options] > [Other Options] page to check the [Open basic service (root group privilege, HTTP excluded) to users before authentication] option, as shown below:

Authentication Settings <<	Other Options
> SSO Options	<input type="checkbox"/> Auto logout the user who causes no flow in a specified period
> Auth Page Redirection	Time Period (mins): <input type="text" value="120"/> ⓘ
> Authentication Conflict	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Submit username and password by POST
> Obtain MAC By SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Open DNS service to users before authentication
> <b>Other Options</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Open basic service (root group privilege, HTTP excluded) to users before authentication
	<input type="checkbox"/> Authenticate again when MAC address is changed

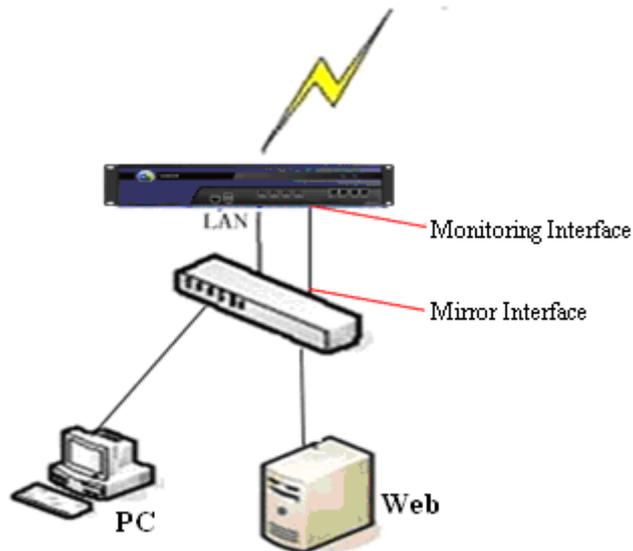
## Web SSO

The Web SSO function is commonly applied to the network environment in which there is a Web server and the account information is stored on the Web server. If users adopt the Web SSO authentication, they will pass the authentication on the IAM device and can access the Internet once passing the authentication on the Web server.

The Web SSO is applicable no matter whether the Web server is located in the LAN or WAN.

The subsequent sections will respectively illustrate how to configure the Web SSO when the Web server is located in LAN and in WAN.

## 1. Web Server Locates in LAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC logs into the Web server, the IAM device monitoring the whole communication process.
2. The IAM device judges the success or failure of the authentication according to the keyword returned by the server and consequently determines the success or failure of the Web SSO.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the Web SSO:

- Step 1. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Web] page, and check the [Enable Web SSO] option.

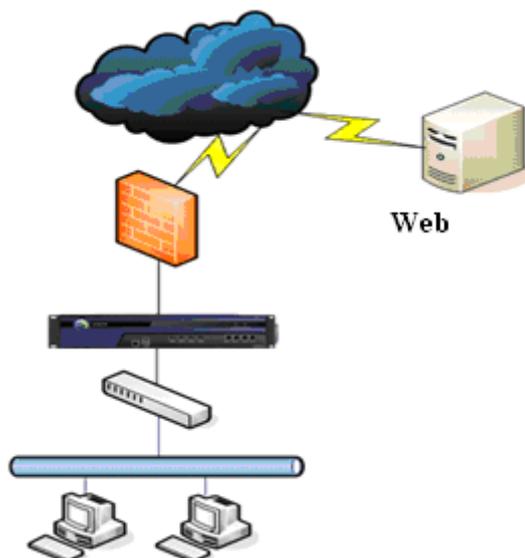
The screenshot shows the 'SSO Options' configuration window with the 'Web' tab selected. The 'Enable Web SSO' checkbox is checked. Below it, a text box contains 'bbs.sangfor.com' for the 'Web Authentication Server'. The 'Redirect browser to the above server before authentication' checkbox is also checked. The 'User Form Name' text box contains 'pwuser'. Under 'Authentication Success Keyword', the radio button is selected and the text box contains 'login success'. The 'Authentication Failure Keyword' radio button is unselected and its text box is empty. At the bottom, the 'Specify encoding type of form' checkbox is unselected, and a dropdown menu is visible below it.

- Step 2. Type the Web authentication server address in the [Web Authentication Server] text box.
- Step 3. Check the [Redirect browser to the above server before authentication] option, which indicates that when the user accesses webpage before the authentication, it will be redirected to this page for Web SSO.
- Step 4. Configure [User Form Name], which indicates the name of the form that submits the username to the server for Web authentication.
- Step 5. Select [Authentication Success Keyword] or [Authentication Failure Keyword] to set the keyword that indicates the success or failure of the Web SSO.
- ◆ If you select [Authentication Success Keyword], specify relevant keywords in the text box. When the results returned by POST contain any of the keywords set here, it means the Web SSO is successful; otherwise, it means the Web SSO is failed
  - ◆ If you select [Authentication Failure Keyword], specify relevant keywords in the text box. When the results returned by POST contain any of the keywords set here, it means the Web SSO is failed; otherwise, it means the Web SSO is successful.
- Step 6. Click the [Others] tab to check the [Enable Mirror Interface] option and select the mirror interface to be monitored.

SSO Options						
Domain	Proxy	POP3	Web	Third-party	Database	<b>Others</b>
<p>If SSO requires external authentication server and the packets of users logging into the external server do not go through the IAM device, you need mirror the packets to an idle interface of the IAM device. Specify the mirror interface here.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Mirror Interface</p> <p>Mirror Interface List (selected interface will be monitored):</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> eth0  <input type="checkbox"/> eth1  <input type="checkbox"/> eth2  <input type="checkbox"/> eth3</p>						

After the above configurations are completed, when the PC accesses the Internet, the browser will be redirected to the **BBS** (bbs.sangfor.com) first and once the PC logs into the BBS successfully, it can access the Internet.

## 2. Web Server Locates in WAN



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC logs into the Web server, the login data going through the IAM device.
2. The LAN interface of the IAM device works as the monitoring interface, no need to set other monitoring interface. After the user logs in to the Web server successfully, the Web SSO is successful.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the Web SSO:

Step 1. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [POP3] page, and

check the [Enable Web SSO] option.

The screenshot shows the 'SSO Options' configuration window with the 'Web' tab selected. The 'Enable Web SSO' checkbox is checked. Below it, a text box contains 'bbs.sangfor.com'. The 'Redirect browser to the above server before authentication' checkbox is also checked. The 'User Form Name' text box contains 'pwuser'. Under 'Authentication Success Keyword', the radio button is selected and the text box contains 'login success'. The 'Authentication Failure Keyword' radio button is unselected and its text box is empty. At the bottom, the 'Specify encoding type of form' checkbox is unselected, and a dropdown menu is visible below it.

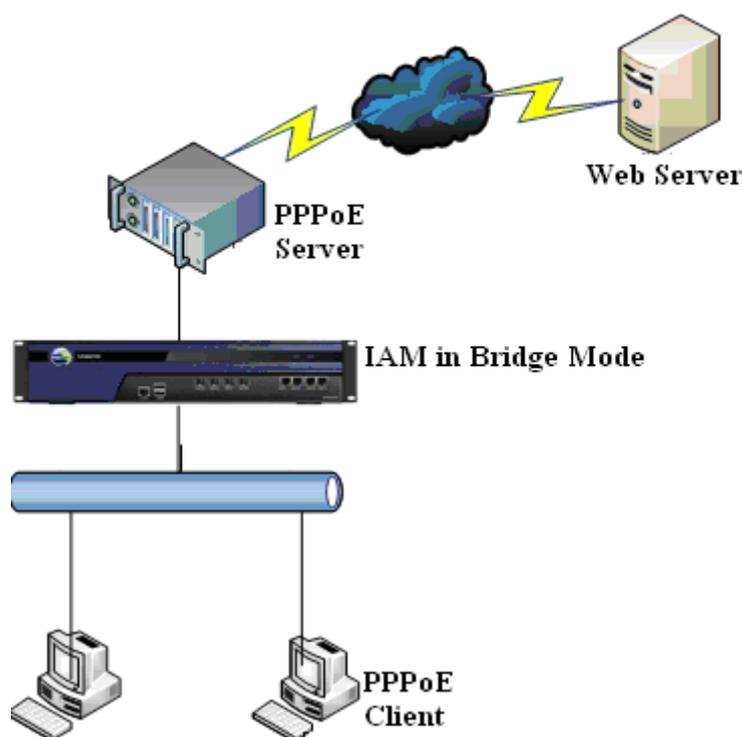
- Step 2. Type the Web authentication server address in the [Web Authentication Server] text box.
- Step 3. Check the [Redirect browser to the above server before authentication] option, which indicates that when the user accesses webpage before the authentication, it will be redirected to this page for Web SSO.
- Step 4. Configure [User Form Name], which indicates the name of the form that submits the username to the server for Web authentication.
- Step 5. Select [Authentication Success Keyword] or [Authentication Failure Keyword] to set the keyword that indicates the success or failure of the Web SSO.
- ◆ If you select [Authentication Success Keyword], specify relevant keywords in the text box. When the results returned by POST contain any of the keywords set here, it means the Web SSO is successful; otherwise, it means the Web SSO is failed
  - ◆ If you select [Authentication Failure Keyword], specify relevant keywords in the text box. When the results returned by POST contain any of the keywords set here, it means the Web SSO is failed; otherwise, it means the Web SSO is successful.

After the above configurations are completed, when the PC accesses the Internet, the browser will be redirected to the **BBS** (bbs.sangfor.com) first and once the PC logs into the BBS successfully, it can access the Internet.

## PPPoE SSO

PPPoE SSO is commonly applied to the network environment in which users on the IAM device are consistent with the PPPoE dial-up accounts, the PPPoE authentication has been adopted and users are expected to automatically pass the authentication on the IAM device once they pass the PPPoE authentication. It is applicable to the network in which the PPPoE server is located in the WAN, as shown below:

### PPPoP Server Locates in WAN



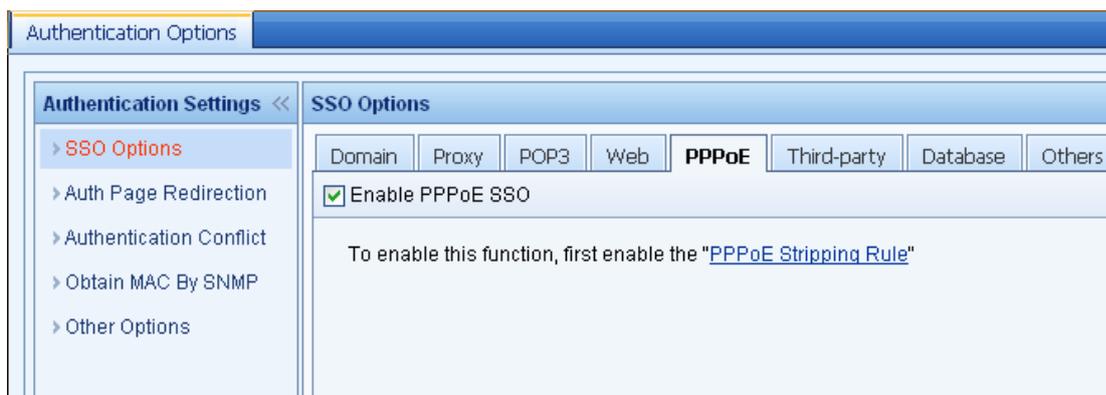
The data processing flow is as follows:

1. The PPPoE client sends request for authentication or logout of the PPPoE server.
2. The IAM device monitors the PPPoE communication packets, obtaining the username for authentication or logout.

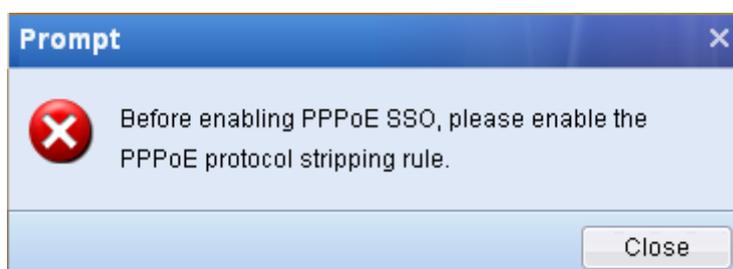
In this case, follow the steps below to configure the PPPoE SSO:

Step 1. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [PPPoE] page, and

check the [Enable PPPoE SSO] option, as shown below:



Step 2. If the PPPoE stripping rule is not enabled, you need to enable it first to make the PPPoE SSO take effect; otherwise, the following prompt appears after you click <Commit>.



Step 3. In this case, click <Close> to close the prompt. Then click the [PPPoE Stripping Rule] link to go to the [Protocol Extension] page, check the [PPPoE Protocol Stripping] item, as shown below, and click <Commit> to enable the PPPoE protocol stripping.

Protocol Stripping ⓘ

**Select Protocol Stripping**

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Port(applied to L3 protocol only)
<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN(Q-in-Q) Protocol Stripping	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	MPLS Protocol Stripping	-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PPPoE Protocol Stripping	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	L2TP Protocol Stripping	1701
<input type="checkbox"/>	LWAPP Protocol Stripping	12222
<input type="checkbox"/>	CAPWAP Protocol Stripping	5247
<input type="checkbox"/>	WLTP Protocol Stripping	6969,7070
<input type="checkbox"/>	Customized Protocol Stripping	-

Custom Protocol Stripping ⓘ

Protocol Header: Byte offset from Ethernet header

Feature value is

IP Header: Byte offset from Ethernet header

Step 4. Go back to the [PPPoE] page, check the [Enable PPPoE SSO] option and click <Commit>.

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet through the IAM device once they pass the authentication on the PPPoE server.



1. Before enabling the PPPoE SSO, you need enable the PPPoE stripping rule.
2. If PPPoE SSO is enabled, it is recommended to select the [Force to logout from the previous IP and authenticate it on current IP address] option as the processing method upon authentication conflict, as shown below:

Authentication Settings <<	Authentication Conflict
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; SSO Options</li> <li>&gt; Auth Page Redirection</li> <li>&gt; <b>Authentication Conflict</b></li> <li>&gt; Obtain MAC By SNMP</li> <li>&gt; Other Options</li> </ul>	<p>For account that disallows multi-user login, if the system detects it has already logged in on another IP address upon authentication, then:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="radio"/> Force to logout from the previous IP and authenticate it on current IP address</li> <li><input type="radio"/> Only prompt the login on another IP address</li> </ul>

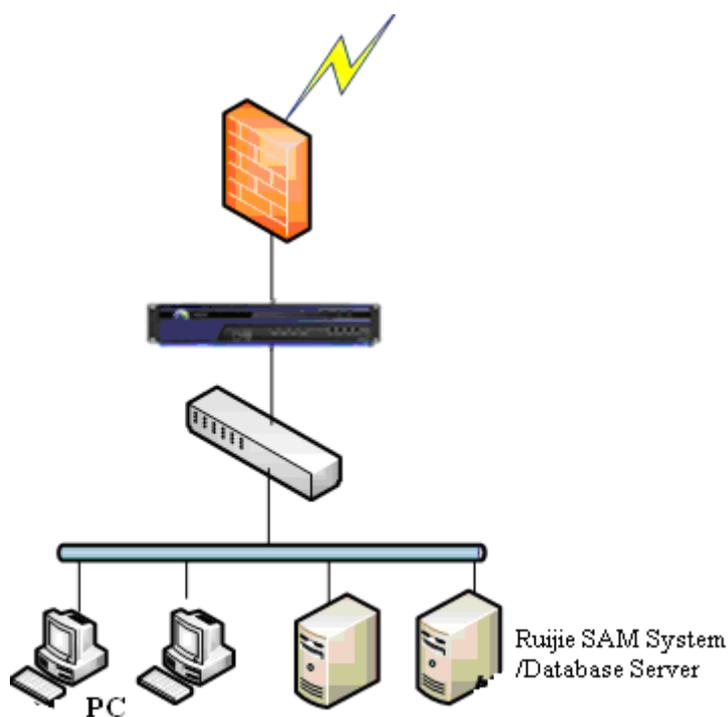
### Third-party Device SSO

If there is a third-party authentication system located in the network for authenticating users and managing the organization structure, the IAM device can combine with the third-party authentication system to

achieve SSO. At present, the IAM device supports the following third-party authentication systems: Ruijie SAM system, HTTP SSO interface (applicable to City Hotspot Billing System) and H3C CAMS system.

### Ruijie SAM

The Ruijie SAM system is a bandwidth management system with authentication and billing functions, commonly used by universities and secondary ISPs. Before accessing the Internet, the users must pass the authentication on Ruijie SAM system, and when the users pass the authentication on or log out of the SAM system or, they will automatically pass the authentication on or log out of the IAM device.

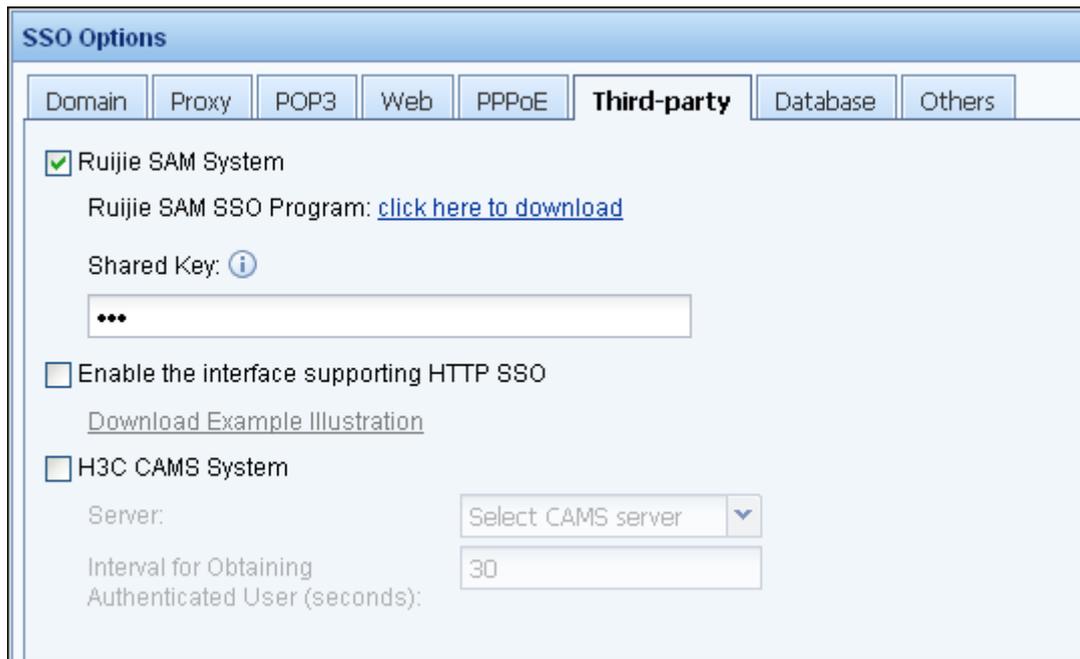


The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC passes the authentication on or logs out of the Ruijie SAM system.
2. The database server of the Ruijie SAM system instructs the IAM device to authenticate or log out the corresponding user, achieving SSO and logout.

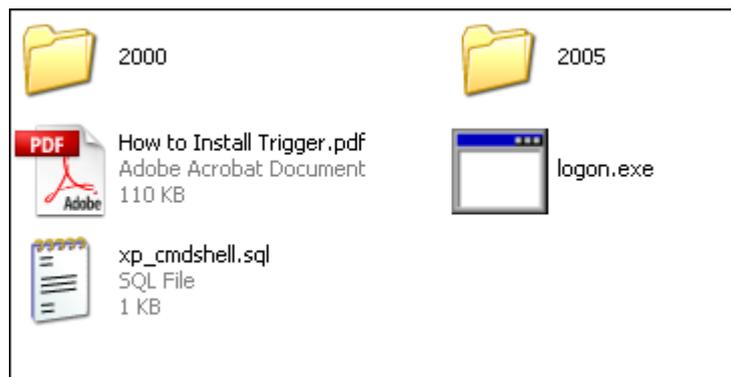
In this case, follow the steps below to configure the Ruijie SAM SSO:

- Step 1. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Third-party] page, check the [Ruijie SAM System] and type the shared key, as shown below:



Step 2. Download the Ruijie SAM SSO program and configure the database server of the SAM system to have the database server send the user authentication information to the IAM device when the PC logs into the SAM system. Here, we take the SQL Server 2005 of Ruijie SAM system as an example to show how to configure the database server.

- a. Click the [click here to download] link below the [Ruijie SAM System] option to download the **rjsam.zip** package (which includes the logon.exe and trigger SQL script) to the database server and then decompress it to get the following files:



- b. Copy the application program logon.exe (to be called by the trigger) to the directory of the SAM server.
- c. The file folder **2005** stores the SQL statements (triggers) customized for SQL Server 2005, including: logon\_trigger.sql, logout\_trigger.sql and update\_trigger.sql. You need to modify the three triggers. Take **logon\_trigger.sql** as an example, open the file and copy all the contents to

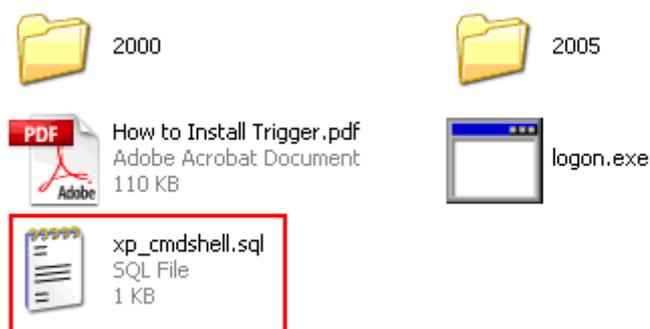
the SQL Server 2005 Management Studio and modify the following configurations according to the actual situation (the configuration changes for logout\_trigger.sql and update\_trigger.sql are same as those for logon\_trigger.sql):

```

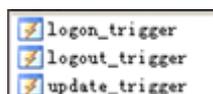
set @i = 1
--Shared key for communication between logon and authd
set @sharekey = '123'
--IP of the IAM device
set @acip = '200.200.65.145'
--Absolute path to the executable file logon.exe. Path cannot contain space or the characters: `~!@#%&^*()?'
set @proppath = 'c:\logon'
--Local charset of username, options are: gb18030, gb2312, big5, utf-8, utf-16
set @localcodepage = 'utf-8'

```

- d. As the above three triggers has called the **xp\_cmdshell** command of the master database, but this command is disabled by the SQL SERVER 2005 by default, you need first enable this command by executing the **xp\_cmdshell.sql** file, as shown below. Open the file through SQL Server 2005 Management Studio and then click the <Execute> button.



- e. Open the SQL Server 2005 Management Studio and locate the "SAMDB" database.
- f. Select and unfold the **ONLINE\_USER** table, and click the file folder **Trigger**, and you will find there is no entry listed on the right, for there is no trigger added for the **ONLINE\_USER** table.
- g. Open the **2005** file folder, double-click the three files as described in the third substep above, and they will be opened in the [SQL Server 2005 Management Studio] window. Click the <Execute> button displayed on the tool bar, and the trigger displayed on the current active tab page will be installed. Switch to other two tables to install the other two triggers.
- h. Switch to the [Object Explorer Details] tab, refresh the tab, and you will see the three triggers installed, as shown below:



- i. To delete a trigger from the list, right-click the trigger, select <Delete> and then click <OK> in the pop-up [Delete Object] dialog to confirm the deletion.

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet through the IAM device once they pass the Ruijie SAM authentication.



1. The procedures for installing the triggers on Ruijie SQL Server 2000 are similar to those on SQL Server 2005, with the two differences that the triggers to be installed are in the **2000** folder and the file `xp_cmdshell.sql` need not be executed if the stored procedure `xp_cmdshell` has been enabled.
2. If the database name of Ruijie SAM system is not **SAMDB**, change **SAMDB** on the first row "use SAMDB" of the SQL statement into the actual database name. If the table name and field name are also different from those in the above example, change them according to the actual situation.
3. Please pay attention to the following field in the trigger script, as shown below. If multiple users are allowed to log in or log out simultaneously, you need to modify the value after "`@i >`" according to the actual number of users. Generally, it is recommended to set it to a value no greater than 2000 (high-end device supports at most 3000 users). If you keep the default value, but there are two users in the network logging in simultaneously, the IAM device will authenticate only one of them, causing that the other user cannot access the Internet.

```
--If multiple users can be inserted into the database at a time, modify the condition in @i>0, for example, modify it to @i>9,
indicating it will trigger the program to execute 10 times at most
--If you comment out the following two lines, the execution times of the program triggered will be unlimited. However, in this
case, you need take into account the risk of concurrent running of program
IF @i>0 BREAK
SET @i = @i + 1
```

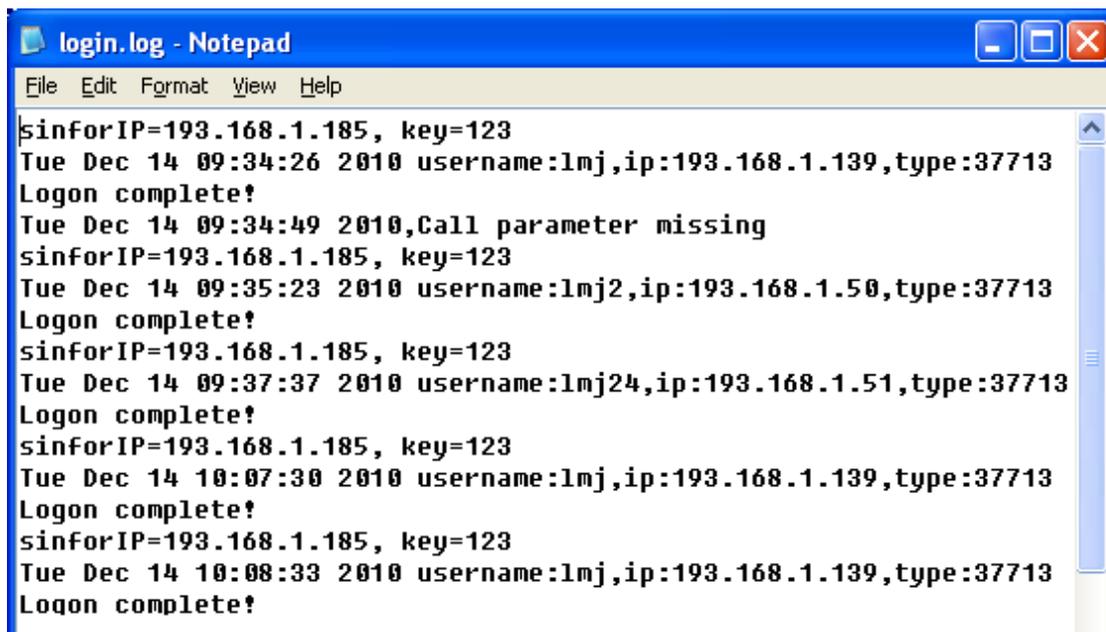
If you modify this value to 9, as shown below, it indicates the IAM device supports simultaneous login or logout of up to 10 users.

```
IF @i>9 BREAK
SET @i = @i + 1
```

4. Please pay attention to the following field in the trigger script, as shown below. When the program `logon.exe` sends the authentication information to the IAM device, the log is disabled by default to protect the server performance. If you want to enable the log, you need to replace the first row with the third row (that is, the row ending with "`-1`", which means enabling the log).

```
set @cmd = @proppath + '-o ' + @ip + ' ' + @username + ' ' + @sharekey + ' ' + @localcodepage + ' '+@acip
--To enable log, please comment out the above line and enable the following line
--set @cmd = @proppath + '-o ' + @ip + ' ' + @username + ' ' + @sharekey + ' ' + @localcodepage + ' '+@acip + '-1'
```

After you enable the log, the corresponding logs will be generated and stored under the main directory of users on the database server, as shown below:



```
login.log - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
sinforIP=193.168.1.185, key=123
Tue Dec 14 09:34:26 2010 username:lmj,ip:193.168.1.139,type:37713
Logon complete!
Tue Dec 14 09:34:49 2010,Call parameter missing
sinforIP=193.168.1.185, key=123
Tue Dec 14 09:35:23 2010 username:lmj2,ip:193.168.1.50,type:37713
Logon complete!
sinforIP=193.168.1.185, key=123
Tue Dec 14 09:37:37 2010 username:lmj24,ip:193.168.1.51,type:37713
Logon complete!
sinforIP=193.168.1.185, key=123
Tue Dec 14 10:07:30 2010 username:lmj,ip:193.168.1.139,type:37713
Logon complete!
sinforIP=193.168.1.185, key=123
Tue Dec 14 10:08:33 2010 username:lmj,ip:193.168.1.139,type:37713
Logon complete!
```

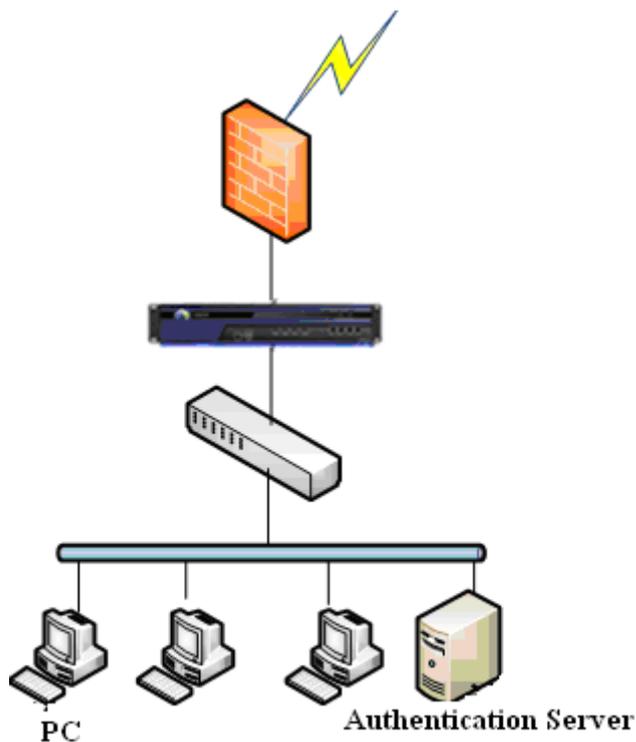
5. The shared key configured on the IAM device must be the same as that configured in the trigger script and cannot be the same as the shared key for any other SSO.

6. To achieve Ruijie SAM system SSO, it must be ensured that the IAM device can intercommunicate with the Ruijie SAM server, and the Ruijie SAM server can send authentication information by connecting to the UDP 1773 port of the IAM device. It is not required that the data of user logging into the SAM system go through the IAM device.

7. Apart from the Ruijie SAM system, this function is applicable to all the other database systems whose background database is MS SQL SERVER 2000/2005. However, you need to modify the SQL scripts accordingly to make sure the scripts accord with the actual database name, table name and field name.

## HTTP SSO Interface

The HTTP SSO interface available on the IAM device can provide any third-party authentication device (such as City Hotspot Billing System) with the HTTP(S)-based SSO/logout functions by GET method.



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC accesses the Web authentication server through HTTP or HTTPS, and passes the authentication on or logs out from the Web server.
2. The authentication/logout page on the Web server is processed so that the Web server will inform the IAM device to authenticate/logout the user accordingly, achieving SSO.
3. PC can access the Internet through the IAM device after it passes the authentication on the Web server.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the HTTP SSO interface to achieve third-party device SSO:

- Step 1. Enable the HTTP SSO interface on the IAM device. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Third-party] page, and check the [Enable HTTP SSO Interface] option, as shown below:

SSO Options						
Domain	Proxy	POP3	Web	<b>Third-party</b>	Database	Others
<input type="checkbox"/> Ruijie SAM System Ruijie SAM SSO Program: <a href="#">click here to download</a> Shared Key:  <input type="text"/>						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable HTTP SSO Interface <a href="#">Download Example Illustration</a>						
<input type="checkbox"/> H3C CAMS System Server: <input type="text" value="Select CAMS server"/>						
Interval for Obtaining Authenticated User (seconds): <input type="text" value="30"/>						

Step 2. Click the [Download Example Illustration] link to download the example, which includes the files Logon.js and Logon.html. Modify the file Logon.html and configure the Web authentication server.

```

<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN">
<html>
<head>
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8"/>
<title> HTTP SSO Interface Example</title>
<script src="ACLogon.js" type="text/javascript"></script> <-- This section is required -->
</head>

<body>
  <form>
    ip:<input type="text" id="ip" ></input><br/>
    usr:<input type="text" id="usr" ></input><br/>
    grp:<input type="text" id="grp" ></input><br/>
    <a
href="javascript:sendToAc('200.200.65.145','logon',$('#ip').val(),$('#usr').val(),$('#grp').val());">
login<a><br/><-- This section is for logon -->    <a
href="javascript:sendToAc('200.200.65.145','logout',$('#ip').val(),$('#usr').val(),$('#grp').val());">
logout<a><br/><-- This section is for logout -->
    </form>

    <-- 200.200.65.145 is the IP address of SANGFOR IAM gateway device. As to this
example, please modify the IP address-->
  </body>
</html>

```

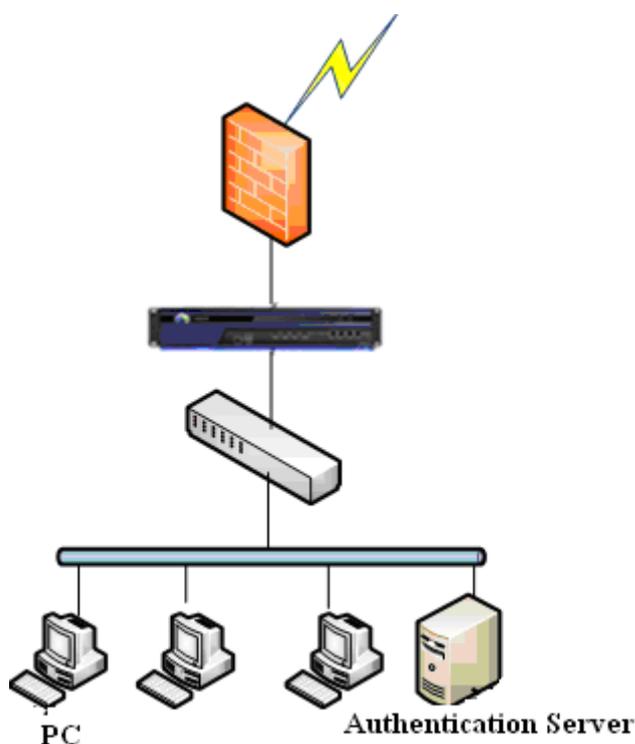
After the above configurations are completed, the users will automatically pass the authentication on or log out of the IAM device once they pass the authentication on or log out of the HTTP/HTTPS server.



1. The HTTP SSO interface can be used to combine the IAM device with the City Hotspot Billing System or other Web authentication systems (whose Web authentication page may need to be modified) to achieve SSO.
2. When the HTTP SSO function is not needed, please do NOT check the [Enable the interface supporting HTTP SSO] option.

### H3C CAMS System

Similar to the Ruijie SAM system, the H3C CAMS system is also a bandwidth management system with authentication and billing functions, commonly used by universities and secondary ISPs. The IAM device combines with the H3C CAMS server through the interface provided by the H3C CAMS server to obtain the user information from the CAMS system regularly and update its own online user list/user list, achieving SSO.



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC passes the authentication on the H3C CAMS system.
2. The IAM device regularly synchronizes the organization structure and online users from the H3C CAMS

system.

3. PC accesses the Internet as one of the online users obtained by the IAM device.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the H3C CAMS system SSO:

Step 1. Configure the H3C CAMS server. Go to the [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page to configure (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").

Step 2. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Third-party] page, check the [H3C CAMS System] option, select the H3C CAMS configured in Step 1 and specify the [Interval for Obtaining Authenticated User], as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'SSO Options' configuration window with the 'Third-party' tab selected. The 'H3C CAMS System' option is checked, and the 'Interval for Obtaining Authenticated User (seconds)' is set to 30. Other options like 'Ruijie SAM System' and 'Enable the interface supporting HTTP SSO' are unchecked.

After the above configurations are completed, the users can access the Internet through the IAM device once they pass the authentication on the H3C CAMS system.



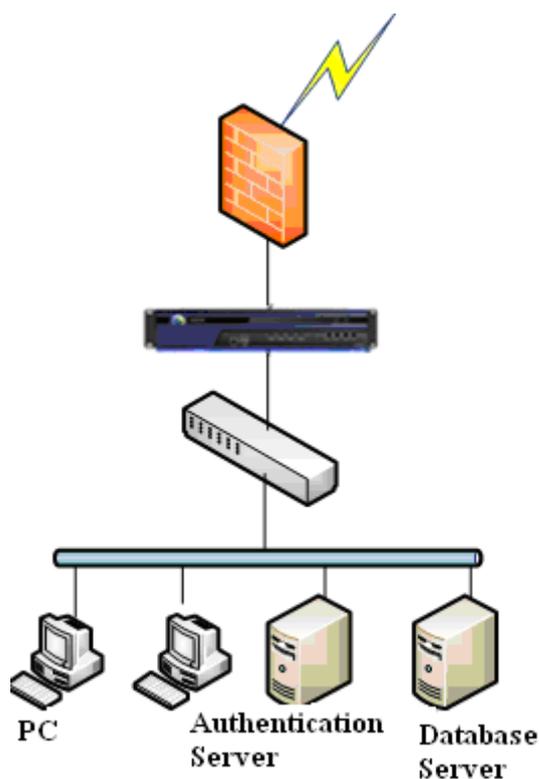
1. The H3C CAMS server supports the automatic synchronization of users. For details, see section 3.3.2.5 "User Synchronization Policy".

2. In some cases, it may take some time (determined by the [Interval for Obtaining Authenticated User] field) for the user to automatically pass the authentication on the IAM device after passing the authentication on the H3C CAMS system. It is recommended to set the authentication method to [None/SSO] in the corresponding authentication policy.

## Database SSO

When there is already a database system that stores and manages user authentication information and

organization structure in the network, the SANGFOR IAM device can combine the database system to achieve SSO. As the IAM device supports SQL statement, it will use the SQL statement to query the user list and authenticated users in the database system, and synchronizes them into its own organization structure and online user list, enabling the users to pass the authentication on or log out of the IAM device automatically after they pass the authentication on or log out of the database server. Currently, the supported databases are Oracle, MS SQL server, DB2 and MySQL.



The data processing flow is as follows:

1. PC passes the authentication on the authentication server, the database server updating the PC's authentication information.
2. The IAM device regularly queries the online users in the database server and updates its own.
3. PC accesses the Internet as one of the online users obtained by the IAM device.

In this case, follow the steps below to configure the database SSO:

- Step 1. Configure the database server. Go to the [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page to configure (see section 3.3.3.3 "External Authentication Server").
- Step 2. Go to [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [SSO Options] > [Database] page, check the [Enable Database SSO] option, select the database server configured in Step 1 and specify the SQL statement, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'SSO Options' configuration window with the 'Database' tab selected. The 'Enable Database SSO' checkbox is checked. The 'Database Server' dropdown menu is set to 'Please select database server'. The 'SQL Statement for Obtaining Authenticated User' text area contains the SQL query: `select name,ip from online_user limit 200000;`. The 'Interval for Obtaining Authenticated User (seconds)' text box contains the value '30'.

- ◆ [SQL Statement for Obtaining Authenticated User] specifies the Select statement that can be used to query the online users. The IAM device uses this Select statement to query the user information table in the database and obtain the online users. Please note that the result set returned by SQL statement cannot exceed 2 columns (the first column is Username and the second one is IP address), and the number of records searched cannot exceed 200000.
- ◆ [Interval for Obtaining Authenticated User] specifies the maximum interval between the authentication on the authentication server and that on the IAM device. By default, it is 30 seconds.

Step 3. Click <Test Validity> to list the user information that can be obtained.



1. The online user list only supports synchronizing the "Username" and "IP" columns, and other user attributes, such as user status (whether the user is disabled) and expiry date (whether the user is expired) will not be synchronized. By default, the synchronized users are enabled and will never be expired.
2. The database server supports the automatic synchronization of users. For details, see section 3.3.2.5 "User Synchronization Policy".
3. In some cases, it may take some time (determined by the [Interval for Obtaining Authenticated User] field) for the user to automatically pass the authentication on the IAM device after passing the authentication on the database server. It is recommended to set the authentication method to [None/SSO] in the corresponding authentication policy.

## Others

The [Others] page enables you to configure the mirror interface to monitor the data of user logging into the server when the data does not go through the IAM device. You need to configure the monitored mirror interface for domain SSO (monitoring mode), POP3 SSO and Web SSO. This monitored interface can also be used to monitoring the mirrored packets when the IAM device is deployed in Bypass mode.

To configure the mirror interface to be monitored, check the [Enable Mirror Interface] option and select an idle interface.

### 3.3.3.2 Authentication Page Redirection

The [Auth Page Redirection] page allows you to set the page that will be displayed after users pass the Web authentication.

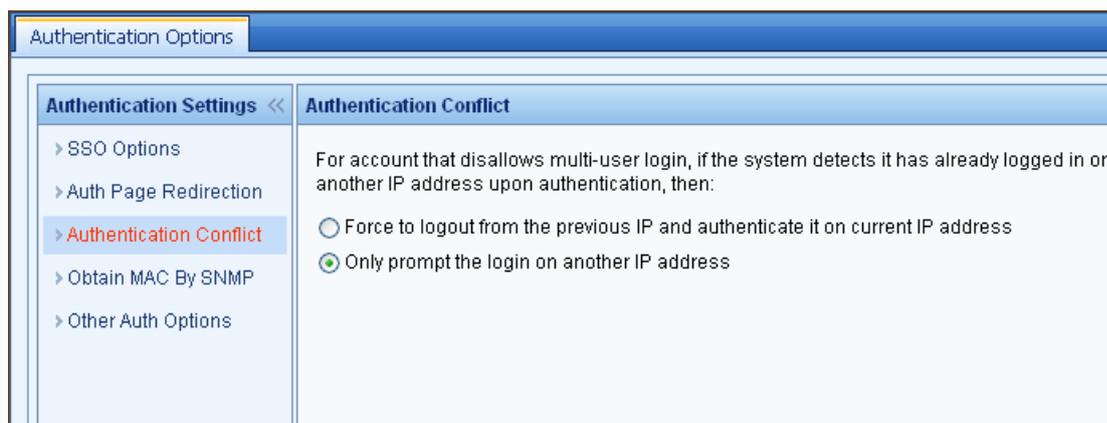
The options displayed on the [Auth Page Redirection] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 21 Auth Page Redirection Settings**

Field	Description
Recently requested page	If this option is checked, after the LAN user passes the authentication, the Web page will be redirected to the page requested by the user before the authentication.
Logout page	If this option is checked, after the LAN user passes the authentication, the Web page will be redirected to the user logout page.
Customized page URL	If this option is checked, you need to specify the page URL in the text box. After the LAN user passes the authentication, the Web page will be redirected to the page specified here.
User information ranking page	If this option is checked, after the LAN user passes the authentication, the Web page will be redirected to the user information ranking page.

### 3.3.3.2.3 Authentication Conflict

The [Authentication Conflict] page allows you to select the processing method when the system finds an account that disallows multi-user login has already logged in upon authentication. There are two options: [Force to logout from the previous IP and authenticate it on current IP address] and [Only prompt the login on another IP address], as shown in the following figure:



### 3.3.3.2.4 Obtain MAC Through SNMP

In the network environment in which LAN users adopt the authentication of MAC binding or restriction and layer 3 switch is crossed, you need to enable the [Obtain MAC Through SNMP] function to obtain the

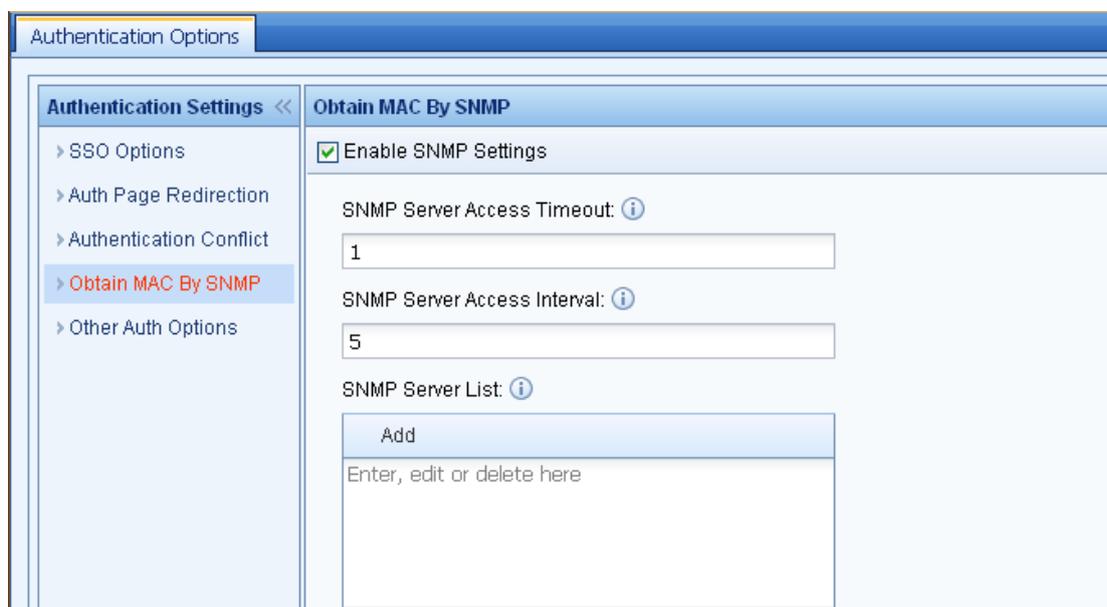
MAC addresses of the LAN users. However, the precondition is that the LAN switch supports the SNMP function.

**Working Principle:** The IAM device periodically sends **snmp request** to the layer 3 switch to request for the MAC table on the switch and saves it in the memory of the device. When the computers on other network segments of the layer 3 switch access the Internet by way of the IAM device, for example, if the computer 192.168.1.2 (which is not on the same network segment as the LAN interface of the device) accesses the Internet through the IAM device, the IAM device will verify the MAC address of the data packets of the computer. If the IAM device finds that the MAC address is that of the layer 3 switch, it will not handle the MAC but search for the actual MAC address from the memory according to the IP address 192.168.1.2 and then authenticate the actual MAC address of the user.

To configure the [Obtain MAC Through SNMP] function, do as follows:

Step 1. Enable the SNMP function on the layer 3 switch.

Step 2. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Options] > [Obtain MAC Through SNMP] page, and check the [Enable SNMP Settings] option to enable the SNMP function on the device, as shown below:



The screenshot shows the 'Authentication Options' configuration page. The left sidebar contains a menu with 'Obtain MAC By SNMP' selected. The main content area is titled 'Obtain MAC By SNMP' and includes the following settings:

- Enable SNMP Settings
- SNMP Server Access Timeout: 1
- SNMP Server Access Interval: 5
- SNMP Server List: Add

The 'SNMP Server List' section contains a text input field with the placeholder text 'Enter, edit or delete here'.

Step 3. Specify the [SNMP Server Access Timeout] and [SNMP Server Access Interval]. Generally, keep the default settings.

Step 4. Configure [SNMP Server List]. Click <Add> to open the [Add SNMP Server] page, type the SNMP IP address and click <Search> to search the server. After the search result is displayed, check the server and click <Add> to add the server, as shown below:

SNMP Server IP:

200.200.76.221 Search

**Search Result (please select server)**

No.	IP/MAC/OID/Community	Operation
-----	----------------------	-----------

Add Cancel

Step 5. Configure the authentication policy according to the IP address or MAC address of the users who adopt MAC authentication. Go to the [User Authentication] > [Authentication Policy] page to add the authentication policy (see section 3.3.3.1.2 "Add Authentication Policy").

After the above configurations are finished, the LAN computers located under the layer 3 switch can access the Internet after they are authenticated by the IAM device using new user authentication.

### 3.3.3.2.5 Other Options

The [Other Options] page allows you to set the options related to authentication, as shown below:

Authentication Settings <<	Other Options
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; SSO Options</li> <li>&gt; Auth Page Redirection</li> <li>&gt; Authentication Conflict</li> <li>&gt; Obtain MAC By SNMP</li> <li style="background-color: #4F81BD; color: white; padding-left: 5px;">&gt; Other Options</li> </ul>	<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Auto logout the user who causes no flow in a specified period</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Time Period (mins): <input type="text" value="120"/> ⓘ</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Submit username and password by POST</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Open DNS service to users before authentication</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Open basic service (root group privilege, HTTP excluded) to users before authentication</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Authenticate again when MAC address is changed</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Password Policy</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Password cannot be the same as username</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> New password cannot be the same as the old one</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Password length enforcement</li> <li style="margin-left: 40px;">Minimum Length: <input type="text" value="6"/></li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Password must contain <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Numerical digits</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Letters</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Special characters (shift + number key)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Lock out the user when authentication attempts reach the maximum ⓘ</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Max Failed Attempts: <input type="text" value="10"/></p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Lockout Period (mins): <input type="text" value="1"/> ⓘ</p>

The options displayed on the [Other Options] page are respectively described in the following table.

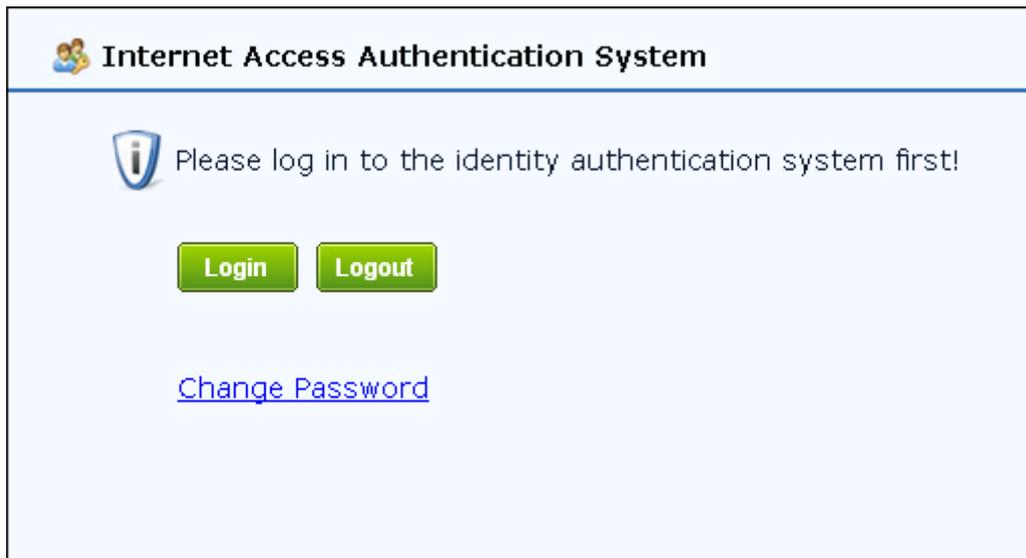
**Table 22 Basic Settings**

Field	Description
Auto logout the user who causes no flow in a specified period	Indicates whether to specify the timeout in which if a user does not cause any flow, the system will automatically logout the user.
Submit username and password by POST	Indicates whether to display the authentication dialog in form of webpage for the users who adopt the username/password authentication.
Open DNS service to users before authentication	Indicates whether to allow users to access DNS service before the authentication.
Open basic service (root group privilege, HTTP excluded) to users before authentication	Indicates whether to allow users to use the root group privileges (HTTP service excluded) before the authentication.

Authenticate again when MAC address is changed	<p>Indicates whether to re-authenticate the user when the MAC address of the authenticated user is changed.</p> <p>For example, suppose the user whose IP address is 192.168.1.1 adopts the username/password authentication. After the user gets offline, it will not be logged out immediately. At this time, another user changes its IP address into 192.168.1.1 and wants to access the Internet using this IP. In this situation, as the MAC address is changed, the IAM device will authenticate the user again.</p>
Password Policy	<p>Indicates whether to enable password policy to enhance the security of the user password. After enabling it, you can then check relevant options to impose requirements on the password, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Password cannot be the same as username.</li> <li>◆ New password cannot be the same as the old one.</li> <li>◆ Password length cannot be shorter than certain characters.</li> <li>◆ Password must contain letters, numeric digits and special characters.</li> </ul>
Lock out the user when authentication attempts reach the maximum	<p>Indicates whether to lock out a user when its authentication attempts reach a certain value.</p> <p>To enable it, check this option and specify the maximum authentication attempts and lockout time period.</p> <p>The values <b>3</b> (Max Failed Attempts) and <b>1</b> (Lockout Period) set in the above figure indicates that when a user fails the authentication for three times, it will be locked out for 1 minute.</p>



1. The users who adopt username/password authentication can change the password by themselves (no need to be changed by the administrator). If changing password failed, the user will be locked out for a certain period, which is determined by the [Lockout Period] set under the [Lock out the user when authentication attempts reach the maximum] option.
2. To change the password, type ***http://device IP*** (device IP should be replace by the IP address of the IAM device) in the address bar of the browser to open the page as shown below:



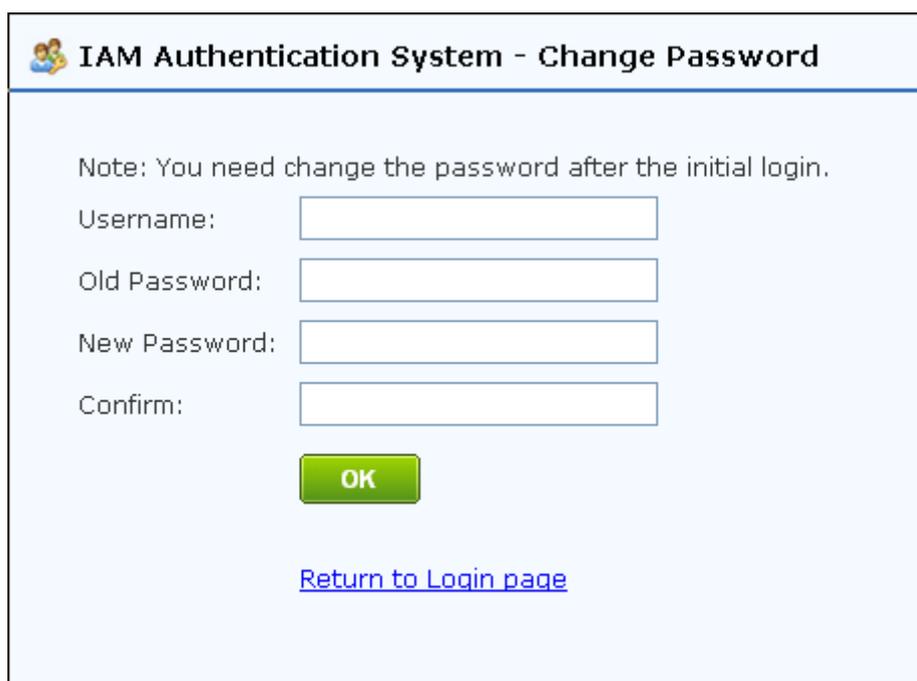
**Internet Access Authentication System**

Please log in to the identity authentication system first!

[Login](#) [Logout](#)

[Change Password](#)

Click <Change Password> to open the following page. Then type the username, old password, new password and new password again, and click <OK>.



**IAM Authentication System - Change Password**

Note: You need change the password after the initial login.

Username:

Old Password:

New Password:

Confirm:

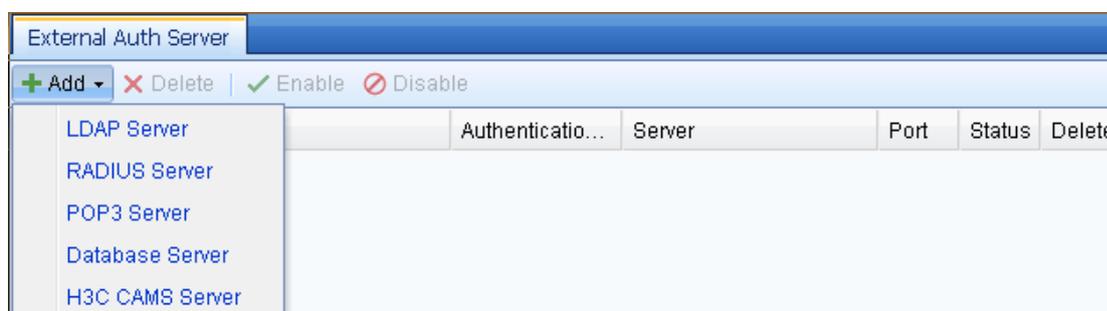
[OK](#)

[Return to Login page](#)

3. To enable DKey authentication, click <Login> on the [Internet Access Authentication System] page to open the login page, as shown below. Then click the [Download DKey Client] to download the DKey authentication client.

### 3.3.3.3 External Authentication Server

[External Auth Server] enables you to configure the information of third-party authentication servers. The IAM device supports five types of external authentication servers, namely, LDAP server, RADIUS server, POP3 server, Database server and H3C CAMS server.



#### 3.3.3.3.1 Add External Authentication Server

##### LDAP Server

To add a LDAP server, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page, click <Add> and select [LDAP Server] to open the [Add LDAP Server] page.
- Step 2. Type the server name and set the parameters under [Basic Settings], including IP address, authentication port, timeout and BaseDN (the specific path to the server that the user locates), as shown below:

Step 3. Specify the information under [Sync Settings], including the username and password of the domain user, type of domain and other information. The IAM device supports the following seven types of LDAP: [MS Active Directory], [OPEN LDAP], [SUN LDAP], [IBM LDAP], [Lotus LDAP], [Novell LDAP] and [OTHER LDAP].

Step 4. Specify the options under [Search Settings], as described below:

**Table 23 Search Settings**

Field	Description
Use extension function	If the LDAP server supports the paged search, check this option; otherwise, the common <b>ldap_search</b> function will be used. If it is not supported by the LDAP server, it possibly because it is disabled by the server or not supported by the LDAP software (for example, the <b>openldap</b> of lower version).
Page Size	Specify the size returned by each page when using the extension function. Please contact the LDAP server administrator (It is commonly set to 800/400/200. Try a smaller value until the synchronization works).
Size Limit	Specify size limit of synchronization. DO NOT set the option unless the server has specific configuration.

Step 5. Click <Test Validity> to test if the IP address, port number and username are available. Then click <Commit> to save your settings.



Generally, keep the default settings for the fields under [Search Settings].

## RADIUS Server

To add a RADIUS server, do as follows:

Step 1. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page, click <Add> and select [RADIUS Server] to open the [Add RADIUS Server] page, as shown below:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add RADIUS Server". At the top left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enable". Below it is a text input field for "Server Name". A section titled "RADIUS Server Settings" contains several fields: "IP Address" (empty), "Authentication Port" (1812), "Timeout (seconds)" (5), "Shared Key" (empty), and "Protocol" (PAP, with a dropdown arrow). At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "Test Validity", "Commit", and "Cancel".

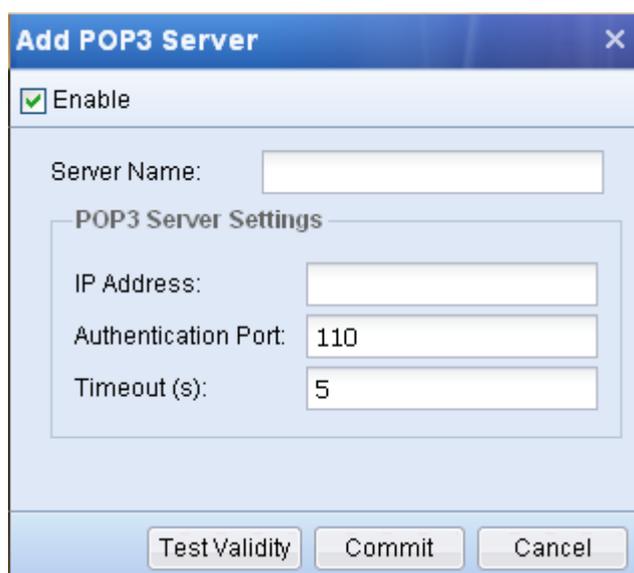
Step 2. Type the server name and set other information under [RADIUS Server Settings], including the IP address, authentication port, timeout, shared key and protocol.

Step 3. Click <Test Validity> to test if the IP address, port number and username are available. Then click <Commit> to save your settings.

## POP3 Server

To add a POP3 server, do as follows:

Step 1. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page, click <Add> and select [POP3 Server] to open the [Add POP3 Server] page, as shown below:



Step 2. Type the server name and set other information under [POP3 Server Settings], including the IP address, authentication port and timeout.

Step 3. Click <Test Validity> to test if the IP address, port number and username are available. Then click <Commit> to save your settings.

## Database Server

To add a database server, do as follows:

Step 1. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page, click <Add> and select [Database Server] to open the [Add Database Server] page, as shown below:

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 24 Database Server Settings**

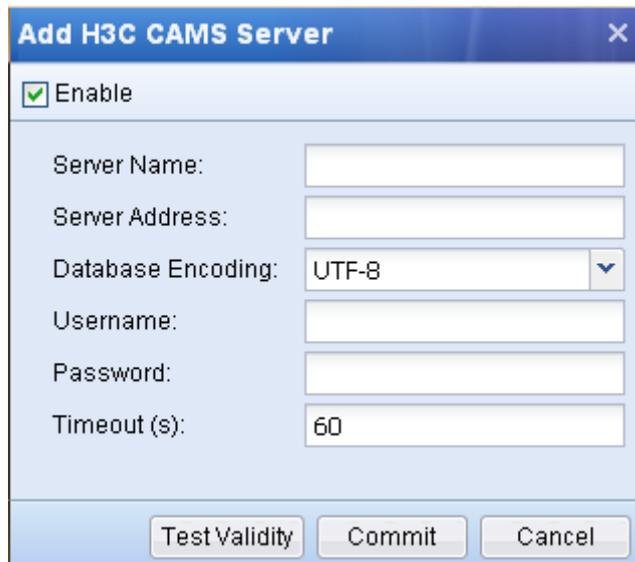
Field	Description
Server Name	Type a name for the database server.
Database Type	Specify the database type. It supports the following types: DB2, ORACLE, MS SQL and MYSQL.
Server Address, Port	Type the address and listening port of the database server.
Database Encoding	Select the database encoding type. Options are: UTF-8, GBK and BIG5.
Username, Password	Type the username that has the privilege to use SQL statement to query and the corresponding password.
Database Name	Type the name of the target database.
Timeout	Specify timeout interval (in seconds) for the IAM device to connect to the database server to obtain data. The default value is 60 seconds. You can adjust the value according to the load of the server and number of users.

Step 3. Click <Test Validity> to test the connectivity between the IAM device and the database server and check if the above configurations are valid. Then click <Commit> to save your settings.

## H3C CAMS Server

To add an H3C CAMS server, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to the [User/Policy] > [User Authentication] > [External Auth Server] page, click <Add> and select [H3C CAMS Server] to open the [Add H3C CAMS Server] page, as shown below:



**Add H3C CAMS Server**

Enable

Server Name:

Server Address:

Database Encoding: UTF-8

Username:

Password:

Timeout (s): 60

- Step 2. Specify the following information.

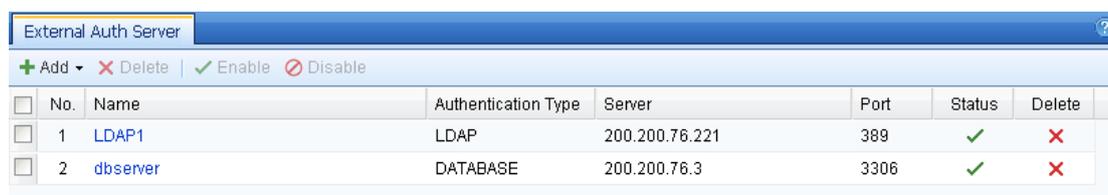
**Table 25 H3C CAMS Server Settings**

Field	Description
Server Name	Type a name for the H3C CAMS server.
Server Address	Type the address and port of the H3C CAMS server. The format can be IP:Port, or server URL address.
Database Encoding	Select the database encoding type. Options are: UTF-8, GBK and BIG5. It determines the encoding in which the characters such as username will be displayed. If the selected encoding type is incorrect, unrecognizable characters may appear.
Username, Password	Type the username and password of the H3C CAMS system administrator.
Timeout	Specify timeout interval (in seconds) for the IAM device to connect to the H3C CAMS server. The default value is 60 seconds. You can adjust the value according to the load of the server and number of users.

Step 3. Click <Test Validity> to test the connectivity between the IAM device and the H3C CAMS server and check if the above configurations are valid. Then click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.3.3.3.2 Delete External Authentication Server

To delete an external server, select the server, as shown below, and then click <Delete>.



External Auth Server							
+ Add   X Delete   ✓ Enable   ✗ Disable							
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Authentication Type	Server	Port	Status	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	LDAP1	LDAP	200.200.76.221	389	✓	X
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	dbserver	DATABASE	200.200.76.3	3306	✓	X

### 3.3.3.3.3 Enable/Disable External Authentication Server

You can enable/disable external authentication servers configured on the IAM device. To enable or disable an external server, check the server and then click <Enable>/<Disable> to enable/disable it.

## 3.4 Bandwidth Management

### 3.4.1 Overview

The bandwidth management function enables you to control the amount of bandwidth used by various applications according to the bandwidth channels. There are two types of bandwidth channels: guaranteed channel and limited channel. The guaranteed channel works by guaranteeing a predefined amount of bandwidth to some important applications, while the limited channel limits the amount of uplink, downlink and total bandwidth based on group/user and applications. The Bandwidth Management System also allows you to configure a channel hierarchy, creating a parent channel and then a child channel for this channel to further conduct detailed bandwidth allocation.

#### Basic Concepts:

**Bandwidth Channel:** By configuring bandwidth channels, you can separate the total bandwidth into several pieces according to the service type and user/group, each piece being a bandwidth channel. According to the purpose, the bandwidth channels can be classified into guaranteed channel and limited channel, as described below:

- ◆ **Guaranteed Channel:** It works by limiting the maximum bandwidth and guaranteeing the minimum bandwidth. When the network is busy, this channel will ensure at least the predefined minimum bandwidth to applicable applications.
- ◆ **Limited Channel:** It works by limiting the maximum bandwidth. When the network is busy, this channel will limit the bandwidth of applicable applications to an amount no greater than the maximum bandwidth predefined.

**Parent Channel/Child Channel:** The bandwidth channel supports the hierarchical management. You can create child channels under another channel to allocate bandwidth detailedly and manage the bandwidth more efficiently.

**Line Bandwidth:** It configures the actual uplink and downlink bandwidth of the public line. When the IAM device is deployed in Bridge mode, you can configure the actual bandwidth of the public line of the front-end gateway. Since the bandwidth rate allocated to limited channel and guaranteed channel are configured based on the total bandwidth of the line, you need to set the actual bandwidth of the line in [Line Bandwidth].

**Virtual Line:** The virtual line is available only when the IAM device is deployed in Bridge mode. It enables you to define one line into multiple virtual lines and configure bandwidth channels for them.

## 3.4.2 Bandwidth Channel Matching/Priority

When the bandwidth management system is enabled, the IAM device will match the data coming into or out of the device with the corresponding bandwidth channel. The matching criteria include group/user, source IP address, application, valid period and destination IP group. Only when a packet satisfies all the criteria specified in a bandwidth channel will this packet match this bandwidth channel.

The same packets will match a same bandwidth channel. The bandwidth channels are matched from top to bottom, and therefore you need to place the channel with more detailed matching conditions at the top. The child channels are also matched from top to bottom. When a packet matches a parent channel, the IAM device will not execute it immediately, but keep matching all of its child channels downwards in depth to find out the optimum child channel.

## 3.4.3 Bandwidth Channel

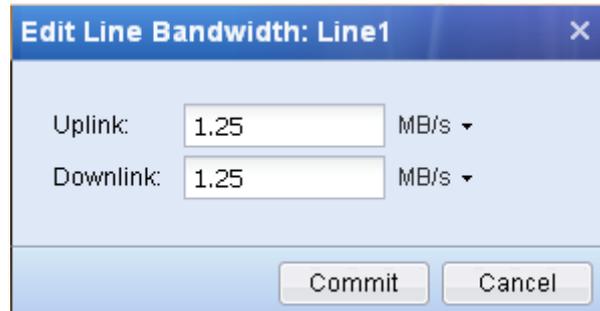
### 3.4.3.1 Guaranteed Channel

The guaranteed channel enables you to guarantee a certain amount of bandwidth to specified applications so that the applications will share an amount of bandwidth no less than the predefined amount, ensuring the smooth running of the important applications even if the line is busy.

**Cast Study:** Suppose there are 1000 users in your company intranet and your company has leased a Telecom line of 10Mb/s. The requirement is that when the employees in the Financial Department when they are visiting online banking websites and sending/receiving emails, at least 2Mb/s and at most 5Mb/s of the bandwidth should be guaranteed.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Line Bandwidth] page and click [Line1] under the [Line] column to open the [Edit Line Bandwidth: Line1] page. In this example, as the company has leased a Telecom line of 10Mb/s, type 1.25MB/s (1Mb/s=1/8MB/s; 10Mb/s=1.25MB/s) in the [Uplink] and [Downlink] text boxes, as shown below:

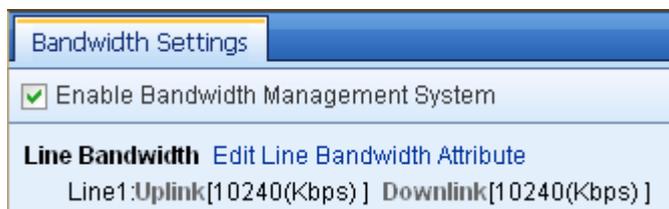


**Edit Line Bandwidth: Line1**

Uplink:  MB/s ▾

Downlink:  MB/s ▾

Step 2. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] page, and check the [Enable Bandwidth Management System] to enable the bandwidth management system. The [Line Bandwidth] below displays the total bandwidth of the public line. You can click it to edit it.



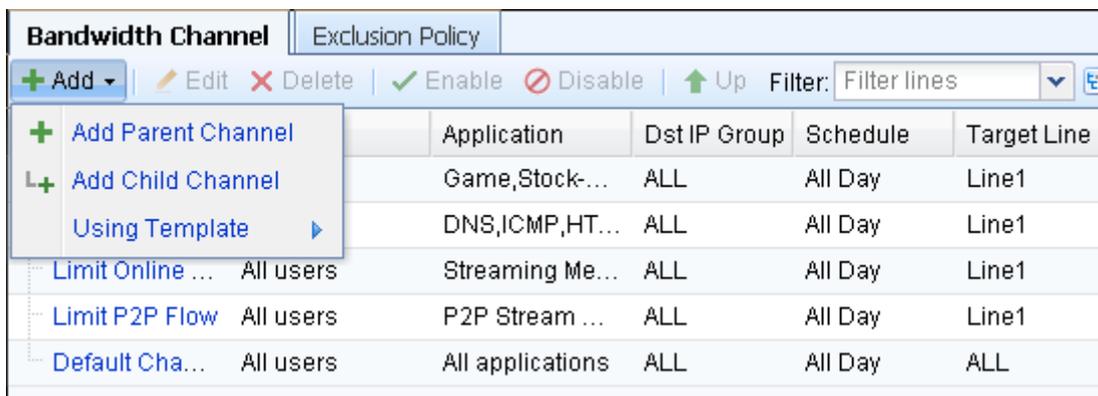
**Bandwidth Settings**

Enable Bandwidth Management System

**Line Bandwidth** [Edit Line Bandwidth Attribute](#)

Line1:Uplink[10240(Kbps)] Downlink[10240(Kbps)]

Step 3. Open the [Bandwidth Channel] tab, click <Add> and select <Add Parent Channel> to open the [Add Parent Channel] page, as shown below:



Bandwidth Channel		Exclusion Policy				
<input type="button" value="+ Add"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> Disable <input type="button" value="Up"/> Filter: <input type="text" value="Filter lines"/>						
<input checked="" type="button" value="+ Add Parent Channel"/> <input type="button" value="+ Add Child Channel"/> <input type="button" value="Using Template"/>		Application	Dst IP Group	Schedule	Target Line	
Limit Online ...		All users	Streaming Me...	ALL	All Day	Line1
Limit P2P Flow		All users	P2P Stream ...	ALL	All Day	Line1
Default Cha...		All users	All applications	ALL	All Day	ALL

Step 4. Check [Enable Channel] to enable this channel. If you do not check it, the channel will be disabled and does not take effect. Then type the channel name in [Name] text box. The [Channel] displays the channel level. “/” indicates the current channel is the first-level channel.



**Add Parent Channel**

Enable Channel

Name:

Channel:

Step 5. Configure [Channel Settings]. Click [Channel Settings] under [Channel Menu] to open the

[Channel Settings] page on the right, and then set the following information.

Channel Menu	Channel Settings
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; Channel Settings</li> <li>&gt; Applicable Objects</li> </ul>	<p>Target Line: <input type="text" value="Line1"/> ▾</p> <p><b>Channel Type</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Guaranteed channel</p> <p>Uplink Bandwidth: Min <input type="text" value="20"/> % <input type="text" value="256"/> KB/s ▾  Max <input type="text" value="50"/> % <input type="text" value="640"/> KB/s ▾</p> <p>Downlink Bandwidth: Min <input type="text" value="20"/> % <input type="text" value="256"/> KB/s ▾  Max <input type="text" value="50"/> % <input type="text" value="640"/> KB/s ▾</p> <p>Priority: <input type="text" value="High"/> ▾</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Limited channel</p> <p>Uplink Bandwidth: Max <input type="text" value="100"/> % <input type="text" value="1280"/> KB/s ▾  Downlink Bandwidth: Max <input type="text" value="100"/> % <input type="text" value="1280"/> KB/s ▾</p>

**Table 26 Guaranteed Channel Settings**

Field	Description
Valid Line	<p>Select the line applicable to this channel. Only when the packet goes through this line will it matches this bandwidth channel.</p> <p>In this example, there is only one line, that is, Line1; therefore, select <b>Line1</b> in [Valid Line].</p>
Channel Type	<p>Select the type of bandwidth channel and define the bandwidth value.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to guarantee at least 2Mb/s and at most 5Mb/s of bandwidth when the staff in Financial Department are accessing online banking websites and send/receive emails, check the [Guaranteed channel], type <b>20</b> and <b>50</b> in [Min] and [Max] text boxes respectively for [Uplink Bandwidth] and [Downlink Bandwidth]. As the total bandwidth is 10Mb/s, the minimum bandwidth is 2Mb/s and the maximum is 5Mb/s.</p> <p>[Priority] has three options: high, medium and low. The high priority channel has the first opportunity to use the idle bandwidth.</p>

Max Bandwidth Per User	<p>Limit the bandwidth of each IP address that matches this channel to a certain value.</p> <p>In this example, there is no requirement to limit bandwidth of each IP address; therefore, do not check it.</p>
Bandwidth Allocation Among Users	<p>Set how to allocate the bandwidth to users who matches this channel. There are two options: [Average allocation] and [Free competition]. The default selection is [Average allocation], which indicates averagely allocating bandwidth among users. Please note that the users here refer to those whose flow matches this channel. The users who are specified in [Applicable Object] but have no flow of the corresponding application are not applicable. The [Free competition] option is unavailable at present.</p>
Advanced	<p>Check the option to take every WAN IP as a user in the channel so that it can equally share the bandwidth with LAN users and be limited by Max Bandwidth Per User (typically selected for server providing services to WAN, please select with caution).</p>

Step 6. Configure [Applicable Objects] to set the matching conditions for this channel, including application type, applicable objects, valid period and destination IP group. Data packet must satisfy all the criteria to match this channel.

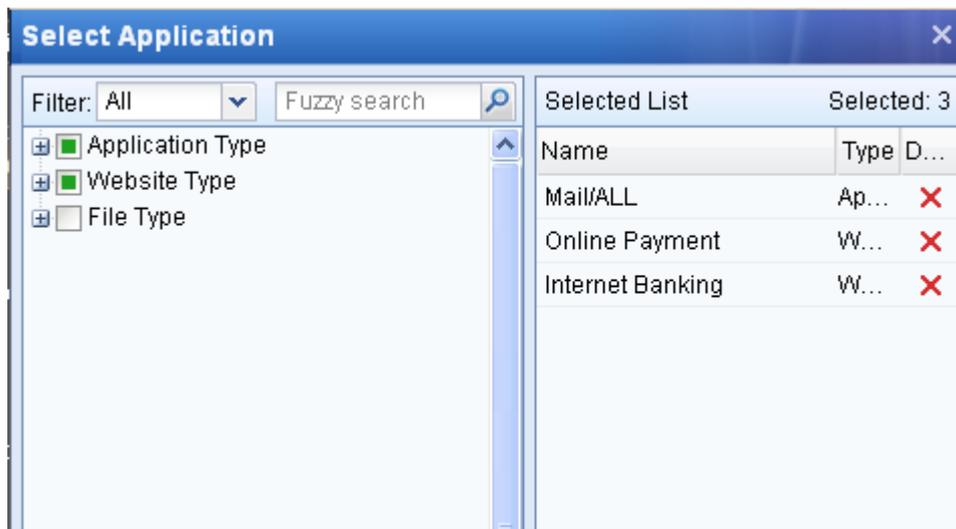
- a. Click [Applicable Objects] under [Channel Menu] to open the [Applicable Objects] page on the right, as shown below:

Channel Menu	Applicable Objects
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; Channel Settings</li> <li style="background-color: #4f81bd; color: white; padding: 2px;">&gt; Applicable Objects</li> </ul>	<p><b>Applicable Objects</b></p> <p>Application: <input checked="" type="radio"/> All applications  <input type="radio"/> Custom  <a href="#">Select Application</a></p> <p>Object: <input checked="" type="radio"/> All users  <input type="radio"/> Custom  <a href="#">Select Object</a></p> <p>Schedule: <input type="text" value="All Day"/> ▼</p> <p>Dst IP Group: <input type="text" value="ALL"/> ▼</p>

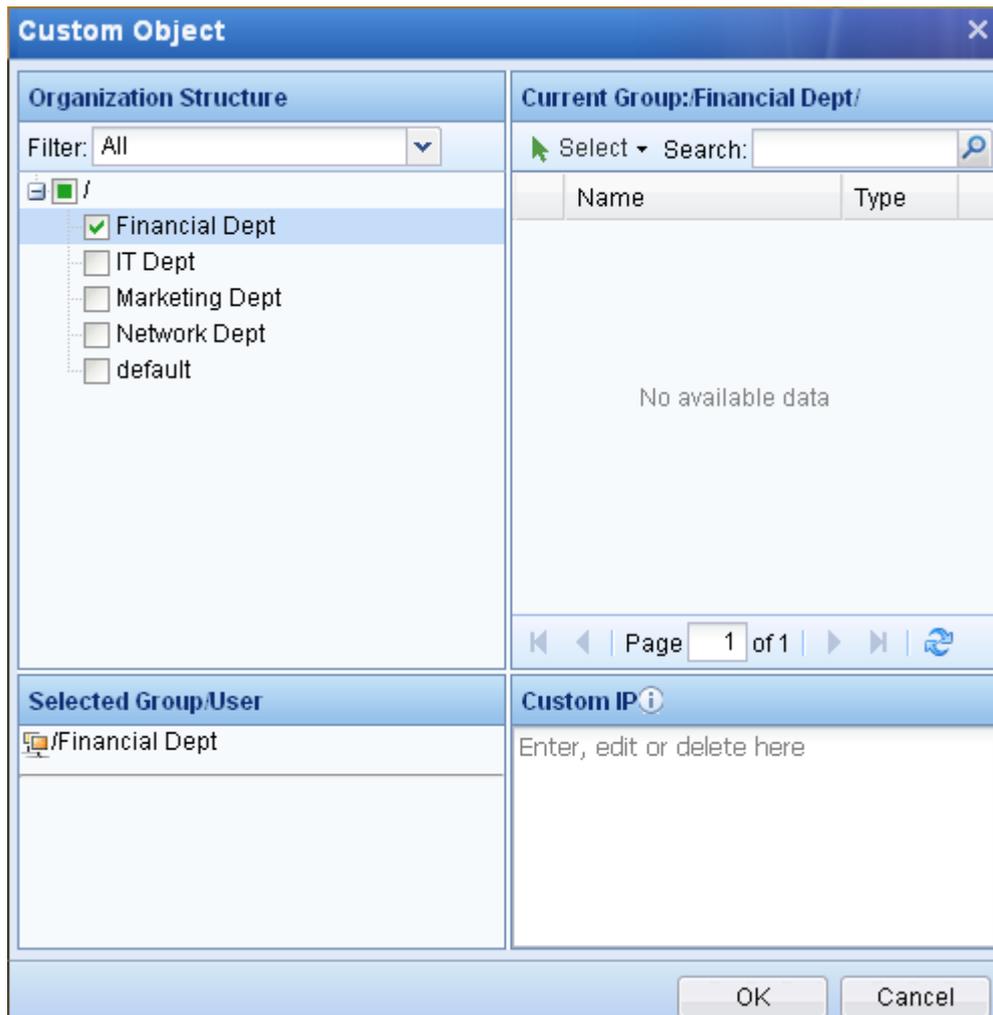
- b. Select applicable application. If you check [All applications], it means this channel will apply to all types of applications; if you check [Custom], you need to select the specific applications. Click the [Select Application] link to open the [Select Application] page, and then select the

application type and website type.

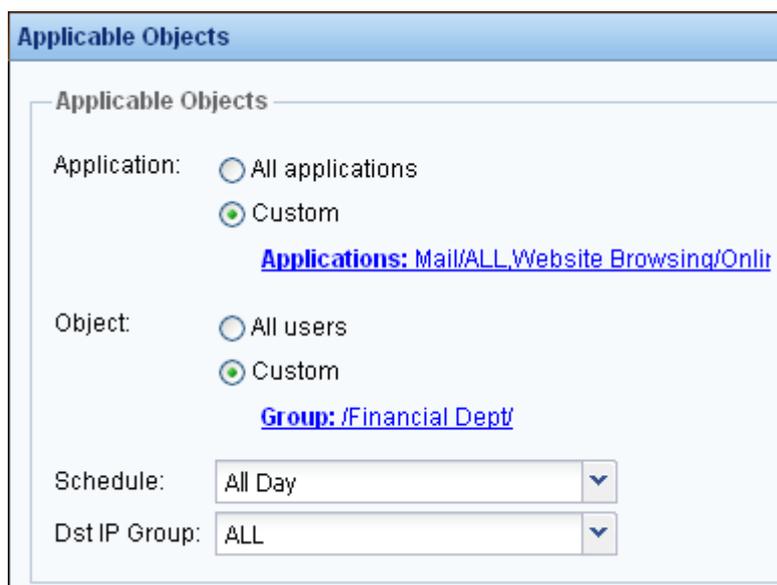
In this example, as the target applications are online banking websites and emails, select [Mail/ALL] under [Application Type] and [Online Payment] and [Internet Banking] under [Website Type]. By the way, [File Type] is used to conduct control over the download of files through HTTP or FTP. Your selection will be displayed under [Select List] on the right. After selecting the applications, click <OK> to save your settings.



- c. Select applicable group/user or IP address. If you check [All users], it means this channel will apply to all users in the LAN; if you check [Custom], you need to select the specific users/groups. Click the [Select Object] link to open the [Custom Object] page, and then select the users/groups. In this example, the target user group is the Financial Department, select the **Financial Dept** group under [Organization Structure] and then select your desired users and subgroups on the right. Your selection will be displayed under [Selected Group/User] at the bottom. [Custom IP] at the lower right corner is used to define a single IP or IP range. When the source IP address of a packet matches the IP address set here, the packet will match this channel. After selecting the applicable user/group, click <OK> to save your settings.



- d. Specify the valid period destination IP group of this channel. In this example, set [Schedule] to **All Day** and [Dst IP Group] to **ALL**, as shown below:



Step 7. Click <OK> to save the guaranteed channel.



1. When the total bandwidth of guaranteed channels exceeds 100%, the minimum bandwidth of each guaranteed channel will be reduced in proportion. For example, suppose you configured two guaranteed channels: the first channel guaranteed 30% and the second channel guaranteed 90%. As the total bandwidth exceeds 100%, the first channel is actually assigned with  $30/(90+30)\%$ , that is, 25% and the second is assigned with  $90/(90+30)\%$ , that is, 75%.

2. If there is idle bandwidth, the high priority bandwidth channel has the first opportunity to use them.

### 3.4.3.2 Limited Channel

The limited channel enables you to limit the maximum amount of bandwidth allowed for the packets that match the channel.

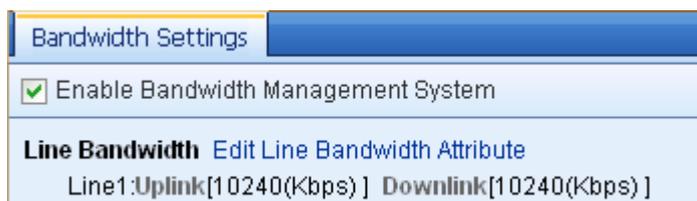
**Case Study:** Suppose there are 1000 users in your company intranet and your company has leased a Telecom line of 10Mb/s. As the employees in the Marketing Department often use Thunder or P2P download tools, which occupies a large amount of bandwidth and influences the running of other important services, the company requires that the bandwidth allocated to P2P or Thunder download should be limited to 2Mb/s and that occupied by each user should be limited to 30KB/s.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

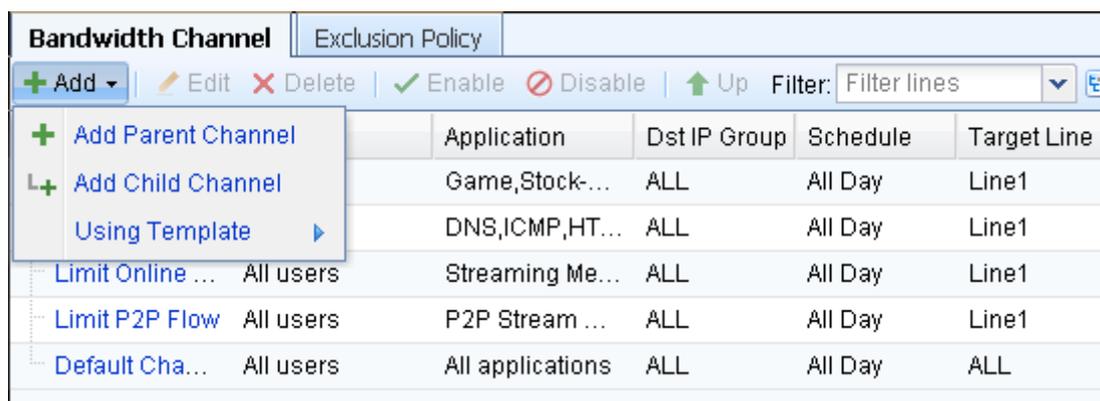
Step 1. Go to [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Line Bandwidth] page and click [Line1] under the [Line] column to open the [Edit Line Bandwidth: Line1] page. In this example, as the company has leased a Telecom line of 10Mb/s, type 1.25MB/s (1Mb/s=1/8MB/s; 10Mb/s=1.25MB/s) in the [Uplink] and [Downlink] text boxes, as shown below:

Step 2. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] page, and check the [Enable Bandwidth Management System] to enable the bandwidth management system. The [Line Bandwidth] below

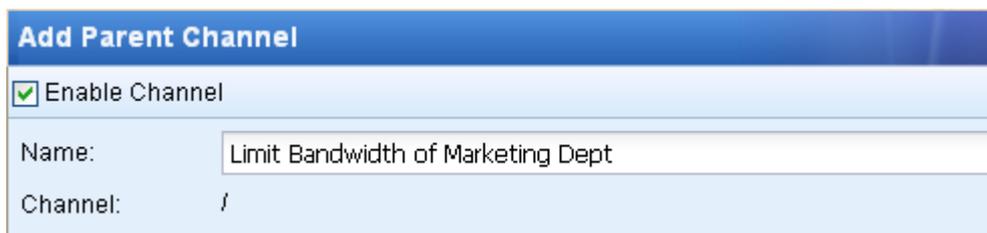
displays the total bandwidth of the public line. You can click it to edit it.



Step 3. Open the [Bandwidth Channel] tab, click <Add> and select <Add Parent Channel> to open the [Add Parent Channel] page, as shown below:



Step 4. Check [Enable Channel] to enable this channel. If you do not check it, the channel will be disabled and not take effect. Then type the channel name in [Name] text box. The [Channel] displays the channel level. “/” indicates the current channel is the first-level channel.



Step 5. Configure [Channel Settings]. Click [Channel Settings] under [Channel Menu] to open the [Channel Settings] page on the right, and then set the following information.

**Table 27 Limited Channel Settings**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Valid Line	<p>Select the line applicable to this channel. Only when the packet goes through this line will it matches this bandwidth channel.</p> <p>In this example, there is only one line, that is, Line1; therefore, select <b>Line1</b> for [Valid Line].</p>
Channel Type	<p>Select the type of bandwidth channel and define the bandwidth value.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to limit the bandwidth of P2P download data to 2Mb/s, type <b>20</b> in the [Max] text box respectively for [Uplink Bandwidth] and [Downlink Bandwidth]. As the total bandwidth is 10Mb/s, the minimum bandwidth is 2Mb/s.</p> <p>[Priority] has three options: high, medium and low. The high priority channel has the first opportunity to use the idle bandwidth.</p>
Max Bandwidth Per User	<p>Limit the bandwidth of each IP address that matches this channel to a certain value.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to limit the bandwidth occupied by each user to 30KB/s, check this option and type <b>30</b> in the [Uplink] and [Downlink] text boxes respectively.</p>
Bandwidth Allocation Among Users	<p>Set how to allocate the bandwidth to users who matches this channel. There are two options: [Average allocation] and [Free competition]. The default selection is [Average allocation], which indicates averagely allocating bandwidth among users. Please note that the users here refer to those whose flow matches this channel. The users who are specified in [Applicable Object] but have no flow of the corresponding application are not applicable. The [Free competition] option is unavailable at present.</p>
Advanced	<p>Check the option to take every WAN IP as a user in the channel so that it can equally share the bandwidth with LAN users and be limited by Max Bandwidth Per User (typically selected for server providing services to WAN, please select with caution).</p>

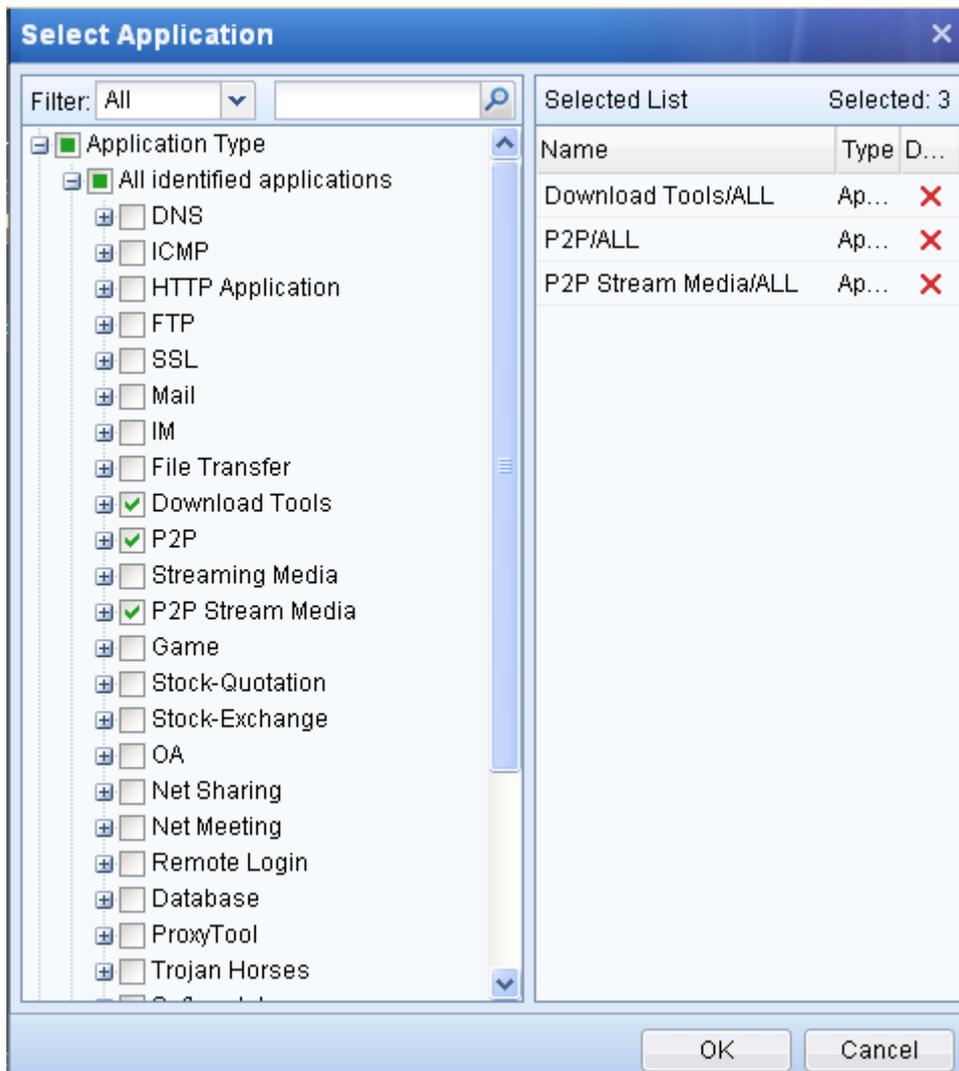
Step 6. Configure [Applicable Objects] to set the matching conditions for this channel, including application type, applicable objects, valid period and destination IP group. Data packet must satisfy all the criteria to match this channel.

- a. Click [Applicable Objects] under [Channel Menu] to open the [Applicable Objects] page on the right, as shown below:

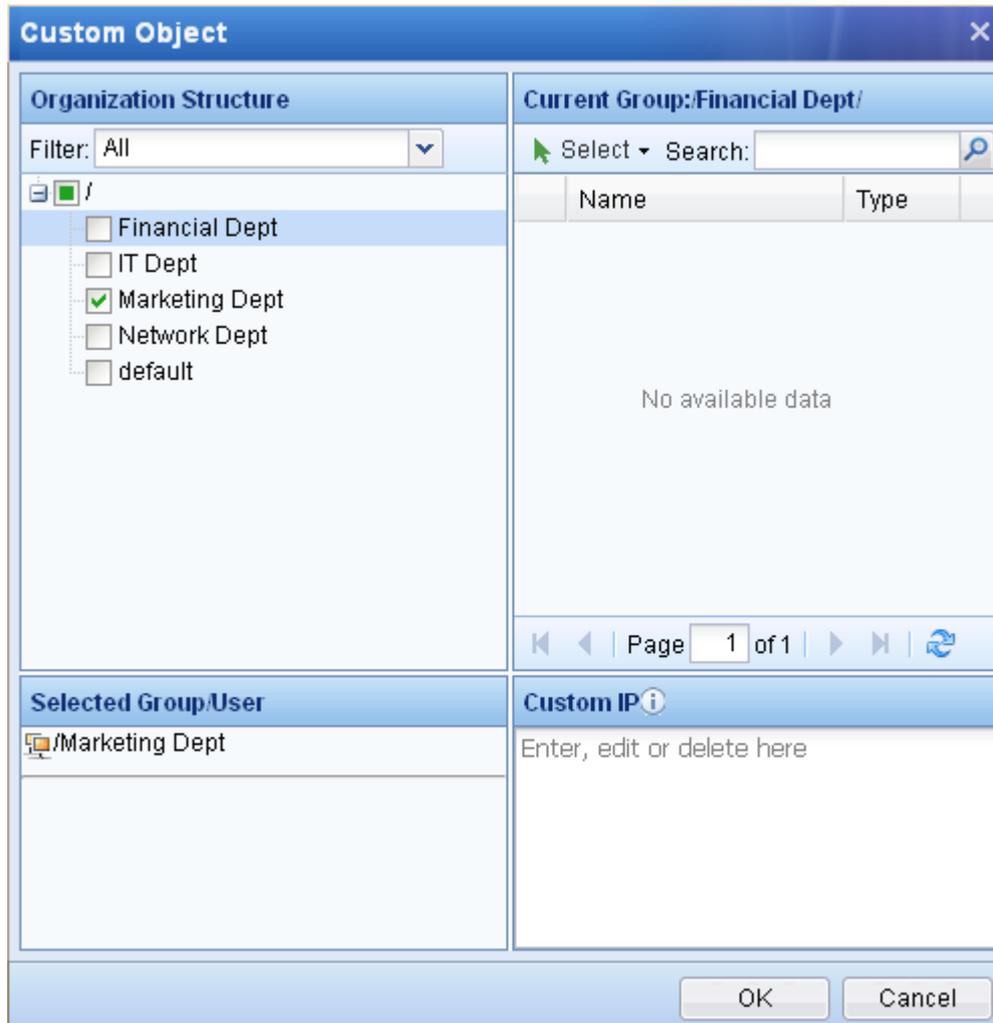
Channel Menu	Applicable Objects
<a href="#">&gt; Channel Settings</a>	
<a href="#">&gt; Applicable Objects</a>	
	<b>Applicable Objects</b>
	Application: <input checked="" type="radio"/> All applications <input type="radio"/> Custom <a href="#">Select Application</a>
	Object: <input checked="" type="radio"/> All users <input type="radio"/> Custom <a href="#">Select Object</a>
	Schedule: <input type="text" value="All Day"/> ▼
	Dst IP Group: <input type="text" value="ALL"/> ▼

- b. Select applicable application. If you check [All applications], it means this channel will apply to all types of applications; if you check [Custom], you need to select the specific applications. Click the [Select Application] link to open the [Select Application] page, and then select the application type and website type.

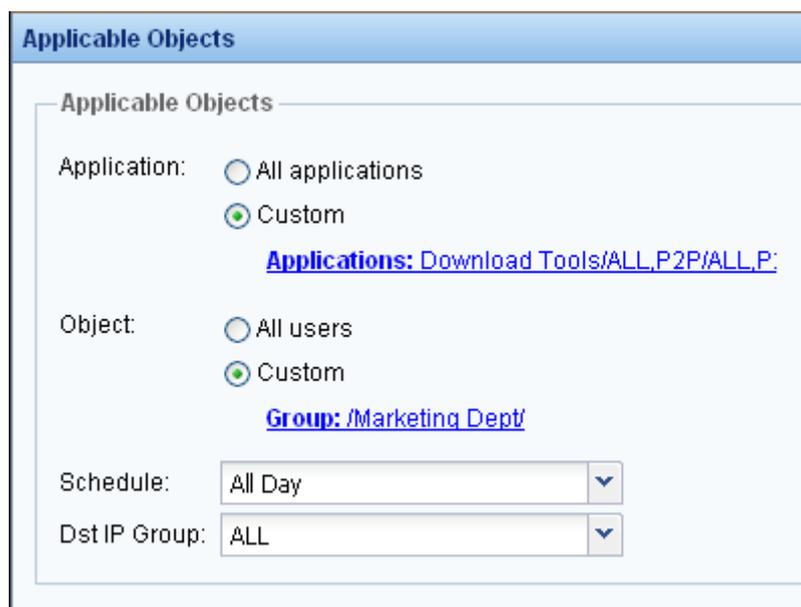
In this example, as the target applications are P2P-relevant applications and data download, select [Download Tools/ALL], [P2P/ALL] and [P2P Stream medium/ALL] under [Application Type]. You can also select the corresponding applications under [Website Type] and [File Type]. [Website Type] is used to conduct control over packets of or access to websites. [File Type] is used to conduct control over file download through HTTP or FTP. Your selection will be displayed under [Select List] on the right. After selecting the applications, click <OK> to save your settings.



- c. Select applicable group/user or IP address. If you check [All users], it means this channel will apply to all users in the LAN; if you check [Custom], you need to select the specific users/groups. Click the [Select Object] link to open the [Custom Object] page, and then select the users/groups. In this example, the target user group is the Marketing Department, select the **Marketing Dept** group under [Organization Structure] and then select your desired users and subgroups on the right. Your selection will be displayed under [Selected Group/User] at the bottom. [Custom IP] at the lower right corner is used to define a single IP or IP range. When the source IP address of a packet matches the IP address set here, the packet will match this channel. After selecting the applicable user/group, click <OK> to save your settings.



- d. Specify the valid period and destination IP group of this channel. In this example, set [Schedule] to **All Day** and [Dst IP Group] to **ALL**, as shown below:



Step 7. Click <OK> to save the limited channel.

### 3.4.3.3 Child Channel

Child channel is used to further allocate the bandwidth of its parent channel (guaranteed channel or limited channel).

**Case Study:** Suppose there are 1000 users in your company intranet and your company has leased a Telecom line of 10Mb/s. The requirements are:

- ◆ Guarantee at least 3MB/s and at most 5MB/s of bandwidth to HTTP applications even when the network is busy.
- ◆ Since there are a large number of employees in the Marketing Dept, for which the HTTP application is very important, ensure a bandwidth of no less than 1MB/s and no more than 2MB/s for the HTTP applications used by employees in the Marketing Dept at any time.
- ◆ Limit the bandwidth occupied by HTTP applications per employee in the Marketing Dept to no more than 20KB/s.

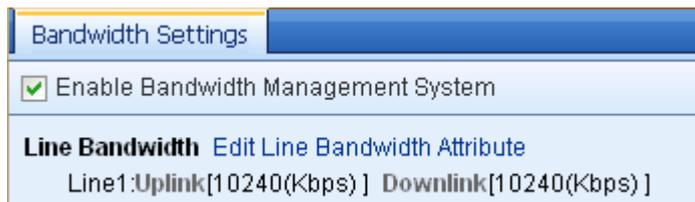
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Go to [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Line Bandwidth] page and click [Line1] under the [Line] column to open the [Edit Line Bandwidth: Line1] page. In this example, as the company has leased a Telecom line of 10Mb/s, type 1.25MB/s (1Mb/s=1/8MB/s; 10Mb/s=1.25MB/s) in the [Uplink] and [Downlink] text boxes, as shown below:



Edit Line Bandwidth: Line1	
Uplink:	<input type="text" value="1.25"/> MB/s ▾
Downlink:	<input type="text" value="1.25"/> MB/s ▾
<input type="button" value="Commit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

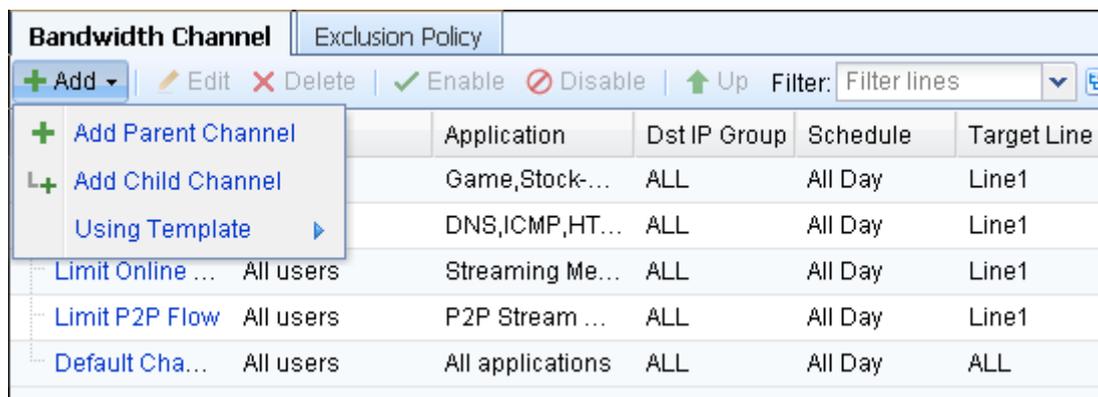
Step 2. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] page, and check the [Enable Bandwidth Management System] to enable the bandwidth management system. The [Line Bandwidth] below displays the total bandwidth of the public line. You can click it to edit it.



Step 3. As the requirement is to guarantee the bandwidth of HTTP applications for all users and then for the Marketing Department, first, you need add a parent channel to guarantee the bandwidth of HTTP applications for all users and then a child channel to further guarantee a certain amount of bandwidth for users in the Marketing Department.

Step 4. Configure a parent channel to guarantee the bandwidth of HTTP applications for all users.

- a. Open the [Bandwidth Channel] tab, click <Add> and select <Add Parent Channel> to open the [Add Parent Channel] page, as shown below:



- b. Check [Enable Channel] to enable this channel. If you do not check it, the channel will be disabled and not take effect. Then type the channel name in [Name] text box. The [Channel] displays the channel level. “/” indicates the current channel is the first-level channel.



- c. Configure [Channel Settings]. Click [Channel Settings] under [Channel Menu] to open the [Channel Settings] page on the right, and then set the following information.

Channel Menu	Channel Settings
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; Channel Settings</li> <li>&gt; Applicable Objects</li> </ul>	<p>Target Line: <input type="text" value="Line1"/></p> <p><b>Channel Type</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Guaranteed channel</p> <p>Uplink Bandwidth: Min <input type="text" value="30"/> % <input type="text" value="384"/> KB/s ▾</p> <p>Max <input type="text" value="50"/> % <input type="text" value="640"/> KB/s ▾</p> <p>Downlink Bandwidth: Min <input type="text" value="30"/> % <input type="text" value="384"/> KB/s ▾</p> <p>Max <input type="text" value="50"/> % <input type="text" value="640"/> KB/s ▾</p> <p>Priority: <input type="text" value="High"/></p>

**Table 28 Guaranteed Channel Settings (Parent Channel)**

Field	Description
Valid Line	<p>Select the line applicable to this channel. Only when the packet goes through this line will it matches this bandwidth channel.</p> <p>In this example, there is only one line, that is, Line1; therefore, select <b>Line1</b> for [Valid Line].</p>
Channel Type	<p>Select the type of bandwidth channel and define the bandwidth value.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to guarantee at least 3Mb/s and at most 5Mb/s of bandwidth when users are using HTTP applications, check the [Guaranteed channel], type <b>30</b> and <b>50</b> in [Min] and [Max] text boxes respectively for [Uplink Bandwidth] and [Downlink Bandwidth]. As the total bandwidth is 10Mb/s, the minimum bandwidth is 3Mb/s and the maximum is 5Mb/s.</p> <p>[Priority] has three options: high, medium and low. The high priority channel has the first opportunity to use the idle bandwidth.</p>

- d. Configure [Applicable Objects]. For [Application], select [Custom] and select HTTP application, check [All users] for [Object], and set [Schedule] to **All Day** and [Dst IP Group] to **ALL**, as shown below:

**Applicable Objects**

Applicable Objects

Application:  All applications  
 Custom  
Applications: [HTTP Application/ALL](#)

Object:  All users  
 Custom  
[Select Object](#)

Schedule: All Day

Dst IP Group: ALL

e. Click <OK> to save the parent channel.

Step 5. Configure a child channel based on the **Guarantee HTTP** channel (configured above) to guarantee the bandwidth of HTTP applications for Marketing Department.

a. Check the **Guarantee HTTP** channel, and then click <Add> and select [Add Child Channel] to add a child channel under the parent channel **Guarantee HTTP**.

Bandwidth Channel		Exclusion Policy				
		Application	Dst IP Group	Schedule	Target Line	Min Bandwidth
+ Add Parent Channel		HTTP Applicat...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑384(KB/s) ↓384(KB/s)
+ Add Child Channel		g Dept/	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑None ↓None
Using Template		Mail,Online P...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑256(KB/s) ↓256(KB/s)
Ensure Ban...		Game,Stock...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑256(KB/s) ↓256(KB/s)
Guarantee L...						

b. Check [Enable Channel] to enable this channel. If you do not check it, the channel will be disabled and not take effect. Then type the channel name in [Name] text box. The [Channel] displays the channel level. “/Guarantee HTTP” indicates the current channel is a child channel of the **Guarantee HTTP** channel.

**Add Child Channel**

Enable Channel

Name: Guarante HTTP for Marketing Dept

Channel: /Guarantee HTTP

c. Configure [Channel Settings]. Click [Channel Settings] under [Channel Menu] to open the [Channel Settings] page on the right, and then set the following information.

The screenshot shows the 'Channel Settings' window with the following configuration:

- Guaranteed channel** (selected):
  - Uplink Bandwidth: Min 33 % 126.72 KB/s, Max 40 % 256 KB/s
  - Downlink Bandwidth: Min 33 % 126.72 KB/s, Max 40 % 256 KB/s
  - Priority: High
- Limited channel** (unselected):
  - Uplink Bandwidth: Max 100 % 640 KB/s
  - Downlink Bandwidth: Max 100 % 640 KB/s
  - Priority: High
- Max Bandwidth Per User** (checked):
  - Uplink: 20 KB/s
  - Downlink: 20 KB/s

**Table 29 Guaranteed Channel Settings (Child Channel)**

Field	Description
Valid Line	It is same as that selected in parent channel. It cannot be changed.
Channel Type	<p>Select the type of bandwidth channel and define the bandwidth value.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to guarantee at least 1MB/S and at most 2MB/S of bandwidth when users in the Marketing Department are using HTTP applications, check the [Guaranteed channel], type <b>33</b> and <b>40</b> in [Min] and [Max] text boxes respectively for [Uplink Bandwidth] and [Downlink Bandwidth]. The bandwidth available for this channel refers to the guaranteed bandwidth of the parent channel, that is, 30% of the total 10 Mb/s.</p> <p>[Priority] has three options: high, medium and low. The high priority channel has the first opportunity to use the idle bandwidth.</p>
Max Bandwidth Per User	<p>Limit the bandwidth of each IP address that matches this channel to a certain value.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to limit the bandwidth occupied by each user in Marketing Department to 20KB/s, check this option and type <b>20</b> in the [Uplink] and [Downlink] text boxes respectively.</p>

- d. Configure [Applicable Objects]. For [Application], select [Custom] and select HTTP application; for [Object], check [Custom] and then select **Marketing Dept** group. Then set [Schedule] to **All**

Day and [Dst IP Group] to **ALL**, as shown below:

**Applicable Objects**

---

Applicable Objects

Application:  All applications  
 Custom  
Applications: HTTP Application/ALL

Object:  All users  
 Custom  
Group: /Marketing Dept/

Schedule:  ▼

Dst IP Group:  ▼

Step 6. Click <OK> to save the child channel (guaranteed channel), and it is added to the channel list and displayed under the parent channel **Guarantee HTTP** on the [Bandwidth Channel] page, as shown below:

Bandwidth Channel		Exclusion Policy					
+ Add   Edit   Delete   Enable   Disable   Up   Down		Filter: Filter lines					
Name	Object	Application	Dst IP ...	Sched...	Target Line	Min Bandwidth	
Guarantee HTTP	All users	HTTP Applicat...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑384(KB/s) ↓384(KB/s)	
Guarantee HTTP for Marketing Dept	/Marketing Dept/	HTTP Applicat...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑126.72(KB/s) ↓126.72...	
Default Channel	All users	HTTP Applicat...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑None ↓None	
Limit Bandwidth of Marketing Dept	/Marketing Dept/	Download To...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑None ↓None	
Ensure Bandwidth for Financial Dept	/Financial Dept/	Mail,Online P...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑256(KB/s) ↓256(KB/s)	
Guarantee Low-Latency Application	All users	Game,Stock-...	ALL	All Day	Line1	↑256(KB/s) ↓256(KB/s)	



1. The bandwidth defined in child channels is calculated based on the available bandwidth set in the parent channel; the actual traffic will not go beyond the limit of the parent channel.
2. By default, the Bandwidth Management System supports child channel of up to three levels. Each level includes a default channel. The traffic that does not match the criteria of all the other child channels will match this default channel; therefore, the default channel cannot be deleted.
3. The applications and objects defined in child channel must be covered by the parent channel; otherwise, the setting may be failed.

### 3.4.3.4 Exclusion Policy

Exclusion policy enables you to exclude some data packets so that they will not be matched by any

bandwidth channel and therefore their traffic will not be controlled. For example, when the IAM device is deployed in bridge mode and the DMZ zone of the front-end firewall is connected with some servers, there is no need to control the traffic when LAN users access these servers, for the data is not destined for the public network. In this situation, you can add an exclusion policy for the applications or IP addresses corresponding to these servers to have them exempted from the traffic control.

**Case Study:** Suppose the IAM device is deployed in bridge mode and the DMZ zone of the front-end firewall is connected with some servers. Now you need to have the data requested for these servers exempted from the traffic control.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to [Objects] > [IP Group] to define an IP group, and add the IP addresses you want to excluded from the bandwidth control into this IP group, as shown below:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit IP Group". It has a blue header bar with a close button (X). The form contains the following fields and buttons:

- Name:** A text input field containing "Servers".
- Description:** A text input field that is currently empty.
- IP Address:** A text input field containing "172.16.1.1-172.16.1.100". To the left of this field is an information icon (i).
- Buttons:** At the bottom right, there is a "Resolve Domain" button. At the bottom center, there are "Commit" and "Cancel" buttons.

- Step 2. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Settings] > [Exclusion Policy] page, as shown below:

Bandwidth Channel		Exclusion Policy			
+ Add		X Delete			
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Service Type	Dst IP Group	Delete

Step 3. Click <Add> to open the [Exclusion Policy] page. Then type the policy name and select the application type. If you are not sure about the application type, select [ALL]. Specify the destination IP group. In this example, select the **Servers** group defined in Step 1, as shown below:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Exclusion Policy" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains three input fields: "Policy Name" with the text "Company Server", "App Type" with a dropdown menu showing "ALL", and "Dst IP Group" with a dropdown menu showing "Servers". At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Commit" and "Cancel".

Step 4. Click <Commit> to save the exclusion policy.

### 3.4.4 Line Bandwidth

The [Line Bandwidth] page is used to configure the total bandwidth of the public line. The IAM device allocates the bandwidth according to the actual bandwidth set here. Please make sure the bandwidth configured here conforms to the actual bandwidth of the public line; otherwise, the Bandwidth Management System may not yield the effects as it is supposed.

To edit the line bandwidth, do as follows:

Step 1. Open the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Line Bandwidth] page, as shown below:

Line Bandwidth			
	Line	Uplink	Downlink
1	Line1	10240 (Kbps)	10240 (Kbps)
2	Line2 (The line is not available because it is not ...	819200 (Kbps)	819200 (Kbps)

Step 2. Click the line to be edited. Line1 corresponds to the line connected to the WAN1 interface, line 2 corresponds to the line connected to the WAN2 interface, and so on. When the IAM device is deployed in Route mode, there are several lines (on the condition that the Multi-Line function is enabled).

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Line Bandwidth: Line1". It contains two rows of input fields. The first row is labeled "Uplink:" and has a text box containing "1.25" followed by a dropdown menu showing "MB/s". The second row is labeled "Downlink:" and has a text box containing "1.25" followed by a dropdown menu showing "MB/s". At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Commit" and "Cancel".

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.4.5 Virtual Line

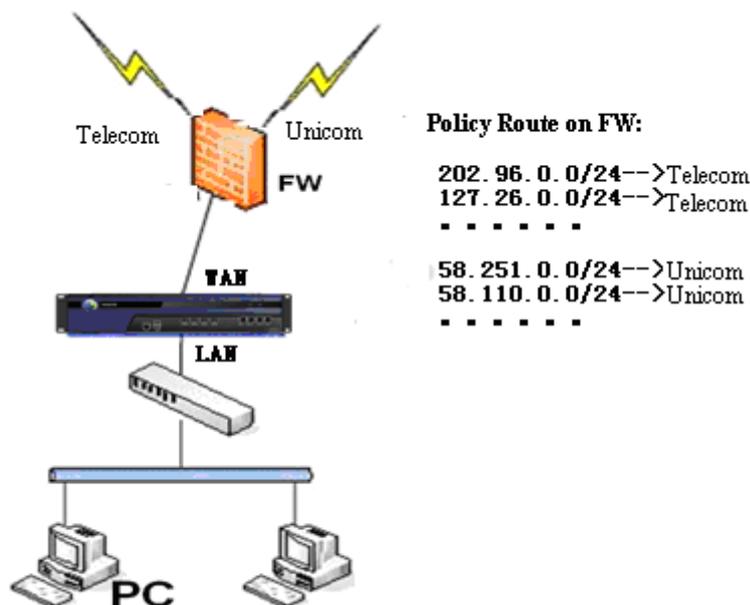
Under bridge mode, no matter whether the front-end device is connected with several lines or the IAM device has configured multi-bridge and connected with several egresses, the IAM device regards that all the data going through the device are transferred over one line, and the bandwidth management function of the device conducts traffic control based on the total traffic of the line by default. If you want to implement separate control on multiple lines in Bridge mode, configure the virtual line.

In virtual line configuration, there is only one line (line 1) by default. If you do not set other lines, the bandwidth of line 1 should be the total of the bandwidth of multiple lines (on the condition that the front-end device is connected with multiple public lines or the IAM device has configured multi-bridge and connected with several egresses). However, in this situation, the IAM device cannot conduct separate traffic control on multiple extranet lines.

The screenshot shows the "Virtual Line" configuration page. On the left is a "Navigation Menu" with options: Status, Objects, User Policy, Bandwidth Mgt (selected), Bandwidth Settings, and Virtual Line. The main area is titled "Virtual Line" and contains a "Virtual Line List" table. The table has columns for Line, Uplink, Downlink, and Delete. There is one row with the following data:

Line	Uplink	Downlink	Delete
1 Line1	512000 (Kbps)	512000 (Kbps)	X

**Case Study:** Suppose the IAM device is deployed into the following network and works in Bridge mode. There are two egress interfaces on firewall: one is Telecom line of 10Mb/s; the other is Unicom line of 4Mb/s. The requirement is to implement separate traffic control on P2P data transferred over two lines and limit the bandwidth occupied by P2P data to 20% over each line.



Step 1. Configure virtual lines. You need to configure two virtual lines on the device, which are corresponding to the two public network lines on the firewall. Configure their bandwidth according to the actual bandwidth of the two public network lines.

- a. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Virtual Line] > [Virtual Line List] page, and click the [Line1] link to set the bandwidth of line 1. Suppose line 1 is corresponding to the Telecom line, set the bandwidth as follows:

**Edit Virtual Line** ✕

Uplink:  MB/s ▾

Downlink:  MB/s ▾

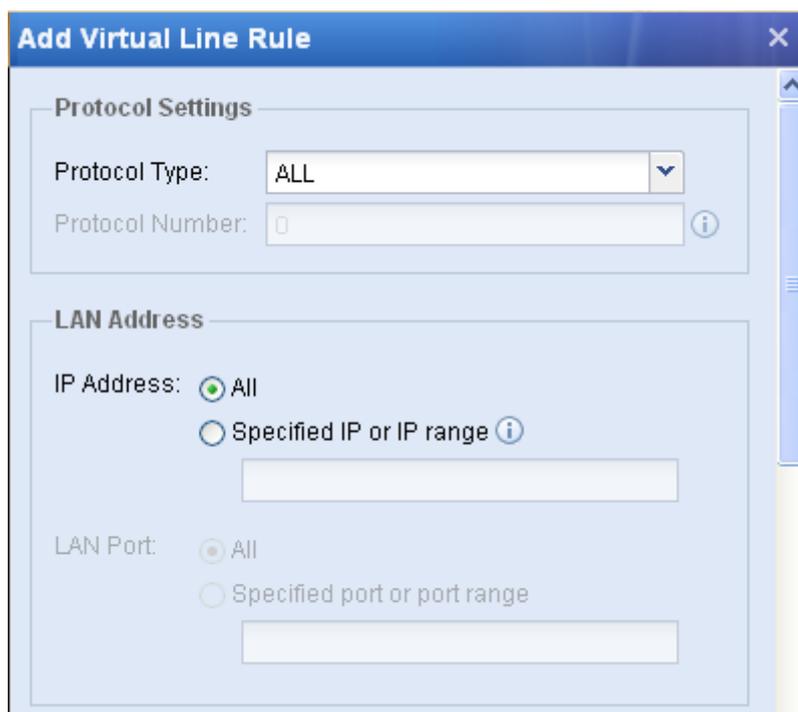
- b. On the [Virtual Line List] page, click <Add> to set the bandwidth of line 2. Suppose line 2 is corresponding to the Unicom line, set the bandwidth as follows:

**Add Virtual Line** ✕

Uplink:  KB/s ▾

Downlink:  KB/s ▾

- Step 2. Configure virtual line rules. You need to configure the virtual line rules to have different data allocated to different virtual line according to the actual line rules, realizing consistency between virtual lines and actual lines. As the front-end device (firewall) usually has configured the line rules, you need only configure the virtual line rules according to the routing settings on the firewall.
- a. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Virtual Line] > [Virtual Line Rule] page, and click <Add> to open the [Add Virtual Line Rule] page. According to the lines rule on firewall, define the virtual line **Line1** for the data transferred through Telecom line with the destination address 202.96.0.0/24.



The screenshot shows a web-based configuration window titled "Add Virtual Line Rule". The window is divided into two main sections: "Protocol Settings" and "LAN Address".

**Protocol Settings:**

- Protocol Type: A dropdown menu with "ALL" selected.
- Protocol Number: A text input field with "0" entered.

**LAN Address:**

- IP Address: Two radio button options: "All" (selected) and "Specified IP or IP range" (with an information icon).
- LAN Port: Two radio button options: "All" (selected) and "Specified port or port range" (with an information icon).

There are empty text input fields for the "Specified IP or IP range" and "Specified port or port range" options.

**WAN Address**

IP Address:  All  
 Specified IP or IP range ⓘ

WAN Port:  All  
 Specified port or port range

**Line Settings**

Bridge List:  ▼

Target Line:  ▼

b. Specify the following information.

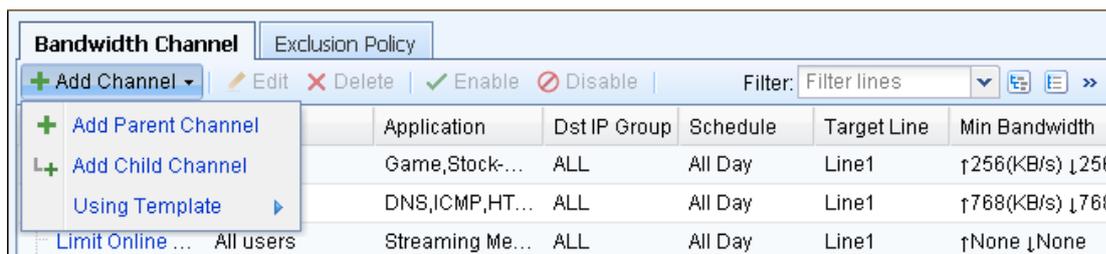
**Table 30 Virtual Line Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Protocol Settings	Specify the protocol type of the data packets.
LAN Address	Specify the source IP and source port of the data packets.
WAN Address	Specify the destination IP and destination port of the data packets.
Line Settings	[Bridge List] specifies the bridge from which the data packets applicable to this virtual line rule are forwarded under Multi-Bridge mode.  [Target Line] specifies the target virtual line through which the data packets satisfy the above conditions will be transmitted.

Step 3. Continue to add other virtual line rule until the virtual line rules configured on the device are consistent with the line rules on firewall.

Step 4. Configure bandwidth channels to control the traffic of P2P application data transferred over two virtual lines.

a. Go to the [Bandwidth Mgt] > [Bandwidth Setting] > [Bandwidth Channel] page, click <Add> and select [Add Parent Channel] to open the [Add Parent Channel] page.



- b. As you need to limit the traffic over the line 1 (Telecom Line), select **Line1** as the target line and **Limited channel** as the channel type. Then set both the [Uplink Bandwidth] and [Downlink Bandwidth] to **20%** of the total bandwidth. Since the total bandwidth is 10Mb/s, the uplink bandwidth and downlink bandwidth are limited to 2Mb/s (1Mb/s=1/8MB/S; 2 Mb/s =0.25 MB/S).

Target Line: Line1

Channel Type

Guaranteed channel

Uplink Bandwidth: Min 100% 1280 KB/s  
Max 100% 1280 KB/s

Downlink Bandwidth: Min 100% 1280 KB/s  
Max 100% 1280 KB/s

Priority: High

Limited channel

Uplink Bandwidth: Max 20% 0.25 MB/s

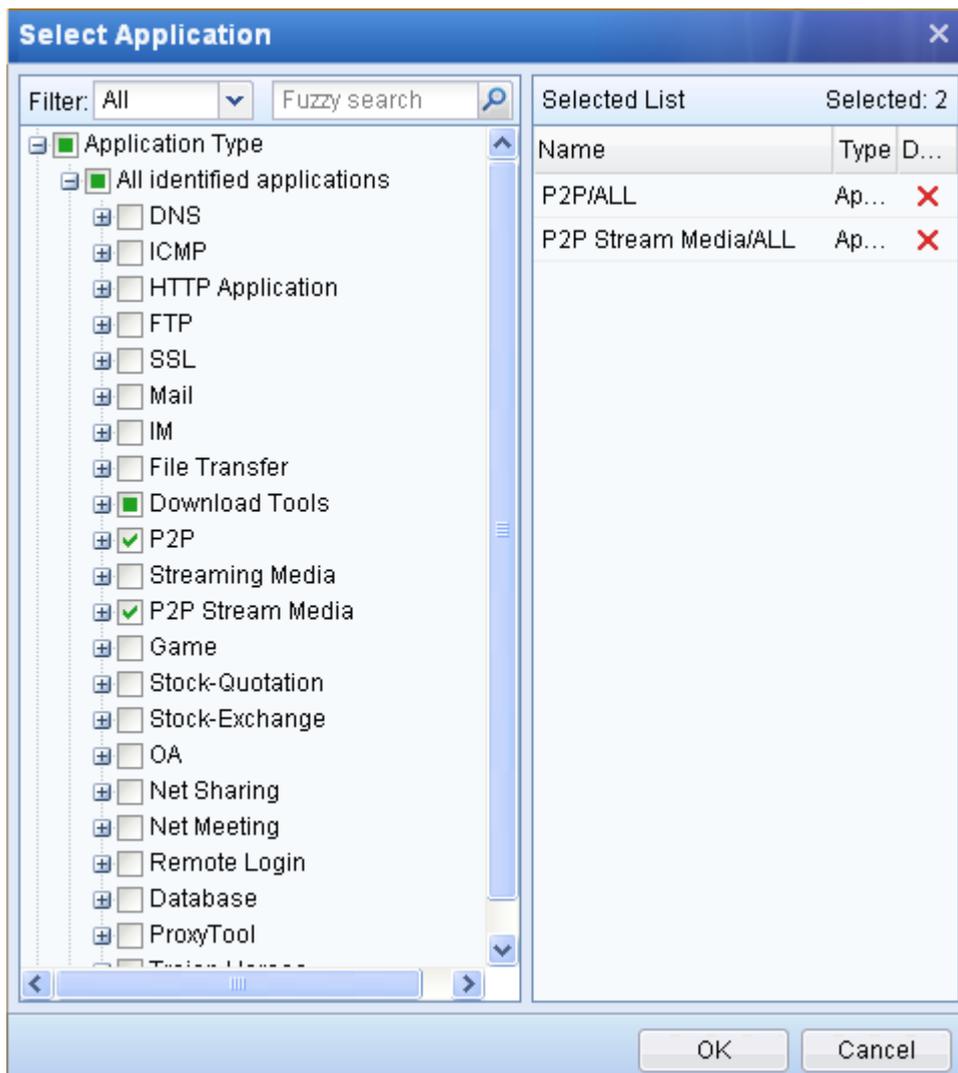
Downlink Bandwidth: Max 20% 0.25 MB/s

- c. Select an allocation method under [Bandwidth Allocation Among Users] to allocate the bandwidth for users applicable to this channel. By default, [Average allocation] is selected, that is, bandwidth is evenly allocated to users.

The screenshot displays a configuration window with three main sections:

- Max Bandwidth Per User:** This section is currently unchecked. It contains two input fields: "Uplink:" with a value of "0" and "KB/s" unit, and "Downlink:" with a value of "0" and "KB/s" unit.
- Bandwidth Allocation Among Users:** This section contains two radio button options: "Average allocation" (which is selected) and "Free competition".
- Advanced:** This section contains one unchecked checkbox with the text: "Take every WAN IP as a channel user so that it can share bandwidth with LAN users equally and be limited by Max Bandwidth Per User (typically selected for server providing external service)".

- d. Click [Applicable Objects] to configure the applications and users applicable to this channel. To select the application, check the [Custom] option and click the [Select Application] link to open the [Select Application] page. As the requirement is to control the traffic of P2P applications, select **P2P/ALL**, **P2P Stream Media/ALL**, as shown below, and then click <OK> to save your settings.



- e. For applicable users, check [All users] or [Custom]. [All users] means the current channel will apply to all the users in the LAN.

Step 5. Continue to configure a bandwidth channel for **Line2** to limit the traffic of P2P applications. The procedures are similar to those for **Line1** (see Step 4).

Step 6. After two bandwidth channels are configured, they will be added into the bandwidth channel list.



1. Virtual line rules are matched from top to bottom.
2. On the [Virtual Line Rule] page, you can click <Add Multiple> to configure multiple virtual line rules simultaneously; however, virtual line rules edited in batch only support selecting line according to destination address and bridge.
3. Virtual line rules can be imported or exported.

## 3.5 Proxy/Cache

### 3.5.1 Overview

In modern enterprise networks, the bandwidth resources are generally limited. Besides, there may be many wastes of bandwidth resources. For example, an extranet line may transfer many repetitive data. When thousands of LAN users visit a well-known website, the same data will be transmitted thousands of times, which consumes and wastes massive bandwidth resources.

However, the proxy/cache function provided by the IAM device helps solve this problem. The IAM device will cache the data requested by any LAN user for the first time. If a second LAN user sends requests for the same data, the IAM device will directly fetch it from the cache instead of its original location.

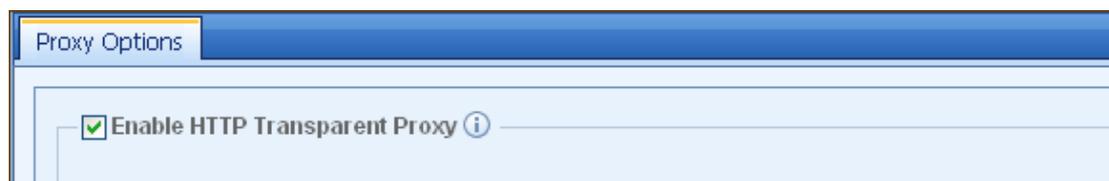
The whole process is transparent to LAN users, which means you need only configure the IAM device, without requiring LAN users to make any changes to their computer settings.

### 3.5.2 Proxy Options

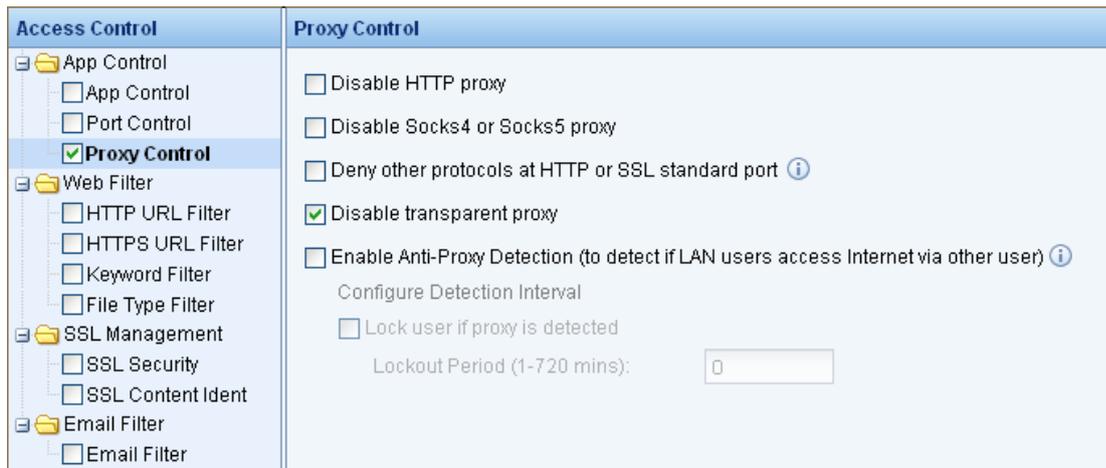
The [Proxy Options] displays the information and options related to the proxy function.

#### 3.5.2.1 HTTP Transparent Proxy

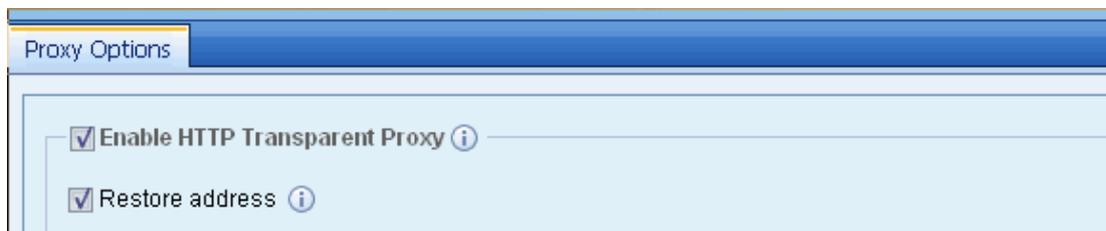
To enable the HTTP transparent proxy, go to the [Proxy/Cache] > [Proxy Options] page and check the [Enable HTTP Transparent Proxy] option, as shown below:



When the [Enable HTTP Transparent Proxy] option is checked, the HTTP transparent proxy function applies to all users by default. To disable the function for some users or user groups, please go to the [Access Management] > [Access Control] > [App Control] > [Proxy Control] page, check the [Disable transparent proxy] option, as shown below, and then associate the policy with your desired users or user groups.



In Bridge mode, after users' requests go through the proxy/cache module, the source IP address will be changed to the IP address of the WAN interface (of the IAM device), which makes the HTTP transparent proxy function inapplicable to some special network environments (as the front-end device allows the access requests by identifying user's source IP, after the source IP address is changed, the front-end device will deny the requests and the user cannot connect to the Internet). In this case, you can check the [Restore address] option, which will restore the source IP address to the original IP address of the user's request and solve the above problem.



The [Restore address] option is only available in Bridge mode.

### 3.5.2.2 HTTP Explicit Proxy

To enable the HTTP Explicit proxy, go to the [Proxy/Cache] > [Proxy Options] page, check the [Enable HTTP Explicit Proxy] option and specify the proxy port, as shown below:

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Enable HTTP Explicit Proxy". It contains the following elements:

- Enable HTTP Explicit Proxy
- Proxy Port:  ⓘ
- Enable cache
- Device uses proxy server to access the Internet
- Server IP:
- Port:
- 
- Server requires authentication
- Username:
- Password:

You can enter up to 5 ports and separate them with commas.

The [Enable cache] option specifies whether to enable the cache function after the HTTP Explicit proxy is enabled.

The [Device uses proxy server to access the Internet] option specifies whether to have the HTTP proxy requests proxied through the front-end proxy server. If it is checked, you need to enter the IP address (domain name not supported) and proxy port (one port only) of the front-end proxy server in the [Server IP] and [Port] textboxes respectively.

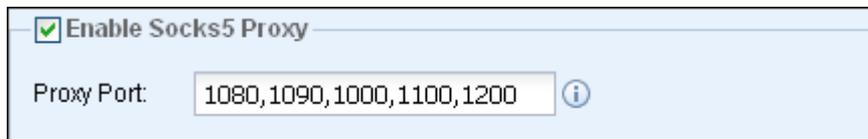
The screenshot shows the same configuration window as above, but with the following values filled in:

- Enable cache
- Device uses proxy server to access the Internet
- Server IP:
- Port:
- 
- Server requires authentication
- Username:
- Password:

The <Check Validity> button enables you to check the connectivity between the IAM device and the proxy port of the proxy server. If you want to have the proxy server require authentication, check the [Server requires authentication] option, and set the username and password respectively. The basic authentication is supported only.

### 3.5.2.3 Socks5 Proxy

To enable the Socks5 proxy, go to the [Proxy/Cache] > [Proxy Options] page, check the [Enable Socks5 Proxy] option and specify the proxy port, as shown below:



Enable Socks5 Proxy

Proxy Port:  ⓘ

You can enter up to 5 ports and separate them with commas.

## 3.5.3 Cache Options

The [Cache Options] displays cache-related information and options.

### 3.5.3.1 Clear Cache

To clear cached data, go to the [Proxy/Cache] > [Cache Options] page and click the <Clear Cache> button, as shown below:



Cache Options

Cache Usage: **Memory**(17.88 MB/ 100.01 MB) **Disk**(0.02 GB/ 1.08 GB)

### 3.5.3.2 Cache Settings

You can set the cache-related options here, including [YouTube Caching], [Windows Updates Caching], [HTTP Caching], [Black/White List] and [Advanced Settings]. In [Black/White List], there are [Preferred Website List] and [Non-Cache Website List], as shown below:

Cache Usage: **Memory**(599.99 MB/ 600.00 MB) **Disk**(173.89 GB/ 447.12 GB) Clear Cache

YouTube Caching

- Enable caching for YouTube video
  - Not cache YouTube video greater than (MB):

Windows Updates Caching

- Enable caching for Windows Updates

HTTP Caching

Restore Defaults Commit

HTTP Caching

- Enable caching for HTTP webpage
  - Cache expired objects for another period of (days):  
 ⓘ
  - Not cache object greater than (KB):
  - Limit the cache memory to a size smaller than (MB):

Black/White List

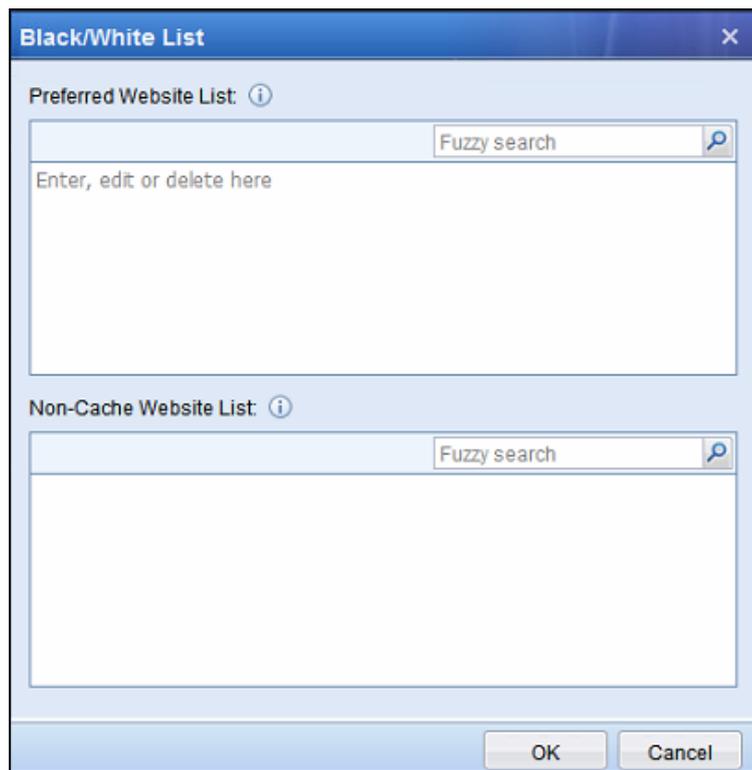
Advanced

Restore Defaults Commit

Advanced

Advanced

Restore Defaults Commit



The options displayed on the [Cache Options] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 31 Cache Settings**

Field	Description
Cache expired objects for another period of (days)	Specify whether to continue saving the cached objects after they expire. To save expired cache objects, check this option and specify the time period. The recommended value is 12 days.
Limit the cache memory to a size smaller than (MB)	Limit the memory size to be used by cache. When there is much idle system memory and you want to increase the cache hit rate, you can set this value manually according to the idle memory. If it is unchecked, the system will automatically adjust this value according to the model of the IAM device. Generally, it is NOT recommended to modify this value.
Not cache YouTube video greater than (MB) / Not cache object greater than (KB)	Specify the maximum size of the YouTube video/objects that the IAM device will cache. When the size of a YouTube video/objects is greater than the threshold set here, the object will not be cached. This option can be used to filter out some large YouTube or webpage resources, making sure that the cache memory is effectively used.
Specify valid period for webpage (mins)	Set the valid period for the webpages whose expiry date is not specified. These webpages will be updated after they expire. If this option is unchecked, the IAM device will not cache these webpages, which may decrease the cache hit rate.

Specify shortest update interval (mins)	Set the shortest interval that the cached objects will be updated by the IAM device. If the valid period of a cached object is shorter than this interval, the IAM device will not update it even if it expires, which may cause that the cached object is not up to date, but increases the hit rate. If the valid period of a cached object is longer than this value, the IAM device will update it after this update interval.
Check for updates upon every request	Specify whether to check for updates on the server every time the cached objects are requested. This option is generally used when the expiry date of objects is incorrectly set on the server. Enabling this option will greatly influence the performance of the cache module, and thus it is recommended to leave it unchecked, and the IAM device will decide whether to check for updates according to the expiry date of cached objects.
Preferred Website List	Specify the websites that will be preferentially cached. For example, if you want to speed up the access to company website server, add the server address into this preferred website list. Please note that when this preferred website list is used, the overall optimization effect will lower down.
Non-Cache Website List	Specify some IP addresses or domain names that need not be cached by the IAM device. If a Web server in the LAN is accessed by LAN users through the IAM device, it is recommended to add the address of this server into this non-cache website list, for the access speed within the intranet is already fast, and caching this type of data will not yield obvious optimization effect but consume the memory and disk resources of the device. In addition, if you want to have some webpage resources updated more frequently and make sure the resources are up to date every time they are visited, add these websites into this list, for they may not be the latest if they are cached, although reading cache accelerates the access.



The [YouTube caching] option is only available to cache YouTube video. Unable to cache other streaming media and Live-YouTube video.

## Cache Hit Logs

The [Cache Hit Logs] tab enables you to view the cache hit status in real-time. You can also query the cache hit status of a specific URL object. This function is mainly used to check whether the cache function of the IAM device works normally. When the cache hit log function is enabled, you can view the cache hit logs for a specific source IP address or all source IP addresses. If the logs are not refreshed in 5 minutes,

the cache hit log function will be closed automatically.

No.	URL	Src IP	Request Time	Time Taken	Object Size	Hit Status
1	http://safebrowsing-cache.google.com/safebrowsing/rd/C...	200.200.76.240	23:02:40	0.095ms	1.57KB	Memory hit
2	http://safebrowsing-cache.google.com/safebrowsing/rd/C...	200.200.76.240	23:02:40	0.072ms	428Byte	Memory hit
3	http://safebrowsing-cache.google.com/safebrowsing/rd/C...	200.200.76.240	23:02:40	0.091ms	389Byte	Memory hit
4	http://safebrowsing-cache.google.com/safebrowsing/rd/C...	200.200.76.240	23:02:40	0.119ms	331Byte	Memory hit
5	http://safebrowsing.clients.google.com/safebrowsing/dow...	200.200.76.240	23:02:39	365.471ms	1.15KB	Non cacheable
6	http://220.181.126.133/file_health_info.php	200.200.76.33	23:01:25	445.826ms	788Byte	Non cacheable
7	http://safebrowsing-cache.google.com/safebrowsing/rd/C...	200.200.76.23	23:00:35	252.830ms	1.57KB	Miss

To check whether a URL is cached or not, click <Search Cached Object>, enter the URL and then click <Search>. The search result will display the cache status of the URL, as shown below:

No.	URL	Src IP	Request Time	Time Taken	Object Size	Hit Status
1	http://safebrowsing-cache.google.com/safebrow...	200.200.76.240	23:02:40	0.095ms	1.57KB	Memory hit
2	http://safebro			0.072ms	428Byte	Memory hit
3	http://safebro			0.091ms	389Byte	Memory hit
4	http://safebro			0.119ms	331Byte	Memory hit
5	http://safebro			365.471ms	1.15KB	Non cacheable
6	http://220.181			445.826ms	788Byte	Non cacheable
7	http://safebro			252.830ms	1.57KB	Miss
8	http://safebro			251.137ms	428Byte	Miss
9	http://safebrowsing-cache.google.com/safebrow...	200.200.76.23	23:00:35	253.431ms	389Byte	Miss

**Search Cached Object**

Object URL:

Search Result: Cache Status: No cache

To close the cache hit log function, click <Close>.



After the proxy/cache function is enabled, HTTP data is accessed through the IAM device; therefore, it must be ensured that the IAM device can connect to the Internet and access the HTTP service over the Internet.

## 3.6 Security

### 3.6.1 Anti-DoS

Denial of Service (DoS) attacks, usually with the purpose of consuming server end resources and forcing the server to stop responding, are implemented by forging massive requests that go beyond the server's handling capability and causing response congestion so that the server cannot respond to legitimate

requests. The anti-DoS function provided by SANGFOR IAM device, however, can prevent against DoS attacks initiated from outside the local area network (LAN), as well as the DoS attacks initiated from computers that are infected with virus or computers by using attacking tools inside the LAN.

The [Anti-DoS] configuration page is as shown below:

The fields on the [Anti-DoS] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 32 Anti-DoS Settings**

Field	Description
Enable Anti-DoS	Indicates the switch of the anti-DoS function. Check it to enable the function.
LAN Subnet List	Indicates the LAN subnets that access the Internet through the IAM device. When you check it and set this list, the IAM device will discard the packets sent by any IP address that is not included in this list (the users not listed here cannot access the Internet through the IAM device and cannot log into the device by LAN interface). If you do not check this option, the anti-DoS function only detects the attacks from outside. Typically, it is recommended to check and configure this list to enable the anti-DoS function against attacks from inside.

LAN PCs connect to the device via one or several layer 2 switches, no layer 3 switch crossed	<p>DO NOT check this option when the intranet is a layer 3 environment. When the IAM device and the intranet is in a layer 2 environment and no layer 3 networking device or router locates there, you can check this option, but it is not necessary. By default, the IAM device detects the attacks according to the source IP. If you check this option, the IAM device will detect the attack based on the MAC address.</p> <p>The reason why you cannot check this option when the intranet is a layer 3 environment is that the source MAC address of a packet will be changed to the MAC address of the layer 3 device after the packet is transferred through layer 3 device or router. Since the source MAC address is changed, if the IAM device detects attacks based on MAC address, it may make wrong judgement and block the MAC address of the layer 3 device, resulting in the discarding of the packets from intranet.</p>
NOT defend against attacks initiated by IP addresses listed below	<p>The attacks initiated by the IP addresses listed here will not be defended again.</p> <p>For instance, if a server in the LAN provides services for public network and builds many connections, in this case, you can enter the server address in this list so that it will be excluded from the anti-DoS function.</p>
Max TCP Connections	<p>Limit the maximum of TCP connections that each IP address is allowed to send to the same port of an IP address in one minute.</p> <p>If the threshold here is reached, the IP address will be locked for a specified period.</p>
Max Attack Packets	<p>Limit the maximum of attack packets that each host is allowed to send in one second (the attack packets include SYN, ICMP and TCP/UDP small packets).</p> <p>If the threshold here is reached, the IP or MAC address will be locked for a specified period.</p>
Lockout Period	<p>Specify the period that the attacking host will be locked after the attack is detected. The unit is minute.</p>
Configure Alarm Email	<p>Click this link and it links to the [Alarm Options] page.</p> <p>For detailed setting of Alarm Email, see section 3.9.5 "Alarm Options".</p>

### 3.6.2 ARP Protection

ARP spoofing is a common intranet virus. The computers infected with virus will send ARP spoofing broadcast packets across the intranet from time to time, which obstructs the normal communication of the computers and may even cause the breakdown of the network.

However, the ARP protection function provided by the IAM device can defend against the ARP spoofing by combining the Ingress Client installed on user computers. The device first protects its own ARP cache by not accepting the ARP requests or replies that feature attacking. Besides, if users are bound with IP/MAC address, the IAM device will take the IP/MAC binding information as the standard. The ARP protection for the computers in the intranet is realized by Ingress Client installed, which communicates with the IAM device to obtain the correct IP/MAC mapping table from the IAM device and perform static binding.

The [ARP Protection] configuration page is as shown below:

The fields on the [ARP Protection] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 33 ARP Protection Settings**

Field	Description
Enable ARP Protection	Indicate the switch of the ARP protection function. Check it to enable the function.

---

Enable Static ARP	<p>Check and configure this static ARP list if the gateway address of the computers in the intranet is not the interface address of the IAM device. For instance, if the IAM device works in bridge mode, the gateway address of the computers in the intranet should be the interface address of the router (or firewall) in the front. In this case, you can enter the IP/MAC address of the interface on the router in this list.</p> <p>If computers in the intranet have installed Ingress Client, the client can obtain the correct IP/MAC address and bind them with the computer, ensuring the correctness of the IP/MAC address of the computers' gateway and smooth communication between computers and IAM device.</p>
Broadcast Interval of Gateway MAC	<p>Specify the interval of broadcasting MAC address of the gateway device (that is, the LAN interface of the device). Typically, it is set to 10 seconds.</p>

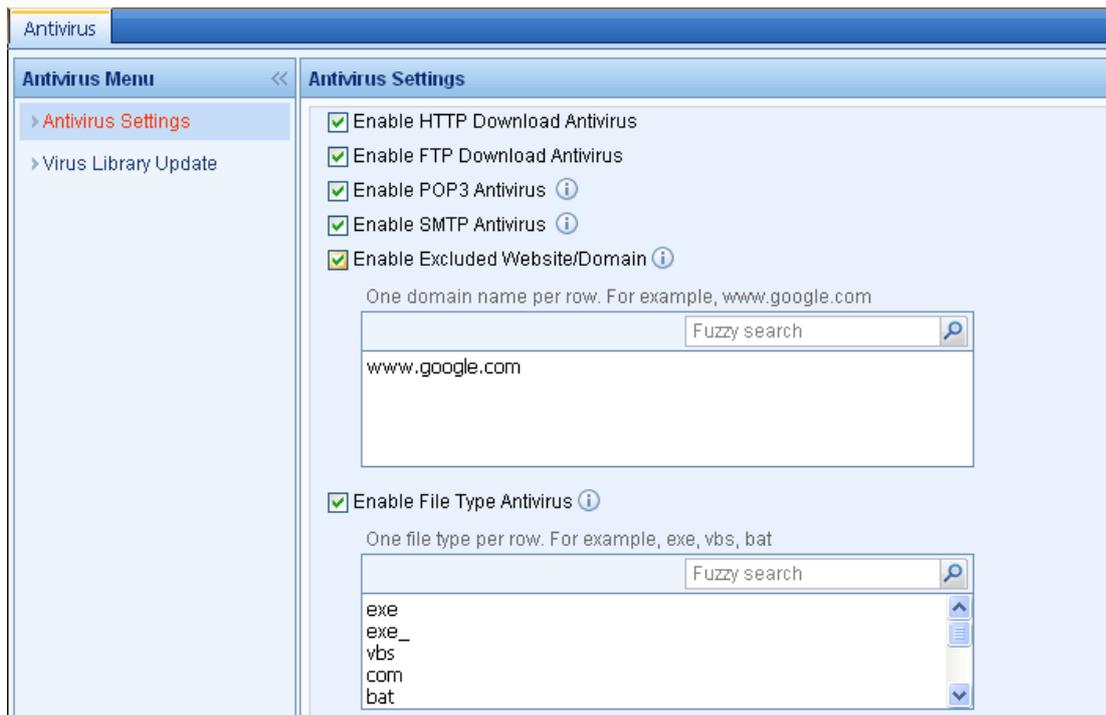
---

You can click <Broadcast Gateway MAC> to broadcast the MAC address of the LAN interface on the IAM device immediately. When the ARP spoofing is cleared, you can also click this button to restore the ARP table of computers in the intranet.

### 3.6.3 Antivirus

The gateway antivirus function is used to scan the packets going through the IAM device for viruses, ensuring the security of the computers in the intranet. It is applicable to the common four protocols, HTTP, FTP, POP3 and SMTP. The IAM device has built in the antivirus engine developed by the famous antivirus manufacturer F-PROT in Iceland. This antivirus engine features high identification for virus and high efficiency for virus scanning and handling. The virus library of the IAM device is synchronously updated with that of the F-PROT. Generally, the update cycle is 1 or 2 days. The [Antivirus] covers the [Antivirus Settings] page and [Virus Library Update] page.

#### 1. [Antivirus Settings] page

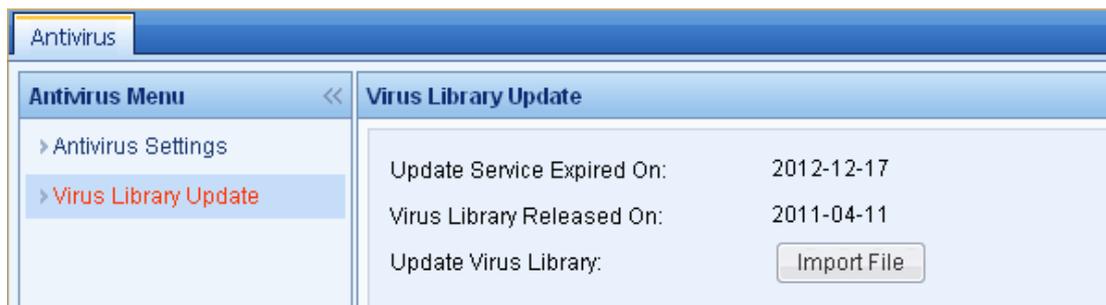


The fields displayed on the [Antivirus Settings] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 34 Antivirus Settings**

Field	Description
Enable HTTP Download Antivirus	Indicate the switch of the HTTP download antivirus function. Check it to enable the function.
Enable FTP Download Antivirus	Indicate the switch of the FTP download antivirus function. Check it to enable the function.
Enable POP3 Antivirus	Indicate the switch of the POP3 antivirus function. Check it to enable the function.
Enable SMTP Antivirus	Indicate the switch of the SMTP antivirus function. Check it to enable the function.
Enable Excluded Website (Domain)	Indicate the websites or domain names which will not be scanned for virus. Type one domain name per row in the text box. The wildcard character is supported.
Enable File Type Antivirus	Specify the type of files to be scanned for virus. Type file extension in the text box.
Configure Alarm Email	Click this link and it links to the [Alarm Options] page. For detailed setting of Alarm Email, see section 3.9.5 "Alarm Options".

## 2. [Virus Library Update] page



The fields displayed on the [Virus Library Update] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 35 Virus Library Update Settings**

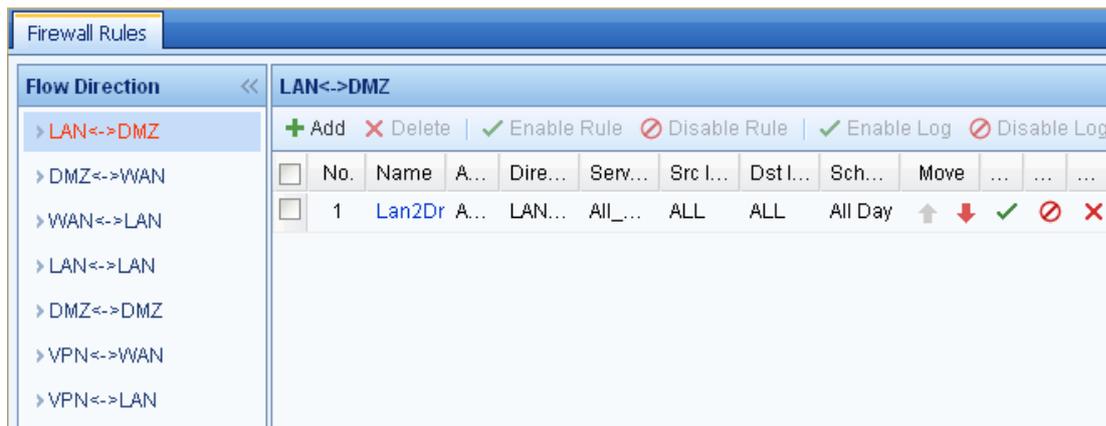
Field	Description
Update Service Expired On	Indicate the expiry date of the automatic update service for the virus library. Before the expiry date, the IAM device will automatically connects to the SANGFOR server to update the virus library.
Current Virus Library Date	Indicate the version date of the current virus library, that is, the date when the virus library is released.
Update Virus Library	Click the <Select File> button to locate the virus library file and import it into the IAM device to update the virus library.

## 3.7 Firewall

The [Firewall] module includes [Firewall Rules], [SNAT], [DNAT]. The [Firewall Rules] page enables you to configure such filtering conditions as destination protocol and port, source IP address, destination IP address and time schedule to filter the data forwarding among the network interfaces on the IAM device. The [SNAT] page enables you to configure the source network address translation (SNAT) rules to proxy the LAN users to access the Internet. You can also set SNAT rules for other source addresses. The [DNAT] page enables you to configure the destination network address translation (DNAT) rules to deliver LAN services to the public network. The [SNAT] and [DNAT] pages are available only when the IAM device is deployed in Route mode.

### 3.7.1 Firewall Rules

Firewall rules are used to conduct filtering on data forwarding among the network interfaces on the IAM device. The filtering criteria include destination protocol and port, source IP address, destination IP address and time schedule. You can configure the firewall filtering rules of the following directions: LAN<->DMZ, DMZ<->WAN, WAN<->LAN, LAN<->LAN, DMZ<->DMZ, VPN<->WAN and VPN<->LAN.



To add a firewall rule, do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Firewall Rules] page, select the data forwarding direction on the left pane and then click <Add> to open the corresponding page, as shown below:

- Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 36 Firewall Rule Settings**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Enable Rule	Check it to enable the firewall rule.
Rule Name	Type a name for the firewall rule.
Sequence No.	Type the sequence number of the rule, which determines the priority of the rule. The smaller the sequence number is, the higher the priority of the rule is.
Description	Type descriptive information for the firewall rule.
Action	Specify the action to be taken when the packets match the criteria of this firewall rule.
Service	Select the service to which this firewall rule applies. The services available here are predefined on [Objects] > [Service] page (see sections 3.2.6 "Service").
Src IP Group	Select the source IP group of the packets to which this firewall rule applies. The IP groups available here are predefined on [Objects] > [IP Group] page (see section 3.2.7 "IP Group").
Dst IP Group	Select the destination IP group of the packets to which this firewall rule applies. The IP groups available here are predefined on [Objects] > [IP Group] page (see section 3.2.7 "IP Group").
Schedule	Select a time segment in which this firewall rule is in effect. The schedules available here are predefined on [Objects] > [Schedule] page (see section 3.2.8 "Schedule").
Direction	Select the data forwarding direction to which this firewall rule applies.
Log	Enable or disable the corresponding firewall log. If enabled, it records the data allowed or denied by this rule on the [System Logs] page. If you need to do troubleshooting, enable this field. Generally, it is recommended to disable this field to avoid massive logs.

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

For the firewall rules already defined, you can also manage or edit them.

To edit a firewall rule, click the name of the rule to open the editing page and then edit the firewall rule according to your needs.

To manage a firewall rule, check the firewall rule and then do one of the following:

- ◆ Click <Delete> to delete the rule.
- ◆ Click <Enable Rule>/<Disable Rule> to enable/disable the rule.

- ◆ Click <Enable Log>/<Disable Log> to enable/disable the corresponding firewall log.
- ◆ Click <Up>/<Down> to move the rule up or down. By adjusting the display sequence of the rule, you can change its priority. The upper rule will be preferentially matched.

**Case Study:** Suppose the Web server in the local area network is connected to the DMZ interface of the IAM device, and the LAN users are connected to the LAN interface. To ensure the security of the Web server, it is required that the LAN users should only access the TCP 80 port (Web service) of the Web Server and other data should not be transferred to DMZ interface, that is, only the HTTP protocol should be allowed and all other data be denied.

According to the requirements, you need to configure the firewall rule of the LAN<->DMZ direction. Do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Firewall Rules] page, click [LAN<->DMZ] on the left pane and then click <Add> to open the [LAN<->DMZ Add Rule] page.
- Step 2. Type the name, sequence number and description for the firewall rule.
- Step 3. As you need to add a firewall rule that allows HTTP protocol in the LAN->DMZ direction, set the parameters as follows:

Field	Value
Enable Rule	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Rule Name	Allow HTTP
Sequence No.	1
Description	
Action	Allow
Service	HTTP
Src IP Group	ALL
Dst IP Group	ALL
Schedule	All Day
Direction	LAN->DMZ
Log	Disable

- Step 4. Click <Commit> to save the firewall rule, and the firewall rule is added to the rule list, as shown below:

LAN<->DMZ												
<a href="#">+ Add</a> <a href="#">X Delete</a>   <a href="#">✓ Enable Rule</a> <a href="#">⊘ Disable Rule</a>   <a href="#">✓ Enable Log</a> <a href="#">⊘ Disable Log</a>   <a href="#">↑ Up</a> <a href="#">↓ Down</a>												
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Ac.	Direction	Service	Src IP ...	Dst IP ...	Sched...	Move	S...	Log	D...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Allow HTTP	All...	LAN->...	HTTP	ALL	ALL	All Day	↑ ↓	✓	⊘	✗

### 3.7.2 SNAT

The [SNAT] page, as shown below, enables you to set the Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) rules, which converts the source IP addresses of the corresponding packets forwarded by the IAM device. It is typically used when the IAM device is deployed in Route mode. The device proxies the LAN users to access the Internet and therefore the corresponding SNAT rules should be configured.

SNAT							
<a href="#">+ Add</a> <a href="#">X Delete</a>   <a href="#">✓ Enable</a> <a href="#">⊘ Disable</a>   <a href="#">↑ Up</a> <a href="#">↓ Down</a>							
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Egress Interface	Subnet	Move	Status	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Proxy LAN Interface	All WAN interfaces	192.168.76.0/255.255...	↑ ↓	✓	✗

To add an SNAT rule do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Add> on the [SNAT] page to open the following page, as shown below:

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 37 SNAT Rule Settings**

Field	Description
Enable Rule	Check it to enable the SNAT rule.
Rule Name	Type a name for the SNAT rule.
Egress Interface	Select the WAN interface through which the packets are forwarded. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[All WAN interfaces]: Indicates the packets forwarded through any WAN interface will match this SNAT rule.</li> <li>[Specified interface]: Indicates only the packets forwarded through the specified interface will match this SNAT rule.</li> </ul>

Source Address	<p>Specify the source IP addresses to be proxied by the IAM device. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [All]: Indicates all the addresses in the LAN will be proxied by the IAM device.</li> <li>◆ [Specified subnet]: Indicates only the specified address will be proxied by the IAM device.</li> </ul>
Translate Source IP To	<p>Specify the addresses to which the source address of the packets matching the criteria of this rule will be translated. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [Egress interface address]: Indicates translating the source address to the IP address of the selected egress interface.</li> <li>◆ [Specified address]: Indicates translating the source address to the specified IP address or IP range.</li> </ul>

Step 3. To set advanced parameters, click <Advanced> to open the [Advanced] page, as shown below:

Step 4. Specify the [Destination Address] and [Protocol]. [Destination Address] indicates the destination address of the packets that match this SNAT rule and [Protocol] indicates the protocol that this SNAT rule will apply.

Step 5. Click <Commit> to save the SNAT rule.

For the SNAT rules already defined, you can also manage or edit them.

To edit an SNAT rule, click the name of the rule to open the editing page, and then edit the SNAT rule according to your needs.

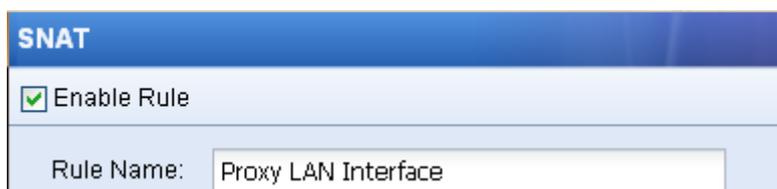
To manage a SNAT rule, check the SNAT rule and then do one of the following:

- ◆ Click <Delete> to delete the rule.
- ◆ Click <Enable>/<Disable> to enable/disable the rule.
- ◆ Click <Up>/<Down> to move the rule up or down. By adjusting the display sequence of the rule, you can change its priority. The upper rule will be preferentially matched.

**Case Study 1:** Suppose there is a subnet 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 in the local area network, in which the IAM device is deployed in Route mode and connected with two public network lines. The requirement is that the LAN users can access the Internet through the IAM device.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Add> on the [SNAT] page to open the following page. Check the [Enable Rule] option to enable this rule and then type the rule name, as shown below:



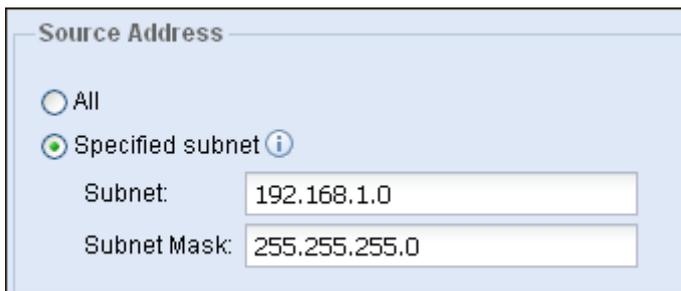
The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "SNAT". At the top, there is a blue header with the text "SNAT". Below the header, there is a section with a checked checkbox labeled "Enable Rule". Underneath, there is a text input field labeled "Rule Name:" containing the text "Proxy LAN Interface".

Step 2. Configure [Egress Interface]. As the IAM device will proxy the packets going through the two WAN interfaces, select [All WAN interfaces].



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Egress Interface". There are two radio button options: "All WAN interfaces" (which is selected) and "Specified interface". Below these options, there is a dropdown menu labeled "Select Interface:" with the value "LAN1(eth0)" selected.

Step 3. Configure [Source Address]. As the requirement is to proxy the users on the 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet to access the Internet, check the [Specified subnet] option and type **192.168.1.0** and **255.255.255.0** respectively, as shown below:



**Source Address**

All

Specified subnet ⓘ

Subnet:

Subnet Mask:

Step 4. Configure [Translate Source IP To]. Check [Egress interface address] to translate the source addresses to the IP address of the egress interface selected in Step 2 or check [Specified address] to translate them to a specified IP address or IP range.



**Translate Source IP To**

Egress interface address

Specified address

Start IP:

End IP:

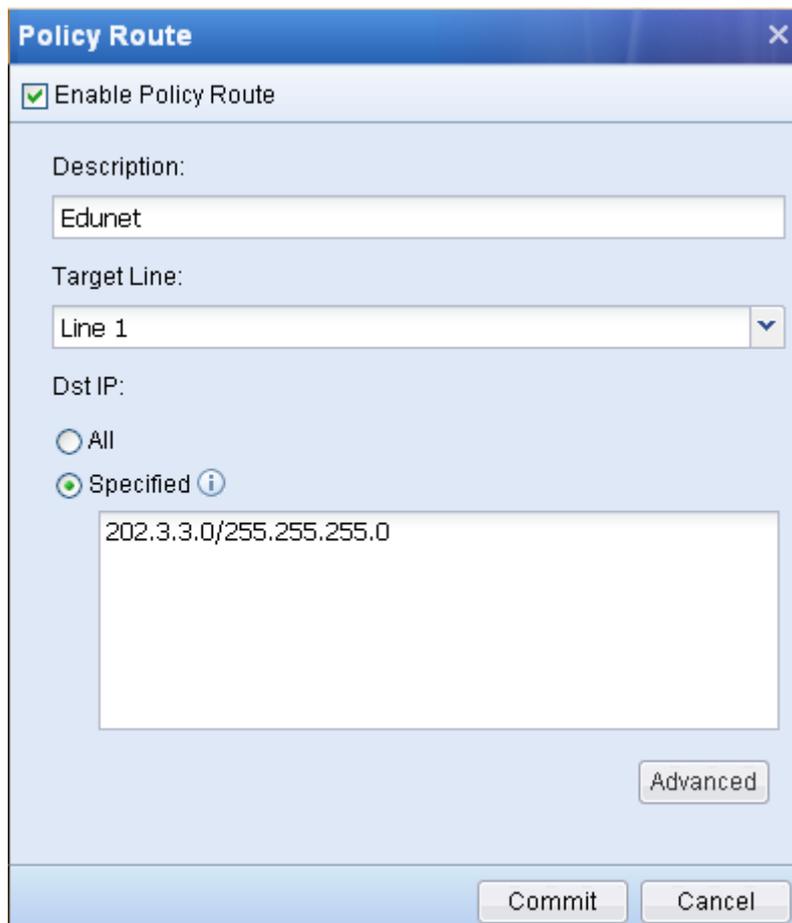
Step 5. Click <Commit> to save the SNAT rule.

Step 6. Go to the [Firewall Rules] page and add a firewall rule to allow all packets from LAN to WAN (for detailed settings, see section 3.7.1 "Firewall Rules").

**Case Study 2:** Suppose the IAM device is deployed in Route mode and connected with two extranet lines: one is Telecom line and the other is Edunet line. The requirement is that when the users on the 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet are accessing the port 80 of the services on the 202.3.3.0/255.255.255.0 subnet of Edunet, the source address should be translated to the IP address 202.96.1.1 of the WAN1 interface (Edunet line).

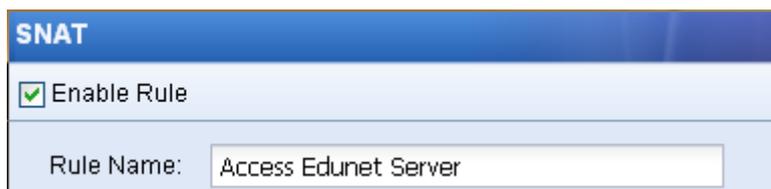
To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Go to the [Network] > [Policy Route] page and add a policy route to automatically forward the packets destined for the 202.3.3.0/255.255.255.0 subnet via WAN1 (that is, the Edunet line) (for detailed settings, see section 3.8.4 "Policy Route").



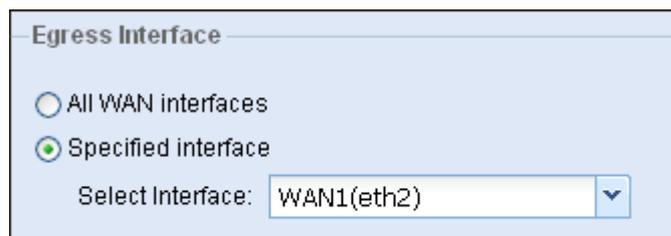
The screenshot shows the 'Policy Route' configuration window. At the top, there is a checkbox labeled 'Enable Policy Route' which is checked. Below this, the 'Description' field contains the text 'Edunet'. The 'Target Line' is set to 'Line 1' in a dropdown menu. Under 'Dst IP', the 'Specified' radio button is selected, and the text '202.3.3.0/255.255.255.0' is entered in the text area below it. At the bottom right of the main configuration area is an 'Advanced' button. At the very bottom of the window are 'Commit' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Step 2. Go to the [SNAT] page, click <Add> to open the following page. Check the [Enable Rule] option to enable this rule and then type the rule name, as shown below:



The screenshot shows the 'SNAT' configuration window. At the top, there is a checkbox labeled 'Enable Rule' which is checked. Below this, the 'Rule Name' field contains the text 'Access Edunet Server'.

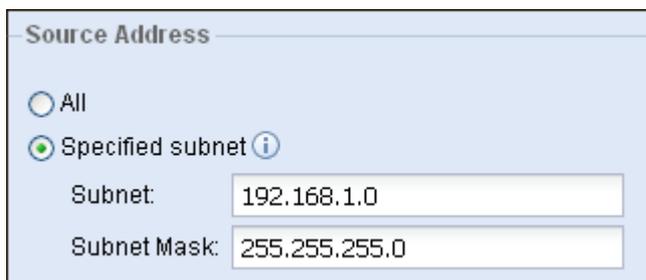
Step 3. Configure [Egress Interface]. As the IAM device only proxy the packets forwarded through Edunet line WAN1, check the [Specified interface] option and select [WAN1(eth2)], as shown below:



The screenshot shows the 'Egress Interface' configuration window. At the top, there is a section header 'Egress Interface'. Below this, there are two radio buttons: 'All WAN interfaces' and 'Specified interface'. The 'Specified interface' radio button is selected. Below the radio buttons, there is a 'Select Interface' label followed by a dropdown menu containing the text 'WAN1(eth2)'.

Step 4. Configure [Source Address]. As the requirement is to proxy the users on the

192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet to access the Internet, check the [Specified subnet] option and type **192.168.1.0** and **255.255.255.0** respectively, as shown below:



Source Address

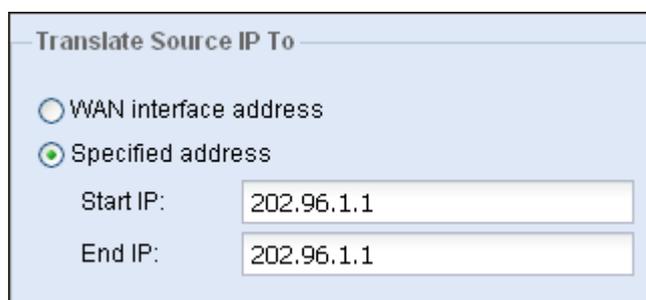
All

Specified subnet ⓘ

Subnet:

Subnet Mask:

Step 5. Configure [Translate Source IP To]. As the requirement is to translate the source IP to the IP address 202.96.1.1 of the WAN1 interface, check [Specified address] option and enter **202.96.1.1** in both the [Start IP] and [End IP] text boxes, as shown below:



Translate Source IP To

WAN interface address

Specified address

Start IP:

End IP:

Step 6. Click <Advanced> to open the [Advanced] page. As the requirement is to translate the source IP when users are accessing the port 80 of the services on 202.3.3.0/255.255.255.0 subnet, set the destination address and protocol as shown below:

**Advanced**

**Destination Address**

All

Specified subnet (i)

Subnet:

Subnet Mask:

**Protocol**

All

Specified protocol type

Protocol Type:  (v)

Protocol Number:  (i)

Src Port:  (i)

Dst Port:  (i)

OK Cancel

Step 7. Go to the [Firewall Rules] page and add a firewall rule to allow all packets from LAN to WAN (for detailed settings, see section 3.7.1 "Firewall Rules").



The [SNAT] function is available only in Route mode.

### 3.7.3 DNAT

The [DNAT] page, as shown below, enables you to set the Destination Network Address Translation (DNAT) rules, which converts the destination IP addresses of the packets going through the IAM device. The typical usage includes releasing server, map the services provided by LAN servers to the public network or providing access to Internet users.

DNAT <span style="float: right;">?</span>							
+ Add   X Delete   ✓ Enable   ✗ Disable   ↑ Up   ↓ Down							
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Ingress Interface	Map To IP	Src Port	Dst Port	Map To Port
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	www.xxx.com	WAN1	192.168.1.80	0	80	80
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	RemoteDesktop	All WAN interfaces	10.251.251.161	0	3389	3389

There are two types of DNAT rules: one is [Basic Rule] and the other is [Advanced Rule]. The basic rule

only includes some necessary criteria while the advanced rule includes more detailed settings, commonly used to meet detailed requirements.

### 1. Basic DNAT Rule

To add a basic DNAT rule, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [DNAT] page, click <Add> and then select [Basic Rule] to open the following page:

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 38 DNAT Rule Settings (Basic Rule)**

Field	Description
Enable Rule	Check it to enable the SNAT rule.
Rule Name	Type a name for the SNAT rule.

---

Protocol	<p>Set the criteria that should be satisfied when this DNAT rule is matched, including protocol, and the IP address and port to which the destination IP address and port will be mapped.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [Protocol Type]: Select the protocol type of the data.</li> <li>◆ [Dst Port]: Specify the destination port of the data.</li> <li>◆ [Map To IP]: Specify the IP address to which the destination address of the data will be translated.</li> <li>◆ [Map To Port]: Specify the port to which the destination port of the data will be translated.</li> </ul>
Bypass firewall	Specify whether to bypass the firewall rules automatically.

---

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save the DNAT rule.

**Case Study:** Suppose there is a server (192.168.1.2) in the local area network that provides HTTP service and the IAM device is connected to two public network lines. The requirements are:

- ◆ HTTP service of the server is accessible to the public network users.
- ◆ The server can be accessed through both the public network lines.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [DNAT] page, click <Add> and select [Basic Rule] to open the following page. Check [Enable Rule] and type the rule name, as shown below:

Step 2. As this DNAT rule applies to the HTTP service data, set [Protocol Type] to **TCP** and [Dst Port] to **80**. The requirement is to translate the destination address of packets for port 80 to 192.168.1.2, set [Map To IP] to **192.168.1.2** and [Map To Port] to **80**, as shown below:

Step 3. Check the [Bypass firewall] to automatically allow the data on TCP 80 port of the six directions: LAN<->WAN, DMZ<->WAN and LAN<->DMZ.

Step 4. Click <Commit> to save the DNAT rule.

For the DNAT rules already defined, you can also manage or edit them.

To edit a DNAT rule, click the name of the rule to open the editing page and then edit the SNAT rule according to your needs.

To manage a DNAT rule, check the DNAT rule and then do one of the following:

- ◆ Click <Delete> to delete the rule.
- ◆ Click <Enable>/<Disable> to enable/disable the rule.
- ◆ Click <Up>/<Down> to move the rule up or down. By adjusting the display sequence of the rule, you can change its priority. The upper rule will be preferentially matched.

## 2. Advanced DNAT Rule

To add an advanced DNAT rule, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [DNAT] page, click <Add> and then select [Advanced Rule] to open the following page:

**DNAT**

Enable Rule

Rule Name:

**Ingress Interface**

All WAN interfaces  
 Specified interface ⓘ  
WAN1(eth2)

**Source Address**

All  
 Specified subnet ⓘ  
Subnet:   
Subnet Mask:

**Destination Address**

All  
 Specified subnet ⓘ  
Subnet:   
Subnet Mask:   
 Specified interface address ⓘ  
LAN1(eth0)

**Protocol**

Protocol Type: TCP   
Protocol Number:  ⓘ  
Src Port:  All  
 Specified port ⓘ  
  
Dst Port:  All  
 Specified port or port range ⓘ

**Map To IP**

Specified IP  
  
 Interface address  
LAN1(eth0)

**Map To Port**

All  
 Specified port or port range ⓘ

Bypass firewall  
 Release server(LAN user can access LAN server using WAN IP)  
When LAN server is accessed, translate source IP to: 192.168.76.210(LAN)

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 39 DNAT Rule Settings (Advanced Rule)**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Enable Rule	Check it to enable the DNAT rule.
Rule Name	Type a name for the DNAT rule.
Ingress Interface	Select the interface through which the packets coming in to the device will match this DNAT rule. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [All WAN interfaces]: Indicates the packets coming in through any WAN interface will match this DNAT rule.</li> <li>◆ [Specified interface]: Indicates only the packets coming in through the specified interface will match this DNAT rule.</li> </ul>
Source Address	Specify the source address criteria that the data packet should satisfy to match this DNAT rule. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [All]: Indicates there is no limit to the source address.</li> <li>◆ [Specified subnet]: Indicates this DNAT rule will be applied only when the source address belongs to the subnet specified here.</li> </ul>
Destination Address	Specify the destination address criteria that the data packet should satisfy to match this DNAT rule. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ [All]: Indicates there is no limit to the destination address.</li> <li>◆ [Specified subnet]: Indicates this DNAT rule will be applied only when the destination address belongs to the subnet specified here.</li> <li>◆ [Specified interface address]: Indicates the DNAT rule will be applied only when the destination address is the IP address of the specified interface.</li> </ul>
Protocol	Specify the protocol criteria that the data packet should satisfy to match this DNAT rule.
Map To IP	Specify the address to which the destination address will be translated when the data packet satisfies the above criteria.
Map To Port	Specify the port to which the destination port will be translated when the data packet satisfies the above criteria.
Bypass firewall	Specify whether to bypass the firewall rules automatically.

---

Release server	Check this option when LAN users need to access the server on the subnet same as their location through a public IP address. The purpose is to translate the source address of the LAN users' access packets to the IP address of the specified interface to avoid the situation that the LAN users cannot establish the connection with the server when accessing the public IP. When this option is checked, the IAM device will automatically create an SNAT rule to translate the source IP address.
----------------	--

---

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save the DNAT rule.

**Case Study:** Suppose there is a server (192.168.1.80) in the local area network; the IAM device is deployed in Route mode and adopts fiber access for WAN1 interface. The public IP address of the WAN1 interface is 202.96.137.89, which is corresponding to the domain name "www.xxx.com". The requirements are:

- ◆ Release the server onto the public network.
- ◆ The LAN users (connected to the LAN interface of the IAM device) on the 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet can access the server (192.168.1.80) by visiting www.xxx.com.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [DNAT] page, click <Add> and select [Advanced Rule] to open the following page. Check [Enable Rule] and type the rule name, as shown below:



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "DNAT". At the top, there is a blue header with the text "DNAT". Below the header, there is a section with a checked checkbox labeled "Enable Rule". Underneath, there is a text input field labeled "Rule Name:" containing the text "www.xxx.com".

Step 2. Configure [Ingress Interface]. As the domain name is corresponding to the IP address of the WAN1 interface, check the [Specified interface] option and select **WAN1(eth2)**, as shown below:



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Ingress Interface". There are two radio button options: "All WAN interfaces" (unselected) and "Specified interface" (selected). Below the "Specified interface" option, there is a dropdown menu showing "WAN1(eth2)".

Step 3. Configure [Source Address]. As the requirement is to map the server to the public network and the public IP address is unspecified, check the [All] option, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'Source Address' configuration panel. It has a title bar 'Source Address'. Below the title bar, there are two radio button options: 'All' (which is selected) and 'Specified subnet' (with an information icon). Under 'Specified subnet', there are two text input fields: 'Subnet:' and 'Subnet Mask:'.

Step 4. Configure [Destination Address]. As the requirement is to translate the packets destined for the IP address of WAN1 interface, check the [Specified interface address] option and select **WAN1(eth2)**, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'Destination Address' configuration panel. It has a title bar 'Destination Address'. Below the title bar, there are three radio button options: 'All', 'Specified subnet' (with an information icon), and 'Specified interface address' (which is selected and has an information icon). Under 'Specified subnet', there are two text input fields: 'Subnet:' and 'Subnet Mask:'. Under 'Specified interface address', there is a dropdown menu showing 'WAN1(eth2)'.

Step 5. Configure [Protocol]. As the destination port is 80, set [Protocol Type] to **TCP**, [Src Port] to **All** and [Dst Port] to **80**, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'Protocol' configuration panel. It has a title bar 'Protocol'. Below the title bar, there are several fields: 'Protocol Type:' is a dropdown menu set to 'TCP'; 'Protocol Number:' is a text input field with an information icon; 'Src Port:' has two radio button options: 'All' (selected) and 'Specified port' (with an information icon); 'Dst Port:' has two radio button options: 'All' and 'Specified port or port range' (selected and has an information icon), with a text input field containing '80'.

Step 6. Configure [Map To IP]. As the target server is 192.168.1.80, check the [Specified IP] option and enter **192.168.1.80** in the text box, as shown below:

Step 7. Configure [Map To Port]. As the destination port is port 80 of the server 192.168.1.80, check the [Specified port or port range] option and enter 80 in the text box, as shown below:

Step 8. Check the [Bypass firewall] option to automatically allow data on TCP 80 port of the six directions: LAN<->WAN, DMZ<->WAN and LAN<->DMZ.

Step 9. As the LAN users need to access the server in the LAN through the public IP address, check the [Release server] option and select **192.168.1.12(LAN1)**, as shown below:

Step 10. Click <Commit> to save the DNAT rule.



The [DNAT] page is available only in Route mode.

## 3.8 Network

### 3.8.1 Deployment

The [Deployment] page enables you to set the work mode of the IAM device. You can deploy it in Route mode, Bridge mode, Bypass mode or Single Arm mode. Selecting an appropriate deployment mode helps deploy the IAM device to the network successfully and maximize the functions of the device.

The IAM device must be deployed in Multi-bridge mode in order to support IPv6 traffic environment.

The differences among the four deployment modes are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 40 Differences Among Four Deployment Modes**

<b>Deployment Mode</b>	<b>Description</b>
Route Mode	When deployed in Route mode, the IAM device works as a routing device. This deployment requires the biggest change to the original network, but fulfills all the functions of the IAM device.
Bridge Mode	When deployed in Bridge mode, the IAM device works as a network cable with the filtering function. This deployment requires no changes to the original network and fulfills most of the functions of the device, and thus it is recommended when it is inconvenient to change the original network topology.
Bypass Mode	When deployed in Bypass mode, the IAM device is connected to the mirror port of the switch or HUB in the local area network, monitoring the Internet access data of LAN users. This deployment mode requires no changes to the original network topology and exerts no influence on the network, which means the LAN users can still access the Internet even if the IAM device breaks down. However, this mode fulfills the least of the control functions and some other functions are unavailable.
Single Arm Mode	When deployed in Single Arm mode, the IAM gateway device works as a proxy server, through which the LAN users access the Internet. It fulfills the single-armed proxy, controlling and monitoring functions. This deployment requires no changes to the original network topology and exerts no influence on the network, which means if the IAM device is down, the users can still connect to the Internet only after disabling the proxy service on their computers.

To configure the deployment mode, select [Network] > [Deployment] to open the [Deployment] page and then click <Configure>. The page displays the deployment modes available: [Route Mode], [Bridge Mode], [Bypass Mode] and [Single Arm Mode]. You can select the deployment mode according to your needs.

Deployment

Current Deployment Mode - Route Mode

**LAN Interface Settings**

**eth0**

IP Address: 192.168.76.210/255.255.255.0  
VLAN: Disabled

**WAN Interface Settings**

**eth2**

Line Type: Ethernet  
Obtain IP using DHCP: Disable  
IP Address: 200.200.76.210/255.255.252.0  
Default Gateway: 200.200.76.3  
Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8  
Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

**DMZ Interface Settings**

**eth1**

IP Address: 10.252.252.252/255.255.255.0

**NAT Settings**

Rule Name: Proxy LAN Interface  
Egress Interface: All WAN Interfaces  
Source Address: 192.168.76.0/255.255.255.0  
Translate Source IP To: WAN Interface IP

Configure

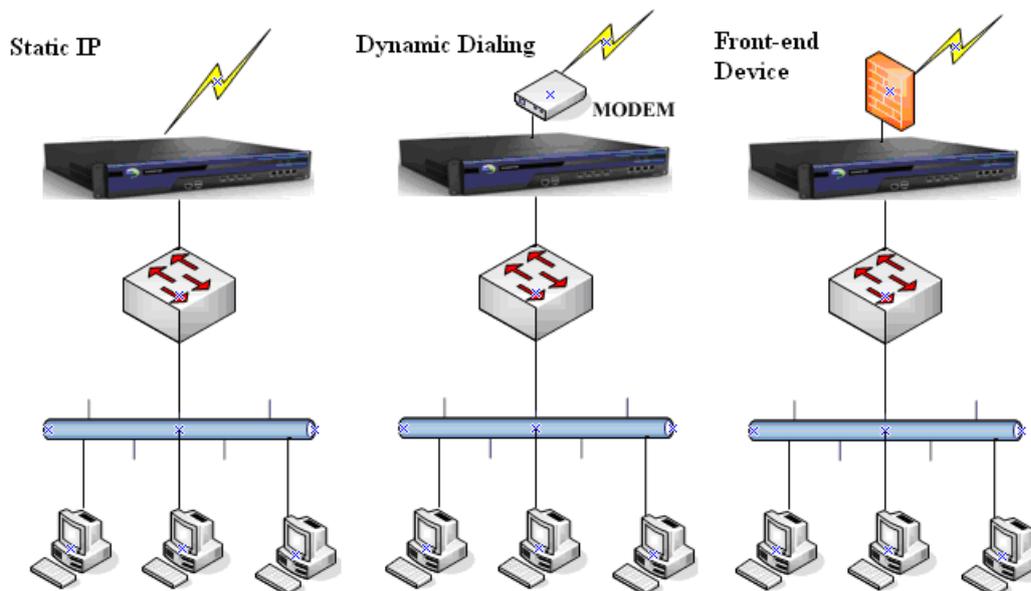
Before you deploy the IAM device to the network, please configure the information such as deployment mode, interface, route, user, etc. The default IP address settings of the IAM device are shown in the following table.

**Table 41 Default IP Addresses of the Interfaces**

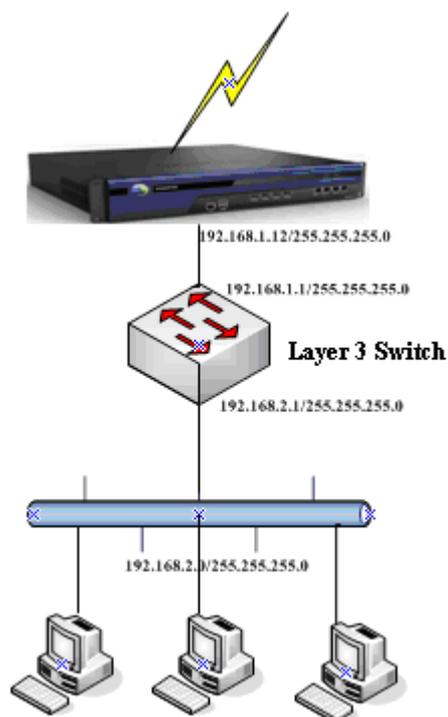
Interface	IP Address
ETH0 (LAN)	10.251.251.251/24
ETH1 (DMZ)	10.252.252.252/24
ETH2 (WAN1)	200.200.20.61/24

### 3.8.1.1 Route Mode

When deployed in Route mode, the IAM device works as a routing device and is typically placed at the exit gateway of local area network or behind the router to proxy the LAN to access the Internet. The typical deployment topologies are shown in the following figure:



**Case Study:** Suppose the network is a cross-layer (layer 3) switching environment, as shown in the following figure and the requirement is to deploy the IAM device as a gateway to proxy the LAN users to access the Internet. The public network line is optical fiber with static IP address.

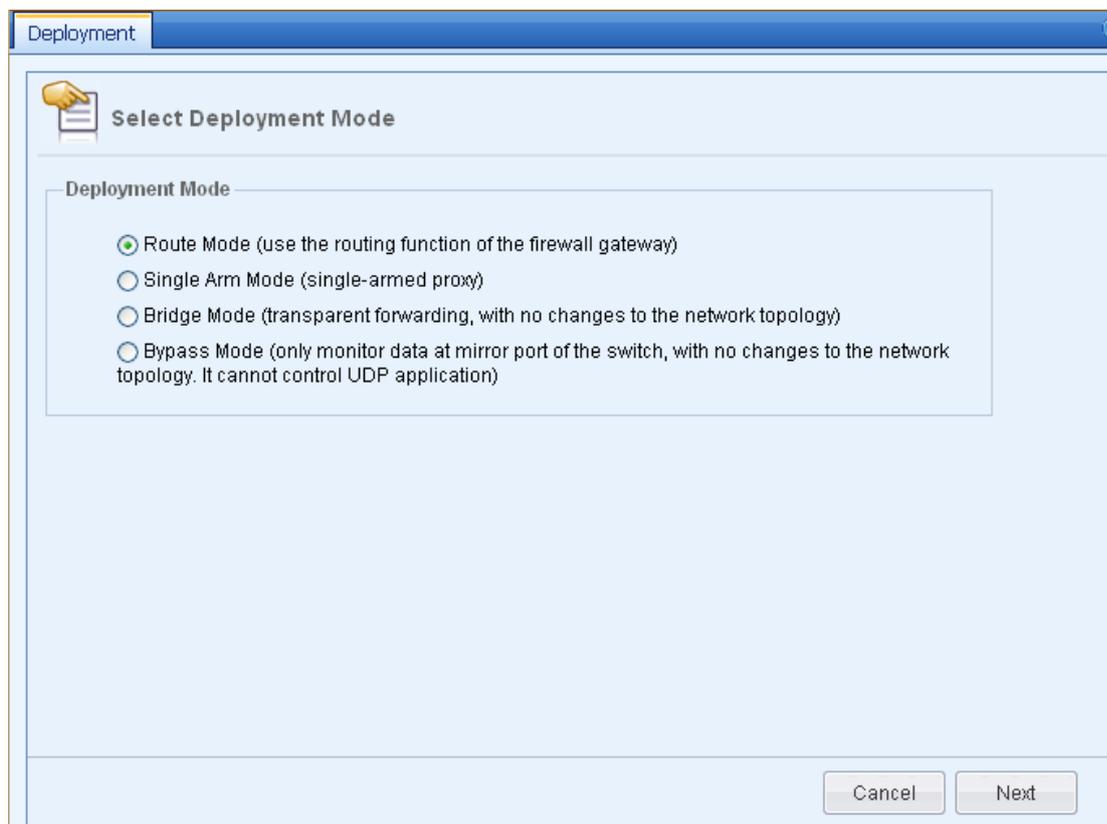


To meet the requirements, do as follows:

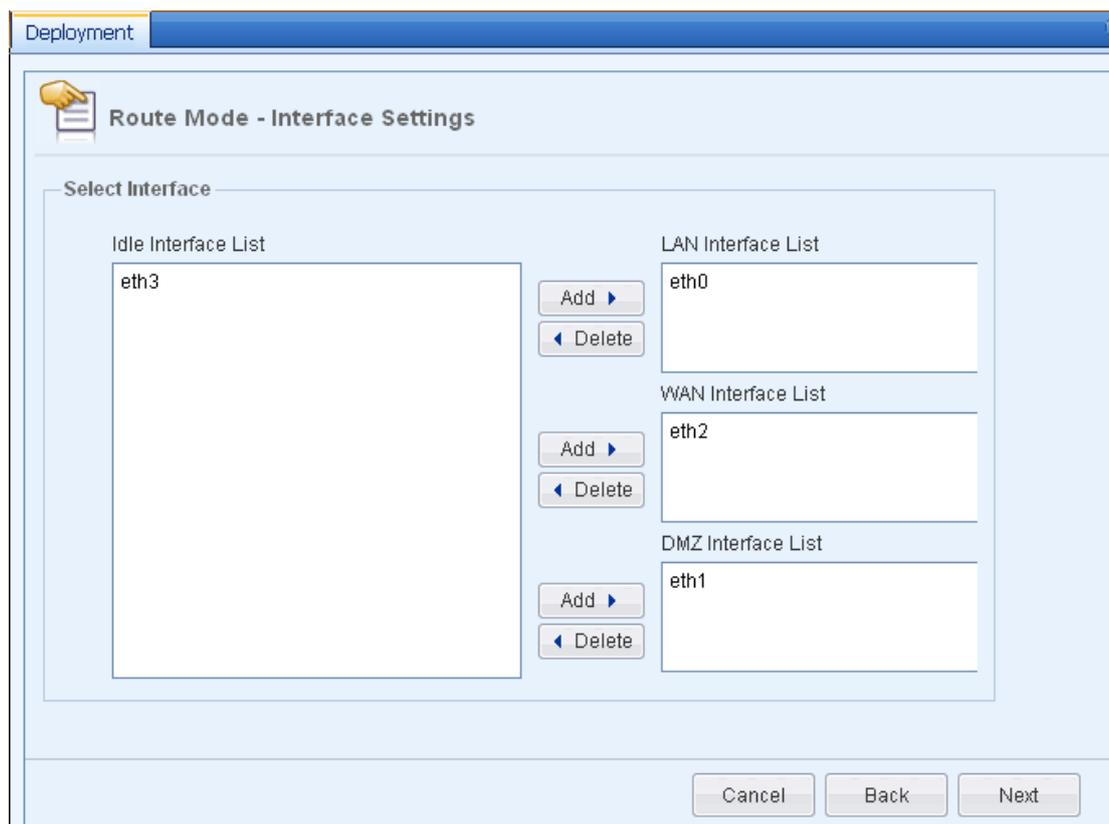
- Step 1. Log into the device through the default IP address. Suppose you log into the device through the LAN interface, whose default IP address is `10.251.251.251/24`. Configure an IP address on the

same network segment on your computer. Then type *https://10.251.251.251* in your browser to open the login interface of the IAM device console and log into it. The default login username and password are **Admin**.

Step 2. Go to the [Network] > [Deployment] page and click <Configure>. Then select [Route Mode] and click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 3. Define the LAN interface and WAN interface. Select an interface from the idle interface list and then click <Add> to add it to the corresponding interface list. On the IAM device, the default LAN interface is eth0, default DMZ interface is eth1 and default WAN interface is eth2. DO NOT modify these default interface settings and make sure they are consistent with those described in the Interface Description table in section 1.3 "Product Appearance". For other idle interfaces, you can define them according to your needs.



**Table 42 Route Mode-Interface List Settings**

Field	Description
Idle Interface List	Displays all the idle interfaces.
LAN Interface List	Define the interface in the LAN zone. The LAN zone interface will be connected to the intranet.
WAN Interface List	Define the interface in the WAN zone. The WAN zone interface will be connected to the extranet. When multiple WAN interfaces are needed, you need to apply for multi-line license.
DMZ Interface List	Define the interface in the DMZ zone. The DMZ interface also belongs to the LAN zone. You can place some important servers at the DMZ zone and then configure the firewall to control the access privilege from LAN zone to DMZ zone to ensure the security of the servers (for firewall settings, see section 3.7 "Firewall").

Step 4. After defining the interfaces, click <Next> to configure the IP address of LAN interface. In this example, the LAN interface is eth0. Set the IP address of eth0 to **192.168.1.12/255.255.255.0**, as shown below. As the LAN interface is connected to the layer 3 switch, it is not necessary to enable VLAN.

Deployment

Route Mode - LAN Interface Settings

eth0

Interface Settings

IP Address: One entry per row. Enter IP address/subnet mask (e.g. 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0) or IP range/subnet mask (e.g. 200.200.20.1-200.200.20.5/255.255.255.0)

192.168.1.12/255.255.255.0

Enable VLAN

VLAN Address: One entry per row. Format is "VLAN ID/IP/mask". VLAN ID ranges from 2 to 4094. For example, 2/200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0

Enter, edit or delete here

Cancel Back Next



If the switch is divided into several VLANs and the LAN interface of the IAM device is Trunk, please enable VLAN and then enter the VLAN ID and IP address. The VLAN IP address should be an idle VLAN IP address allocated to the IAM device. Suppose there is a VLAN 2 in the local area network, the network segment of VLAN 2 is 10.10.0.0/255.255.0.0, and the IP address 10.10.0.1 has not been used yet, enter **2/10.10.0.1/255.255.0.0** in the [VLAN Address] text box. For other VLAN, enter the information in the similar format.

Step 5. Click <Next> to configure WAN interface. In this example, the WAN interface is eth2. Set the IP address of eth 2. The WAN interface supports two types of line: Ethernet and ADSL dial-up. In this example, as the public network line is optical fiber and the IP address is fixed, select [Ethernet] and enter the IP address, gateway address and DNS.

If the IP address of public network is obtained using DHCP, please check [Obtain IP using DHCP].

Deployment

Route Mode - WAN Interface Settings

eth2

Ethernet

Obtain IP using DHCP

IP Address: One entry per row. Enter IP address/subnet mask (e.g. 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0) or IP range/subnet mask (e.g. 200.200.20.1-200.200.20.5/255.255.255.0)

192.200.200.248/255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 192.200.200.251

Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68

Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

ADSL Dial-up

Auto Dial-up

Cancel Back Next



If the line is ADSL dial-up, the WAN interface must be connected with the Modem. Check the [ADSL Dial-up] option, and enter the username and password of the ADSL account. If the [Auto dial-up] option is checked, the line will automatically dial up once the line is aborted or the IAM device is restarted.

ADSL Dial-up

Auto Dial-up

Username: SZDSL1008374@16900.gd

Password: \*\*\*\*\*

Step 6. Configure the DMZ interface. In this example, the DMZ interface is eth1. Enter the IP address and subnet mask, as shown below:

Deployment

### Route Mode - DMZ Interface Settings

Enter IP address and subnet mask for the interface:

eth1

IP Address: 10.252.252.252

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Cancel Back Next

Step 7. Configure the NAT to set the SNAT rules. When the IAM device works as a gateway and is directly connected to the public network, you need to configure the SNAT rule so that the IAM device will proxy the LAN users to access the Internet. Specify the [Source Address] and [WAN Interface]. The [WAN Interface] can be one or all of the WAN interfaces.

After you finish the above settings, an SNAT rule named **Proxy LAN Interface** will be added on the [SNAT] page. You cannot modify the [Rule Name] and [Translate Source IP To] here. To modify them, go to the [SNAT] page. If there are users on other network subnets of the local area network that need to access the Internet through the IAM device, you need also go to the [SNAT] page to add the corresponding SNAT rule (for detailed settings, see section 3.7.2 "SNAT").

**Deployment**

**Route Mode - NAT Settings**

Rule Name: Proxy LAN Interface

Egress Interface: All WAN interfaces

Source Address: 192.168.76.0/255.255.255.0

Translate Source IP To: Egress interface address

Buttons: Cancel, Back, Next

Step 8. After finishing the settings, check if the settings are correct and then click <Commit>.

**Deployment**

**Deployment Mode - Route Mode**

**LAN Interface Settings**

**eth0**

IP Address: 192.168.76.210/255.255.255.0

VLAN: Disabled

**WAN Interface Settings**

**eth2**

Line Type: Ethernet

Obtain IP using DHCP: Disable

IP Address: 200.200.76.210/255.255.252.0

Default Gateway: 200.200.76.3

Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8

Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

**DMZ Interface Settings**

**eth1**

IP Address: 10.252.252.252/255.255.255.0

**NAT Settings**

Rule Name: Proxy LAN Interface

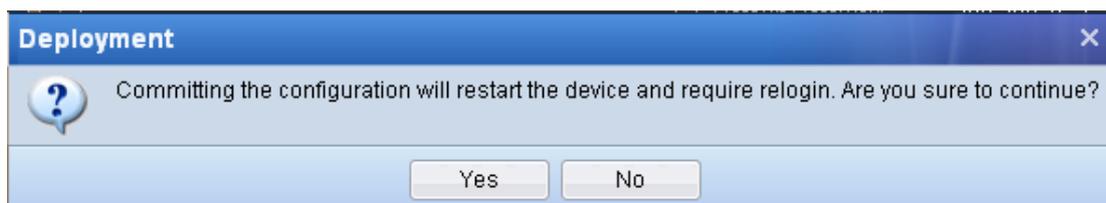
Egress Interface: All WAN interfaces

Source Address: 192.168.76.0/255.255.255.0

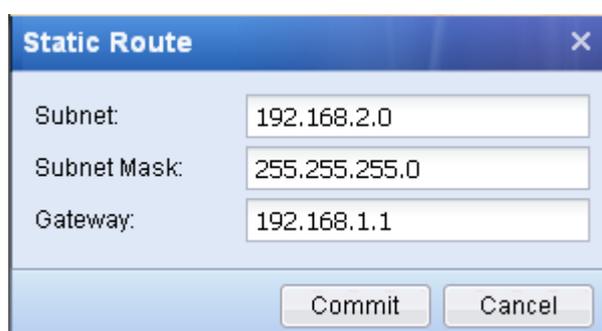
Translate Source IP To: Egress interface address

Buttons: Cancel, Back, Commit

Step 9. To make the settings take effect, the IAM device will restart. Click <Yes> on the displayed dialog, as shown below:



Step 10. In this example, as the LAN interface of the IAM device is not located on the same network segment as the LAN users, you need to add a system route directing the IAM device to the LAN. Go to [Network] > [Static Routing], click <Add> to add the corresponding route (for detailed settings, see section 3.8.3 "Static Route"). When the LAN consists of several network segments, you need to add several system routes.



Step 11. Configure [Firewall] > [Firewall Rules] to allow all data from LAN to WAN (see section 3.7.1 "Firewall Rules").

Step 12. Go to the [Group/User] page to add users/groups or go to the [Authentication Policy] page to add authentication policy for new users to avoid the situation that the LAN users cannot access the Internet through the IAM device due to no valid identity authentication (see section 3.3.2.3 "Group/User" and section 3.3.3.1 "Authentication Policy").

Step 13. Place the IAM device into the network, with the WAN interface connected to WAN line and LAN interface to LAN switch whose gateway directs to the LAN interface of the IAM device.



1. When the IAM device works in Route mode, the gateway of the LAN computers are directing to the LAN interface of the IAM device or the layer 3 switch, whose gateway is directing to the IAM device. All the Internet access data are forwarded through the NAT or routing function of the IAM device.
2. The IP addresses of WAN interface, LAN interface and DMZ interface should be on different network segments.
3. If the LAN interface is configured with 802.1Q-VLAN address, the LAN interface can be connected with the TRUNK interface of the layer 2 switch that supports VLAN and the IAM device

can forward data among different VLANs (single-armed routing). You can also configure the firewall rule of the LAN<->LAN direction to control the access among different VLAN IDs.

4. Under Route mode, if there is a front-end device in the network, please configure for the WAN interface of the IAM device an IP address that is on the same network segment as that of the LAN interface of the front-end device in Step 5. If the front-end device has enabled DHCP, please also check the [Obtain IP using DHCP] option for the WAN interface and make sure the WAN interface communicates with the DHCP server smoothly.

### 3.8.1.2 Bridge Mode

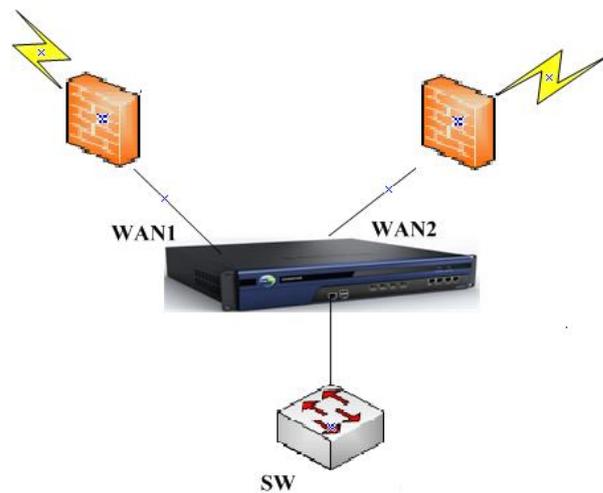
When deployed in Bridge, the IAM device works as a network cable with the filtering function. This deployment is generally used when it is inconvenient to change the original network topology. When selecting Route mode, deploy the IAM device between the original gateway and LAN users. You need only configure the IAM device, with no changes to the original gateway and LAN users. To the users, they do not know the existence of the IAM device; in other words, the IAM device is totally transparent to the original gateway and LAN users, which is the main feature of Bridge deployment mode. The Bridge mode falls into two modes: Multi-Interface and Multi-Bridge. Only Multi-bridge mode is supporting IPv6 environment currently.

#### 3.8.1.2.1 Multi-Interface

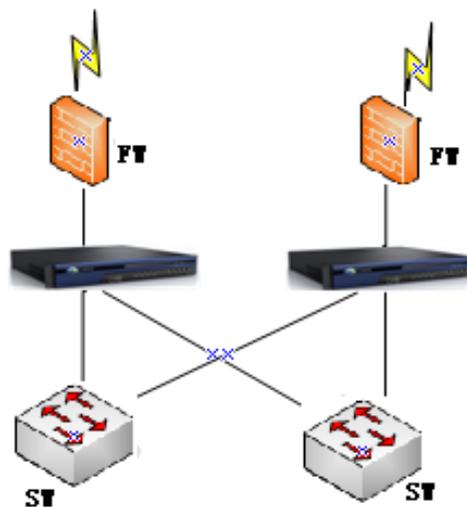
Multi-Interface means the IAM device sets up only one bridge, and the LAN interface and WAN interface are not of a one-to-one correspondence. The LAN interface or the WAN interface may be connected to multiple interfaces. In Multi-Interface mode, the IAM device only maintains one ARP table and data forwarding is allowed among different interfaces.

The Multi-Interface mode is generally used in the following two running environments:

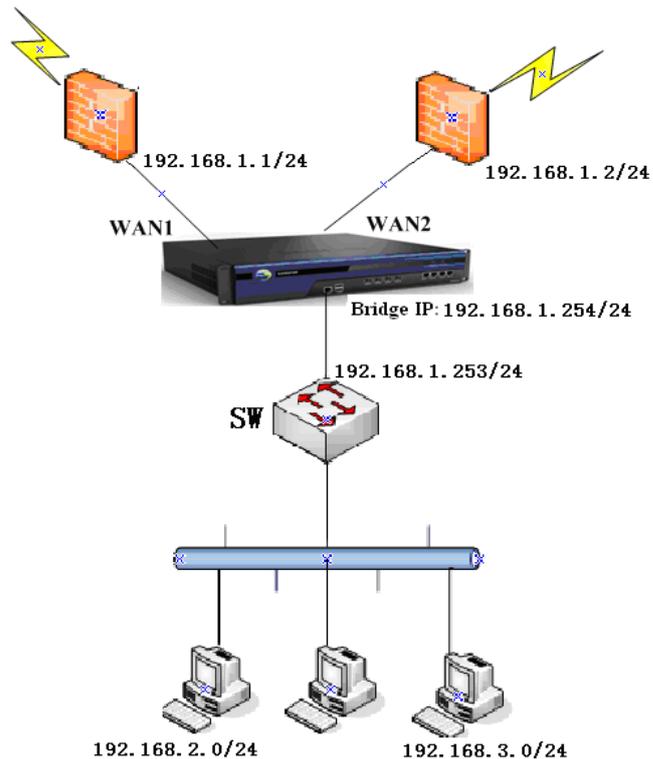
**Environment 1:** The switch is connected to the two external lines FW1 and FW2. In this network environment, the IAM device can be deployed between the switch and firewalls, adopting Single-In-Double-Out multi-interface mode, as shown in the following figure:



**Environment 2:** To enhance the stability of the network and reduce single point of failure, both the core switch and route in the LAN adopt high availability scheme. In this network environment, two IAM devices can be deployed into the network, adopting Double-In-Single-Out multi-bridge mode, as shown in the following figure:

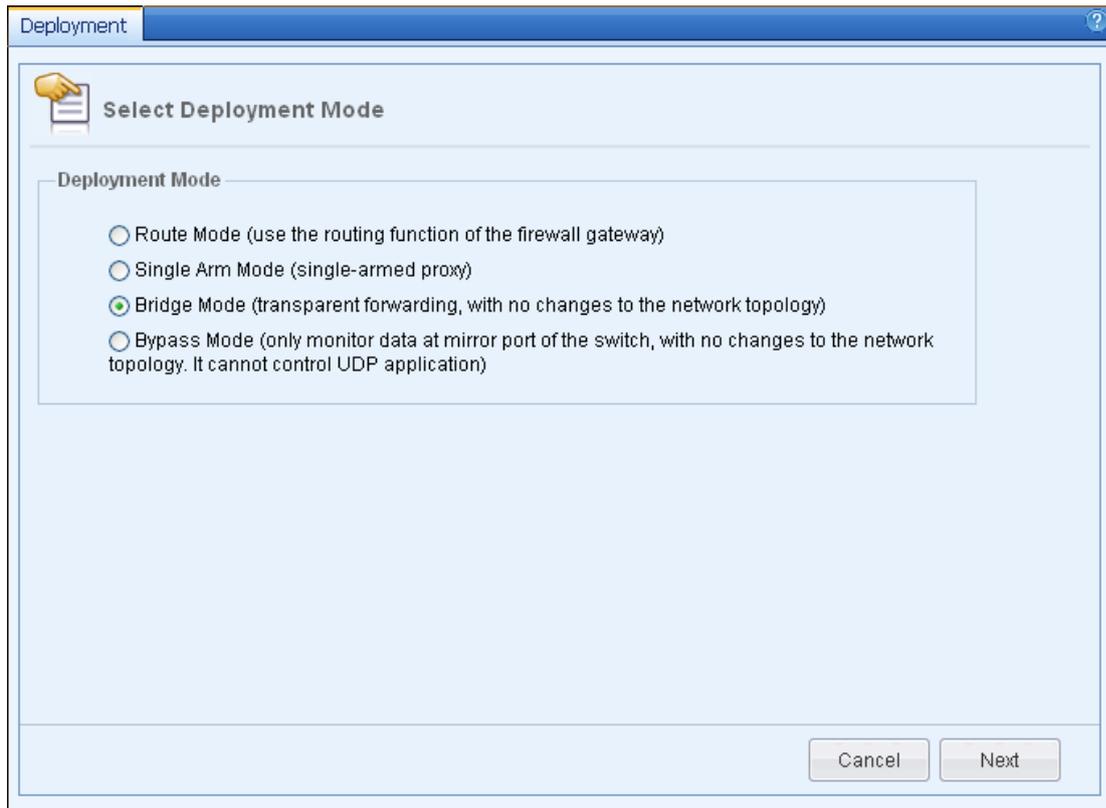


**Case Study:** Suppose the following network topology is what it is required: the IAM device adopts multi-interface mode, the local area network is connected with the layer 3 switch, and the LAN consists of two network segments 192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0 and 192.168.3.0/255.255.255.0.

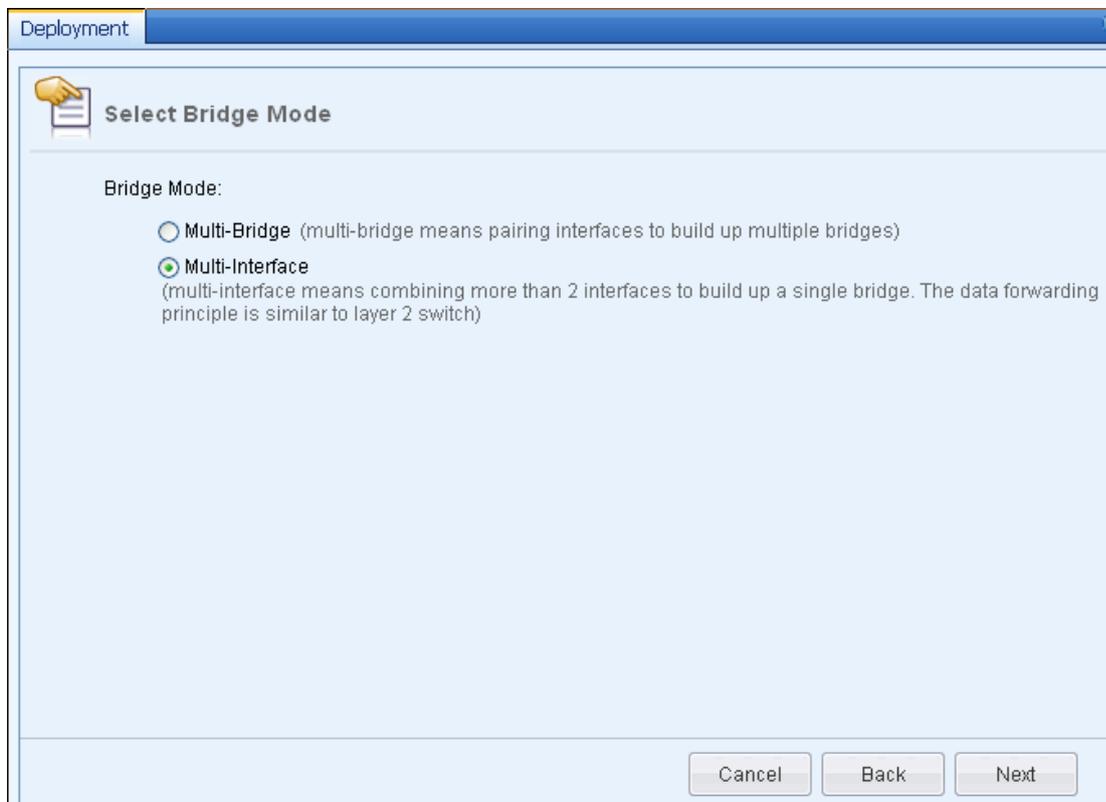


To deploy the IAM device, do as follows:

- Step 1. Log into the device through the default IP address. Suppose you log into the device through the LAN interface, whose default IP address is 10.251.251.251/24. Configure an IP address on the same network segment on your computer. Then type <https://10.251.251.251> in your browser to open the login interface of the IAM device console and log into it. The default login username and password are **Admin**.
- Step 2. Go to the [Network] > [Deployment] page and click <Configure>. Then select [Bridge Mode] and click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 3. Select [Multi-Interface] mode and then click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 4. Define the bridge interfaces, denied flow direction and allowed flow direction. To set the LAN

interface and WAN interface, select an interface from the idle interface list and then click <Add> to add it to the corresponding interface list. On the IAM device, the default LAN interface is eth0 and default WAN interface is eth2. DO NOT modify these default interface settings and make sure they are consistent with those described in the Interface Description table in section 1.3 "Product Appearance".

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Deployment" with a sub-header "Bridge Mode - Multi-Interface Settings". It features four main sections, each with a list of interfaces and "Add" and "Delete" buttons:

- Idle Interface List:** Contains the interface "eth1".
- LAN Interface List:** Contains the interface "eth0".
- WAN Interface List:** Contains the interfaces "eth2" and "eth3".
- Allowed Flow Direction:** Contains the flow directions "eth0<->eth2" and "eth0<->eth3".

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: "Cancel", "Back", and "Next".

**Table 43 Multi-Interface Settings (Bridge Mode)**

Field	Description
Idle Interface List	Displays all the idle interfaces.
LAN Interface List	Define the LAN zone interface. The LAN zone interface will be connected to the intranet.
WAN Interface List	Define the WAN zone interface. The WAN zone interface will be connected to the extranet. In this example, multiple WAN interfaces are needed. There is no need to apply for multi-line license when multiple WAN interfaces are used in Bridge mode, which is different from that in Route mode.
Allowed Flow Direction	Define the flow directions eth0<->eth2 and eth0<->eth3 here, which means data forwarding is allowed between the LAN interface and two WAN interfaces.

---

**Denied Flow Direction**

Define the flow direction that denies data forwarding.

- Step 5. After defining the interfaces, click <Next> to configure the IP address and gateway of the Bridge. In this example, set the IP address to **192.168.1.254** and direct the gateway to one of the firewalls. Please note that you can specify only one gateway address, from which the data of the IAM device itself will be forwarded. The gateway specified here will only forward the data of the device itself instead of the data sent from the local area network.

Deployment

**Bridge Mode - Bridge Settings**

IP Address: One IP address per row. For example, 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0

192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0

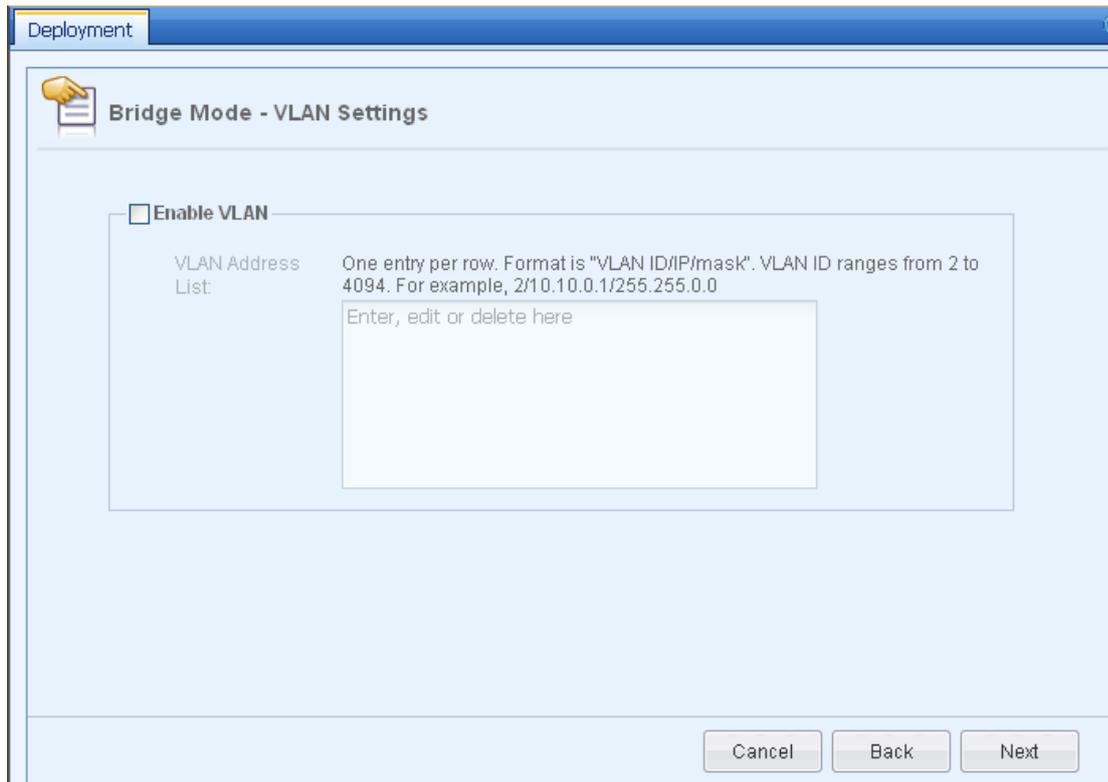
Default Gateway: 192.168.1.1

Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68

Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

Cancel Back Next

- Step 6. Configure the VLAN. When the IAM device works in Bridge mode and there is VLAN data going through the IAM device, you need to configure the VLAN information, including VLAN ID, VLAN IP address (each VLAN in the LAN will allocate an idle IP address to the device), and subnet mask. In this example, as there is no VLAN, ignore the [Enable VLAN] option.



Step 7. Configure the DMZ interface and firewall rule. Select an idle interface as the management interface from the drop-down list of [Select MANAGE Interface]. The users will connect to the IAM device through this management interface. By default, the management interface is eth1. Then configure the [IP Address] and [Subnet Mask]. Please note that the management interface and the bridge IP address cannot be on the same network segment. For the [Auto bypass firewall] option, check it to allow all data from WAN to LAN and LAN to WAN.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Deployment" with a sub-header "Bridge Mode - DMZ and Firewall Rule Settings". Inside, there is a section for "DMZ Settings" with the following fields:

- Select MANAGE Interface: eth1
- IP Address: 10.252.252.252
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Below these fields is a checkbox labeled "Auto bypass firewall" which is checked. A tooltip text reads: "(Allow all packets of WAN<->LAN directions. Select it if you are not sure.)". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "Cancel", "Back", and "Next".

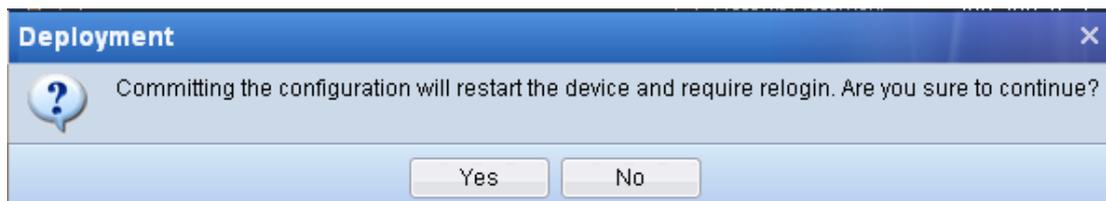
Step 8. After finishing the settings, check if the settings are correct and then click <Commit>.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Deployment" with a sub-header "Deployment Mode - Multi-Interface Mode". It displays a summary of the configuration:

- Bridge IP List: 192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0
- Default Gateway: 192.168.1.1
- Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68
- Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133
- MANAGE Interface (eth1): 10.252.252.252/255.255.255.0
- Auto bypass firewall: Enable
- VLAN: Disable
- Bridging Direction: eth0<->eth2, eth0<->eth3
- LAN Interface: eth0
- WAN Interface: eth2, eth3

At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "Cancel", "Back", and "Commit".

Step 9. To make the settings take effect, the IAM device will restart. Click <Yes> on the displayed dialog, as shown below:



Step 10. In this example, as the LAN interface of the IAM device is not on the same network segment as the local area network (LAN), you need to add a system route directing the IAM device to the LAN. Go to [Network] > [Static Routing], click <Add> to add the corresponding route (for detailed settings, see section 3.8.3 "Static Route"). When the LAN consists of several network segments, you need to add several system routes. In this example, you need to add two routes directing to 192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0 and 192.168.3.0/255.255.255.0 respectively, with their next hop directing to switch.



Step 11. Go to the [Group/User] page to add users/groups or go to the [Authentication Policy] page to add authentication policy for new users to avoid the situation that the LAN users cannot access the Internet through the IAM device due to no valid identity authentication (see section 3.3.2.3 "Group/User" and section 3.3.3.1 "Authentication Policy").

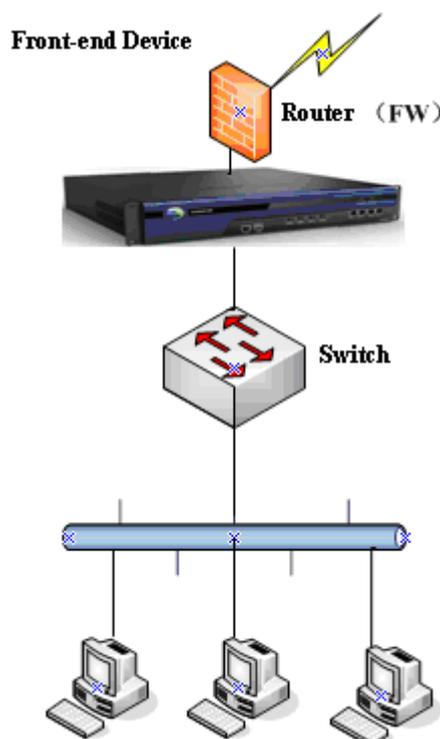
Step 12. Place the IAM device into the network, with the WAN1 interface and WAN2 interface connected to the firewalls respectively, and LAN interface to the LAN switch.

### 3.8.1.2.2 Multi-Bridge

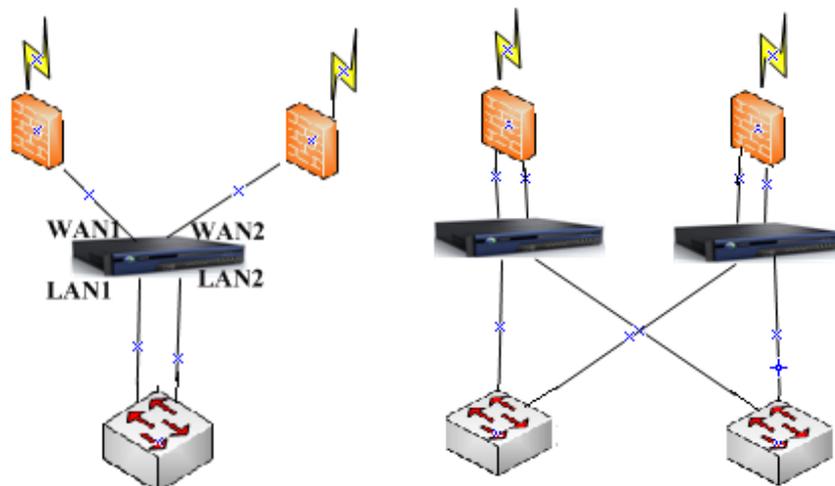
Multi-Bridge means the IAM device sets up multiple bridges, comparable to multiple switches. In Multi-Bridge mode, the IAM device maintains multiple ARP tables, the LAN interface and WAN interface are of a one-to-one correspondence, and data forwarding is allowed only between interfaces of the same bridge (that is, data forwarding is not allowed among interfaces of different bridges), which are different from those in Multi-Interface mode.

The Multi-Interface mode is generally used in the following two running environments:

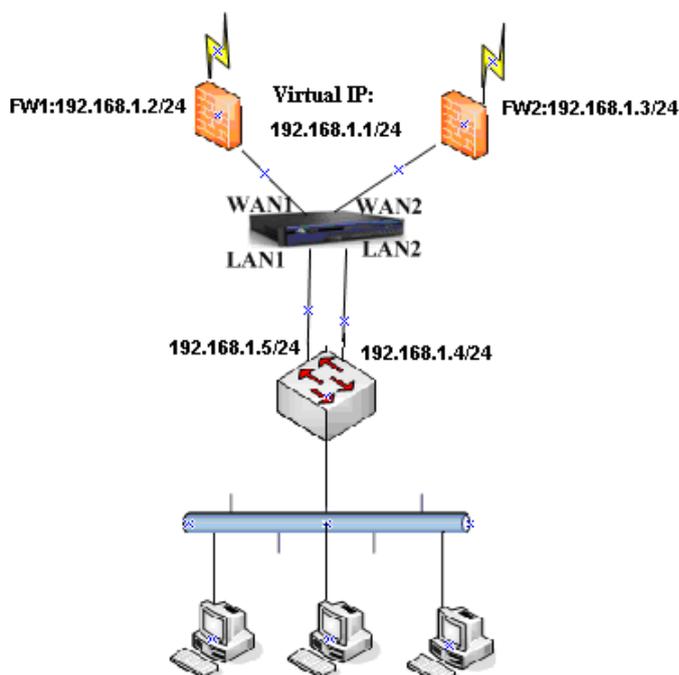
**Environment 1:** The IAM device adopts single bridge mode (Single-In-Single-Out), as shown in the following figure:



**Environment 2:** The VRRP or HSRP environment is available in the network. In this environment, the IAM device can be deployed in Multi-Bridge mode to fulfill basic audit and control functions, which will cause no influence on the active/standby switch of the network. There are two deployment schemes, as shown in the following figures:



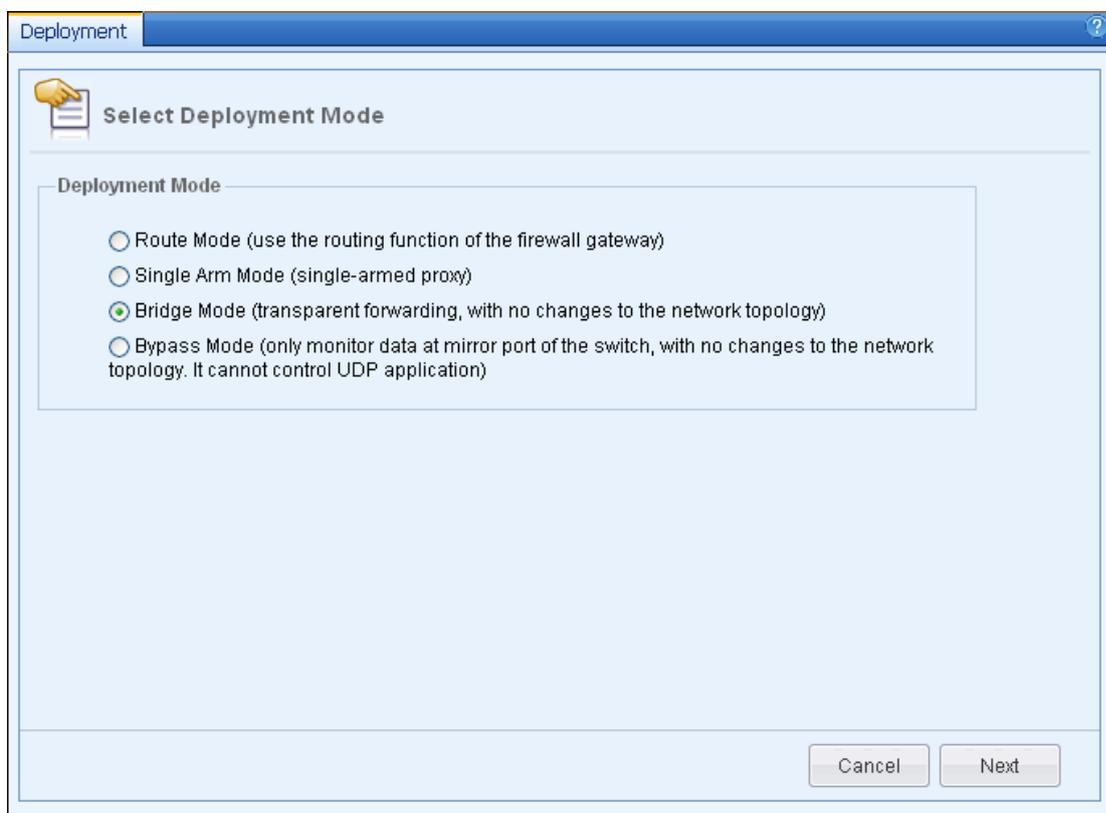
**Case Study:** Suppose the VRRP protocol is adopted between the two firewalls and the switch. The corresponding virtual IP of the firewall is 192.168.1.1. The requirement is to deploy the IAM device between the switch and firewalls in double bridges mode (Double-In-Double-Out).



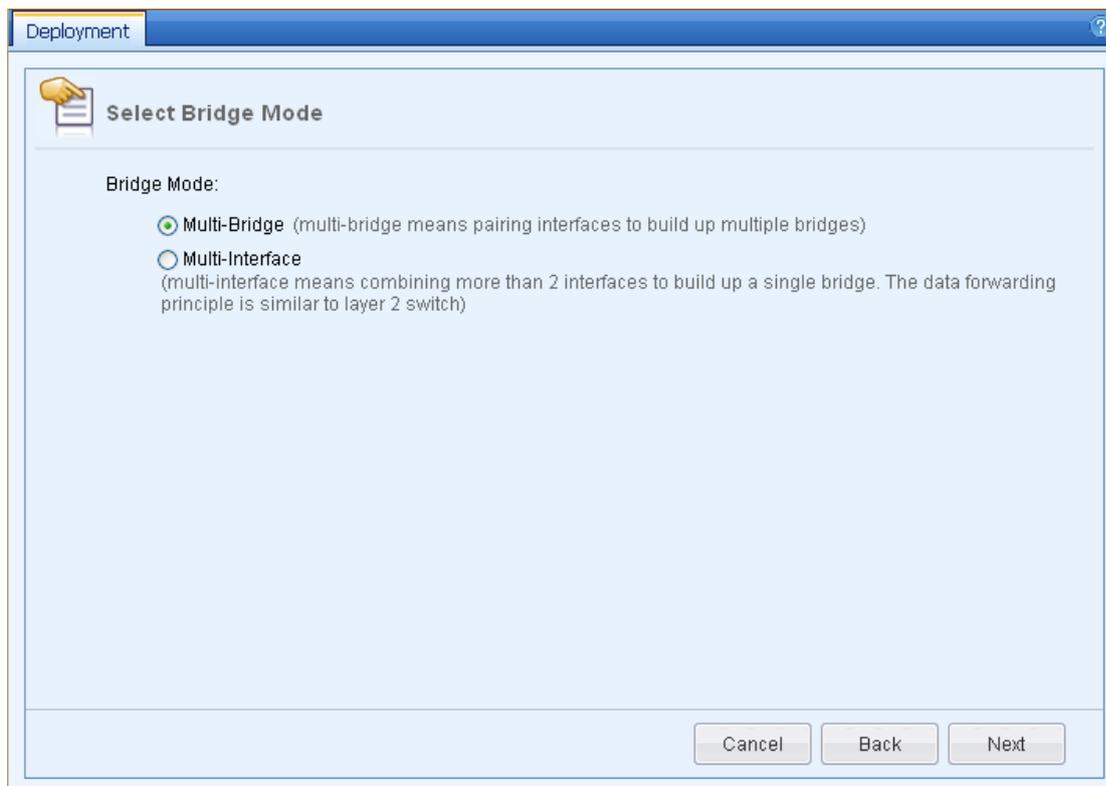
To deploy the IAM device, do as follows:

- Step 1. Log into the device through the default IP address. Suppose you log into the device through the LAN interface, whose default IP address is 10.251.251.251/24. Configure an IP address on the same network segment on your computer. Then type ***https://10.251.251.251*** in your browser to open the login interface of the IAM device console and log into it. The default login username and password are **Admin**.

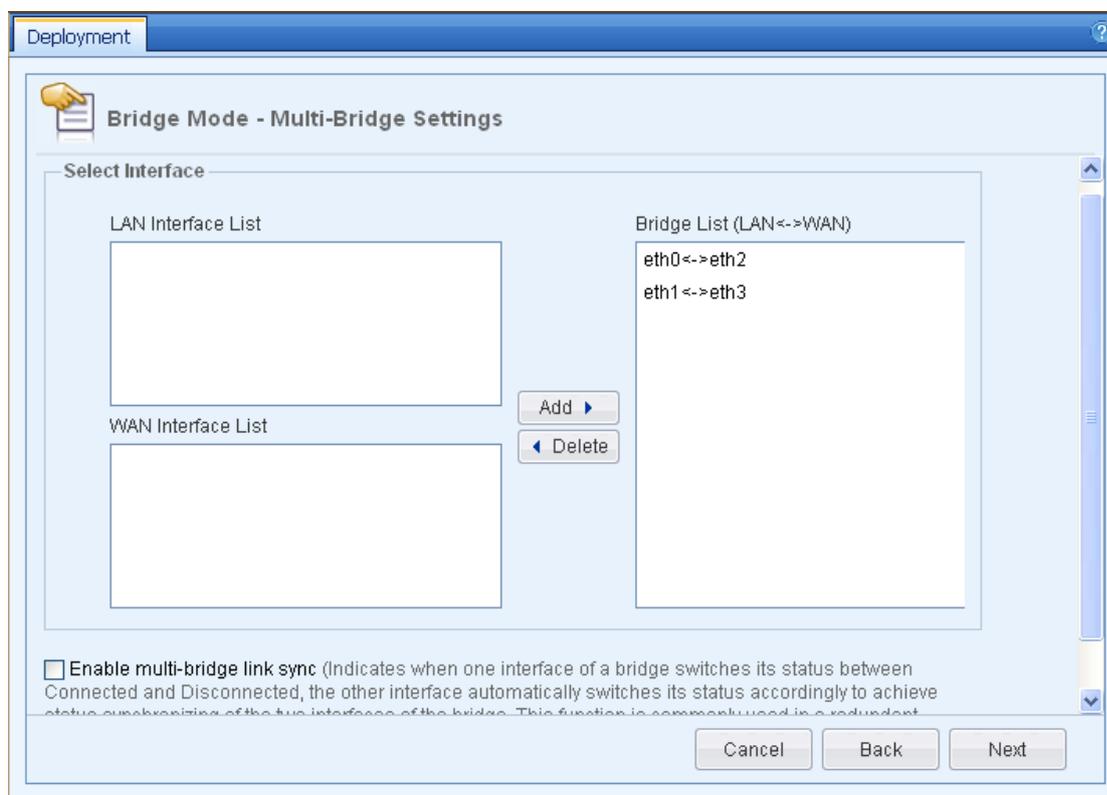
Step 2. Go to the [Network] > [Deployment] page and click <Configure>. Then select [Bridge Mode] and click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 3. Select [Multi-Bridge] mode and then click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 4. Select two LAN interfaces and two WAN interfaces respectively from [LAN Interface List] and [WAN Interface List] to make two bridges, as shown below:



**Table 44 Multi-Bridge Settings (Bridge Mode)**

Field	Description
LAN Interface List	Select LAN interface. You need to select a LAN interface from this list and a WAN interface from the [WAN Interface List] to make a bridge.
WAN Interface List	Select WAN interface. You need to select a LAN interface from the [LAN Interface List] and a WAN interface from this list to make a bridge.
Bridge List	Define the bridge. The data forwarding is only allowed between the two interfaces of the same bridge. In other words, the data is not allowed to be forwarded among interfaces of different bridges.
Enable multi-bridge link sync	Indicates when one interface of a bridge switches its status between Connected and Disconnected, the other interface automatically switches its status accordingly to achieve status synchronizing of the two interfaces of the bridge. This function is commonly used in a redundant network environment to notify the peer device that the link has failed or recovered from a fault. It is recommended to enable this option.

Step 5. Configure the IP address, default gateway, primary DNS, secondary DNS and set whether to enable VLAN for the two bridges respectively.

In this example, as the two bridges are on the same network segment, the IP addresses of the two bridges can be on the same network segment, but they cannot be the same. Allocate two idle IP addresses to the two bridges, direct the default gateway to the virtual IP address of the front-end firewall, and set the DNS to the public network DNS address allocated by the ISP.

When the IAM device works in Bridge mode and there is VLAN data going through the IAM device, you need to configure the VLAN information, including VLAN ID, VLAN IP address (each VLAN in the LAN will allocate an idle IP address to the device), and subnet mask. In this example, as there is no VLAN, ignore the [Enable VLAN] option.

Deployment

### Bridge Mode - Bridge Settings

Bridge1(eth0<->eth2) Bridge2(eth1<->eth3)

Interface Settings

IP Address: One IP address per row. For example, 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0  
192.168.1.6/255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 192.168.1.1

Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68

Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

Enable VLAN

Cancel Back Next

Deployment

Bridge Mode - Bridge Settings

Bridge1(eth0<->eth2) **Bridge2(eth1<->eth3)**

Interface Settings

IP Address: One IP address per row. For example, 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0  
 192.168.1.7/255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 192.168.1.1

Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68

Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

Enable VLAN

Cancel Back Next



If there is no available idle IP address to be allocated to the bridge, the LAN users can still access the Internet; however, the IAM device has no valid IP address to communicate with the local area network and the Internet, and therefore some functions are restricted, such as internal library update, Web authentication, ingress function, etc. In this case, you can connect the IAM device to the LAN switch through the management interface to realize the communication between the IAM device and the LAN area or the Internet. For detailed settings, see the subsequent Special Case.

- Step 6. Configure the management interface and firewall rule. Select an idle interface (non-bridge interface) as the management interface from the drop-down list of [Select MANAGE Interface], and check the [Auto bypass firewall] option to allow all data from WAN to LAN and LAN to WAN.

Deployment

### Bridge Mode - DMZ and Firewall Rule Settings

**DMZ Settings**

Select MANAGE Interface: eth4

IP Address: 10.252.252.252

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Auto bypass firewall (Allow all packets of WAN<->LAN directions. Select it if you are not sure.)

Cancel Back Next

Step 7. After finishing the settings, check if the settings are correct and then click <Commit>.

Deployment

### Deployment Mode - Multi-Bridge Mode

MANAGE Interface (eth1):10.252.252.252/255.255.255.0

Auto bypass firewall: Enable

**Bridge1(eth0<->eth2)** Bridge2(eth1<->eth3)

Bridge IP List: 192.168.1.6/255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 192.168.1.1

Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68

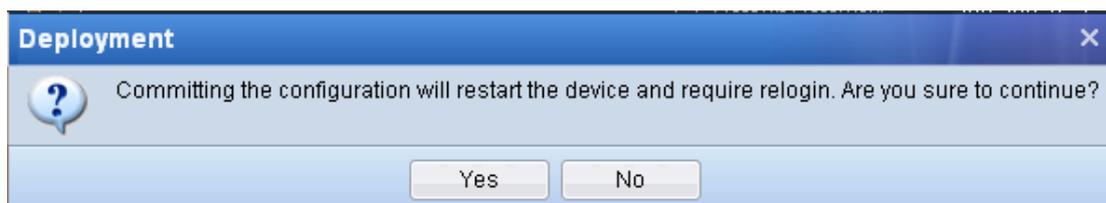
Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

VLAN: Disable

Bridging Direction: eth0<->eth2

Cancel Back Commit

Step 8. To make the settings take effect, the IAM device will restart. Click <Yes> on the displayed dialog, as shown below:



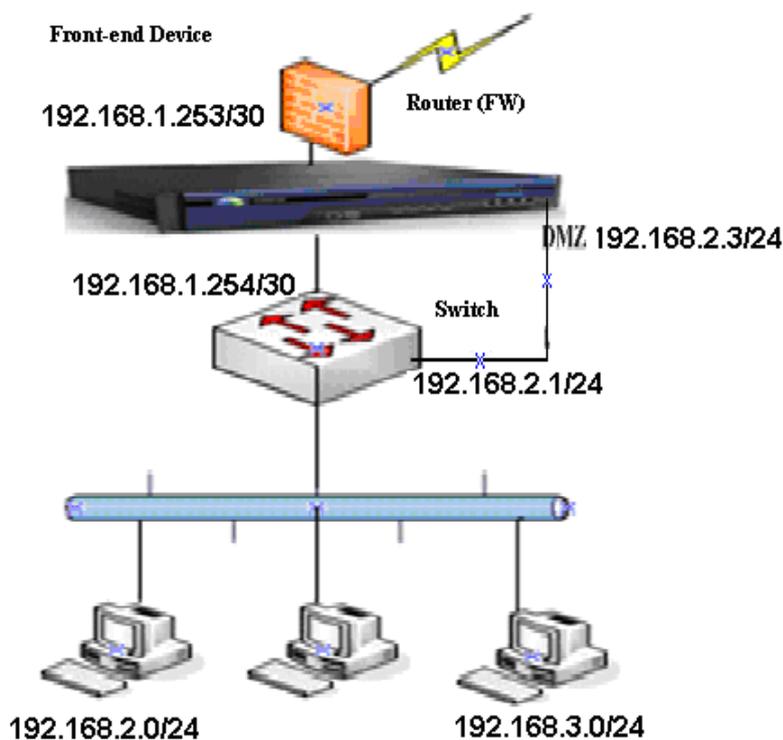
Step 9. Go to the [Group/User] page to add users/groups or go to the [Authentication Policy] page to add authentication policy for new users to avoid the situation that the LAN users cannot access the Internet through the IAM device due to no valid identity authentication (see section 3.3.2.3 "Group/User" and section 3.3.3.1 "Authentication Policy").

Step 10. Place the IAM device into the network, with the WAN1 interface connected to the firewall 1 (FW1), WAN2 interface to firewall 2 (FW2), and LAN1 interface and LAN2 interface to the LAN switch.

**Special Case:** Suppose there is a front-end router in the network, which proxies the local area network to access the Internet. Below the router lays a layer 3 switch. As the network IP addresses have strict rules, the IP prefix between the router and the layer 3 switch is IP/30 (which means the first 30 bits are used to represent the network and the remaining 2 bits are used to identify hosts). The requirements are:

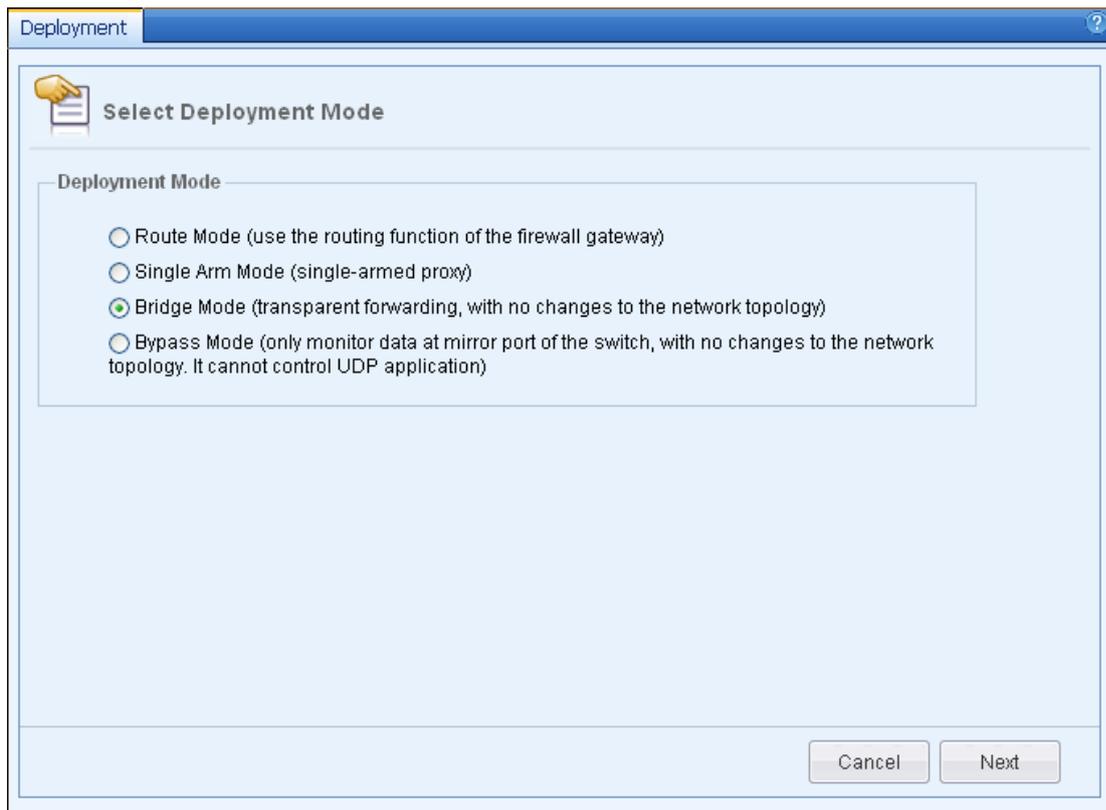
- ◆ The IAM device works in Bridge mode, monitoring the Internet access data of all subnets in the LAN.
- ◆ The IAM device can update the internal rule library automatically.
- ◆ The LAN users use the Web authentication and can log into the Console of the device to manage the device from local area network.

Given the requirements and the special network topology, the following deployment scheme is adopted: When the IAM device is deployed in Bridge mode and there is no available IP address allocated between the firewall (FW) and the switch, the device cannot access the Internet through the Bridge IP address. As the IAM device needs to connect to the Internet and communicate with the LAN smoothly, the solution is to connect the management interface (DMZ interface) to the LAN switch and allocate an idle IP address to it. The IAM device will communicate with the Internet and the LAN through this address.

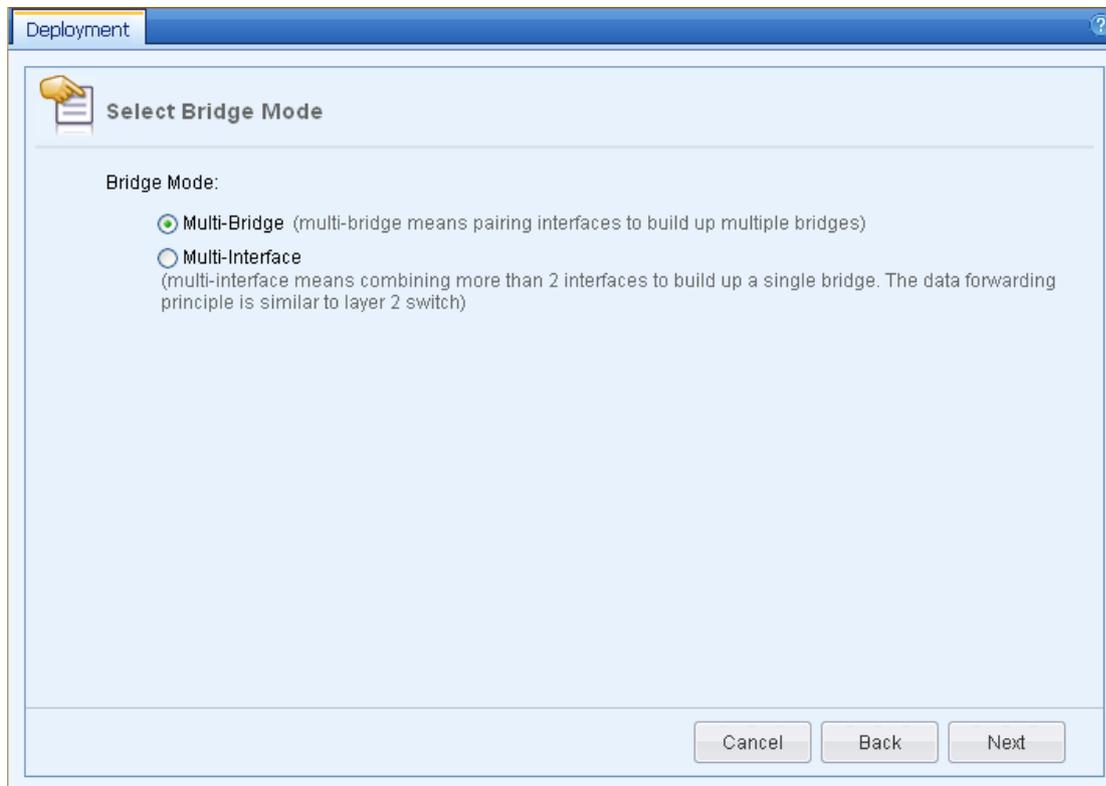


To deploy the device, do as follows:

- Step 1. Log into the device through the default IP address. Suppose you log into the device through the LAN interface, whose default IP address is 10.251.251.251/24. Configure an IP address on the same network segment on your computer. Then type <https://10.251.251.251> in your browser to open the login interface of the IAM device console and log into it. The default login username and password are **Admin**.
- Step 2. Go to the [Network] > [Deployment] page and click <Configure>. Then select [Bridge Mode] and click <Next>, as shown below:

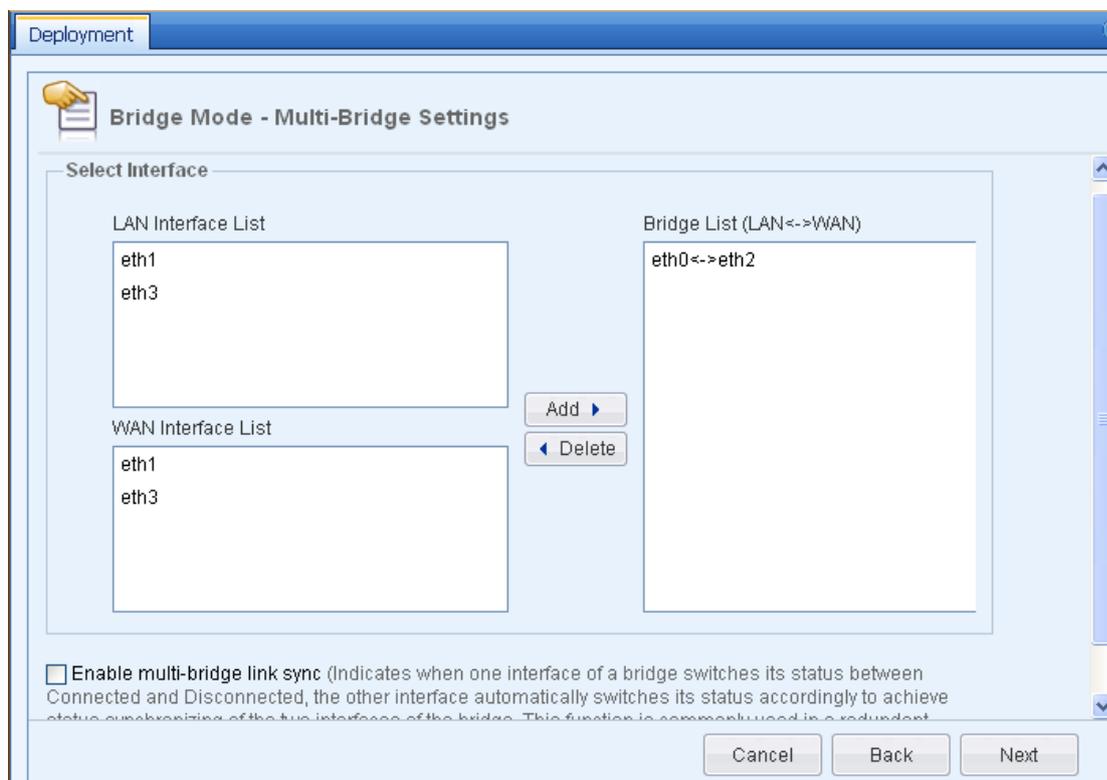


Step 3. Select [Multi-Bridge] mode and then click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 4. Select a LAN interfaces and a WAN interfaces respectively from [LAN Interface List] and [WAN Interface List] to make a bridge. In this example, select eth0 and eth2 as the LAN interface and

WAN interface respectively. As there are not multiple links, ignore the [Enable multi-bridge link sync] option.



Step 5. Configure the IP address, default gateway, primary DNS, secondary DNS and set whether to enable VLAN for the bridge respectively.

In this example, there is no available IP address to be allocated to the IAM device, you can set the bridge IP address and default gateway randomly (make sure they are not on the same network segment as other interfaces). Then enter the DNS address correctly; otherwise, error may occur when the IAM device connects to the server.

Deployment

### Bridge Mode - Bridge Settings

**Bridge1(eth0<->eth2)**

Interface Settings

IP Address: One IP address per row. For example, 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0  
1.1.1.5/255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 1.1.1.1

Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68

Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

Enable VLAN

Cancel Back Next

- Step 6. Configure the management interface and firewall rule. The default management interface is eth1.  
Set the IP address to 192.168.2.3.

Deployment

### Bridge Mode - DMZ and Firewall Rule Settings

DMZ Settings

Select MANAGE Interface: eth1

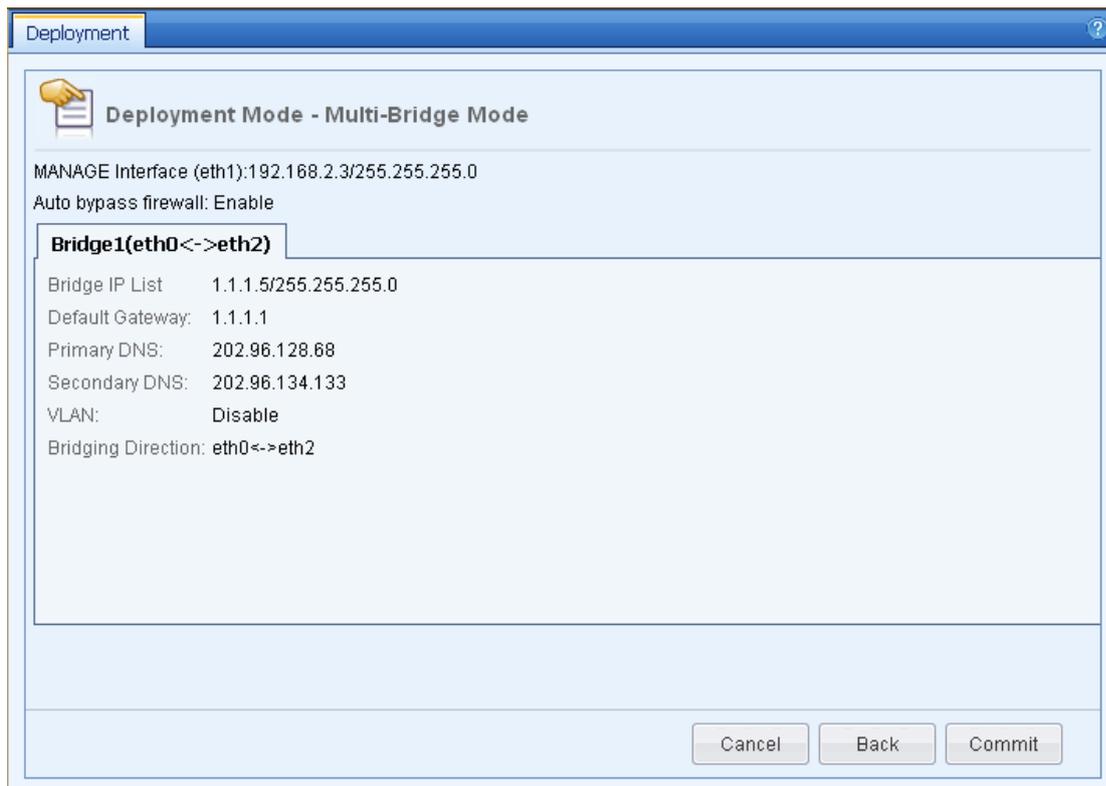
IP Address: 192.168.2.3

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

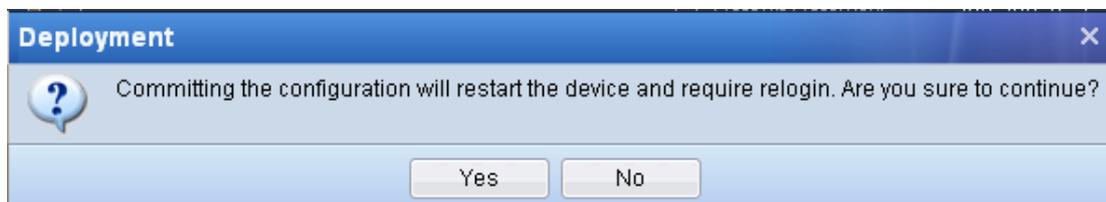
Auto bypass firewall (Allow all packets of WAN<->LAN directions. Select it if you are not sure.)

Cancel Back Next

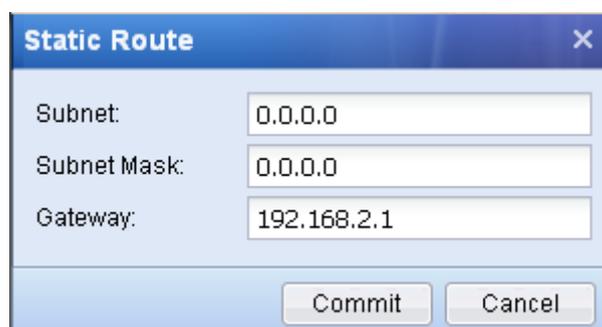
- Step 7. After finishing the settings, check if the settings are correct and then click <Commit>.



Step 8. To make the settings take effect, the IAM device will restart. Click <Yes> on the displayed dialog, as shown below:



Step 9. Configure the static route. Set the default route of the device, that is, the gateway directs to the interface 192.168.2.1/255.255.255.0 of the switch (see section 3.8.3 "Static Route").



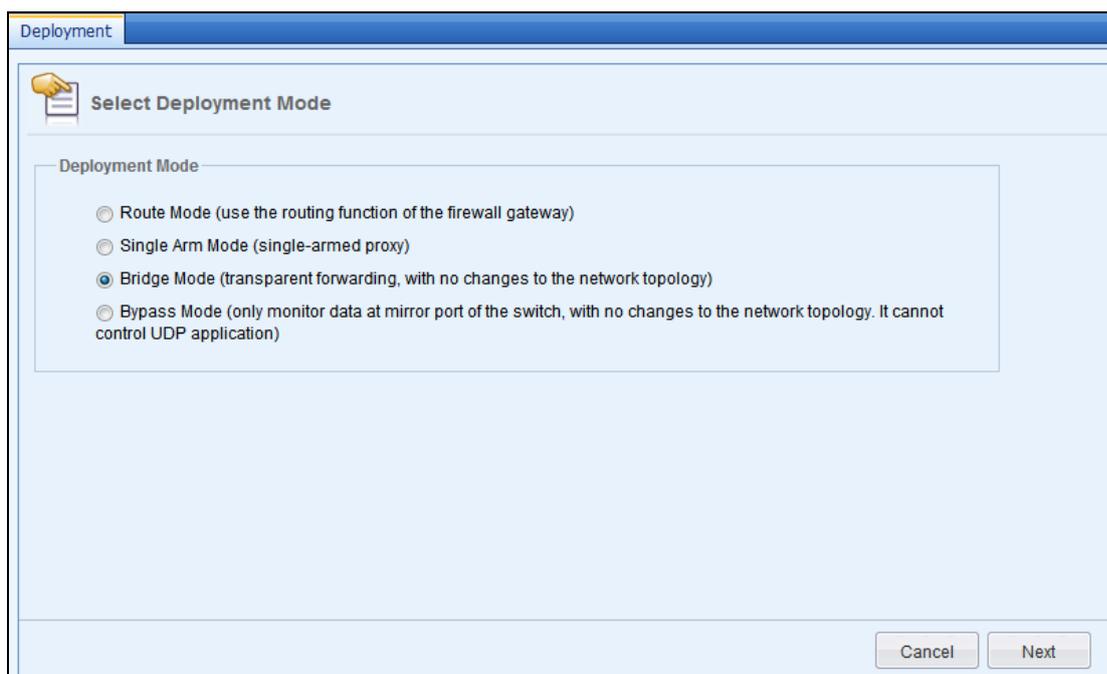
Step 10. Go to the [Group/User] page to add users/groups or go to the [Authentication Policy] page to add authentication policy for new users to avoid the situation that the LAN users cannot access the Internet through the IAM device due to no valid identity authentication (see section 3.3.2.3 "Group/User" and section 3.3.3.1 "Authentication Policy").

Step 11. Place the IAM device into the network, with the WAN interface connected to the firewall (FW), LAN interface to the LAN switch, DMZ interface to another interface of the LAN switch. The LAN switch is a layer 3 switch, the IP addresses of whose interfaces locate on different network segments.

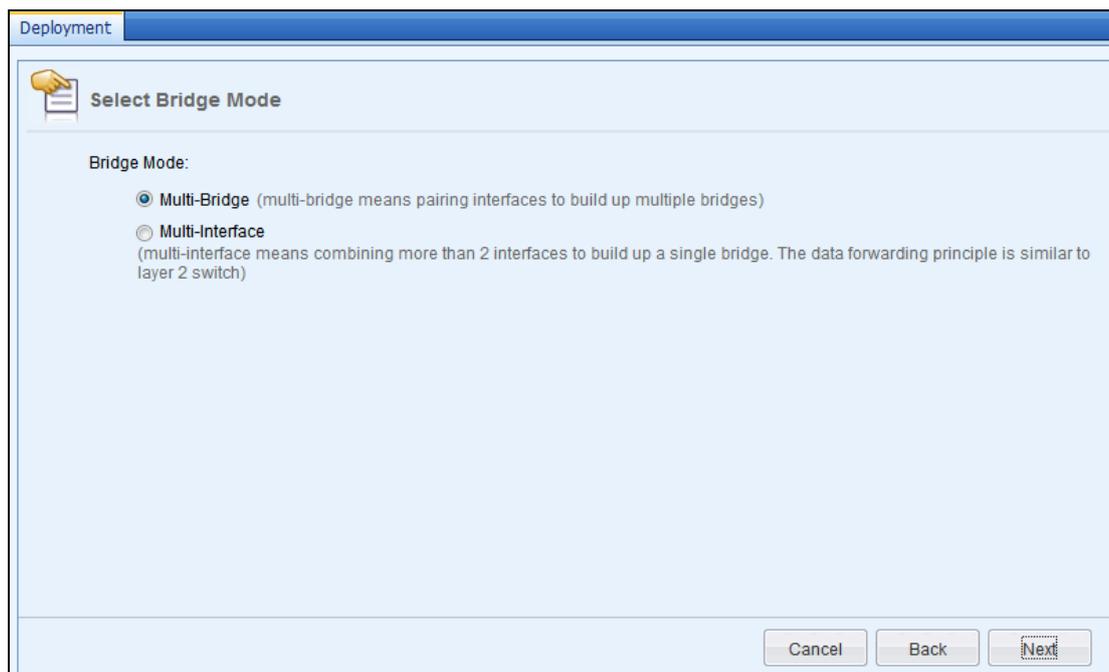
**IPv6 Environment:** As mentioned, Sangfor IAM device only support IPv6 traffic monitoring and filtering in Multi-bridge deployment mode. To deploy the device in IPv6 environment, do as below:

Step 1. Log into the device through the default IP address. Suppose you log into the device through the LAN interface, whose default IP address is 10.251.251.251/24. Configure an IP address on the same network segment on your computer. Then type ***https://10.251.251.251*** in your browser to open the login interface of the IAM device console and log into it. The default login username and password are **Admin**.

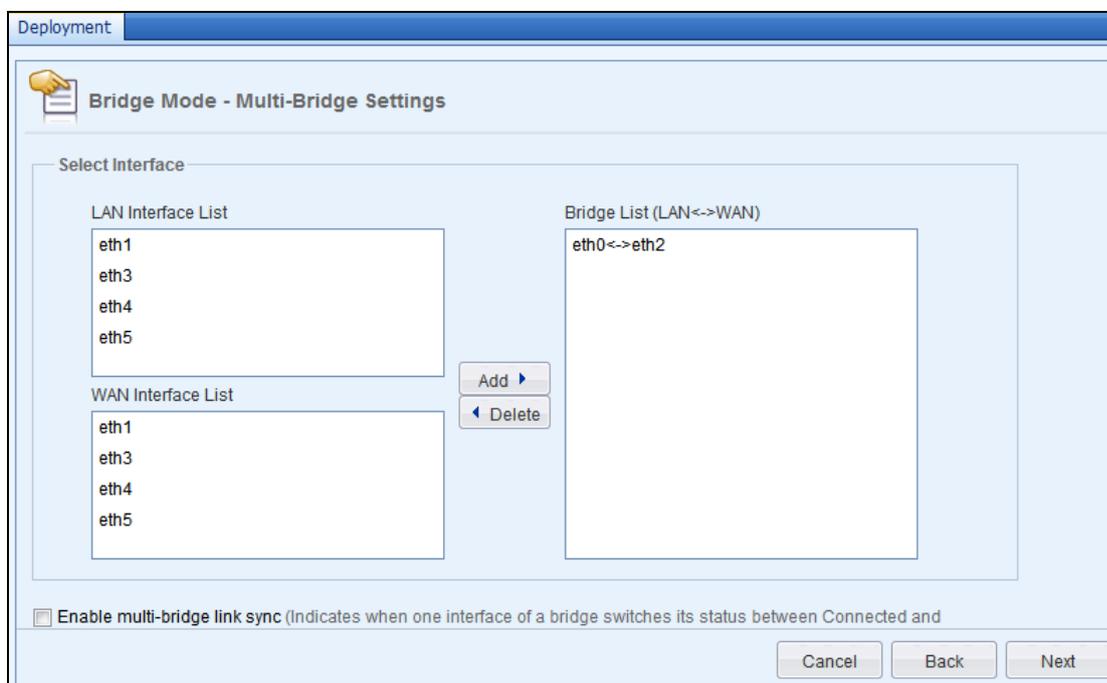
Step 2. Go to the [Network] > [Deployment] page and click <Configure>. Then select [Bridge Mode] and click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 3. Select [Multi-Bridge] mode and then click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 4. Select a LAN interfaces and a WAN interfaces respectively from [LAN Interface List] and [WAN Interface List] to make a bridge. In this example, select eth0 and eth2 as the LAN interface and WAN interface respectively. As there are not multiple links, ignore the [Enable multi-bridge link sync] option.



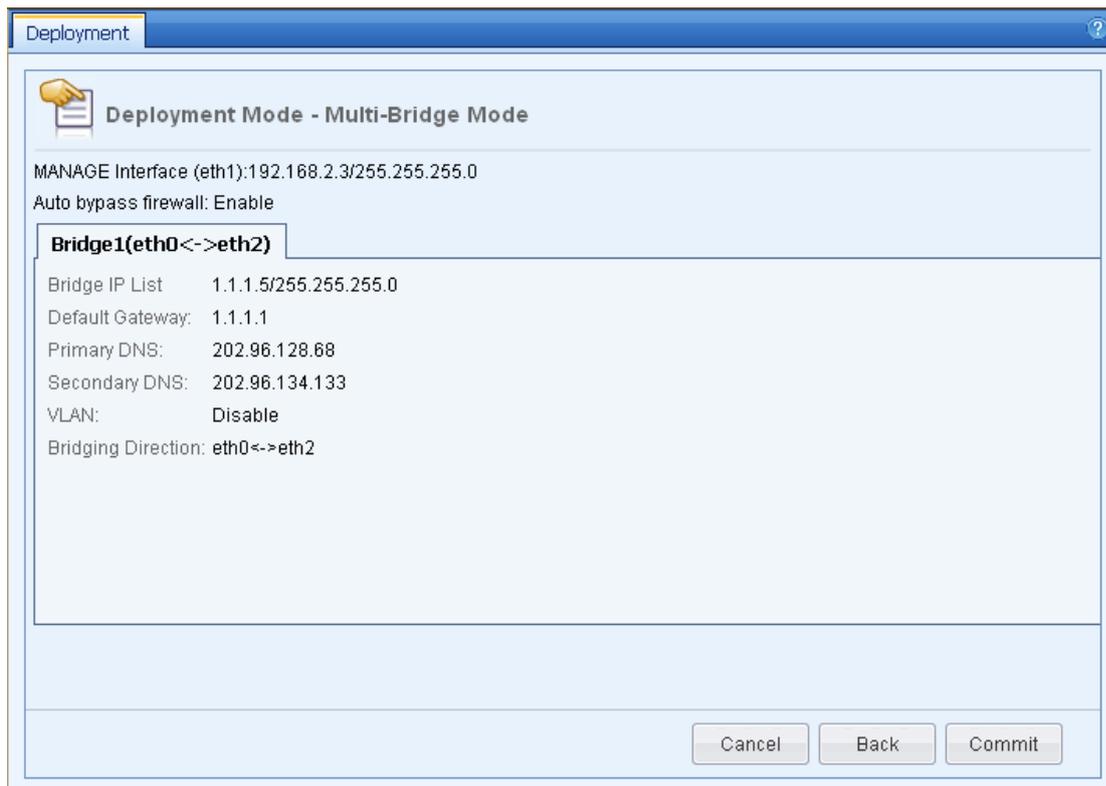
Step 5. Configure the IP address, default gateway, primary DNS and secondary DNS respectively in IPv4 page. Enter the DNS address correctly; otherwise, error may occur when the IAM device connects to the server.

The image shows two side-by-side screenshots of the 'Bridge1(eth0<->eth2)' configuration page. The left screenshot is for the IPv4 configuration, showing fields for IP Address, Default Gateway, Primary DNS, and Secondary DNS. There is also a checkbox for 'Enable VLAN' and a 'VLAN Address List' section. The right screenshot is for the IPv6 configuration, showing fields for IP Address and Default Gateway.

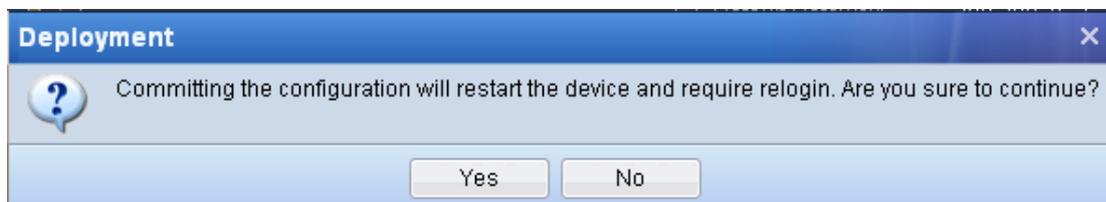
Step 6. Configure the management interface and firewall rule. The default management interface is eth1.

The image shows two side-by-side screenshots of the 'DMZ Settings' page. The left screenshot is for the IPv4 configuration, showing a dropdown for 'Select MANAGE Interface' set to 'eth2', and fields for IP Address (10.252.252.252) and Subnet Mask (255.255.255.0). The right screenshot is for the IPv6 configuration, showing the same dropdown and fields for IP Address (2001:da8:207::9402) and Subnet Prefix Length (64). Both screenshots have the 'Auto bypass firewall' checkbox checked.

Step 7. After finishing the settings, check if the settings are correct and then click <Commit>.



Step 8. To make the settings take effect, the IAM device will restart. Click <Yes> on the displayed dialog, as shown below:

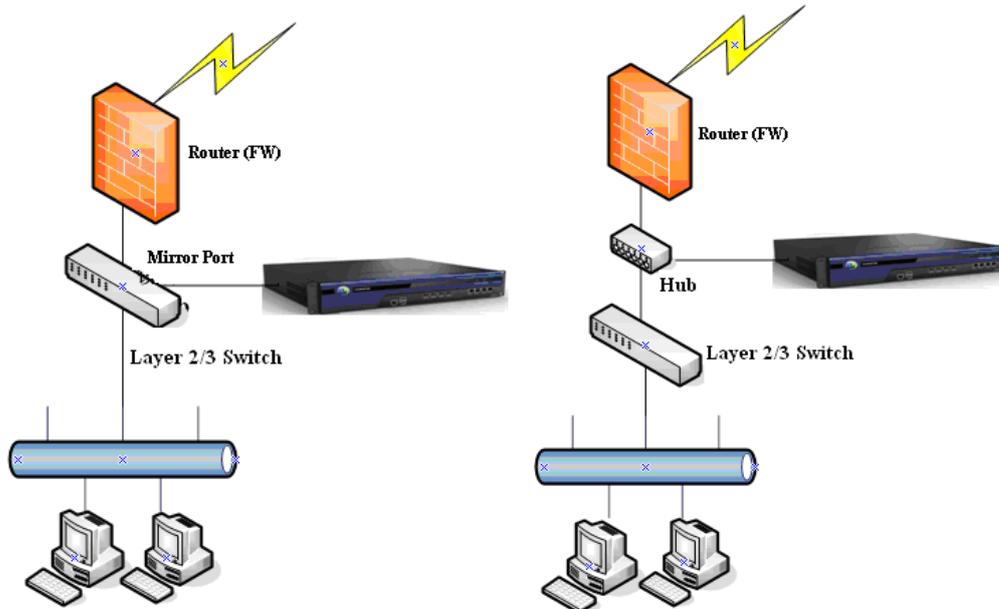


1. When the IAM device works in Bridge mode, there is no need to change the gateway of the LAN computers (that is, keep the gateway directed to the LAN interface IP address of the front-end device).
2. When the IAM works in Bridge mode, to conduct monitoring and control over the data sent from LAN to WAN, you need to make sure the WAN interface is connected to the front-end routing device and the LAN interface to the LAN switch.
3. The Bridge mode realizes transparency at the Data Link Layer (Layer 2 of the seven-layer OSI model) by bridging several interfaces of the IAM device. All the data at the Data Link Layer or above layers can go through the IAM device. When the original gateway need enable the IP/MAC binding and DHCP functions, it must be ensured that the data at layer 2 can traverse the IAM device.
4. In Bridge mode, the IAM device has no NAT function.

5. In Bridge mode, the VPN function of the IAM device is unavailable.
6. To enable the antivirus or email filtering functions or have the IAM device automatically update the URL library, application identification rule library, virus library, etc., you need to configure the bridge IP address, default gateway and DNS address and ensure that the IAM device can connect to the Internet (you can test the connectivity using PING through the update console).
7. To enable the Web authentication, ingress rule or other functions that will redirect users' browsers when the LAN consists of multiple subnets, you need to add a route that is destined for the indirectly connected network segment in the LAN and directs to the LAN router.
8. When the layer 2 switch has multiple network segments (not VLAN) and the gateway device is also configured with IP addresses of multiple network segments, if you want to enable antivirus, email filtering, ingress rule, Web authentication, and other functions that will redirect users' browsers, you need to configure the IP addresses of these network segments in the [IP Address] text box under [Bridge Mode] > [Multi-Bridge Settings] > [Bridge Settings].
9. In Bridge mode, the IAM device supports VLAN TRUNK traversal and the bridge IP address supports the address of 802.1Q-VLAN, that is, the IAM device can be transparently connected to the main channel of the VLAN TRUNK.
10. The differences between Multi-Interface and Multi-Bridge modes are: in Multi-Interface mode, a bridge has multiple interfaces and the IAM device maintains only one MAC address table; while in Multi-Bridge mode, the IAM device is virtualized into two independent bridges, each maintaining its own MAC address table and data forwarding not allowed between the two bridges.
11. In IPv6 environment multi-bridge mode, VLAN does not support IPv6 address. DNS server ip address can only configured with IPv4 type ip address.

### **3.8.1.3 Bypass Mode**

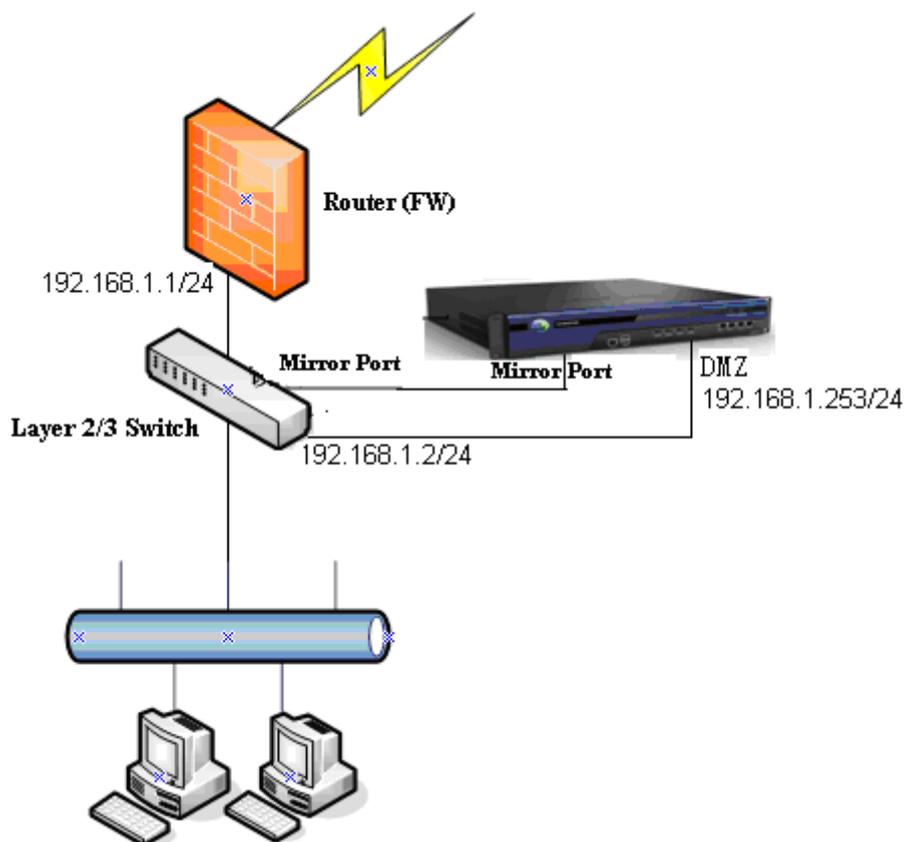
When deployed in Bypass mode, the IAM device is connected to the mirror port of the switch or HUB in the local area network. To realize the monitoring and control functions of the IAM device, it must be ensured that the Internet access data of LAN users will go through the switch or HUB and the mirror port will mirror both the uplink and downlink data. This deployment mode requires no changes to the original network environment and exerts no influence on the network, which means the LAN users can still access the Internet even if the IAM device breaks down. The typical running environments are as shown in the following figures:



**Case Study:** Suppose the network topology is as shown in the following figure and the requirements are:

- ◆ The IAM device deploys in Bypass mode, monitoring the Internet access data of all subnets in the LAN.
- ◆ The IAM device can update the internal rule library automatically.
- ◆ The LAN users use the Web authentication and can log into the Console of the device to manage the device from local area network.

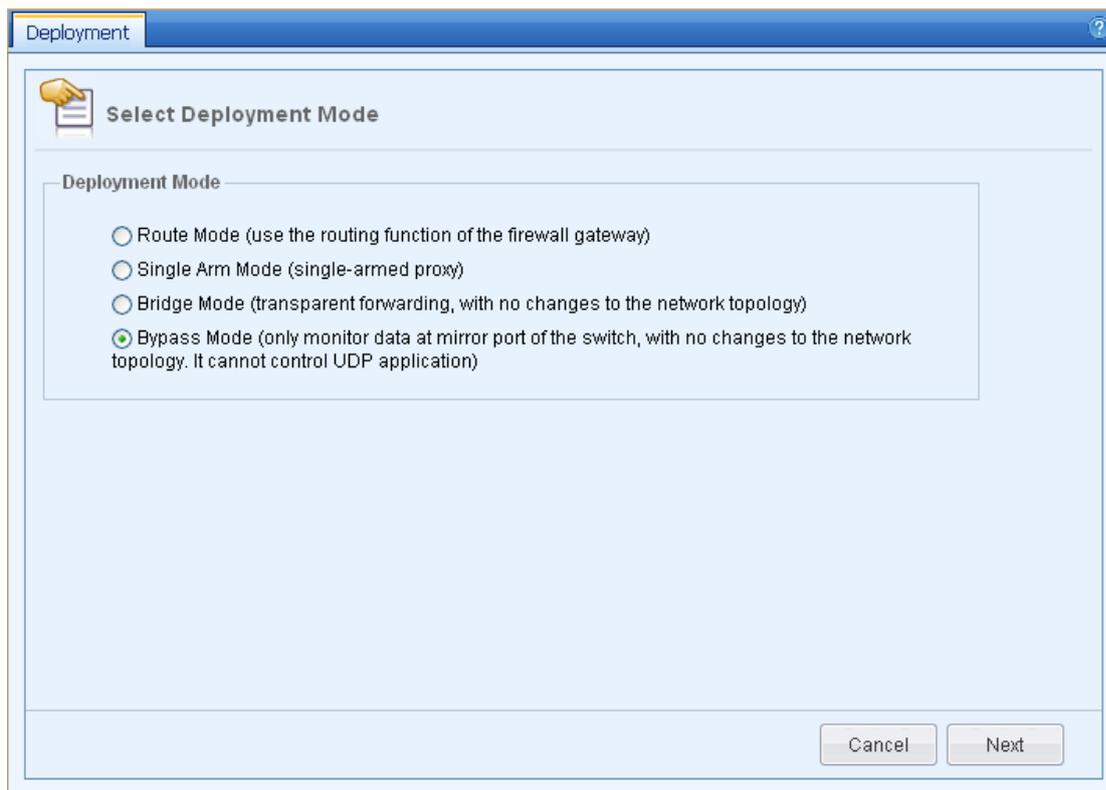
Given the requirements and the special network topology, the following deployment scheme is adopted: When deployed in Bypass mode, the IAM device cannot access the Internet through the mirror port. Since the IAM device needs to connect to the Internet and communicate with the LAN smoothly, the solution is to connect the management interface (DMZ interface) to the LAN switch and allocate an idle IP address to it. The IAM device will communicate with the Internet and the LAN through this address.



To deploy the IAM device, do as follows:

Step 9. Log into the device through the default IP address. Suppose you log into the device through the LAN interface, whose default IP address is 10.251.251.251/24. Configure an IP address on the same network segment on your computer. Then type ***https://10.251.251.251*** in your browser to open the login interface of the IAM device console and log into it. The default login username and password are **Admin**.

Step 10. Go to the [Network] > [Deployment] page and click <Configure>. Then select [Bypass Mode] and click <Next>, as shown below:



Step 11. Configure the management interface. In Bypass mode, the management interface is eth1 by default, which cannot be modified. [IP Address] indicates the IP address allocated to the management interface (DMZ interface). In this example, as the DMZ interface is connected to the LAN switch, enter an IP address that can communicate with the switch and the LAN. [Default Gateway] indicates the gateway of the IAM device. For this case, enter the address of the interface (of the switch) connected with the DMZ interface. Specify the DNS addresses available in the public network in the text boxes of [Primary DNS] and [Secondary DNS].

Deployment

**Bypass Mode - MANAGE Interface Settings**

IP Address: One IP address per row. For example, 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0

192.168.1.253/255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 192.168.1.2

Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68

Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133

Cancel Back Next

Step 12. Configure the monitored subnet and monitored server list. In bypass mode, the IAM device can fulfill partial TCP control functions. As control is based on monitoring, that is, only the monitored data will be controlled, you need to set the addresses to be monitored on this page.

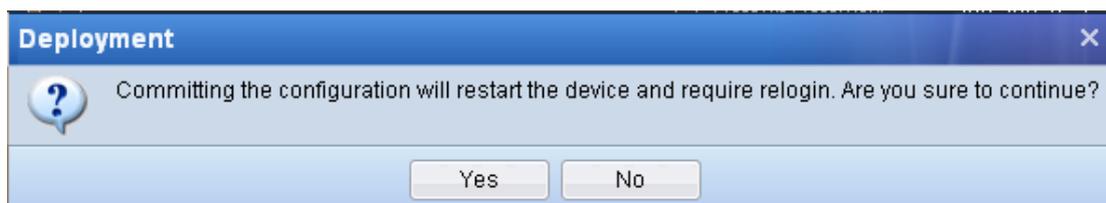
- a. Enter the to-be-monitored subnets **192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0** in the [Monitored Subnet/Excluded IP] textbox, which means the data of this subnet accessing other subnets will be monitored, while the access data within this subnet will not be monitored. If you want to have an IP range (such as 192.168.1.1-192.168.1.10) exempted from the monitoring, type **-192.168.1.1-192.168.1.10** in the text box, which means the data of the IP addresses in the range 192.168.1.1-192.168.1.10 for accessing other subnets or extranet will not be monitored.
- b. Enter the to-be-monitored servers in the [Monitored Server List] text box. When the monitored IP address accesses the address specified here, the data will also be monitored. For example, suppose there is a Web server in the LAN, as the data for accessing addresses in a same subnet will not be monitored, to record the data of LAN users accessing this Web server, you need enter the IP address of the Web server in the [Monitored Server List].

The screenshot shows a 'Deployment' window with a blue title bar. The main content area is titled 'Bypass Mode - Monitored Subnet and Monitored Server Settings'. It contains two sections: 'Monitored Subnet/Excluded IP' and 'Advanced'. The 'Monitored Subnet/Excluded IP' section has a text area with the label 'IP Address List:' and instructions: 'One entry per row. Monitored subnet: e.g. 200.200.20.0/255.255.255.0. Excluded IP: format is "-single IP" (e.g. -200.200.20.58) or "-IP range" (e.g. -200.200.20.14-200.200.20.148)'. The text area contains '192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0'. The 'Advanced' section has a text area with the label 'Monitored Server List:' and instructions: 'Enter single IP (e.g. 200.200.20.58) or IP range (e.g. 200.200.20.14-200.200.20.148). Access to the following servers by any LAN or WAN user will be monitored and recorded.'. The text area contains '192.168.1.80'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Back', and 'Next'.

Step 13. After finishing the settings, check if the settings are correct and then click <Commit>.

The screenshot shows a 'Deployment' window with a blue title bar. The main content area is titled 'Deployment Mode - Bypass Mode'. It contains three sections: 'MANAGE Interface (eth1)', 'Monitored Subnet', and 'Monitored Server'. The 'MANAGE Interface (eth1)' section has a text area with the following values: 'IP Address: 192.168.1.253/255.255.255.0', 'Default Gateway: 192.168.1.2', 'Primary DNS: 202.96.128.68', and 'Secondary DNS: 202.96.134.133'. The 'Monitored Subnet' section has a text area with '192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0'. The 'Monitored Server' section has a text area with '192.168.1.80'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Back', and 'Commit'.

Step 14. To make the settings take effect, the IAM device will restart. Click <Yes> on the displayed dialog, as shown below:

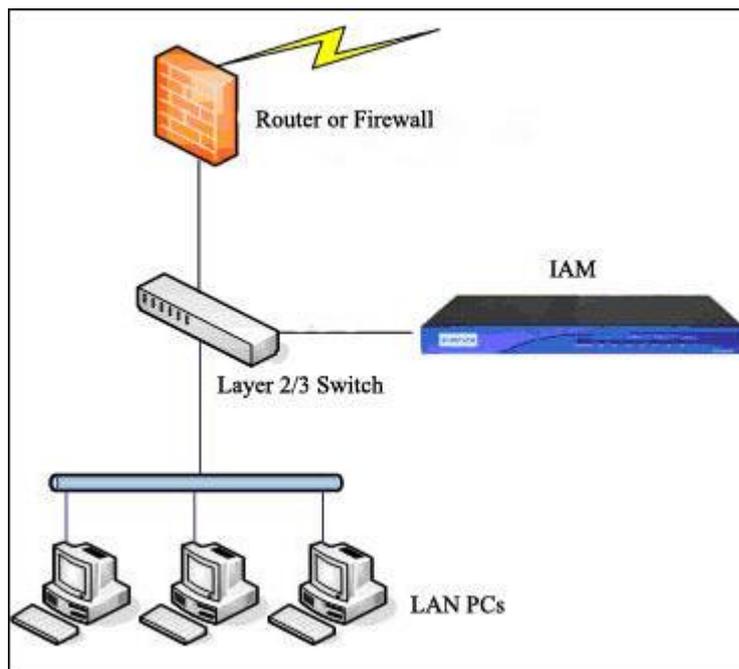


1. To deploy the IAM device in Bypass mode, you must use HUB or a switch with a mirror port. If the switch has no mirror port, please connect a HUB in the front of the switch.
2. In Bypass mode, there is no data displayed on the [App Flow Ranking], [User Flow Ranking] and [Connections] page under [Flow Status] module.
3. In Bypass mode, the TCP control is realized by sending reset packets through the DMZ interface, and therefore you need to make sure the reset packets will be received by the PC and the public network server.
4. Many functions are unavailable in Bypass mode, such as VPN, DHCP and ingress rules.
5. In Bypass mode, the IAM device mainly plays a monitoring role, and fulfills partial control functions, which are not as complete as those in Route mode or Bridge mode. It can only restrict the TCP connections, such as URL filter, keyword filter, email filter, etc. For UDP connections, such as P2P software, QQ login, it does not work.
6. In Bypass mode, only when the WAN interface is connected with the mirror port will the [Status] > [Running Status] page displays the relevant flow graphs (application flow speed trend graph and interface throughput graph) and the interface throughput graph only shows the received flow (no sent flow).

### 3.8.1.4 Single Arm Mode

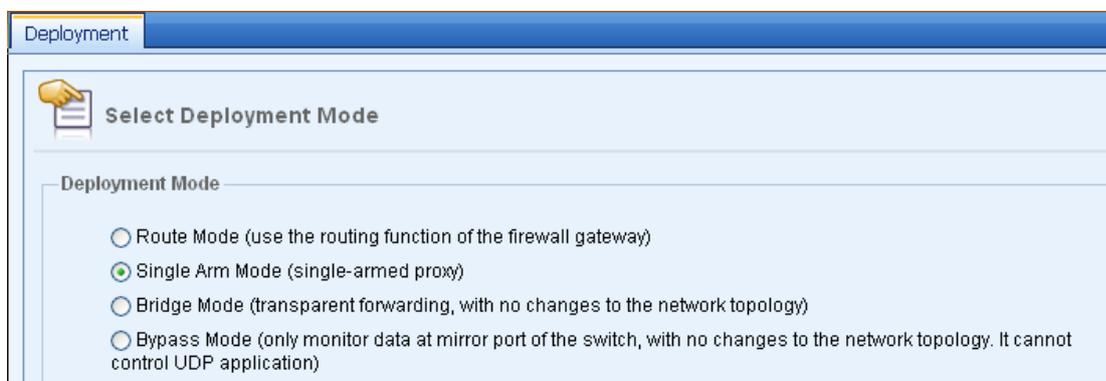
When deployed in Single Arm mode, the IAM device is connected to the switch, working as a proxy server and achieving the single-armed proxy, monitoring and controlling functions. This deployment requires no changes to the original network topology, and plays no influence on the network environment. If the IAM device is down, the users only need to disable the proxy service on their computers and then they can connect to the Internet again.

Typical topology of the Single Arm mode is as shown below:



To deploy the IAM device in Single Arm mode, do as follows:

Step 1. Log into the device through the default IP address, go to the [Network] > [Deployment] page and click <Configure> to open the following page:



Step 2. Select [Single Arm Mode], click <Next> to open the next page, and then specify the IP address (IP address of the LAN interface), subnet mask, default gateway (gateway of the LAN, same as that configured on user computers) and DNS server address, as shown below:

Deployment

**Single Arm Mode - Network Settings**

IP Address:

Subnet Mask:

Default Gateway:

Primary DNS:

Secondary DNS:

Cancel Back Next

Step 3. After finishing the settings, click <Next>, check if the settings are correct and then click <Commit>.

Deployment

**Deployment Mode - Single Arm Mode**

**Network Settings(eth0)**

IP Address: 200.200.76.3

Subnet Mask: 255.255.252.0

Default Gateway: 200.200.76.254

Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8

Cancel Back Commit



1. When the IAM device is deployed in Single Arm mode, the gateway configured on the LAN computers need not be changed (directing to its original gateway).
2. To have the IAM gateway device work in Single Arm mode, you need to configure relevant proxy options on the [Proxy/Cache] > [Proxy Options] page.
3. The VPN function is unavailable in Single Arm mode.

4. Deployed in Single Arm mode, the IAM device mainly fulfills the proxy function. If LAN users want to access the Internet, they need only configure the proxy server on their computers. For example, if they want to access websites, they need only set the proxy server on their browsers, server IP address being the LAN interface IP and the port being the proxy port of the HTTP Explicit Proxy (configured on [Proxy/Cache] > [Proxy Options] page).

## 3.8.2 Interfaces

On the [Interfaces] page, you can configure the information of the interfaces when the IAM device is deployed in Route mode or configure the bridge information when the device is deployed in Multi-Bridge mode.

### 3.8.2.1 Configure Interfaces in Route Mode

When the IAM device is deployed in Route mode, the [Interfaces] page is as shown below:

Connect...	Physical...	Logi...	Interf...	Work Mode	IP Address	MAC Address	Default Gateway	...	Dial...
	eth0	LAN1	Cop...	100Mb/s/Full	192.168.76.210/255.255.25...	00:0D:48:2C:01:0A	-	...	-
MTU: 1500 Speed: 100 Received: 4.5 MB Sent: 224 KB									
	eth1	DMZ1	Cop...	Not connecte	10.252.252.252/255.255.255.0	00:0D:48:2C:01:0C	-	-	-
MTU: 1500 Speed: 0									
	eth2	WAN1	Cop...	100Mb/s/Full	200.200.76.210/255.255.255.0	00:0D:48:2C:01:0B	200.200.76.3	-	-
MTU: 1500 Speed: 100 Received: 13.3 MB Sent: 15.7 MB									

The fields displayed on the above page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 45 Interfaces (Route Mode)**

Field	Description
Connection Status	Indicates the connection status and MTU of the interface.  The icon in green means the interface is connected; otherwise, it means the interface is not connected.
Physical Interface	Indicates the physical interface corresponding to the interface on the IAM device.

---

Logical Zone	Indicates the logical interface zone that the interface belongs to. There are three logical zones: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ LAN: The interfaces in this zone will be connected to the intranet.</li> <li>◆ WAN: The interfaces in this zone will be connected to the extranet. When multiple WAN interfaces are needed, you need to apply for multi-line license.</li> <li>◆ DMZ: The DMZ interface also belongs to LAN zone. You can place some important servers at the DMZ zone and then configure the firewall to control the access privilege from LAN zone to DMZ zone to ensure the security of the servers (for firewall settings, see section 3.7 "Firewall").</li> </ul>
Interface Type	Indicates the type of the interface. The IAM device supports two types: copper and fiber.
Work Mode	Indicates the work mode of the interface. To modify the work mode and MTU, click the work mode of the interface.
IP Address	Indicates the IP address configured for the interface.
MAC Address	Indicates the MAC address of the physical network adapter corresponding to the interface.
Default Gateway	Indicates the default gateway address of the interface.
VLAN Status	Indicates whether VLAN is enabled and the corresponding VLAN information.
Dial-Up Log	Indicates whether to record the dial-up log.

To configure the LAN interface, do as follows:

- Step 1. Click the physical interface name of the interface. As the LAN interface is corresponding to the physical interface **eth0**, click **eth0** to open the [LAN Interface Settings] page, as shown below:

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 46 LAN Interface Settings (Route Mode)**

Field	Description
IP Address List	Configure IP address for this interface. You can configure multiple IP addresses, one IP address or IP range per row.
Enable VLAN	<p>Configure whether to enable VLAN. To enable it, check the option and then type the VLAN information in the format of "VLAN ID/IP/Mask" in the text box. Here, IP indicates the idle IP allocated for the VLAN.</p> <p>For example, suppose in the local area network there is a VLAN2 whose subnet is 10.10.0.0/255.255.0.0 and the IP address 10.10.0.1 is idle, type <b>2/10.10.0.1/255.255.0.0</b> in the text box. For other VLANs, type them in the same format, one entry per row. It can be used in the network environment compatible with VLAN (802.1Q).</p>

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

To configure the WAN interface, do as follows:

Step 1. As the WAN1 interface is corresponding to the physical interface **eth2**, click **eth2** to open the [WAN Interface Settings] page, as shown below:

**WAN Interface Settings**

Physical Interface:

Ethernet

Obtain IP using DHCP

IP Address List: One entry per row. Enter IP address/subnet mask (e.g. 200.200.20.1/255.255.255.0) or IP range/subnet mask (e.g. 200.200.20.1-200.200.20.5/255.255.255.0)

Default Gateway:

Primary DNS:

Secondary DNS:

ADSL Dial-up

Enable Auto Dial-up

Username:

Password:

**Line Attribute**

Uplink Bandwidth:  KB/s ▼

Downlink Bandwidth:  KB/s ▼

Step 2. Specify the following information. [Ethernet] and [ADSL Dial-up] are two Internet access modes, and they are alternative.

**Table 47 WAN Interface Settings (Route Mode)**

Field	Description
Ethernet	If [Ethernet] is checked, type the static IP addresses allocated by the Internet service provider (ISP) or check the [Obtain IP using DHCP] option to obtain the IP automatically. For details, contact the local ISP.
ADSL Dial-up	Select the Internet access mode of the interface. If [ADSL Dial-up] is checked, type the username and password provided by the ISP (such as Telecom, Unicom).
Line Attribute	Configure the uplink bandwidth and downlink bandwidth of the link.

Step 3. If you select [ADSL Dial-up], you can then configure the attributes of the ADSL dial-up line. Click <Advanced> to open the [Advanced] page and then set the handshake time, timeout and maximum timeout counts. The recommended values for the three fields are 20, 80 and 3 respectively, as shown below:

Step 4. Click <OK> and then <Commit> to save your settings.

### 3.8.2.2 Configure the Interfaces in Multi-Bridge Mode

When the IAM device is deployed in Multi-Bridge mode, the [Interfaces] page is as shown below:

Interfaces			
MANAGE Interface			
Bridge	Flow Direction	IP Address	Gateway/DNS Info
Bridge1	eth0<->eth2	200.200.76.136/255.255.255.0 Disable VLAN	Default Gateway:200.200.76.3 Primary DNS:8.8.8.8 Secondary DNS:202.96.128.68

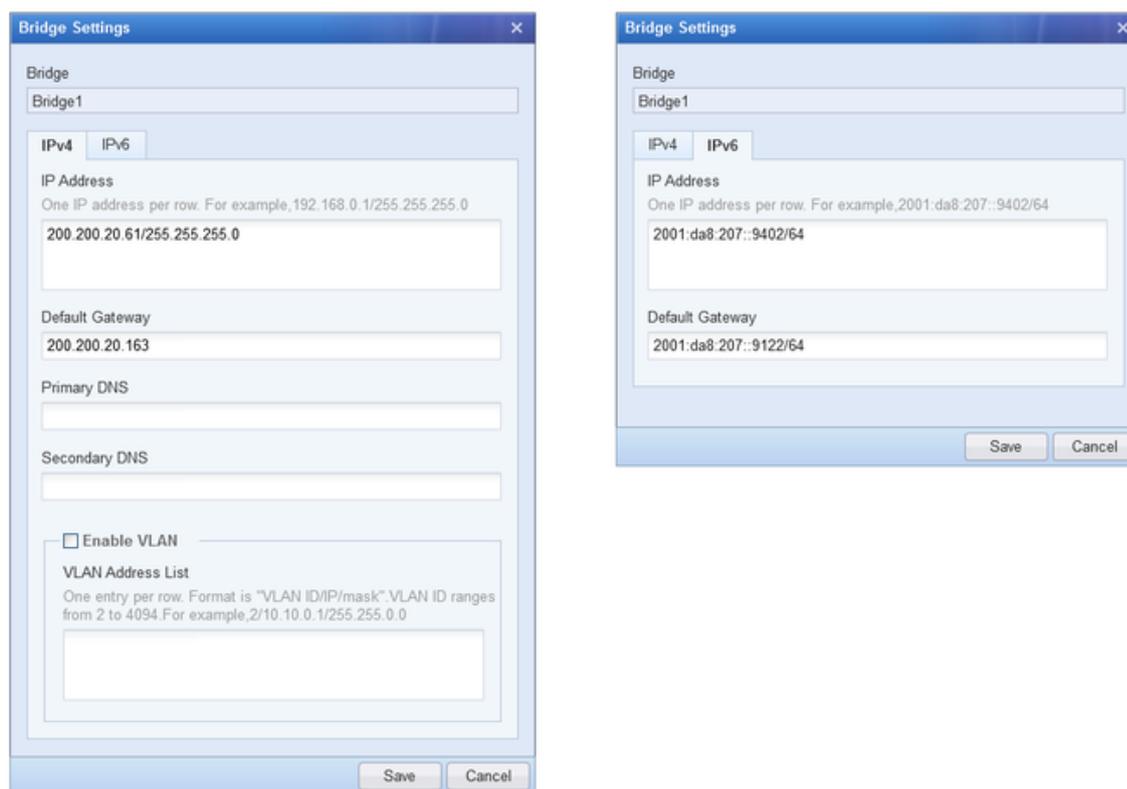
The fields displayed on the above page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 48 Interfaces (Multi-Bridge Mode)**

Field	Description
Bridge	Indicates the name of the bridge.
Flow Direction	Indicates the LAN interface and WAN interface of the bridge and the data forwarding direction.
IP Address	Indicates the IP address of the bridge and whether the VLAN is enabled.
Gateway/DNS Info	Indicates the default gateway and DNS address of the bridge.

To configure the information of a bridge, do as follows:

Step 1. Click the name of the bridge to open the [Bridge Settings] page, as shown below:



Step 2. Specify the following information.

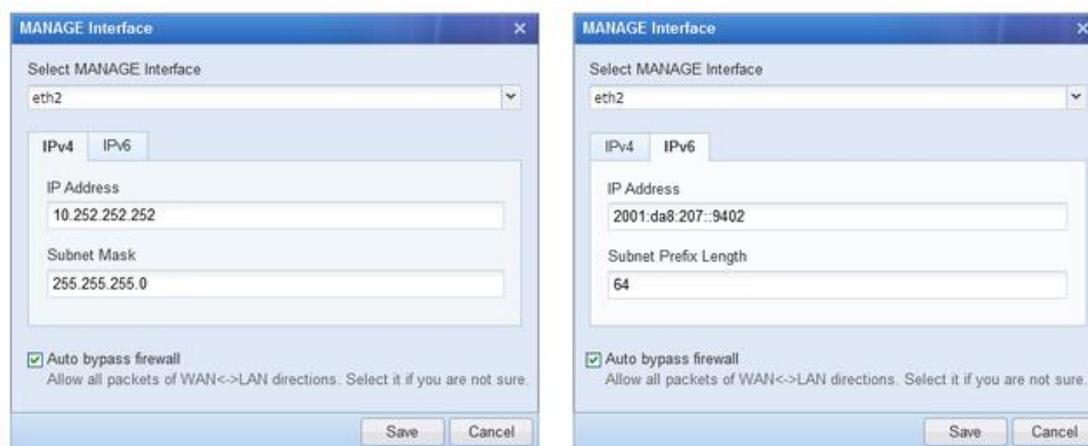
**Table 49 Bridge Settings (Multi-Bridge Mode)**

Field	Description
IP Address	Configure the IP address for the bridge.

VLAN	<p>Configure whether to enable VLAN. To enable it, check the option and then type the VLAN information in the format of "VLAN ID/IP/Mask" in the text box. Here, IP indicates the idle IP allocated for the VLAN.</p> <p>For example, suppose in the local area network there is a VLAN2 whose subnet is 10.10.0.0/255.255.0.0 and the IP address 10.10.0.1 is idle, type <b>2/10.10.0.1/255.255.0.0</b> in the text box. For other VLANs, type them in the same format, one entry per row. It can be used in the network environment compatible with VLAN (802.1Q).</p>
Default Gateway	Specify the default gateway for the bridge.
Primary DNS, Secondary DNS	Specify the DNS address for the bridge.

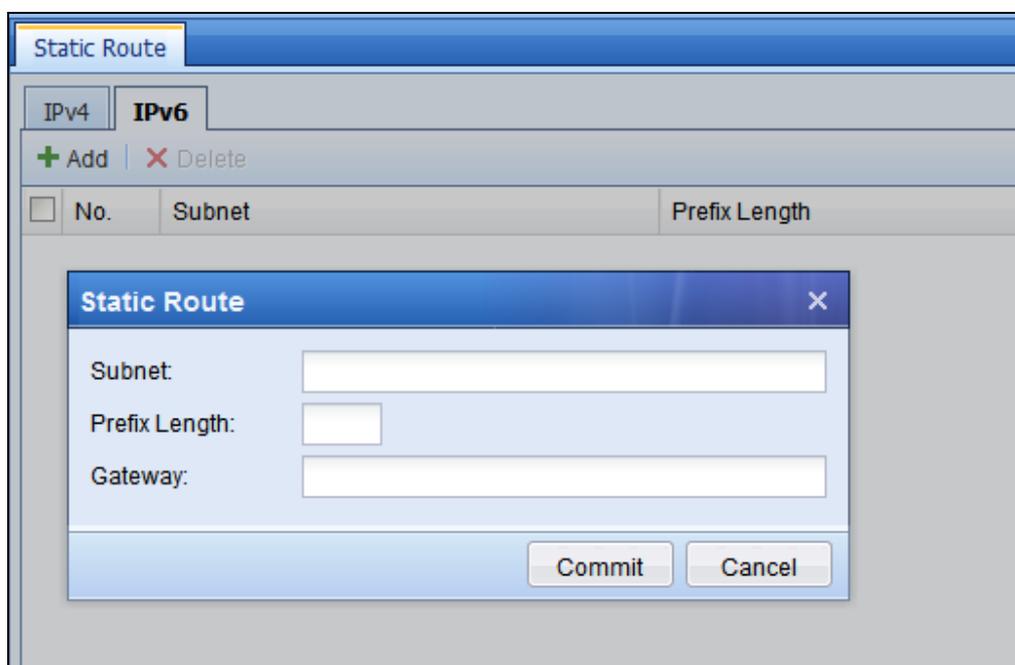
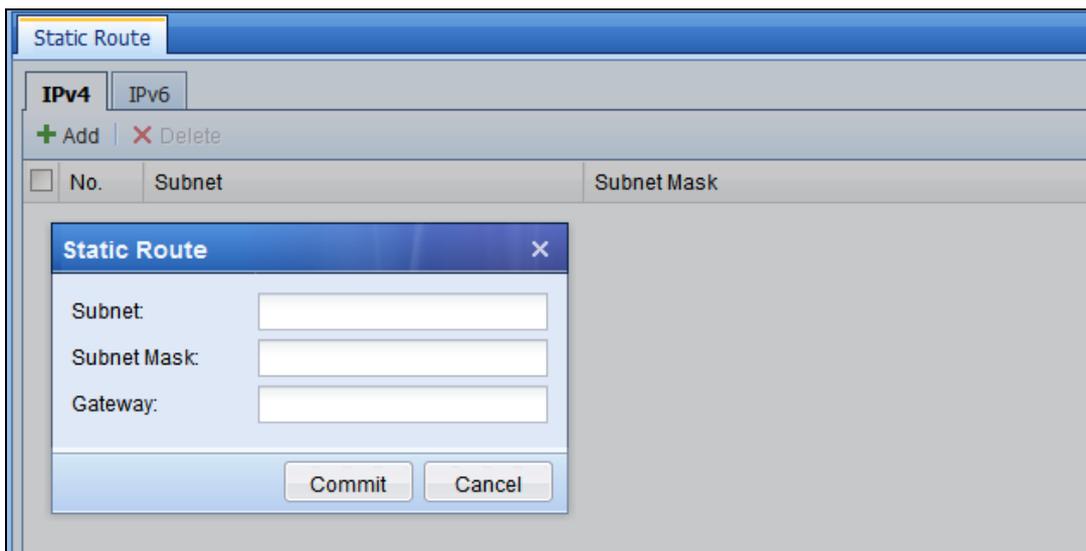
Step 3. Click <Commit> to save your settings.

In the Multi-Bridge mode, you can also customize the management interface. Click the [MANAGE Interface] link on the [Interfaces] page to open the [MANAGE Interface] page, and then select a physical interface as the management interface and set the IP address in both IPv4 and IPv6 environment, as shown below:



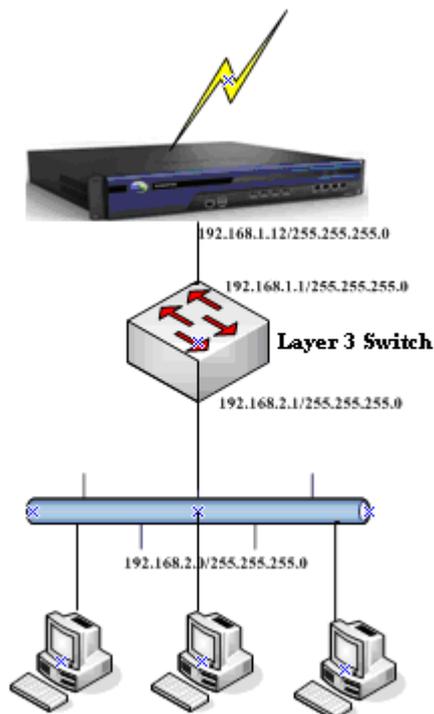
### 3.8.3 Static Route

When the IAM device requires communicating with IP addresses that fall within different subnets, you need to add static routes on the [Static Route] page. [Static Route] supports both IPv4 and IPv6 environment. Please refer to the figures below:



The following example illustrates when the static route will be needed.

**User Scenarios:** The IAM device is deployed in Route mode and acts as the gateway. The computers in the local area network are connected to the IAM device by way of a layer 3 switch. However, the LAN interface of the IAM device and the LAN computers are located on different network segments: LAN interface on 192.168.1.2/255.255.255.0 while computers on 192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0. The network topology is as shown in the following figure:



**Scenarios Analysis:** In the above network topology, when the computers access the Internet, the packets will go through the layer 3 switch and then be forwarded to the IAM device. However, when the IAM device return the requested data back to the LAN computers, as the LAN interface and LAN computers are located on different network segments, the IAM device has no idea where the data should be forwarded, resulting in the access failure. In this case, you need to add a static route to route the traffic to the layer 3 switch, which will then forward it to the LAN computers.

To ensure that the LAN computer can connect to the Internet successfully, click <Add> to open the following page and then set the static route, as shown below:

Static Route	
Subnet:	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.0"/>
Subnet Mask:	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
Gateway:	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/>
<input type="button" value="Commit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	



The IAM device does not support Dynamic Routing Protocol (DRP). If static route is needed, set it on the [Static Route] page.

### 3.8.4 Policy Route

The policy route is a policy-based routing function that will select the preset line for transmission according to the source/destination IP, source/destination port and protocol of the data, ensuring that different data goes through different lines. It is mainly used when the IAM device is deployed in Route mode and connected to multiple extranet lines (that is, multiple WAN interfaces are used).

No.	Description	Src IP	Dst IP	Pro...	Src Port	Dst Port	Line	Move	Sta...	Del...
1	SSL data goes	ALL	ALL	TCP	ALL	443-443	Line1	↑ ↓	✓	✗
2	China Telecorr	ALL	1.48.0.0-1.49.255...	ALL	-	-	Line1	↑ ↓	⊘	✗
3	China Unicom	ALL	1.24.0.0-1.31.255...	ALL	-	-	Line1	↑ ↓	⊘	✗
4	China Mobile (f	ALL	58.66.0.0-58.67.2...	ALL	-	-	Line1	↑ ↓	⊘	✗
5	China Edunet (	ALL	1.184.0.0-1.185.2...	ALL	-	-	Line1	↑ ↓	⊘	✗

The following two situations are typical cases in which route policy is needed and the subsequent sections will use two case studies to illustrate how to configure the policy route.

1. The IAM device is connected to multiple extranet lines. When LAN users access the online bank and online payment services that should be highly secured, the corresponding server will authenticate the source IP address. If the source IP address of a connection is changed, the corresponding service will be disconnected. Since the WAN Line Policy disallows users to select line for data transmission manually, it cannot ensure that some data are transferred through a same line. In this case, the policy route is needed to ensure that request data for some secure applications can be transferred through a specified line.

2. The IAM device is connected to multiple external lines, for example, one Telecom line and one Unicom line, and the requirement is that the access requests destined for Telecom server should be forwarded through line 1 and the requests for Unicom server through line 2. In this case, the policy route is needed to meet the requirement.

**Case Study 1:** Suppose the customer needs to access the online bank service (whose server IP address is 127.8.66.42) through HTTPS protocol. The online bank will authenticate the source IP address. If the source IP of the connection changes, the online bank service will be disconnected, resulting in access failure. To solve the problem, the customer requires that the requests destined for the online bank service go through line 1.

To meet the requirement, you need to add a policy route to specify that all the request data for the online bank go through line 1. Do as follows:

Step 1. Click <Add> to open the [Policy Route] page, as shown below:

Step 2. Specify the following information.

**Table 50 Policy Route Settings**

Field	Description
Enable Policy Route	Check the option to enable this policy route.
Description	Type descriptive information for this policy route.
Target Line	Select the extranet line to be used for transmission of the data that is applicable to this policy route. In this example, select <b>Line1</b> .
Dst IP	Specify the destination address of the data that is applicable to this policy route. In this example, type <b>127.8.66.42</b> , server address of the online bank.

Step 3. To set advanced parameters, click <Advanced> to open the [Policy Route Advanced Settings] page, as shown below:

### Policy Route Advanced Settings

**Src IP**

All

Single IP

IP Address:

IP Range

Start IP:

End IP:

Subnet

Subnet:

Subnet Mask:

**Protocol**

Protocol Type:  ▼

Protocol Number:

Src Port:  All

Specified port or port range ⓘ

Dst Port:  All

Specified port or port range ⓘ

Step 4. Specify the advanced information.

**Table 51 Policy Route Advanced Settings**

Field	Description
Src IP	<p>Specify the source IP of the data that is applicable to this policy route.</p> <p>You can enter a single IP, IP range or subnet.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to ensure that all LAN users can access the online bank service, check the [All] option, indicating no limit is set to the source IP.</p>
Protocol	<p>Specify the protocol of the data that is applicable to this policy route.</p> <p>You can enter protocol number or port number.</p> <p>In this example, as the requirement is to ensure smooth running of the online bank service through HTTPS, and HTTPS is corresponding to the TCP protocol and destination port 443, set the [Protocol Type] to <b>TCP</b> and [Dst Port] to <b>443</b>.</p>

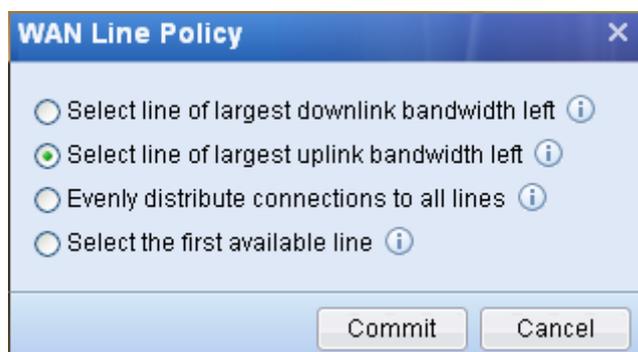
Step 5. Click <OK> and then <Commit> to save the policy route.

**Case Study 2:** Suppose the IAM device is connected to two external lines, one Telecom line (line 1) and one Unicom line (line 2). The requirement is that the access requests destined for Telecom server should be forwarded through line 1 and the requests for Unicom server through line 2.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. Configure [WAN Line Policy] to set that data will preferentially go through the first available line.

- a. Click the <WAN Line Policy> button at the upper right corner of the [Policy Route] page to open the following page:



- b. Check the [Select the first available line] option. In this example, you need first set that data preferentially go through a line and then set that specific data go through another line. The four option displayed on the [WAN Line Policy] page are respectively described in the following

table.

**Table 52 WAN Line Selection Policy**

Field	Description
Select line of largest downlink bandwidth left	The system automatically selects the line with the largest remaining downlink bandwidth, making full use of the bandwidth.
Select line of largest uplink bandwidth left	The system automatically selects the line with the largest remaining uplink bandwidth, making full use of the bandwidth.
Evenly distribute connections to all lines	The system evenly distributes all connections to the lines despite of the remaining bandwidth.
Select the first available line	The system selects the first available line. If the line is disconnected or unavailable, the system will switch the date to next available line. This option is preferable for the VPN deployment. The "first available line" generally refers to line 1.

Step 2. Configure [Policy Route] to specify the Unicom line (line 2) for transmission of the request data destined for the Unicom addresses.

- a. Click <Add> on the [Policy Route] page to open the following page:

**Policy Route**

Enable Policy Route

Description:  
China Unicom Address1

Target Line:  
Line 2

Dst IP:  
 All  
 Specified ⓘ  
 201.86.14.0/255.255.255.0

Advanced

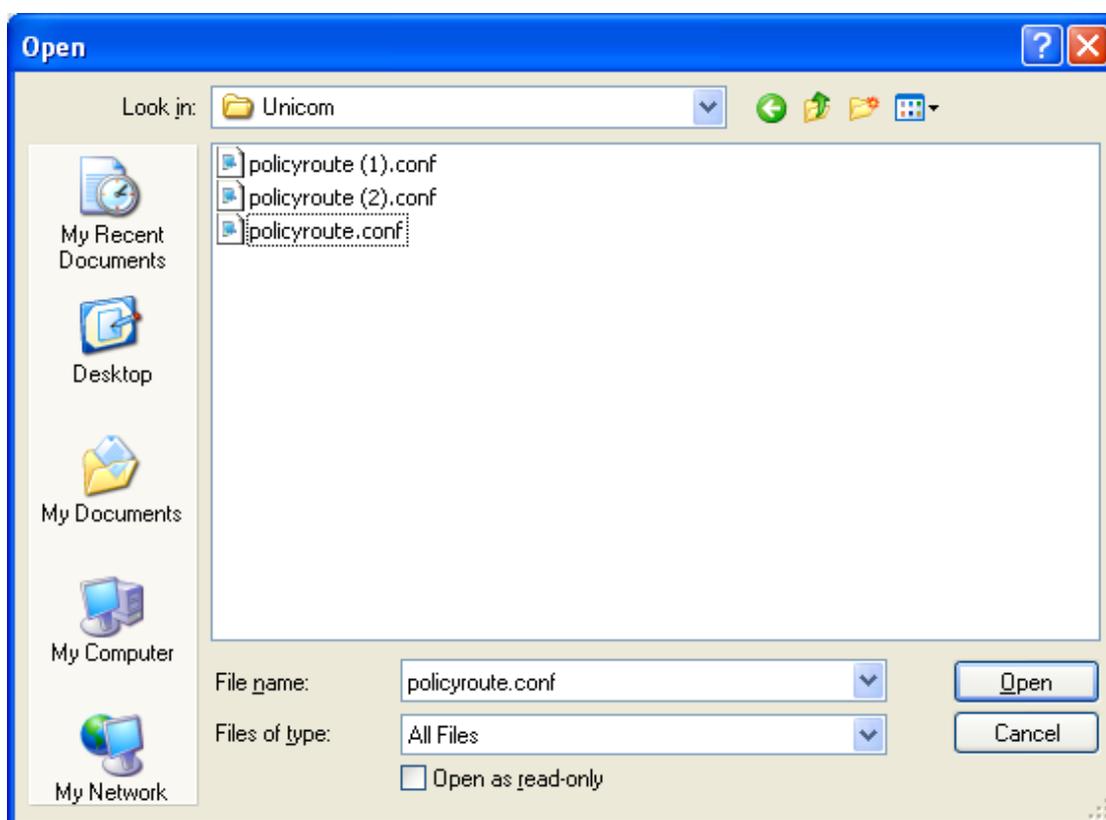
Commit Cancel

- b. Check the [Enable Policy Route], type the description and then set [Target Line] to **Line 2** and [Dst IP] to **201.86.14.0/255.255.255.0** (Unicom addresses).

Step 3. Click <Commit> to save the policy route.

Step 4. Repeat step 2 and step 3 to continue adding policy routes for other Unicom addresses so that all the request data destined for Unicom addresses will be forwarded through line 2.

Step 5. Or, you can import the policy route. To obtain policy route file of a specific ISP, please call 800 or obtain it from the technical forum of SANGFOR. To import the policy route file, click <Import> on the [Policy Route] page, select the policy route file that selects line 2 for Unicom address and click <Open> to import.



Step 6. Click <Commit> to save the policy route.

The defined policy routes can be exported. You can export the policy routes onto other devices that are of the same software version.

To export policy route, check the policy routes to be exported and click <Export> to export them.



1. If the specified target line is unavailable, the IAM device will automatically switch the data to next available line.

2. A maximum of 10,000 policy routes are supported.
3. The policy routes are matched from top to bottom. If the settings of two policy routes are in conflict, the corresponding data will be transferred according to the policy route that first matched.

## 3.8.5 High Availability

The [High Availability] page covers the [Multi-Node Sync] and [Active/Standby Failover] functions. Both functions ensure the stability of the network. The differences between them are:

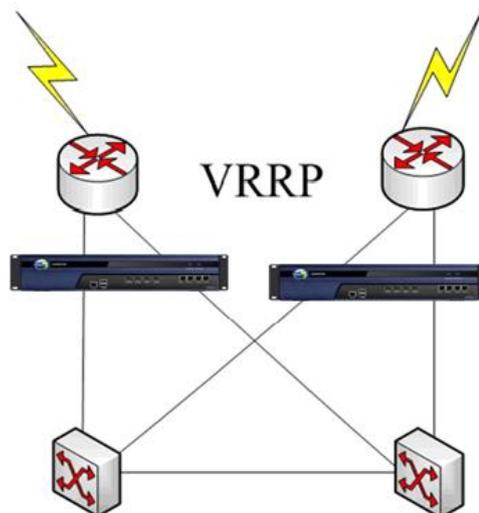
- ◆ [Multi-Node Sync] indicates multiple devices are working simultaneously, the online users can be synchronized among them, and after the switch, LAN users do not need to be re-authenticated.
- ◆ [Active/Standby Failover] indicates that two devices are each other's backup, the online users cannot be synchronized between them, and after the active/standby switch, LAN users need to be authenticated again. Whether to apply [Multi-Node Sync] or [Active/Standby Failover] depends on the actual network environment.

### 3.8.5.1 Multi-Node Sync

[Multi-Node Sync] indicates that multiple devices are interconnected through the communication port, through which the configurations and online users can be synchronized. In the multi-node environment, all the devices are working simultaneously, ensuring that the IAM device still works normally when it seamlessly switches to another line due to the failure of one line and ensuring that the configurations and online users of the devices are consistent.

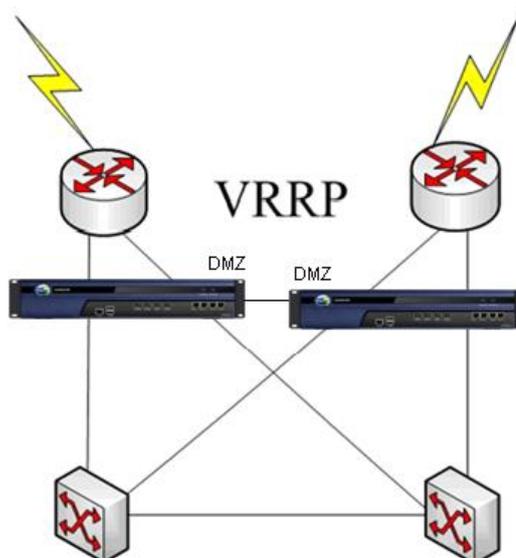
Generally, the multi-node synchronization function is applied to the VRRP environment, in which the devices work as backup as well as balance-loading devices. No changes will be made to the running and switching of the original network after the devices are deployed into the network.

The following figure shows the typical network environment, to which you can apply the multi-node synchronization function to ensure that the IAM device works normally when VRRP switches due to the failure of one link and ensure that the configurations and online users of two IAM devices are consistent.



To apply the multi-node synchronization function to the above topology, first you need to specify a communication interface for the communication between the two devices. For the communication interface, you can select an interface that is being used or an idle interface. If you select an interface being used, make sure the communication interfaces configured on both devices belong to the same broadcast domain, that is, the same layer 2 environment. If you select an idle interface, use cross-over cable to connect the two communication interfaces directly. However, the communication interface cannot be a dial-up interface or an interface that obtains IP using DHCP.

As the switches used in the above topology are layer 3 switches, select the idle interface DMZ as the communication interface and adopt the following wiring method:



To configure the multi-node synchronization function, do as follows:

Step 1. Configure one of the two IAM devices.

- a. Go to the [Multi-Node Sync] page, and check the [Enable Multi-Node Sync] option to enable the function.

- b. Specify the following information.

**Table 53 Multi-Node Sync Settings**

Field	Description
Communication Interface	Specify the interface to be used for synchronizing the configuration of the device.  In this example, select the idle interface DMZ interface.
Communication IP	Define an IP address for the communication interface. The IP addresses of the communication interfaces configured on both devices must be on the same network segment and cannot be on the network segment that the IP address of any existing interface locates.
Multicast IP	Configure the multicast IP address for synchronizing configuration between the two devices. You can specify any address as long as it is in the multicast address range. As the multi-node synchronization is realized through multicast, the communication interfaces configured on the devices must belong to the same broadcast domain and the multicast addresses configured on the devices must be the same.

---

Online Host List	Displays the IP addresses of the devices whose configurations are to be synchronized.
------------------	---

---

Step 2. Configure the other IAM device. Check the [Enable Multi-Node Sync] option and specify the information as follows:

Step 3. Click <Sync to Other Device> and the current device will send the synchronizing signal to synchronize the configuration and information of the device.

After the synchronization, you can click <View Sync Report> to view the synchronization information.



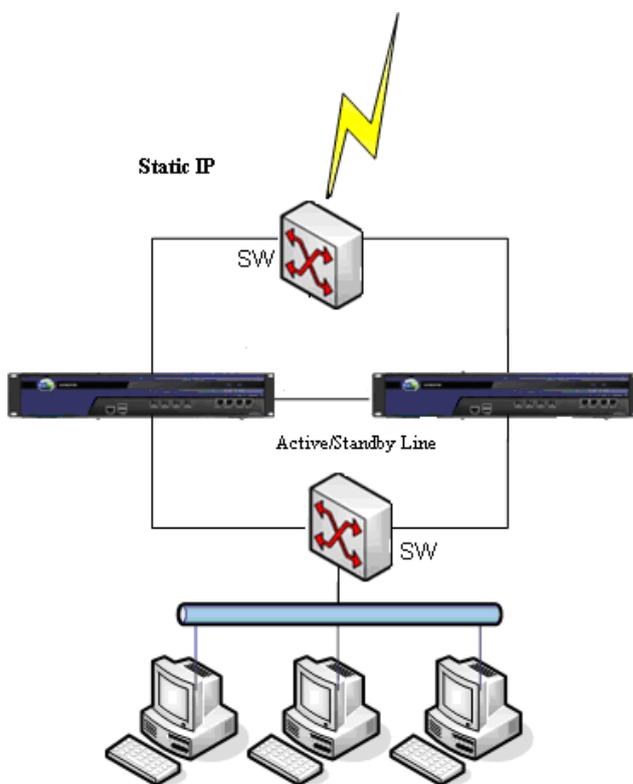
1. In the multi-node environment, when the configuration of one device is changed, the device will give a prompt and you can click <Sync to Other Device> to synchronize the configuration to other devices.
2. The online users are synchronized in real time, which means once a new user passes the authentication, it will be synchronized to other devices immediately. However, the users who need not be authenticated (only bound with IP\MAC) will not be synchronized.
3. In multi-node environment, the IP addresses of the communication interfaces configured on the devices cannot be the same (the configurations of the interfaces will not be synchronized). Besides, the devices in the multi-node environment must be of the same hardware model and software version; otherwise, error may occur.

### 3.8.5.2 Active/Standby Failover

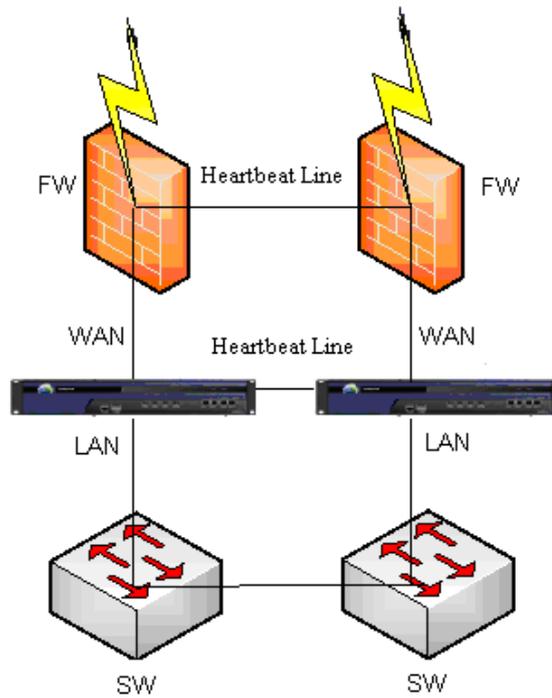
[Active/Standby Failover] indicates that two devices are interconnected into a two-node cluster, in which the devices are each other's backup. It is commonly used in the network in which there are two lines (primary line and secondary line) and the two devices are connected to the two lines respectively. When the primary line is cut off, the secondary line will take over and the standby device will become active (it keeps the same configuration as the active device).

The typical network topologies are as shown in the following:

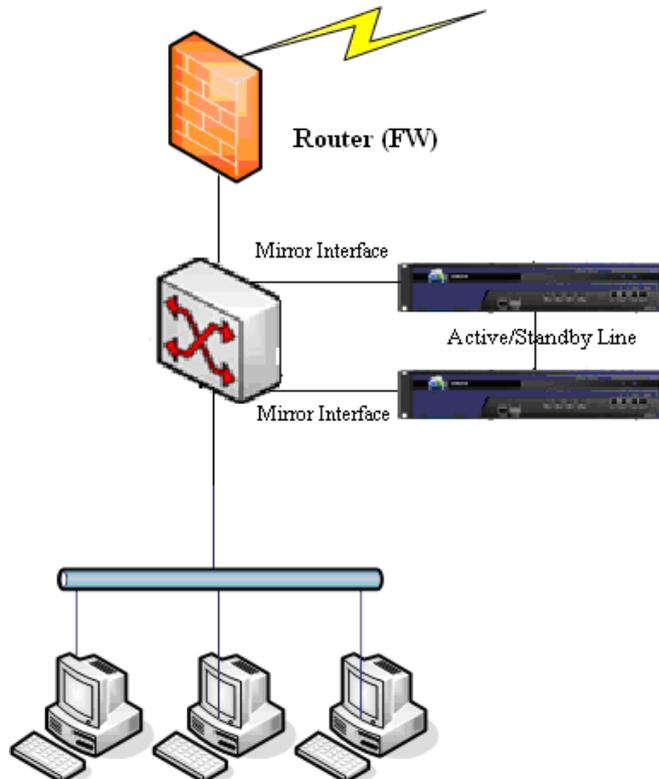
1. Active/Standby failover deployment in Route mode:



2. Active/Standby failover deployment in Bridge mode:



3. Active/Standby failover deployment in Bypass mode:



To configure the active/standby failover function, do as follows:

Step 1. Configure one of the two IAM devices.

- a. Go to the [Active/Standby Failover] page, and check the [Enable Active/Standby Failover] option to enable the function.

Active/Standby Failover

Enable Active/Standby Failover ⓘ

Current Status:

Device Name:  ⓘ

Timeout (s):  ⓘ

Interface Detection ⓘ

Select Interface:  eth0  eth1  eth2  eth3

Enable Serial Port Fault Detection ⓘ

Select Interface:  ▼

Update Mode (Closed)

Active/Standby Switch (Last Switch Time: )

Sync Configuration (Last Sync Time: )

- b. Specify the following information.

**Table 54 Active/Standby Failover Settings**

Field	Description
Current Status	Displays whether the active device and standby device communicate smoothly.
Device Name	Define the name of the current device. Type a name easy to identify whether it is active or standby.
Timeout	Specify the timeout for automatic switch between the active device and standby device. The default value is 10 seconds.
Interface Detection	Indicates the function that detects the connection status of the selected interface(s). Once any interface is disconnected, the active/standby switch will occur, ensuring smooth running of the network.
	 Do NOT select the interfaces that are not used by the device, because detecting the connection status of the unused interface may result in anomaly of the active/standby failover.

Enable Serial Port Fault Detection	Specify whether to enable serial port fault detection. When the serial port fails (for example, serial cable falls out), it probably causes that both devices become active simultaneously. To avoid the IP conflict, this function (if enabled) will detect the status of the peer device according to the network packets transferred through the selected interface and automatically switch a device to standby one and the other to active.  The interfaces selected on both devices should be connected to a same switch; otherwise, this function will not work.
Update Mode	Indicates the function that is used to update the devices. When the update mode is enabled, the active/standby switch function will be disabled to avoid the update failure that may be caused by the active/standby switch occurring during updating. Thus, it is recommended to enable the update mode only when you are to update and maintain the two devices. After updating is completed, please DO close the update mode.
Active/Standby Switch	Indicates switching between the active device and standby device manually. Click <Switch to Standby> to switch between the devices. The last switch time will be displayed.
Sync Configuration	Indicates synchronizing configuration manually. Click <Sync Now> to synchronize the configuration immediately. The last synchronization time will be displayed.

Step 2. Configure the other IAM device. Check the [Enable Active/Standby Failover] option and specify the information as follows:

Step 3. Deploy the two IAM devices into the network according to the physical topology and use the serial cable to connect the two devices.

Step 4. Select one of the two devices as the active one (the other as the standby one) and power it on. After the active device is started, power on the standby device. After the two devices work normally, the configuration of the active device will be synchronized to the standby one through the serial cable.



1. The active device and standby device must be of the same hardware model and software version.
2. The configurations of the two devices must be the same, except the license.
3. Before you perform the operations that may restart the device, such as switching deployment mode, restoring default configuration and modifying system time, please enable the Update Mode; otherwise, active/standby switch may occur when the device is restarting and therefore result in configuration synchronization failure.

## 3.8.6 DHCP

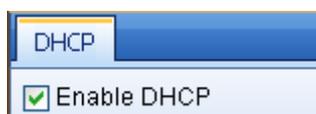
The DHCP service will automatically allocate IP address for LAN computers. It is available only when the IAM device is deployed in Route mode, in which the IAM device will automatically allocate IP addresses for the computers connected to LAN interface or DMZ interface of the device using DHCP. The DHCP service for LAN interface and DMZ interface are set separately.

**Case Study:** Suppose the IAM device is deployed in Route mode and acts as the gateway of the LAN computers which are connected to the LAN interface (IP address: 192.168.1.1) of the device. There are 100 computers in the local area network.

The requirement is that IP addresses should be automatically allocated from the IP pool 192.168.1.100-192.168.1.199 for the 100 computers, among which the computer of the manager should be allocated with the IP address 192.168.1.100.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [DHCP] page, check the [Enable DHCP] option to enable the DHCP service, as shown below:



- Step 2. Under [DHCP Service Interface] on the left, select the interface for which the DHCP is to be set. For this example, select **LAN1** to configure the DHCP service:

- Step 3. Specify the following information.

**Table 55 DHCP Settings**

Field	Description
Lease Term	Specify the lease term of the allocated IP address.
DHCP Parameters	Type the gateway, DNS and WINS addresses of the DHCP service.
DHCP IP Pool	Configure the IP addresses available for allocation.

- Step 4. Configure the reserved IP to allocate the IP address 192.168.1.100 for the computer of the manager.
- Click the <Reserved IP Settings> button, as shown below:

- On the displayed [Reserved IP Settings] page, click <Add> and type the name, IP address, MAC

address and host name, as shown below:

Name	IP Address	Bind MAC	Bind Hostn...	Del...
Manager	192.168.1.10	00-08-02-DE-4F-09	Jingli	

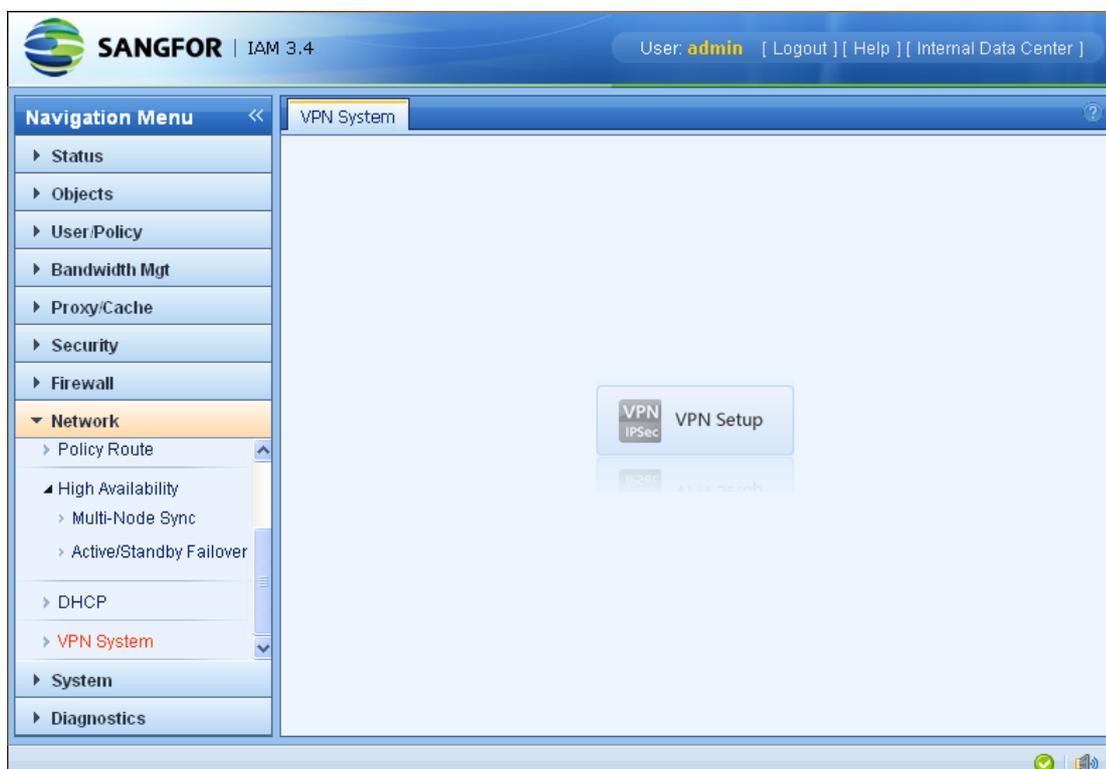
Step 5. Click <OK> and then <Commit> to save the DHCP settings.



To view the DHCP running status and the allocated IP addresses, go to [Status] > [DHCP Status] page.

### 3.8.7 VPN System

The [VPN System] page provides an entrance for you to enter the VPN system. You can click the <VPN Setup> button to view the VPN connection status and then configure the VPN system.

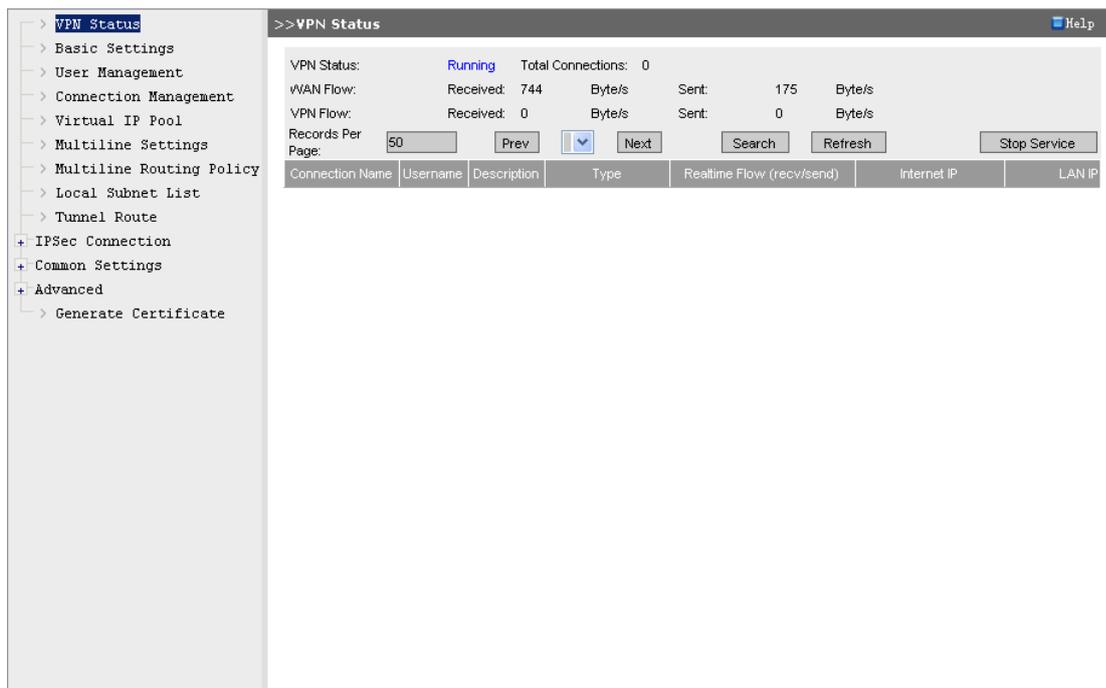


1. To enter the VPN system, you need to use the IE browser.

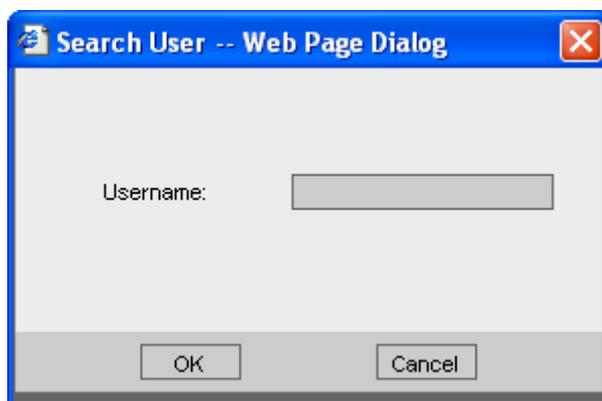
2. The VPN function is available only when the IAM device is deployed in Route mode and the VPN function is activated by the multi-function license (see section 3.9.1 "License").

### 3.8.7.1 VPN Status

The [VPN Status] page displays the current VPN connections and network flow information, as shown below:



To view the connection information of a specific user, click the <Search> button to open the [Search User] dialog, as shown below. Then enter the username and click <OK> to quickly search for the connection information of the user.



To stop the VPN service, click the <Stop Service> button.

### 3.8.7.2 Basic Settings

On the [Basic Settings] page, you can set the information required by VPN connection, such as WebAgent information, MTU value of VPN data, minimum compression value, VPN listening port, VPN connection mode, broadcast packet and performance settings, as shown below:

The fields on the [Basic Settings] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 56 Basic Settings**

Field	Description
Primary WebAgent, Secondary WebAgent	<p>WebAgent refers to the address on the Web server where the dynamic IP addressing file is located, including primary WebAgent and secondary WebAgent.</p> <p>When the HQ VPN uses dynamic IP (dynamic addressing), please enter a WebAgent website address (typically ending with .php). When the HQ VPN uses static IP, please enter the WebAgent address in the format of <b>IP:Port</b>. For example, 202.96.134.133:4009.</p> <p>After setting the WebAgent address, you can click &lt;Change PWD&gt; to set the WebAgent password so as to prevent unauthorized user from using the WebAgent to update masqueraded IP address. By clicking &lt;Shared Key&gt;, you can set a shared key to prevent the access by illegal device.</p> <p> If the IAM device adopts multiple lines whose IP addresses are static, you can enter the WebAgent address in the format of <b>IP1#IP2:Port</b>.</p>

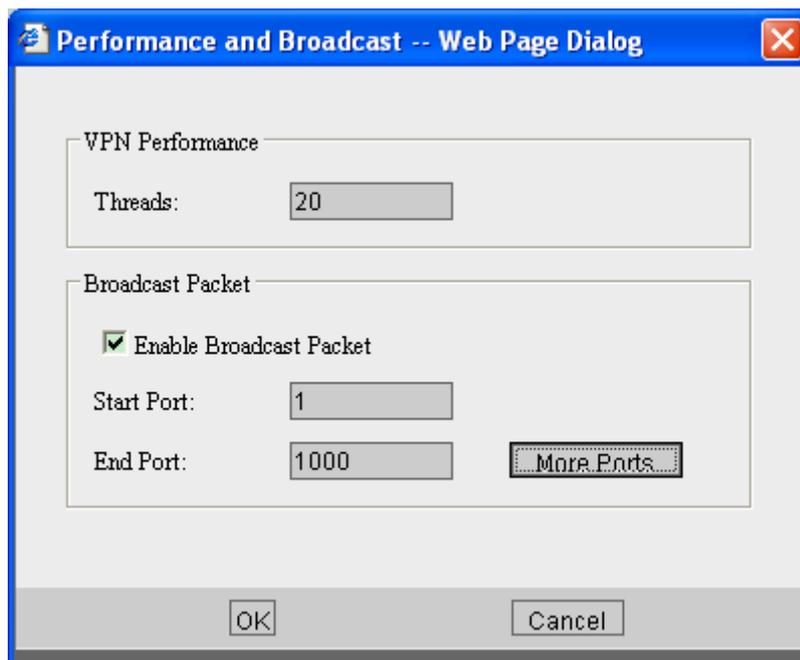
MTU Value	Indicates the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) of VPN data. It is 1500 by default.
Min Compression Value	Indicates the minimum size of the VPN data packet that is to be compressed. It is 100 by default.
VPN Listing Port	Indicates the listening port of VPN service. It is 4009 by default. You can change it according to your needs.
Change MSS	Indicates the Maximum Segment Size (MSS) of VPN data under UDP transfer mode.
Directly connect, Indirectly connect	Refers to the connection mode between the gateway device and Internet. If the Internet IP can be obtained directly or the Internet user can access the VPN port of the gateway device by DNAT (destination translation) function, select the [Directly connect] option; otherwise, select the [Indirectly connect] option.



1. After the WebAgent password is set, please keep it carefully, for once it is lost, there is no way to get it back. The only solution is to contact the Customer Service of SANGFOR to generate a file that does not contain the WebAgent password and then use this file to replace the original one.
2. If the shared key is configured, all the VPN nodes must set the same shared key to interconnect and communicate with one another.
3. The [MTU Value], [Min Compression Value] and [Change MSS] options are already configured with default values. Typically, it is recommended to keep the default settings. If you need to change them, please DO follow the instructions given by SANGFOR technical engineer.

After finishing the above settings, you can click <Test> to test whether the primary WebAgent and Secondary WebAgent can be connected.

The <Performance and Broadcast> button enables you to set the maximum number of VPN connections and set whether to transmit broadcast packets in VPN tunnel. Click the <Performance and Broadcast> button to open the [Performance and Broadcast] page, as shown below:



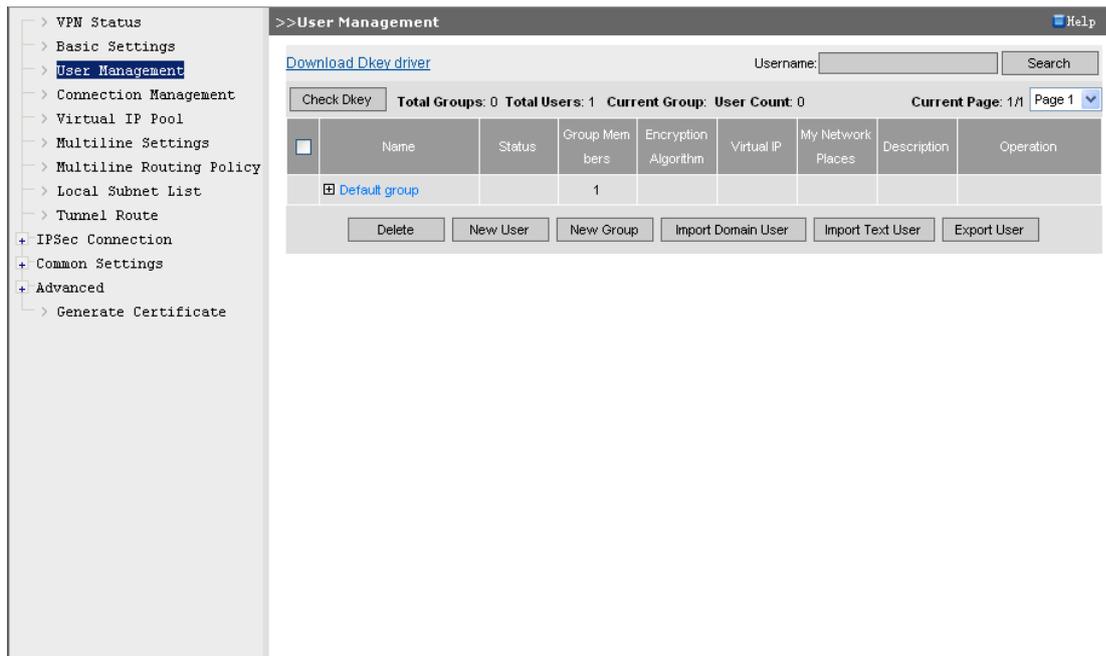
The fields on the [Performance and Broadcast] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 57 Performance and Broadcast Settings**

Field	Description
Threads	<p>Limit the number of VPN connections with the current device. It supports up to 1280 VPN connections and it is 20 by default.</p> <p>To modify this field, please DO follow the instructions given by SANGFOR technical engineer.</p>
Enable Broadcast Packet	<p>Specify whether to transmit the broadcast packets in VPN tunnel. If this option is enabled, specify the port range of the broadcast packet so as to avoid broadcast storm at both ends of VPN.</p>

### 3.8.7.3 User Management

The [User Management] page enables you to manage the VPN accounts used to connect into the current device. You can set the account information, including username, password, encryption algorithm to be adopted by the account, whether to enable hardware authentication or DKey authentication, whether to enable virtual IP, account expiry time, and LAN privileges of the account. You can also add the user to a user group and set whether to use the public attributes of the user group.



On the [User Management] page, you can click <Check DKey> to check if the DKey is inserted into the computer that logs into the IAM device. If the DKey driver is not installed, the system will prompt you to download it. You can then click the [Download DKey Driver] link to download and install the DKey driver manually.



Before you generate the DKey, you need to install the DKey driver; otherwise, the computer cannot identify the DKey hardware. To avoid the program conflict that may cause installation failure of the DKey driver, please close the third-party antivirus software and firewalls when installing the DKey driver.

To delete a user, check a user and click <Delete>.

To import user information, click <Import Text User> to import user information from .txt file or .csv file.

To export users, click <Export User> and then select the type of user passwords (plaintext or ciphertext) to export the users on the device to the local computer.

To add a user group, click <Add Group> to open the [Add Group] page and then set the following information: user group name, description and public attributes of its members (including encryption algorithm, whether to enable My Network Places and LAN privileges), as shown below:

To add a user, click <Add User> to open the [Add User] page and then set the user information, as shown below:

The fields on [Add User] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 58 User Settings**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Username	Specify the name for the user.
Password, Confirm PWD	Set a password for the user and then enter it again.
Description	Enter descriptive information for the user.
Algorithm	Select an algorithm to be adopted by the user.
Authentication Method	Select an authentication type for the user. It has three options: [Local] (hardware device authentication), [LDAP] and [RADIUS].
User Group, Use Group Attribute	<p>The [Use Group Attribute] field is used to classify the user into a certain group and have the user adopt the public attributes of the group. You need to first check the [Use Group Attribute] option to activate the [User Group] field and then select a group from the drop-down list.</p> <p>The [Use Group Attribute] option is available only when there is a user group existing; otherwise, you need first create a user group to activate this option. After the user is classified into a group, it will adopt the public attributes of the group, and the [Algorithm], [Enable "My Network Places"] and [LAN Privilege] attributes of its own will be unavailable.</p>
Enable Hardware Auth	Set whether to enable the certification authentication based on hardware ID. After enabling it, please click <Browse> to select the certificate file (*.id) corresponding to this user.
Enable DKey	Set whether to enable the DKey authentication for the mobile VPN user. After enabling it, please insert the DKey into USB interface of the computer and then click <Generate DKey> to generate the DKey.
Enable Virtual IP	This option is mainly used for the access from mobile VPN. For mobile VPN users, this option must be checked. After enabling it, specify a virtual IP address (which must be included in the virtual IP pool) for this user. When the user connects in, it will use this IP as a virtual LAN IP address. If you set the virtual IP to <b>0.0.0.0</b> , the system will automatically allocate a LAN IP address from the virtual IP pool to the user when it connects in.
Schedule, Enable Expiry Date	Respectively set the valid period and expiry time of this user account.
Enable "My Network Places"	Check this option if the VPN user needs to use the "My Network Places" service after it connects it.

---

Enable compression	Set whether to use algorithm to compress the data transferred between the gateway device and the user.
--------------------	--



This option is an exclusive technology of SANGFOR VPN, which will efficiently utilize the bandwidth in low-bandwidth environment to speed up data transmission. However, this option may not be applicable to all network environments. Please check it according to the actual situation.

---

Deny Internet access after user connects to VPN	Set whether to block mobile VPN users from accessing the Internet after it connects into the VPN. This option is only applicable to mobile VPN users.
---	---

---

Allow multi-user login	Set whether to allow multiple users to log into the VPN using this account simultaneously.
------------------------	--

---

Deny PWD change online	Set whether to allow mobile VPN user to change its login password after it connects to the VPN. If it is unchecked, it means the user cannot change its login password.
------------------------	---

---

LAN Privilege	Set the access privileges of the user after it connects to the VPN, that is, limit the access privileges of the user to certain services. By default, there is not limit.
---------------	---



Before you set [LAN Privilege], please go to [Advanced] > [LAN Service] page to add your desired services.

---

### 3.8.7.4 Connection Management

To achieve interconnecting among multiple network nodes, the IAM device provides the [Connection Management] page for you to manage and configure the interconnecting of network nodes.



The [Connection Management] need be configured only when the current IAM device connects to other VPN device (HQ VPN) as a branch VPN. If it works as the HQ VPN, ignore the [Connection Management] page.



To add a connection destined for HQ VPN (Headquarters VPN), do as follows:

- Step 1. On the [Connection Management] page, click <New> to open the [Edit Connection] page, as shown below:

The 'Edit Connection -- Web Page Dialog' window contains the following fields and controls:

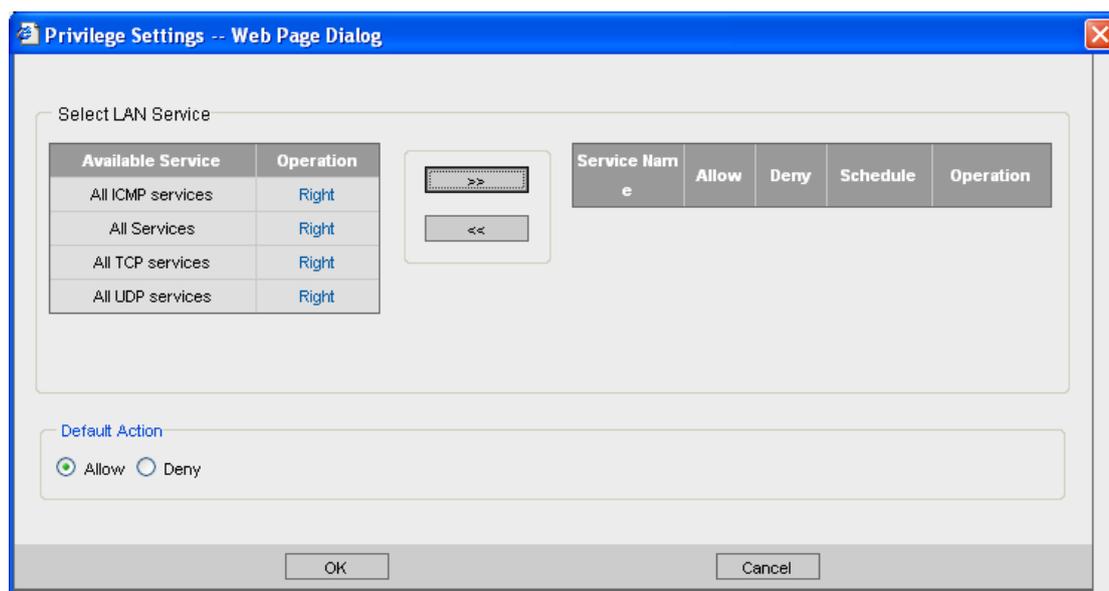
- Connection Name: [Text Input]
- Description: [Text Input]
- Primary Webagent: [Text Input]
- Secondary Webagent: [Text Input] [Test Button]
- Data Encryption Key: [Text Input]
- Confirm Key: [Text Input]
- Transfer Type: [UDP] [Dropdown Arrow]
- Username: [Guest] [Text Input]
- Password: [Masked] [Text Input]
- Confirm Password: [Masked] [Text Input]
- Cross-ISP
- Low packet loss [Dropdown Arrow]
- Packet Loss Rate(%): [10] [Text Input] %
- Enable
- [LAN Privilege] [OK] [Cancel] [Buttons]

Step 2. Set the following information.

**Table 59 Connection Management Settings**

Field	Description
Connection Name, Description	Enter a name and corresponding description to identify the connection.
Primary Webagent, Secondary Webagent	Enter the Webagent corresponding to the HQ VPN to be connected. After entering it, click <Test> to test if the WebAgent is available. If yes, the testing result is as follows: <div> </div>
Transfer Type	Select the transfer type of VPN data. Options are: [TCP] and [UDP]. It is UDP by default.
Data Encryption Key, Username, Password	Set the three fields according to the information of the access account provided by HQ VPN.
Cross-ISP	This function is applicable to the situation where the HQ VPN device and branch VPN devices are interconnected using lines of different Internet service providers (ISPs) and packet loss occurs frequently. Options are [Low packet loss], [High packet loss] and [Set manually]. <div> </div> <p>You need to apply for the license to activate the Cross-ISP function. Once activated on HQ VPN device, this function is available on all the branch VPN devices and mobile VPN devices that are connected to this HQ VPN device.</p>

Step 3. Click <LAN Privilege> to set the access privilege of the peer VPN device, that is, limit the access by peer VPN device to certain services provided by the local VPN device.



Step 4. After setting the above information, check the [Enable] option to activate the current connection and then click <OK> to save your settings.

### 3.8.7.5 Virtual IP Pool

The IP addresses included in the virtual IP pool are the idle IP addresses or IP ranges allocated by the SANGFOR IAM device from the local area network (LAN). They will be used as virtual IP addresses by mobile VPN users to connect to the IAM device. When a mobile VPN user connects in, the IAM device will allocate a virtual IP to the user. All the operations performed by the user on the IAM device are based on this virtual IP, just as if the operations are performed in the LAN where the IAM device locates. After the user connects in, it can access any computer in the LAN, even if the computer does not direct its gateway to the IAM device. You can specify the network attributes such as DNS for the connected mobile VPN user.

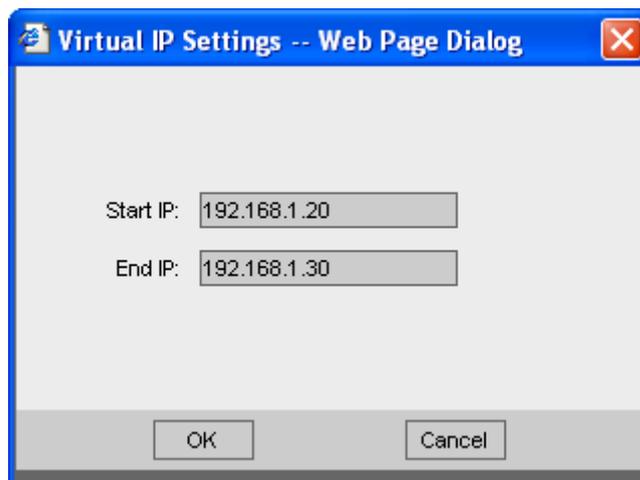
Procedures for configuring the virtual IP pool are as follows:

1. Create virtual IP pool. The IP addresses in the pool are the idle IP addresses in the local area network that the IAM device locates.
2. Specify a virtual IP for the mobile VPN user. If the virtual IP of a mobile VPN user is set to **0.0.0.0**, it means the IAM device will automatically allocate a virtual IP from the virtual IP pool to the user when it is connecting it.

To create a virtual IP pool, do as follows:



Step 1. Click <New> on the [Virtual IP Pool] page to open the [Virtual IP Settings] page, and then type the start IP and end IP, as shown below:



Step 2. Click <OK> and the range of IP addresses are added into the pool.

Step 3. Click <Advanced> to configure the information that will be allocated to the virtual network adapter of the mobile VPN user, including mask of the virtual IP, DNS and WINS server, as shown below:

Step 4. Click <OK> to save your settings.



After the information on the above [Advanced Settings] page is configured, the virtual network adapter "Sinfor VPN virtual network adapter" on the mobile VPN user's computer must be set to [Obtain an IP address automatically] and [Obtain DNS server address automatically]; otherwise, the information configured on [Advanced Settings] page will not be allocated to the virtual network adapter of the mobile VPN user.

### 3.8.7.6 Multiline Settings

If the IAM device has multiple WAN interfaces and is connected to multiple extranet lines, you have to set [Multiline Settings]. You can add, delete or modify the lines on [Multiline Settings] page, as shown below:

Line Status	Line Name	Line Alias	Connection Mode	Uplink Bandwidth(kbit/s)	Downlink Bandwidth(kbit/s)	Action	Operation
Disabled	Line 1		Directly connect to Internet	56	56	Move Up Move Down	Edit Delete

To add a line, do as follows:

Step 1. Check the [Enable Multiline] option on the [Multiline Settings] page.

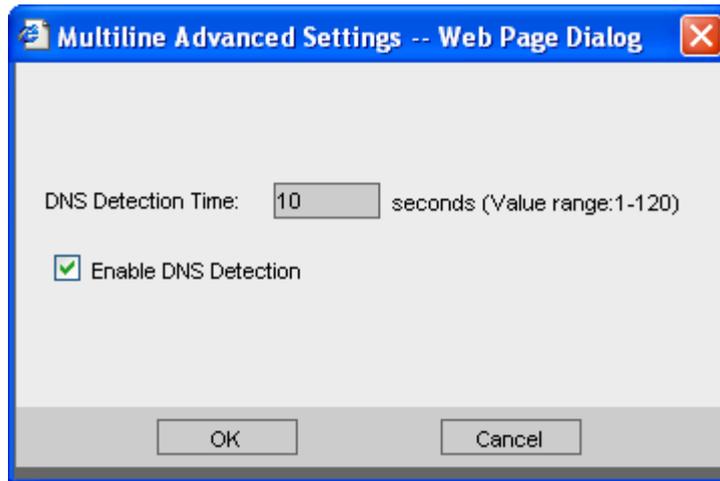
Step 2. Click <New> to open the [Edit Multiline] page, as shown below:

Step 3. Select the line, set the [Preset Bandwidth] and [Connection Mode] according to the line status, and then click <OK> to save your settings.



1. The uplink bandwidth and downlink bandwidth under [Preset Bandwidth] should be set according to the actual status of the line.
2. If it is an Ethernet line, please specify a DNS address in [Testing DNS], which must be a public DNS address and work well. If it is an ADSL or dial-up line, ignore the [Testing DNS1] and [Testing DNS2] fields.
3. If the line uses a static IP, check the [Use static Internet IP] option and type the static IP address in the [Static IP] text box; if it uses a dynamic IP, ignore the field.

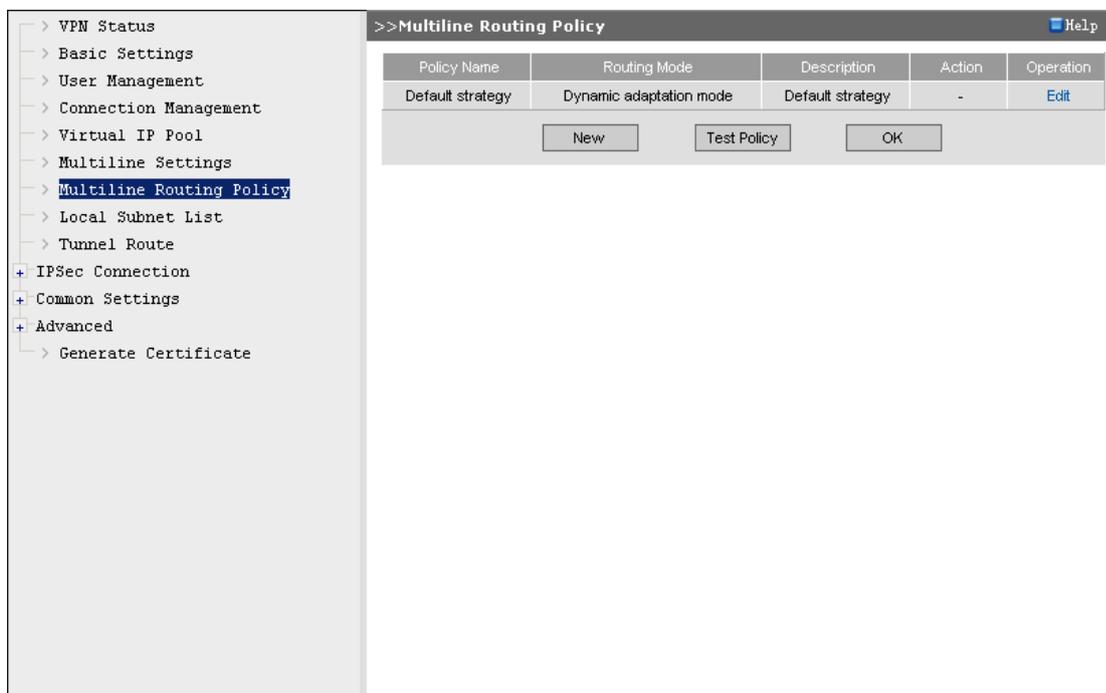
Step 4. To configure DNS detection, click <Advanced> on the [Multiline Settings] to open the [Multiline Advanced Settings] page, as shown below:



Step 5. Check the [Enable DNS Detection] option to enable the DNS detection function to detect the status of multiple lines, and then type the detection interval in the [DNS Detection Time] text box.

### 3.8.7.7 Multiline Routing Policy

The SANGFOR IAM device provides the powerful routing policy among multiple VPN lines. You can set the multiline routing policy according to the protocol type, source IP, destination IP, source port and destination port of the data transferred in VPN tunnel.



**Case Study:** Suppose the branch VPN (172.16.1.0/24) has established the connection with the HQ VPN and can access the FTP server (IP: 192.168.1.20) that locates in the local area network of the HQ VPN. The

requirement is that when the branch VPN accesses the FTP server, the Line1 of the HQ VPN should be used to transfer the data packets.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [Multiline Routing Policy] page, click <New> to open the [Edit Multiline Routing Policy] page and then type the policy name, as shown below:

Policy Name: tcp

Description:

Conditions

Source IP Range	Source Port Range	Destination IP Range	Destination Port Range	Protocol	Operation
-----------------	-------------------	----------------------	------------------------	----------	-----------

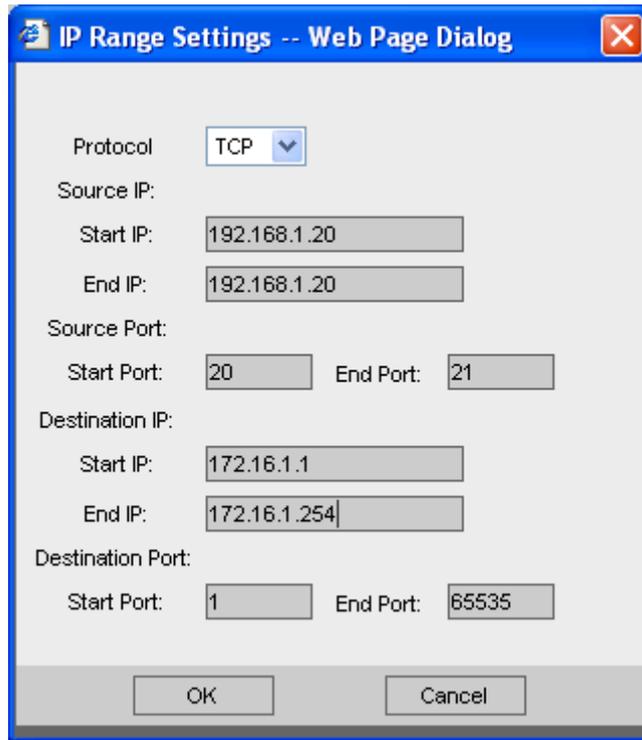
Add

When the above conditions are satisfied, the following routing policy will be adopted:

Bandwidth stacking  Active/standby  Dynamic detection  Average distribution

OK Cancel

Step 2. Click <Add> to open the [IP Range Settings] page, as shown below:

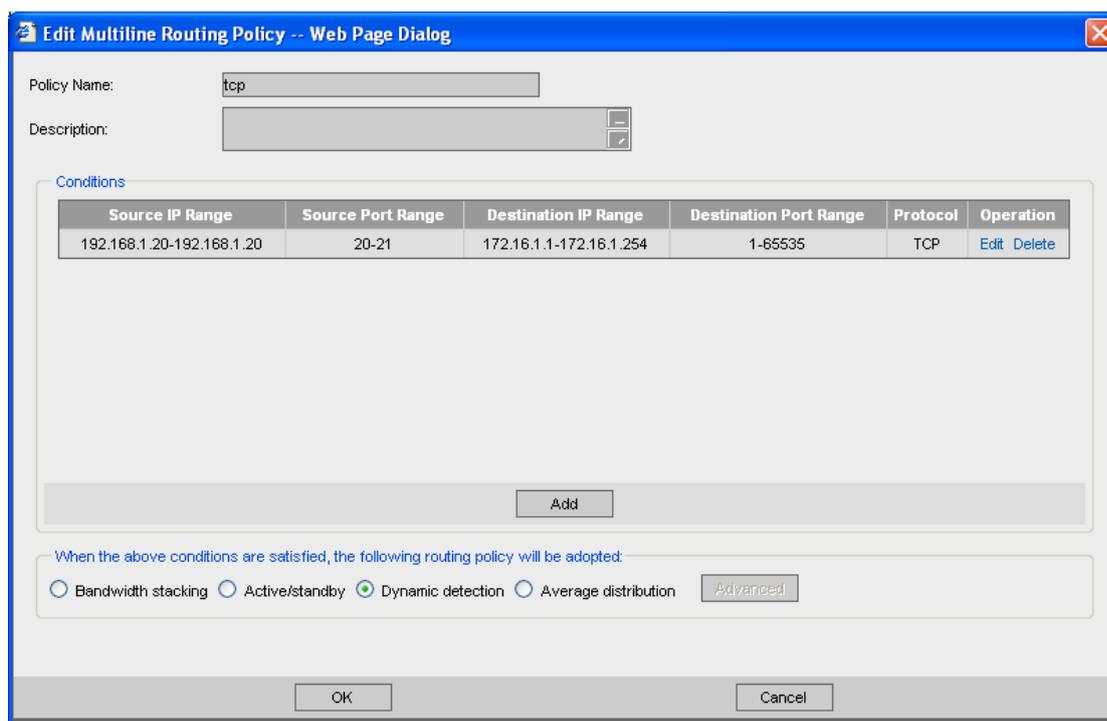


Step 3. Specify the following information.

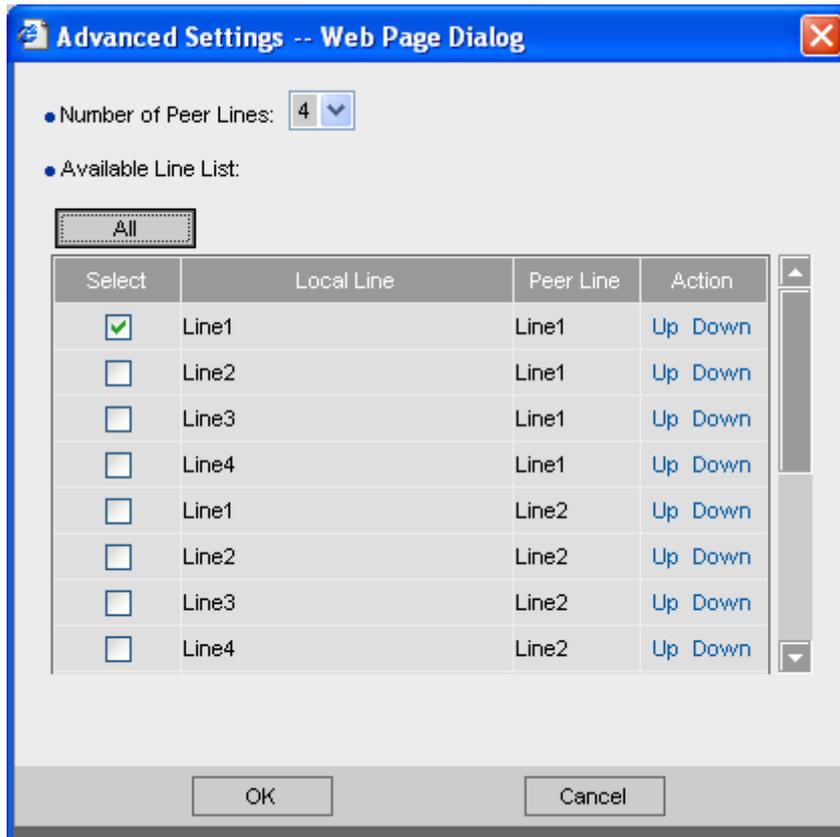
**Table 60 Multiline Routing Policy Settings**

Field	Description
Protocol	Indicates the protocol type of the data. In this example, set it to <b>TCP</b> .
Source IP	Indicates the LAN IP address in the local end. In this example, it is <b>192.168.1.20</b> .
Source Port	Indicates the service port of the local end. In this example, it is <b>20-21</b> .
Destination IP	Indicates the IP address of the peer VPN. In this example, it is the LAN subnet of branch VPN: <b>172.16.1.1-172.16.1.254</b> .
Destination Port	Indicates the port used by the peer VPN to access the service at local end. In this example, it is <b>1-65535</b> .

Step 4. After setting the above fields, click <OK> to save your settings. Then check the [Bandwidth stacking] option and the [Advanced] button behind it is available.



Step 5. Click <Advanced> to open the [Advanced Settings] page and then select the line to be used for transferring the data sent from branch VPN to FTP server. In this example, check the entry [Line1 (Local)----Line1 (Peer)] and then click <OK> to finish setting.



1. In the above Case Study, we assumed that the branch VPN (peer VPN) only has one line. If it has multiple lines, you can select the corresponding line number (from the drop-down list of [Number of Peer Lines]) and check the corresponding options (under the [Available Line List]) on the [Advanced Settings] page.

2. The <Advanced> button is available only for the [Bandwidth stacking], [Active/Standby] and [Average distribution] routing policy modes, and you can then click it to specify the line for data transmission. If the line specified in the multiline routing policy fails, the system will automatically switch the connection to next available line, ensuring smooth transmission of the data. If you select the [Dynamic detection] mode, the system will automatically select the optimal line for the fastest connection.

### 3.8.7.8 Local Subnet List

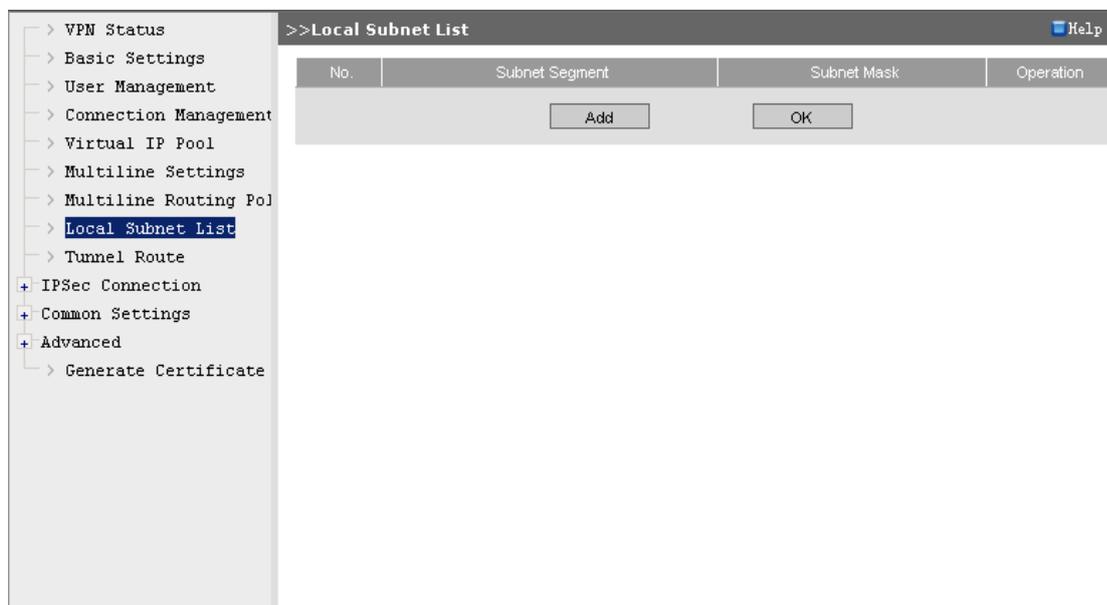
The [Local Subnet List] is used when there are multiple subnets in the local area network (LAN) where the HQ VPN device locates, and mobile or branch VPN users need to access all the subnets after connecting into the HQ VPN.

**Case Study:** Suppose there are two subnets (192.200.100.x, 192.200.200.x) in the LAN where the HQ

VPN device locates. The requirement is that after the mobile or branch VPN users connect into the HQ VPN, they can access both subnets.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [Local Subnet List] page, click <Add> to add the two subnets respectively.



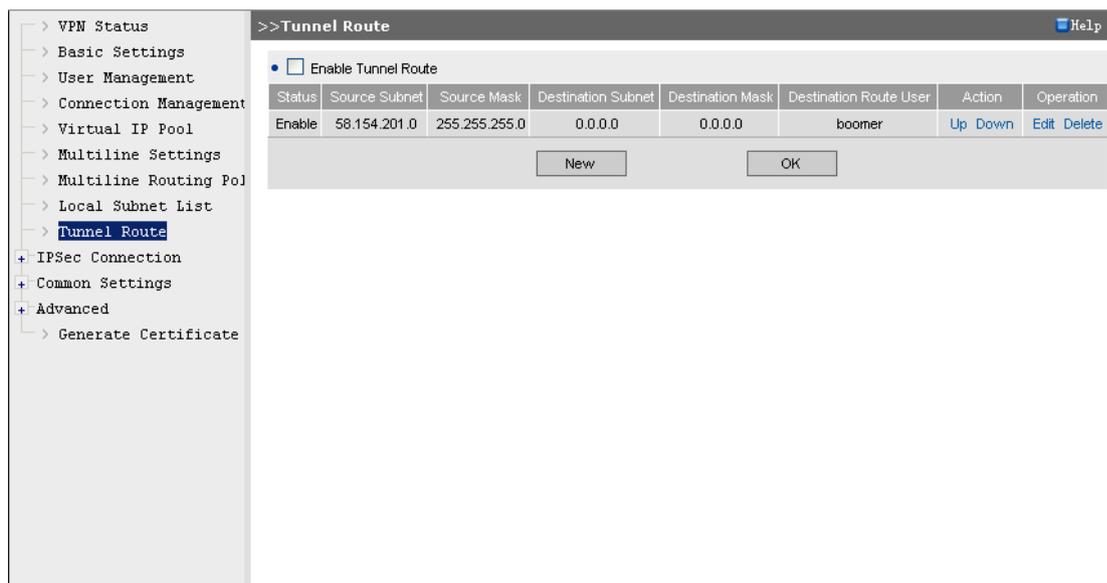
Step 2. Go to [System] > [Static] page and add two static routes for the two subnets (for detailed settings, see section 3.8.3 "Static Route").



The subnets defined on [Local Subnet List] function as a "Declaration". They will be taken as VPN network segments by the VPN device and client-end software and all the packets destined for these subnets will be encapsulated into the VPN tunnel and then transmitted after going through the VPN device or client-end software. Therefore, to achieve the access to the subnets configured on the [Local Subnet List] page, you need to configure static routes for these subnets.

### 3.8.7.9 Tunnel Route

The SANGFOR IAM device provides the powerful routing function in VPN tunnel, by which, you can easily achieve interconnection among multiple VPNs (software/hardware), forming a "web-like" VPN network.



**Case Study:** Suppose the branch offices Shanghai (172.16.1.x/24) and Guangzhou (10.1.1.x/24) have established VPN connections with the Headquarters Shenzhen (192.168.1.x/24) respectively (Shanghai and Guangzhou have configured [Connection Management] and used the user accounts **Guest** and **Test** respectively to establish the VPN connections with the Headquarters Shenzhen). However, there is no VPN connection established between Shanghai and Guangzhou. The requirement is that the branch offices Shanghai and Guangzhou can access each other.

To meet the requirements, do as follow:

Step 1. Configure the IAM device located in the Shanghai branch.

- a. Go to the [Tunnel Route] page, check the [Enable Tunnel Route] option and then click <Add> to open the [Edit Tunnel Route] page, as shown below:

**Edit Tunnel Route -- Web Page Dialog**

Source Subnet:

Source Mask:

Destination Subnet:

Destination Mask:

Destination Route User:

Enable  Access Internet via destination route user

OK Cancel

b. Specify the information as follows:

**Edit Tunnel Route -- Web Page Dialog**

Source Subnet:

Source Mask:

Destination Subnet:

Destination Mask:

Destination Route User:

Enable  Access Internet via destination route user

OK Cancel

**Table 61 Tunnel Route Settings**

Field	Description
Source Subnet	Indicates the source subnet of the tunnel route.
Source Mask	Indicates the mask of the source subnet.
Destination Subnet	Indicates the destination subnet of the tunnel route.
Destination Mask	Indicates the mask of the destination subnet.

Destination Route User	This field determines to which VPN device the packets applicable to this tunnel route will be forwarded, that is, the next hop of this tunnel route.  In this example, as the packets are to be first forwarded to the Headquarters Shenzhen and then to the destination Guangzhou, select the username <b>Guest</b> , which has been used by Shanghai branch to establish VPN connection with the HQ Shenzhen.
Enable	Check this option to enable this tunnel route.
Access Internet via destination route user	Indicates whether to access the Internet via the destination route user.



[Source Subnet] and [Destination Subnet] defines the source IP address and destination IP address of the data packets that are applicable to this tunnel route. When the packets transmitted in the VPN tunnel match the two conditions, they will be forwarded to the corresponding VPN device.

- c. Click <OK> to save your settings.

Step 2. Configure the IAM device located in the Guangzhou branch.

- a. Go to the [Tunnel Route] page, check the [Enable Tunnel Route] option and then click <Add> to open the [Edit Tunnel Route] page.
- b. Specify the information as follows:

- c. Click <OK> to save your settings.

You can also set to have a branch access Internet through the VPN device located at the Headquarters, all the packets of the branch forwarded by the HQ VPN.

For example, to have the branch Shanghai access Internet through the gateway of the VPN device located at Shenzhen, click <New> to add a tunnel route and specify the information as follows:



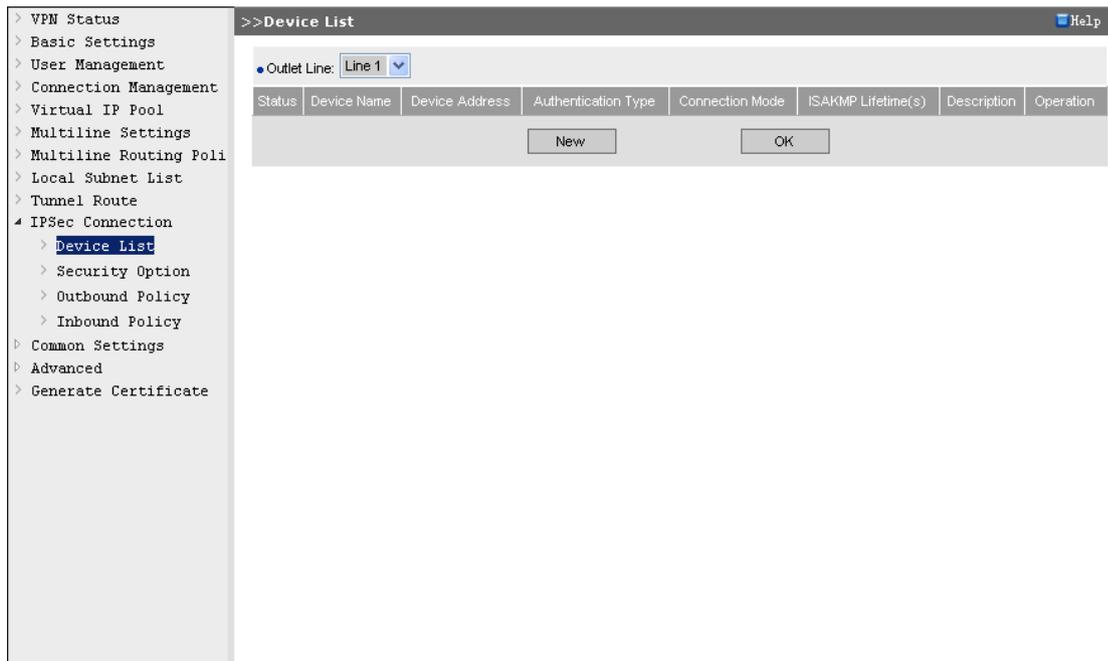
If the IAM device located at the Headquarters is deployed in Route mode, you need to add corresponding SNAT rules for the VPN subnets on the [Firewall] > [SNAT] page. For detailed settings, see section 3.7.2 "SNAT".

### 3.8.7.10 IPsec Connection

SANGFOR IAM device offers the function of interconnecting with third-party VPN device, which enables you to establish standard IPsec VPN connection with third-party VPN device.

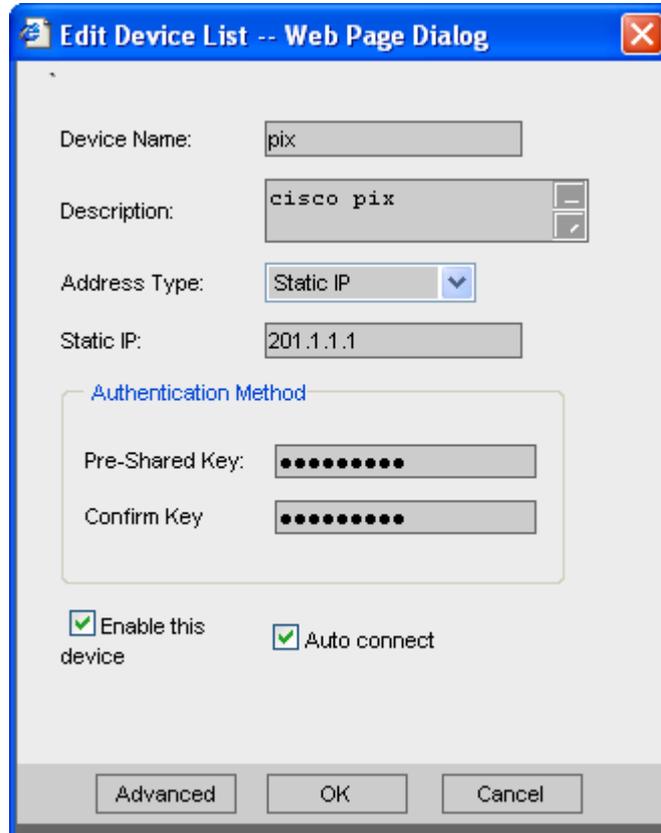
#### 3.8.7.10.1 Device List

The [Device List] allows you to set the relevant information of the peer VPN device that requires establishing standard IPsec connection with SANGFOR IAM device. This is the first phase of the standard IPsec negotiation.



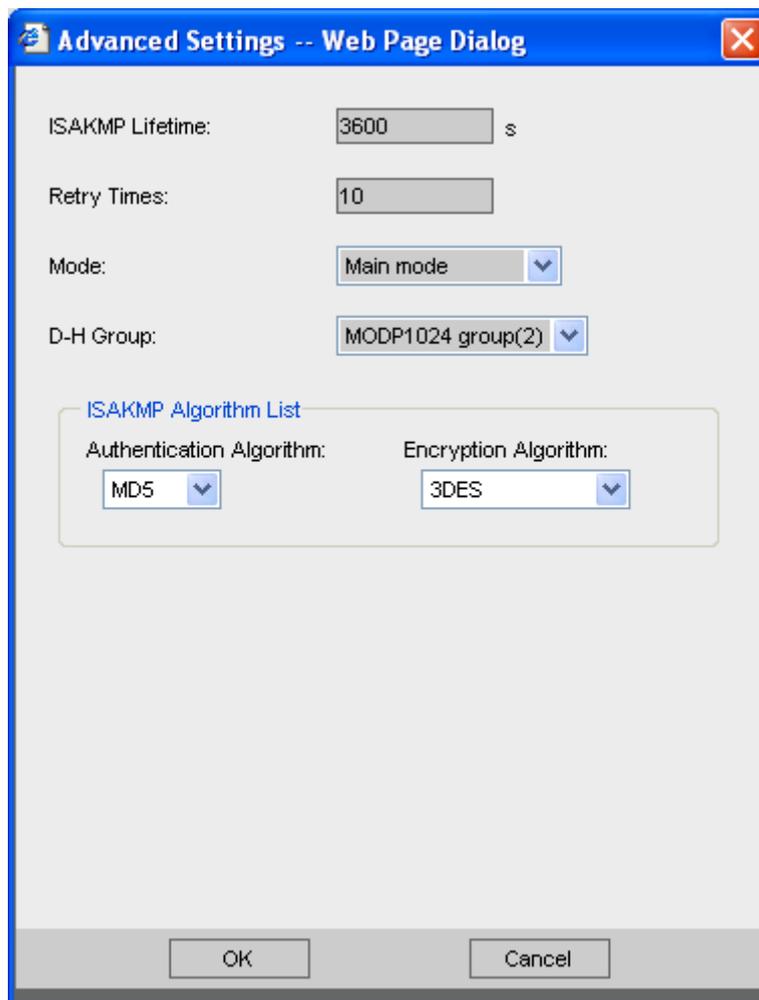
To add a third-party device, do as follows:

- Step 1. Select the outlet line and then click <New> to open the [Edit Device List] page.
- Step 2. Set the information of the device, as shown below:



- Step 3. To set advanced parameters, click <Advanced> and then set the relevant parameters, as shown

below:



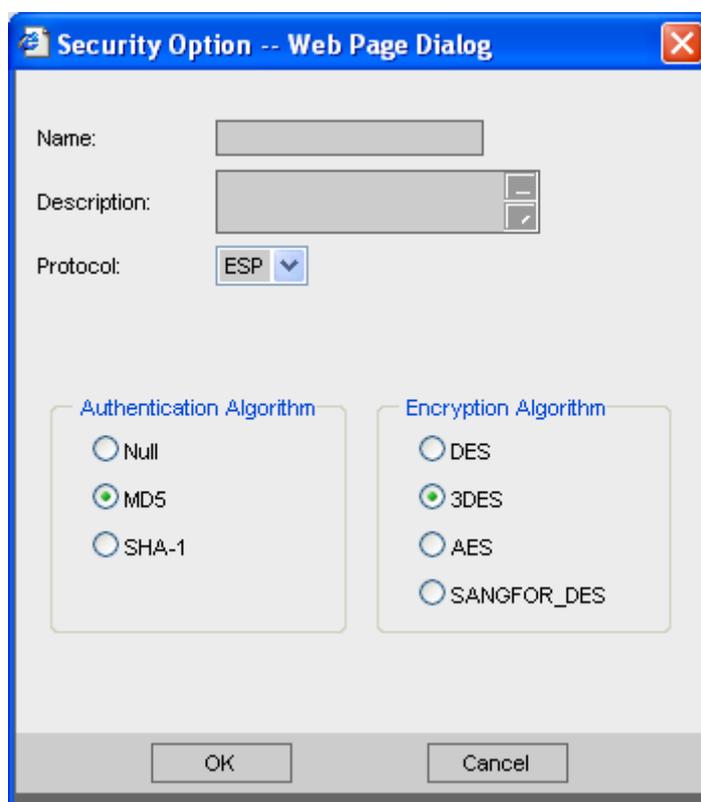
Step 4. Click <OK> to save your settings.

### 3.8.7.10.2 Security Option

The [Security Option] page allows you to set the parameters that will be used for establishing standard IPSec VPN connection. This is the second phase of the standard IPSec negotiation.



Before establishing IPSec connection with the third-party device, please figure out the connection policy to be used by the peer device, including such information as the protocol (AH or ESP), authentication algorithm (MD5 or SHA-1) and encryption algorithm (DES, 3DES or AES). Then click <New> to set the security options according to the above information, as shown below.



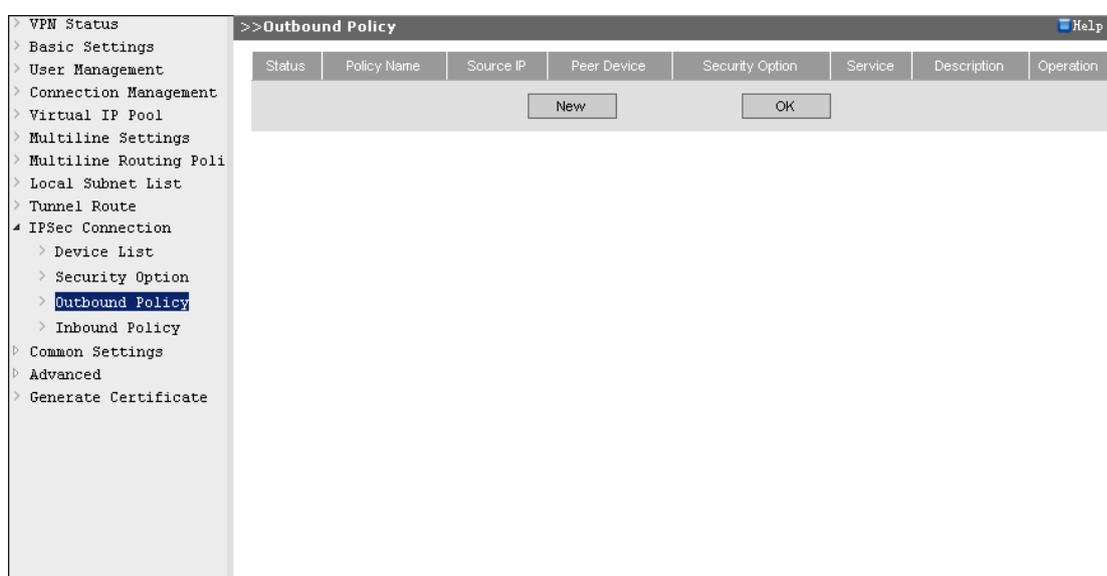
The SANGFOR IAM device will use the connection policy set above to negotiate with the peer device and then establish the IPSec connection.



[Encryption Algorithm] refers to the data encryption algorithm to be used in the second phase of the standard IPSec connection. If the IAM device is to be interconnected with multiple peer devices that adopt different connection policies, you need to set [Security Option] for each of the peer devices to add their connection policies into the list.

### 3.8.7.10.3 Outbound Policy

The [Outbound Policy] enables you to set the policies for the packets sent from the local device to the peer device.



To add an outbound policy, click <New> on the [Outbound Policy] page and then set the relevant fields, as shown below:

**Policy Settings -- Web Page Dialog**

Policy Name:

Description:

Source IP Type:  ▾

Source IP Address:

Peer Device:

Security Option:  ▾

SA Lifetime:  seconds

Service:  ▾

Schedule:  ▾

Allow in the above schedule  Deny in the above schedule

Enable Expiry Time

Expiry Time:  :  :  :

Enable This Policy

Perfect Forward Secrecty

#### 3.8.7.10.4 Inbound Policy

The [Inbound Policy] enables you to set the policies for the packets sent from the peer device to the local device.



To add an inbound pool policy, click <New> on the [Inbound Policy] page and then set the relevant fields, as shown below:

Policy Name:

Description:

Source IP Type:

Source IP Address:

Peer Device:

Service:

Schedule:

Allow in the above schedule  Deny in the above schedule

Enable Expiry Time

Expiry Time:  :  :

Enable This Policy

OK Cancel



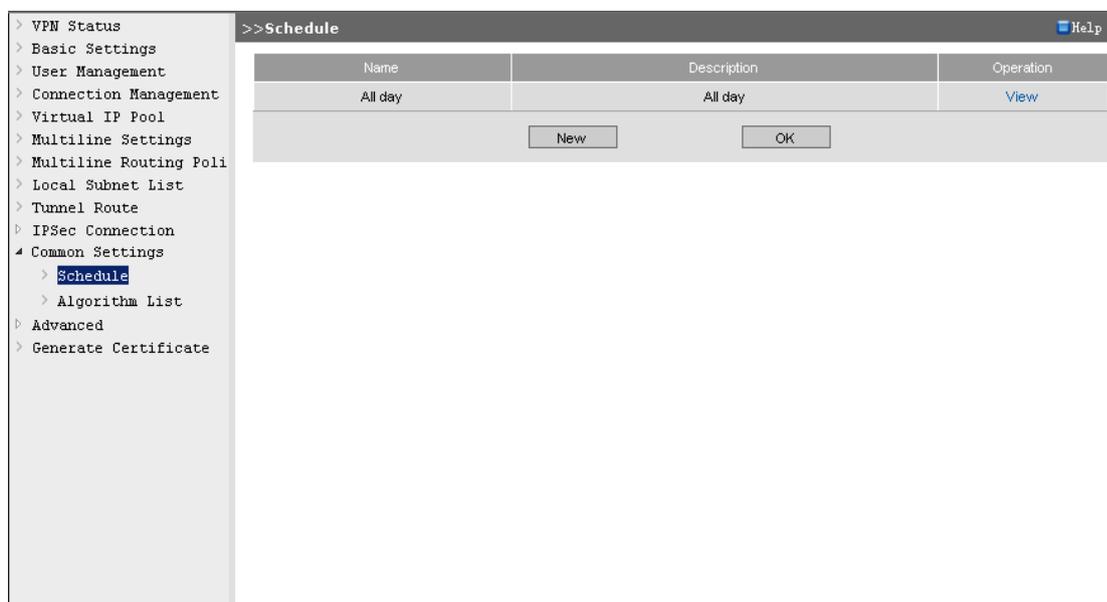
1. The [Service] and [Schedule] configured in the inbound/outbound policy are extension rules provided by the SANGFOR IAM device. They only take effect on the local device and will not be negotiated when the local device is establishing VPN connection with third-party device.
2. The source IP addresses applicable to the inbound/outbound policy (that is, source IP allowed to connect in to or out of the local VPN device) are those that are included in both the [Source IP Address] configured in the inbound/outbound policy and [Source IP Range] set in the selected LAN service.

### 3.8.7.11 Common Settings

The [Common Settings] module covers the [Schedule] and [Algorithm List] pages.

#### 3.8.7.11.1 Schedule

The [Schedule] page allows you to combine commonly used time segments into a schedule, mainly used as a time period in which relevant settings are in effect. The schedules defined here will be referenced by [User Management], [Inbound Policy] and [Outbound Policy]. The time defined in schedules is subject to the system time of the current IAM device.

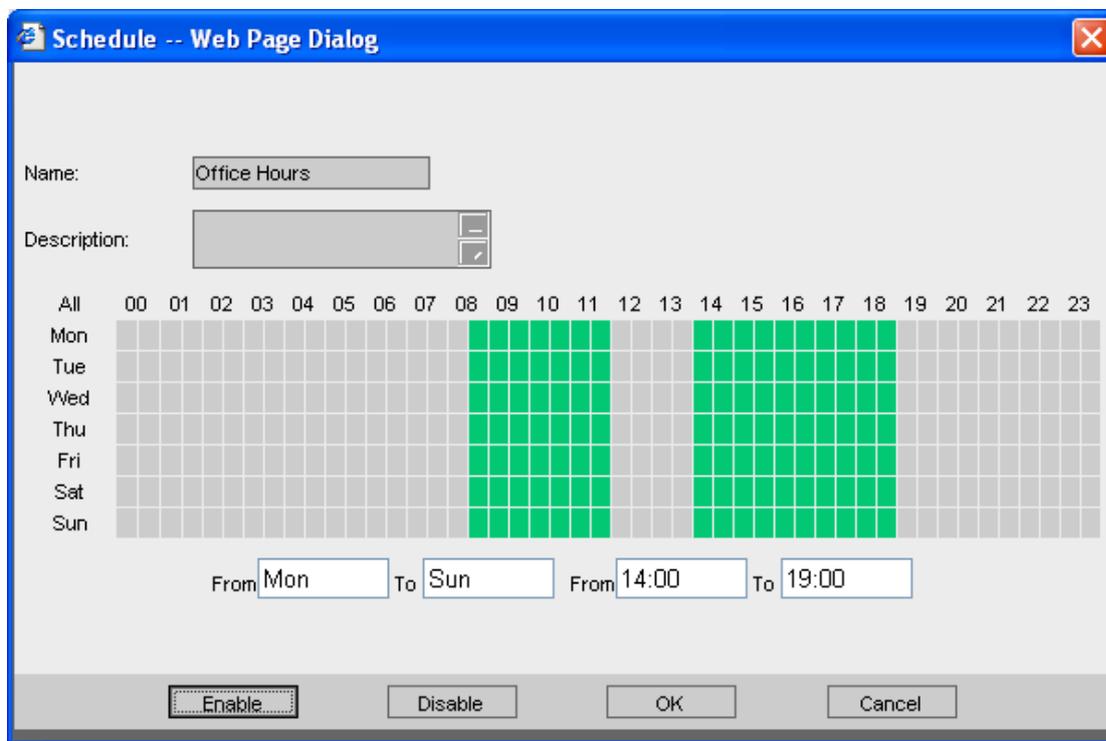


To add a schedule, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [Schedule] page, click <New> to add a schedule.

Step 2. Type the name and description, and then drag over the grids and click <Enable>/<Disable> to add

or excluded relevant time segments into or from the schedule (the grids in grey means the corresponding time segments are excluded from this schedule and the grids in green means the corresponding time segments are covered in this schedule), as shown below:

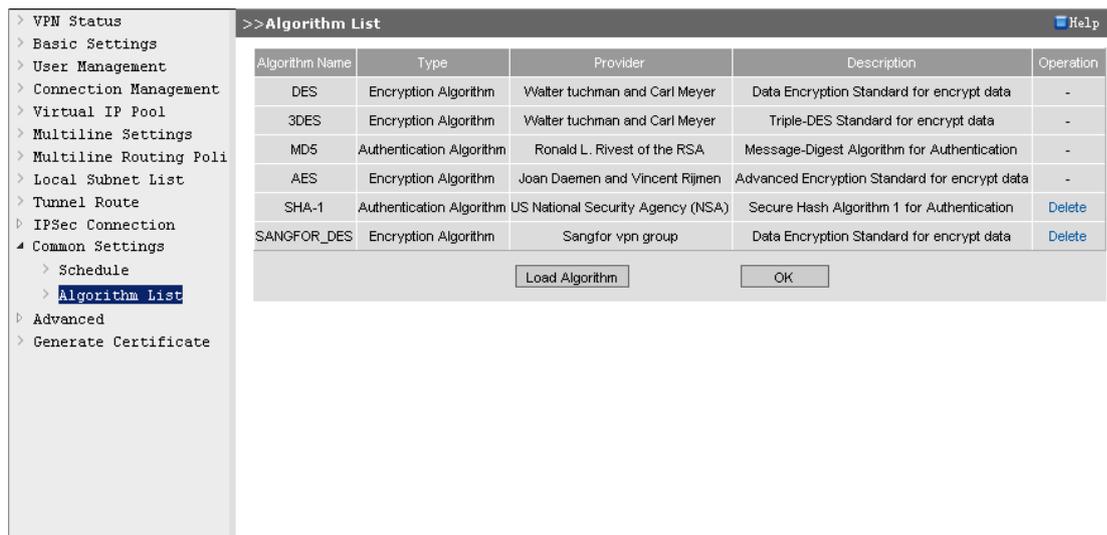


Step 3. Click <OK> to save your settings.

In the above figure, the schedule named **Office Hours** is defined, which covers the time segments ranging from 8:30 to 12:00 AM, 14:00 to 19:00 PM, Monday to Sunday. When this schedule is referenced by a rule or policy, it means the rule or policy only takes effect in the time segments covered by this schedule.

### 3.8.7.11.2 Algorithm List

The [Algorithm List] page allows you to view and add the data encryption algorithms supported by the IAM device. The encryption algorithms defined here will be used to encrypt the data transferred over the VPN network constructed by the VPN devices to ensure the security of the data.



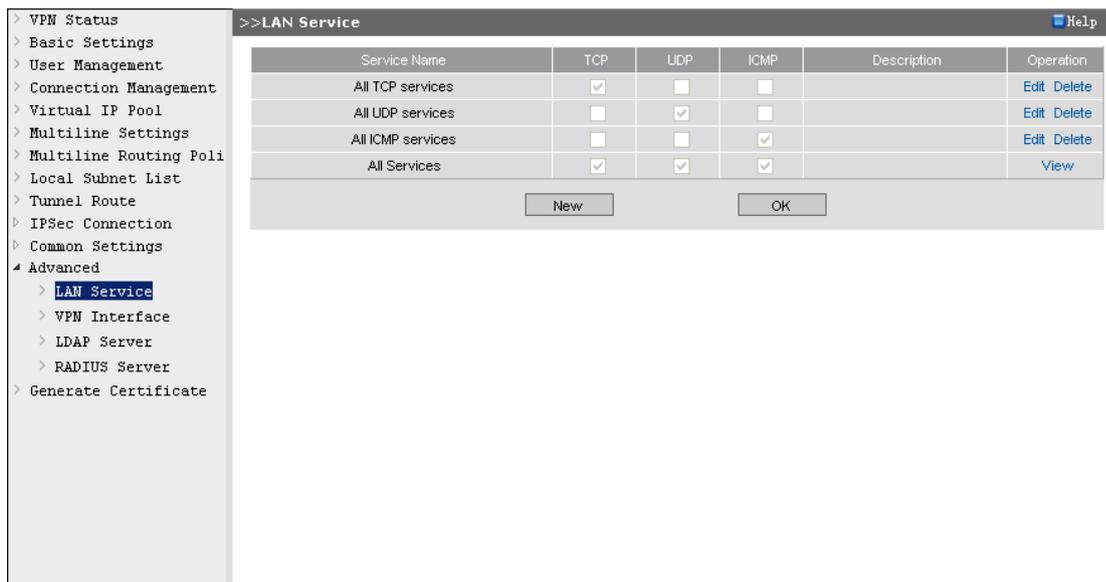
The IAM device has already built in multiple encryption algorithms and authentication algorithms, including DES, 3DES, MD5, AES, SHA-1 and SANGFOR\_DES. If you want to add other encryption algorithms and authentication algorithms, please contact the technical engineer of SANGFOR.

### 3.8.7.12 Advanced

The [Advanced] module covers the [LAN Service], [VPN Interface], [LDAP Server] and [RADIUS Server] pages.

#### 3.8.7.12.1 LAN Service

The [LAN Service] page enables you to specify the access privileges for the VPN user connected in (for example, to limit a branch/mobile VPN user's access to a specified service provided by a specified computer) and define the LAN services to be referenced by outbound policy and inbound policy (for detailed settings, see section 3.8.7.10.3 "Outbound Policy" and section 3.8.7.10.4 "Inbound Policy").



By configuring the LAN services and allocate corresponding LAN privileges for VPN users connected in, you can achieve secure management in the VPN tunnel.

To allocate the LAN privileges, there are two steps:

1. Create LAN service.
2. Allocate the corresponding LAN service (LAN privilege) for a specific user. By default, the system does not set any limit to the access privileges of VPN users.

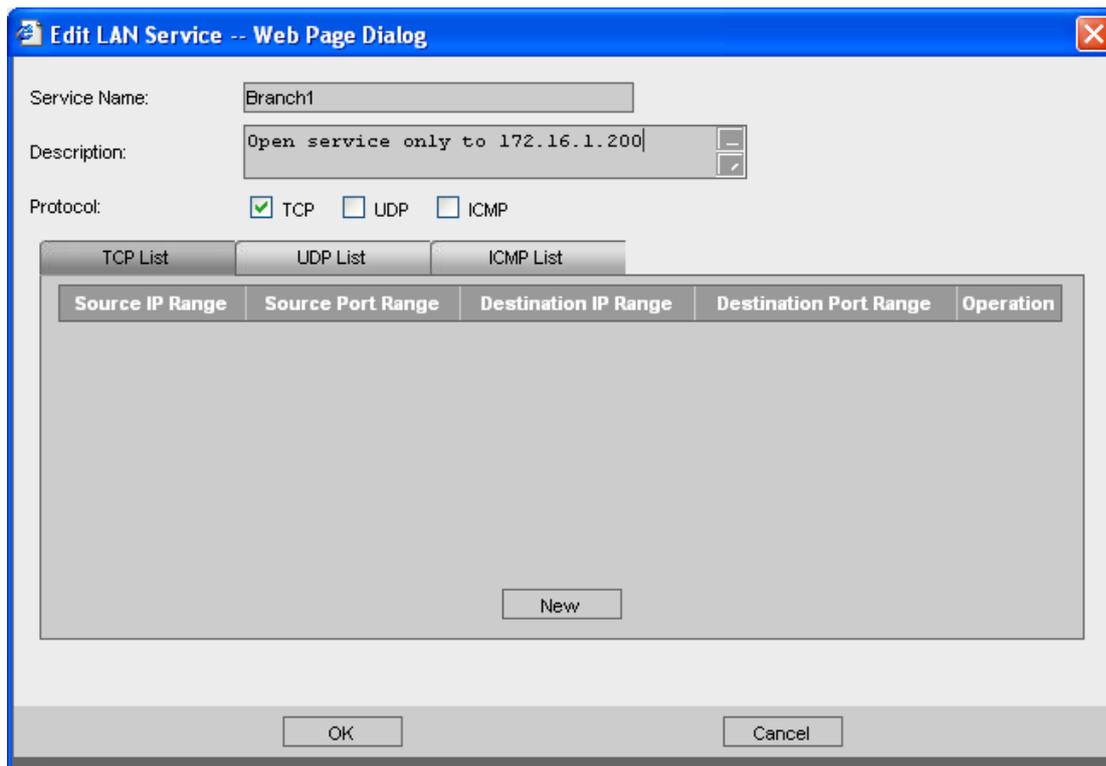
**Case Study:** Suppose the branch office **Branch1** has established VPN connection with the Headquarters and there is a FTP server (192.168.1.20) located at Headquarters. The requirement is that only the user **branch1** (IP: 172.16.1.200) in the branch office be allowed to access the FTP server and requests initiated from other IP addresses in the branch office be denied.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

Step 1. On the [LAN Service] page, click <New> to open the [Edit LAN Service] page.

Step 2. Type a service name (easy to identify) and check the protocol type.

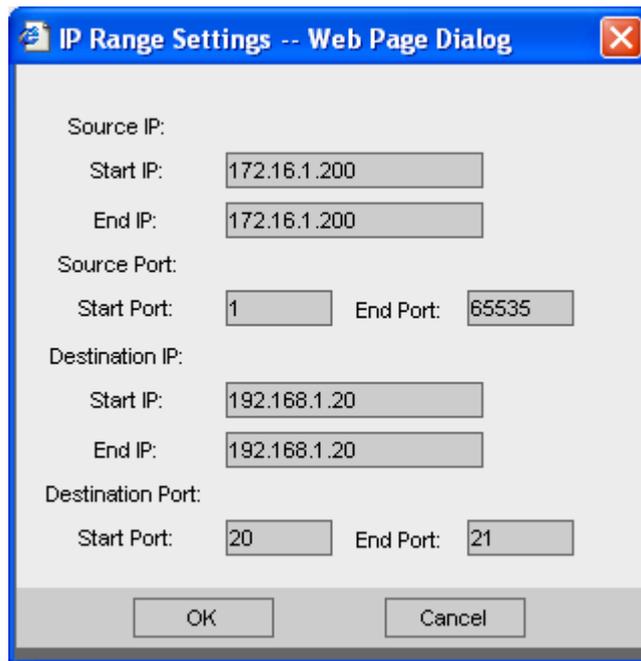
In this example, as the FTP service uses the TCP protocol, check the [TCP] option, as shown below:



Step 3. Click <New> to open the [IP Range Settings] page and then set the IP range applicable to this LAN service.

Step 4. Specify the information as follows:

- [Source IP]: **172.16.1.200** (IP address of the user **branch1**)
- [Source Port]: **1-65535**
- [Destination IP]: **192.168.1.20** (IP address of the FTP server)
- [Destination Port]: **20-21** (FTP service port)



The image shows a dialog box titled "IP Range Settings -- Web Page Dialog". It contains the following fields:

- Source IP:
  - Start IP: 172.16.1.200
  - End IP: 172.16.1.200
- Source Port:
  - Start Port: 1
  - End Port: 65535
- Destination IP:
  - Start IP: 192.168.1.20
  - End IP: 192.168.1.20
- Destination Port:
  - Start Port: 20
  - End Port: 21

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

Step 5. Click <OK> to save the LAN service.



So far, you just "defined" the LAN service. To have the privileges configured in the LAN service take effect, you need then allocate the privileges for the user account through [User Management] page.

Step 6. Go to the [User Management] page, select the user **branch1** and click <Edit> to open the [Edit User: branch1] page, as shown below:

Step 7. Click <LAN Privilege> to open the [Privilege Settings] page. Then click <Right> to move the **Branch1** service to the service list on the right, check the box under the [Allow] column (that is, set the action to Allow), and select the [Deny] option under [Default Action], as shown below:

Available Service	Operation
All TCP services	Right
All UDP services	Right
All ICMP services	Right
All Services	Right

Service Name	Allow	Deny	Schedule	Operation
Branch1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All day	Up Down Left

Default Action:  Allow  Deny

Step 8. Click <OK> to save and apply your settings.

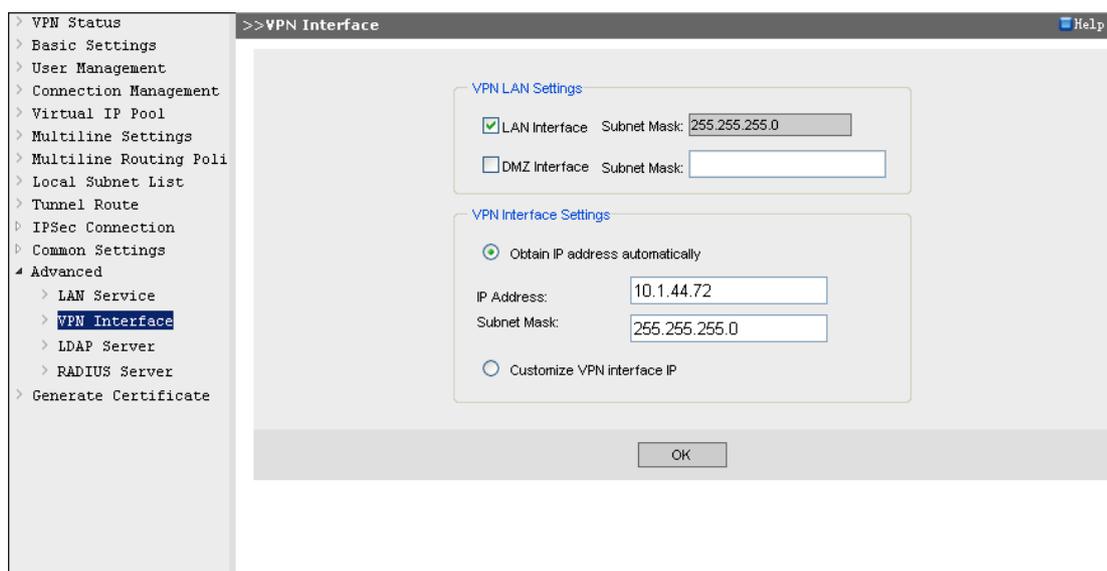


After the above settings are saved and applied, only the IP address 172.16.1.200 is allowed to access the FTP server and any other requests initiated by this IP address or other IP addresses in the branch

office will be denied. Meanwhile, the computers other than the FTP server at Headquarters cannot access the branch office either, because the [LAN Service] will deny any packet whose destination IP is not 192.168.1.20 (FTP server IP) when the branch responds to the requests initiated by the computers at Headquarters.

### 3.8.7.12.2 VPN Interface

The [VPN Interface] page allows you to set the virtual adapter IP address of the VPN service.



1. Under the [VPN Interface Settings] section, [Obtain IP address automatically] is checked by default. If IP conflict occurs, you can then check the [Customize VPN interface IP] option and set the IP address manually.
2. The VPN interface is a virtual interface of the IAM device, and no corresponding physical interface actually exists on the IAM device.

### 3.8.7.12.3 LDAP Server

The VPN service provided by the SANGFOR IAM device supports using the third-party LDAP authentication.

If third-party LDAP authentication is required, you need to configure [LDAP Server].

Do as follows:

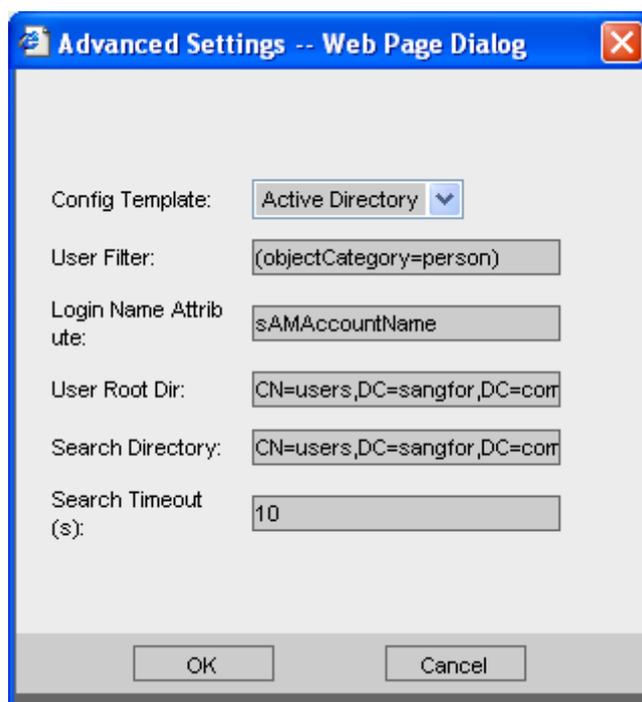
- Step 1. Set the information of the third-party LDAP server, including IP address, port, administrator

name and password of the LDAP server, as shown below:



Step 2. Check the [Enable LDAP Authentication] option to enable the third-party LDAP authentication.

Step 3. If necessary, click <Advanced> to open the [Advanced Settings] page and set the advanced parameters according to your needs, as shown below:



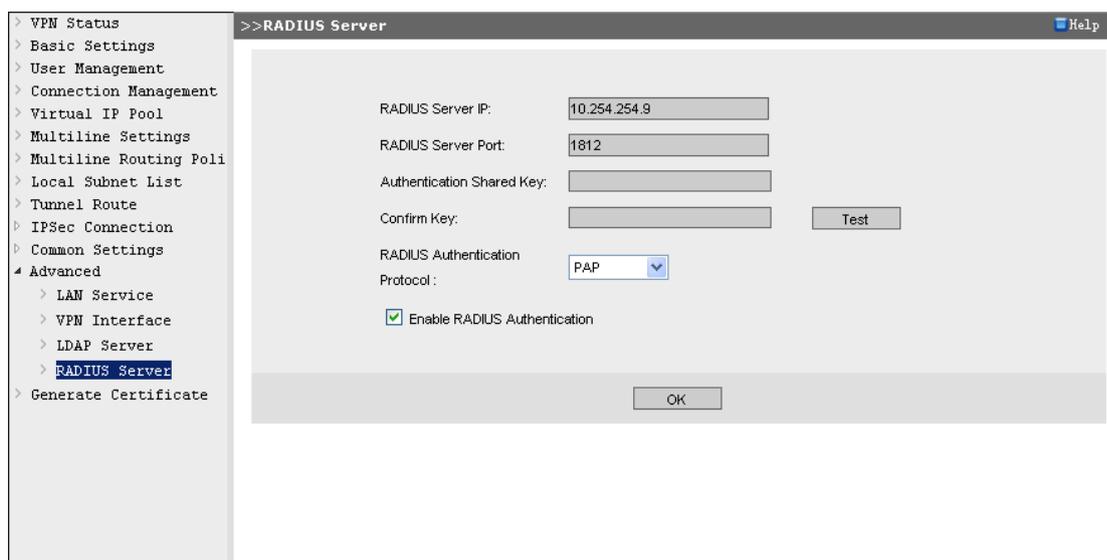
Step 4. Click <OK> to save your settings.

### 3.8.7.12.4 RADIUS Server

The VPN service provided by the SANGFOR IAM device supports using the third-party RADIUS

authentication.

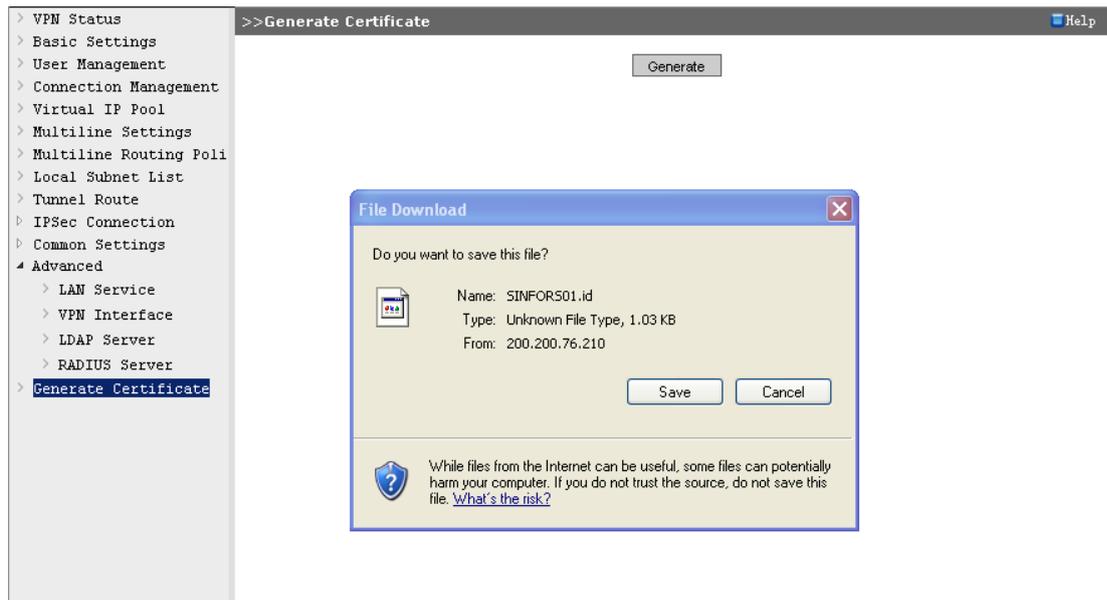
If third-party RADIUS authentication is required, you need to configure [RADIUS Server]. Set the information (IP address, server port, authentication shared key and authentication protocol) of the third-party RADIUS server, and then check the [Enable RADIUS Authentication] to enable the third-party RADIUS authentication, as shown below:



### 3.8.7.13 Generate Certificate

The certificate authentication based on hardware feature is one of the patents of SANGFOR Technology. The IAM device adopts this technology for identity authentication among different VPN nodes. The certificate integrates with part of the hardware feature of the current IAM device and is then generated into an encrypted authentication certificate. The uniqueness of the hardware feature of the IAM device makes the certificate unique and unforgeable. By authenticating the device based on the hardware feature, it ensures that only the specified device is allowed to connect into the network, which avoids potential security hazards.

To generate the certificate of the current device, click <Generate> and then select a location to generate and save the certificate into the local computer, as shown below:



Then, send the generated certificate to the administrator of the VPN device to which you want to connect. The administrator of that VPN device will then select the hardware authentication and bind this certificate with the user when creating the VPN user account for this device.

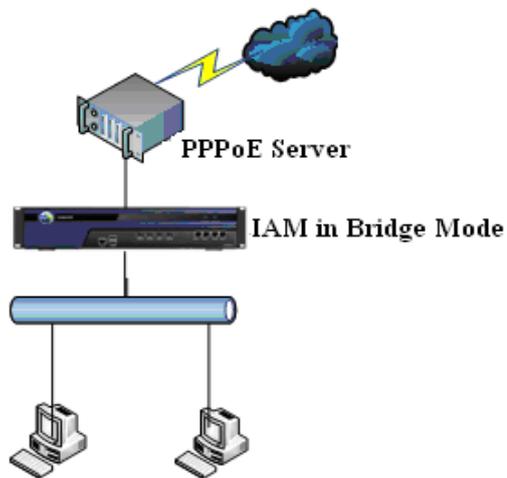
### 3.8.8 Protocol Extension

In some network environment, the communication packets are encapsulated by some special protocols (such as PPPoE and MPLS). These protocol data packets adds the header identifier of their own into the common IP packets and make the IP packets unable to be analyzed even by the device that has the protocol analyzing function.

However, the SANGFOR IAM device, by using the protocol stripping function, can analyze the features of these special protocol packets and match them with the built-in protocol rules to strip the protocol header off the special protocol within the device so that it still can conduct authentication, audit and control over the original data encapsulated by special protocols.

At present, the SANGFOR IAM device supports protocol stripping of the following types: [VLAN Protocol Stripping], [MPLS Protocol Stripping], [PPPOE Protocol Stripping], [L2TP Protocol Stripping], [LWAPP Protocol Stripping], [CAPWAP Protocol Stripping] and [WLTP Protocol Stripping]. It also supports customized protocol stripping.

**Case Study:** Suppose in the network, as shown below, PCs are required to dial up to the PPPoE server and pass the authentication on the PPPoE server before accessing the Internet. The IAM device, deployed between the PCs and the PPPoE server in Bridge mode, is required to audit and control the PC's network behaviors.



To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Go to the [Network] > [Protocol Extension] page, check the [PPPoE Protocol Stripping] item and click <Commit> to enable the PPPoE protocol stripping.

Protocol Extension

Protocol Stripping ⓘ

Select Protocol Stripping

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Name	Port(applied to L3 protocol only)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VLAN(Q-in-Q) Protocol Stripping	-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	MPLS Protocol Stripping	-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PPPoE Protocol Stripping	-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	L2TP Protocol Stripping	1701
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LWAPP Protocol Stripping	12222
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CAPWAP Protocol Stripping	5247
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WLTP Protocol Stripping	6969,7070
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Customized Protocol Stripping	-

Custom Protocol Stripping ⓘ

Protocol Header: Byte offset from Ethernet header   
Feature value is

IP Header: Byte offset from Ethernet header

Step 2. Go to the [User/Policy] > [Access Management] page, and configure the corresponding access control policy and access audit policy according to your needs.

After the above configurations are completed, the IAM device will audit and control the network behaviors of the PCs that access the Internet by PPPoE dial-up.

If the special protocol is included in the built-in protocol stripping list, but adopts a non-default port for communication (for example, the L2TP protocol does not adopt the default port 1701 for communication), you can double-click the corresponding stripping rule to edit the port. If there are multiple ports, separate them from each other by commas.

If multiple protocols or combinations of protocols that are included in the protocol stripping list exist in the network, enable the corresponding protocol stripping rules.

If other special protocol of uncommon IP packet exists in the network, but the protocol is not included in the built-in protocol stripping list, you can set a customized protocol stripping and the corresponding stripping rule under the [Custom Protocol Stripping] section:

- ◆ [Protocol Header] specifies the start point of the special protocol's header in the whole data packet (including the Ethernet header) and the feature value of the protocol header.
- ◆ [IP Header] specifies the start point of the IP header after the packet is encapsulated by the special protocol.



1. Protocol Stripping is not available in Route mode.
2. In Bridge mode, the IAM device supports the Protocol Stripping and can implement automatic authentication, application audit and control on the data with protocol stripped off. However, in some special environment, some functions may be unavailable, including functions that will redirect users' browsers (such as Web authentication, Ingress authentication, Access Denied page, Reminder page), SSL content identification, control on MSN file transfer, Kerberos authentication SSO, and functions that require the proxy of the IAM device (such as email delay/audit, and gateway antivirus).
3. In Bypass mode, the IAM device supports the Protocol Stripping, but it can only conduct automatic authentication and application audit.
4. In protocol stripping environment, the IAM device does not support taking host name or MAC address as username, or binding user with MAC address.
5. Some data packets, after being encapsulated by a special protocol (for example, L2TP), may have two IP headers. When the protocol is stripped off, the outmost IP header is stripped off; therefore, the authentication, audit and control are conducted based on the innermost IP, and meanwhile, the

policies configured on the IAM device should not block the outmost IP from communicating.

6. By default, the IAM device supports the protocol stripping of single-layer 802.1Q VLAN, without enabling the corresponding protocol stripping. If the 802.1Q VLAN combines with other protocol, for example, PPPoE data is transferred in 802.1Q VLAN, you need to enable both [VLAN(Q-in-Q) Protocol Stripping] and [PPPoE Protocol Stripping].

7. The compressed or encrypted protocol data does not support protocol stripping.

## 3.9 System

### 3.9.1 License

The [License] page enables you to enter licenses to activate corresponding functions. You can enter the following licenses: [Device License], [Multi-Function License], [Cross-ISP License], [Antivirus License], [Application Ident&URL Library Update License], [Software Update License] and [Third-party URL Library License].

 <p><b>Device License</b>            1. Supported Lines: 2            2. Supported Branch VPNs: 0            3. Supported Mobile VPNs: 1000  <b>Gateway ID: F9ED3A57</b>            Current License: BWLGQAWDFBTD4EE2            License Status: Valid  <a href="#">Modify License</a></p>	 <p><b>Multi-Function License</b>            Licensed Modules:            1. VPN System            2. Application Audit            ...            Current License: N0F88B9G84D4B78B            License Status: Valid  <a href="#">Modify License</a></p>
 <p><b>Cross-ISP License</b>            Current License:            License Status: <b>Invalid</b>  <a href="#">Modify License</a></p>	 <p><b>Antivirus License</b>            Current License: CMXCBF8GAFBDFTRC            License Status: <b>Invalid</b>  <a href="#">Modify License</a></p>
 <p><b>App Ident/URL Library Update License</b>            Current License: BQ5HQ6ZNP2IWSOKT            License Status: Valid  <a href="#">Modify License</a></p>	 <p><b>Software Update License</b> ⓘ            Current License: 8Y2RP8FFF36TCYC3            License Status: Valid            Expiry Date: 2012-01-17  <a href="#">Modify License</a></p>
 <p><b>Third-party URL Library License</b>            Current License: Q8M34QJTGMPXCJDB            License Status: Valid  <a href="#">Modify License</a></p>	

The functions corresponding to the licenses displayed on [License] page are described in the following table.

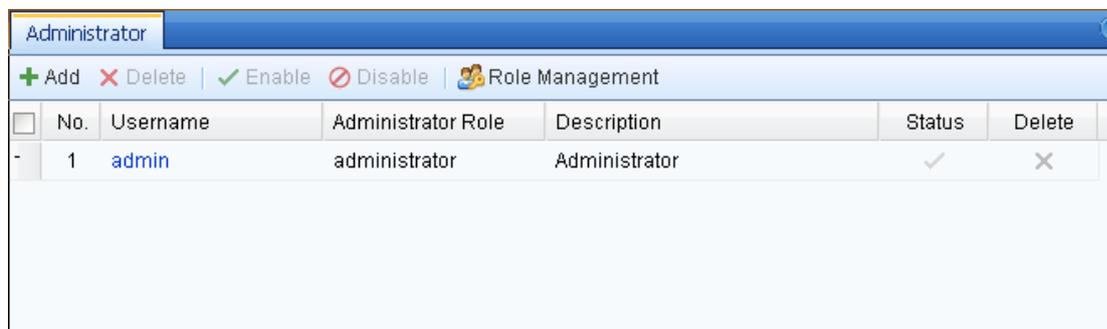
**Table 62 License Settings**

Field	Description
Device License	To activate the device. This license determines the number of lines, branch VPNs and mobile VPNs.
Multi-Function License	To activate the multi-function. Here, multi-function includes the following functions: VPN, Application Audit, SSL Content Ident, Proxy/Cache, Outgoing File Alarm, Risk Ident, Email Audit, IM Audit, HTTP Outgoing Content, Application Control and DKey Management Data Center.
Cross-ISP License	To activate the optimization function of the VPN network established using lines of different Internet service providers (ISPs).
Antivirus License	To activate the update service for virus library.
App Ident&URL Library Update License	To activate the update service for URL library and application identification library.
Software Update License	To activate the service that updates the software version of the device.
Third-party URL Library License	To activate the update service for third-party URL library.

To enter or modify any of the above licenses, click the corresponding <Modify License> button and enter the license. The corresponding function will be activated.

### 3.9.2 Administrator

The [Administrator] page enables you to set the system administrators who manage the IAM device through the console.

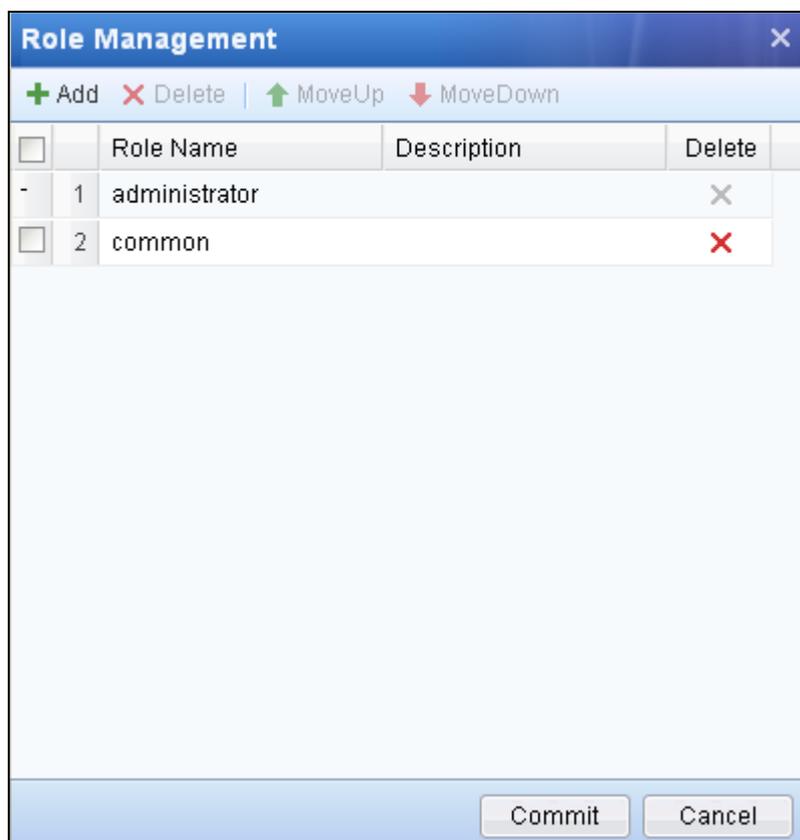


You can click the corresponding button displayed above the administrator list to add, delete, enable or disable administrator account. The <Role Management> button enables you to define the privilege level of administrators, commonly used in the situation when multiple administrators are needed to conduct

hierarchical management. In administrator role list, the upper role has higher privileges. Given the same administrative scope, the administrator of higher role level can modify the policies created by administrators of lower role level, and its policies take higher priority than those created by the latter. The "administrator" role is an internal role, which has full privileges to administer the current device and can add or delete any other administrator accounts.

To add an administrator, do as follows:

Step 1. Create administrator role. On the role list, the upper role has higher priority level. The administrator of lower role level cannot modify the objects created or modified by administrator of higher role level. You can add a role according to your needs. Click the <Role Management> button to open the [Role Management] page, as shown below. Then, click <Add>, enter the role name and description, and click <Commit>.



Step 2. Create administrator account.

- a. Click the <Add> button, type the administrator name and description, and select the administrator role, as shown below:

**Administrator**

Username:

Description:

Administrator Role:  ▼ ⓘ

- b. Specify the following information on the [Login Security] tab, as shown below:

**Administrator**

Username:

Description:

Administrator Role:  ▼ ⓘ

**Login Security** | Organization Privilege | Page Privilege

New Password:  ⓘ

Comfirm Password:

Restrict the login IP to the following list ⓘ

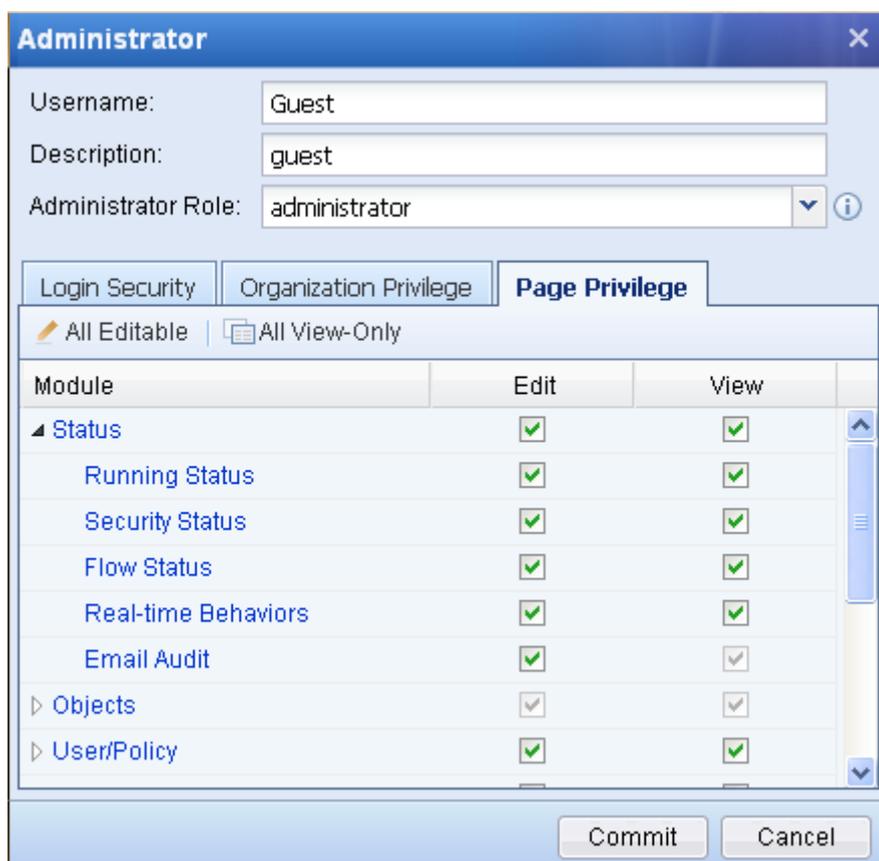
**Table 63 Login Security Settings**

Field	Description
Password	Set the password for this administrator to log into the console.
Confirm Password	Enter the password again.
Restrict the login IP to the following list	Restrict that the administrator can log into the console only from the IP addresses specified in this list. You can enter single IP address or IP ranges, one entry per row. A maximum of 32 entries are allowed.

- c. Click the [Organization Privilege] tab to set the administrative scope for this administrator, that is, the privileges of managing user groups. Click <Select> to select the user group according to your needs.



- d. Click the [Page Privilege] tab to set the page privileges for this administrator, that is, whether this administrator has the privilege to view or edit the pages of the console.



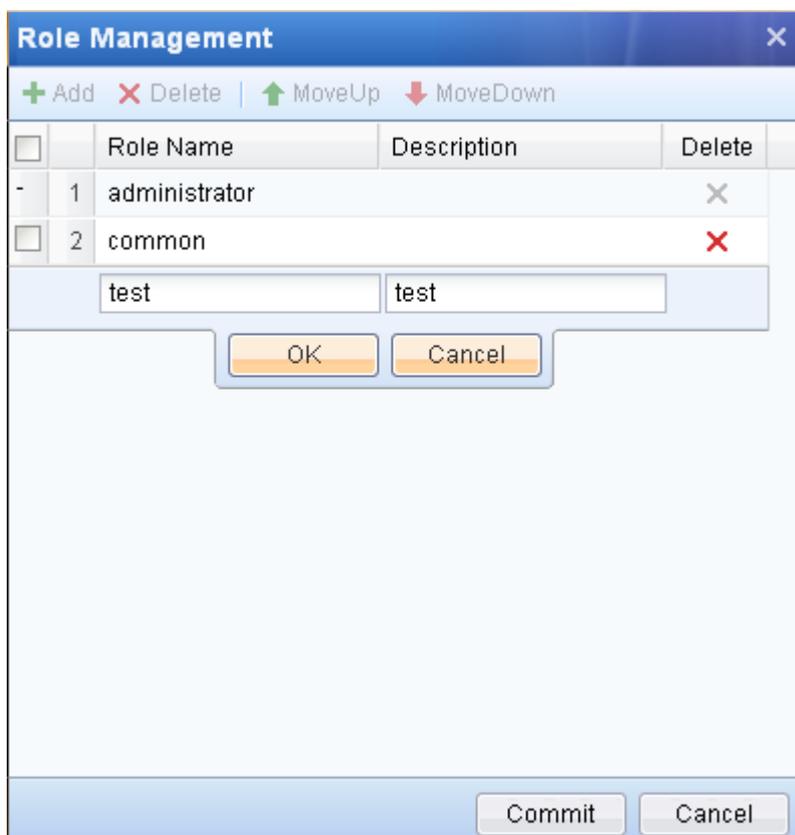
Step 3. Click <Commit> to save the administrator account.

**Case Study 1:** Suppose you need to create an administrator account with the following requirements:

- ◆ The role of the administrator is **test**.
- ◆ The username of the administrator account is **John**, with password of 123, administrative scope of **Network Dept** group and privileges of editing and viewing the [User Authentication], [User Import/Sync] pages and all the pages under [Objects] module.

To meet the requirements: do as follows:

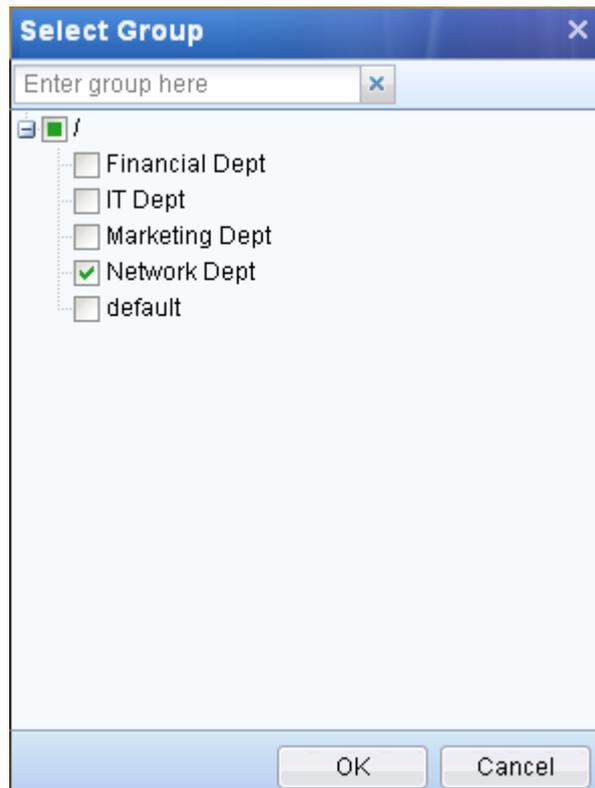
- Step 1. Create administrator role. On the [Administrator] page, click the <Role Management> button to open the [Role Management] page, as shown below. Then click <Add>, enter the role name **test** and corresponding description, and click <Commit>.



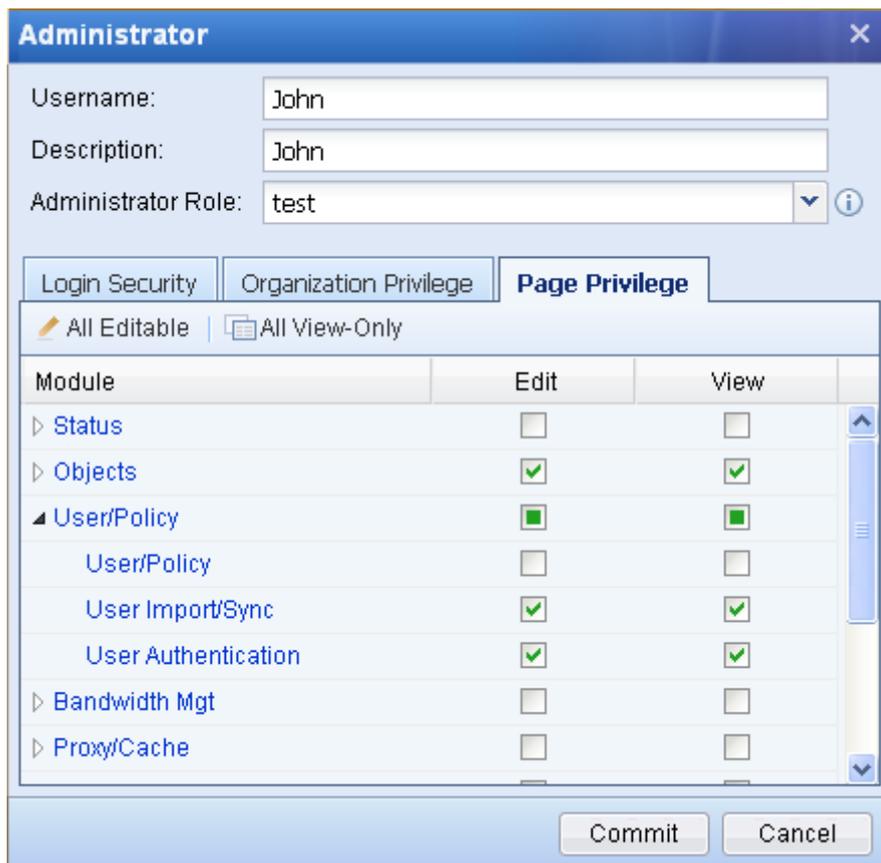
Step 2. Create administrator account.

- a. On the [Administrator] page, click the <Add> button to add an administrator. Enter the administrator name **John** and corresponding description, and click the drop-down arrow to select the role **test**, as shown below.

- b. Click to open the [Login Security] tab, enter the password 123 and confirm the password.
- c. Click to open the [Organization Privilege] tab, click <Select> to open the [Select Group] page, check the **Network Dept** group and click <OK> to save your settings.

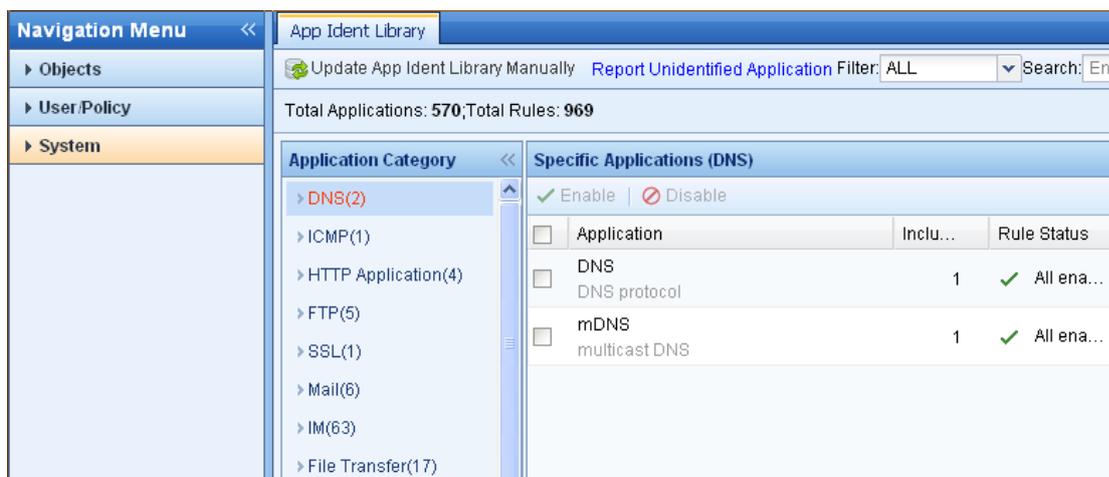


- d. Click to open the [Page Privilege] tab, tick off the boxes corresponding to the [User Authentication], [User Import/Sync] pages and the [Objects] module to give the administrator the privileges to view and edit these pages.



e. Click <Commit> to save the administrator account.

Step 3. After the above configurations are completed, use the administrator account **John** to log into the console, and you will find this administrator can only manage the users/subgroups in the **Network Dept** group and the corresponding access management policies, define objects under [Objects] and configure [User Authentication].



**Case Study 2:** Suppose you need to create the following two administrator accounts:

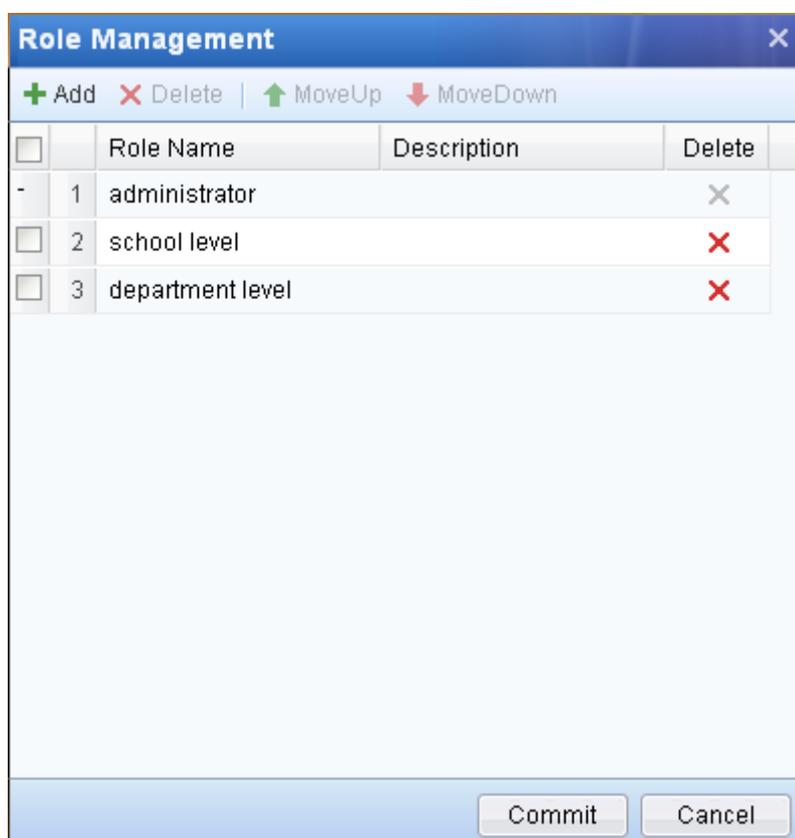
- ◆ One administrator account is **test1** and belongs to the **school level** role. This account has the

privilege to manage the whole school and is associated with an access management policy that blocks all the students in the school from playing games during schooltime.

- ◆ Another administrator account is **test12** and belongs to the **department level** role. This account only has the privilege to manage the students in the Computer Dept and is associated with an access management policy that blocks the students in the Computer Department from using QQ during schooltime.

To meet the requirements, do as follows:

- Step 1. Create the two administrator roles: **school level** and **department level**. On the role line, as the upper role has higher privileges, make sure the **school level** role is displayed above the **department level** role, as shown below:



- Step 2. Create two administrator accounts: **Test1** (with the **school level** role and the privileges to manage the whole school) and **Test2** (with the **department level** role and the privileges to manage the students in the Computer Department only).

The image shows a software window titled "Administrator" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The window contains the following fields and controls:

- Username:** A text input field containing "test1".
- Description:** An empty text input field.
- Administrator Role:** A dropdown menu showing "school level" with a downward arrow and an information icon (i).
- Navigation Tabs:** Three tabs are visible: "Login Security", "Organization Privilege" (which is selected and highlighted in blue), and "Page Privilege".
- Select Administrative Scope:** A section with an information icon (i) and a search interface. It includes a "Select" button with a folder icon, a search input field containing "Fuzzy search" with a search icon (magnifying glass), and a list area below showing the path "/The Whole School/".
- Buttons:** At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Commit" and "Cancel".

Step 3. Log into the console using the administrator account **Test1**, and add an access management policy named **"Deny Game in Schooltime"** to block all the users in the school from playing games during schooltime (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.1 "Access Management"). After the policy is successfully added, it will be listed on the [Access Management] page, as shown below:

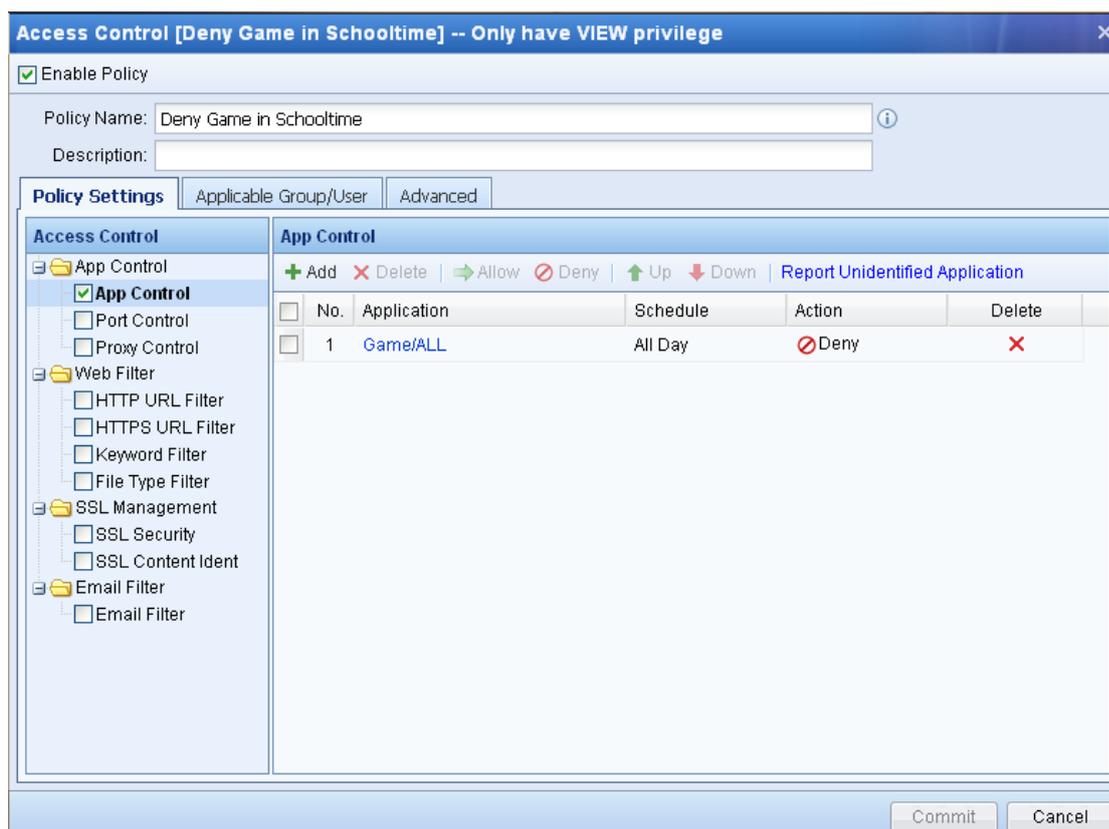
No.	Policy Name	Policy ...	Applicable Group/U...	Crea...	Admini...	Move	Expir...	...
1	proxy	Access...	ALL	admin	admini...	↑ ↓	Neve...	✓
2	Template (block auto upload of	Access...	/default/	admin	admini...	↑ ↓	Neve...	✓
3	<b>Deny Game in Schooltime</b>	Access...	/The Whole School/	test1	school ...	↑ ↓	Neve...	✓

Step 4. Log in to the console using the administrator account **Test2**, add an access management policy named **"Deny QQ in Schooltime"** to block the users in the Computer Department from using QQ during schooltime (for detailed settings, see section 3.3.1 "Access Management"). After the policy is successfully added, it will be listed on the [Access Management] page, as shown below:

No.	Policy Name	Policy T...	Applicable Group/User	Creat...	Admini...	Move	Expiry...	...
1	proxy	Access ...	ALL	admin	admini...	↑ ↓	Never...	✓
2	Template (block auto uploa	Access ...	/default/	admin	admini...	↑ ↓	Never...	✓
3	Deny Game in Schoolltime	Access ...	/The Whole School/	test1	school I...	↑ ↓	Never...	✓
4	Deny QQ in Schoolltime	Access ...	/The Whole School/Com	test2	depart...	↑ ↓	Never...	✓

Step 5. As displayed in the above two figures, the priority of the policies are corresponding to the role level of its creator. As the **school level** role is higher than **department level** role, the policy **Deny Game in Schoolltime** created by the administrator **Test1** has higher priority than the policy **Deny QQ in Schoolltime** created by **Test2**.

In this case, the administrator **test2** can only view the access management policy created by the administrator **test1**, as the <Commit> button is disabled, as shown in the following figure:



Besides, for the administrators of the same role level, if their administrative scopes are different, they cannot edit each other's access management policies. For example, suppose both the **test2** and **test3** administrators belong to the **department level** role, and the administrative scope of **test2** is Computer Department, while that of **test3** is Management Department. In this case, these two administrators cannot

modify each other's policies; they can only view the policies.



1. The privilege levels of administrators depend on their administrator roles. The upper the role ranks on [Role Management], the higher privilege it has.
2. The administrator of higher role level can set whether to allow administrators of lower role level to view its policies and whether to allow the administrator of the same role to view or edit its policies.
3. By default, the administrator of lower role level cannot modify the access management policies created by administrators of higher role level.
4. Even if the administrator A checks the [Allow to edit] option on the [Advanced] tab when creating access management policy, the administrator B who belong to the same role level cannot edit the policy unless its administrative scope is the same as or covers that of administrator A.
5. Even if the administrator A checks the [Allow to edit] option on the [Advanced] tab when creating access management policy, the administrator C who belong to a higher role level cannot edit the policy unless its administrative scope is the same as or covers that of administrator A.
6. The priority of an access management policy has much to do with the role level of its creator. The higher the role of the administrator is, the higher priority its policy takes. For the access management policies created by administrators of the same role, you can adjust their display sequence. For the matching process among policies, see section 3.3.1.3 "Match Policies".
7. After an administrator is deleted, the user groups and users created by this administrator remain unchanged and the corresponding access management policies will keep the same policy level, the corresponding creator will change to **admin**.
8. The "Administrator" role is a default role that has full privileges. It cannot be deleted. Only the administrators who belong to the "Administrator" role can create roles and administrator accounts.
9. Before you delete an administrator role, you need to delete the administrators who belong to this role and the access management policies corresponding to this role.

### 3.9.3 System Time

The [System Time] page is used to set the system time of the SANGFOR IAM device. You can modify the time on this page by yourself or have the time synchronized with the time server.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for system time. The window title is 'System Time'. The 'Date/Time Settings' section includes input fields for 'System Date' (2011-05-03) and 'System Time' (16:31:25), along with 'Get Local Time' and 'Get System Time' buttons. The 'Time Zone Settings' section features a dropdown menu for 'Time Zone' set to '(GMT+08:00) Beijing, Shanghai, Hong Kon'. Below this, the 'Auto Sync with Internet Time Server' checkbox is checked, and the 'Time Server' field contains 'pool.ntp.org'. A 'Synchronize' button is positioned below the time server field. A 'Commit' button is located at the bottom right of the configuration area.

The [Date/Time Settings] section displays the current system time and time. You can modify the system time manually, or you can also click <Get Local Time> to keep the system time of the device same as that of the computer logging into the console or click <Get System Time> to refresh the time in real time.

In addition, you can have the system time of the device synchronized with the time server. Under the [Time Zone Settings] section, select the time zone that the device locates, check the [Auto Sync with Internet Time Server] option and set the Internet time server. The IAM device will then automatically synchronize the system time with this time server.

### 3.9.4 Auto Update

The [Auto Update] is used to manage the automatic update service of gateway patches, internal libraries (virus library, URL library, intelligent identification URL library, application identification library and ingress rule library).

Auto Update							
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> Disable              Update Server Settings              Refresh							
<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Library	Current Version	Latest Version	Update Service E...	Auto ...	Opera...
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Virus Library	2011-04-11	2011-05-09	2012-12-17	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	URL Library	2011-03-28 09:0...	2011-04-25	2012-04-13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Gateway Patch		Obtaining inform...	Never expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Application Ident Library	2011-01-04 17:0...	2011-04-25	2012-04-13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Internal Ingress Rule ...	2008-12-30 12:4...	2008-12-29	2012-04-13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 

You can click the buttons displayed above the list to perform simple operations. For example, click the <Enable> or <Disable> button to enable or disable the auto update service of a corresponding internal library (the precondition is that you have selected an item). To view the real-time version information of the internal library, click <Refresh>.

Under the [Operation] column, you can click the  icon to update the corresponding internal library manually (on the condition that the update service has not expired), or click the  icon to roll the library back to its last version. The rule libraries that support the rollback function are Application Ident Library and Internal Ingress Rule Library.

To configure the update server to which the IAM device will connect for updating, click the <Update Server Settings> button to open the [Update Server Settings] page, and then select the update server according to the line being used by the device. You can also select [Auto select server] to have the device automatically detect and connect the server for updating.

To update the internal libraries successfully, you have to make sure the IAM device can connect to the Internet. If the IAM device cannot connect to the Internet directly, but there is an HTTP proxy server in the network, you can set the proxy server so that the IAM device can connect to the Internet through the proxy server to update the internal libraries. To set the proxy server, check the [Enable HTTP Proxy Server], and then enter the server IP address and port. If the proxy server requires authentication, check the [Require Authentication] option and then enter the username and password for authentication, as shown in the following figure:

**Update Server Settings**

**Update Server**

Select Server: China Netcom

**Enable HTTP Proxy Server**

**Proxy Server Settings**

IP Address:

Port:

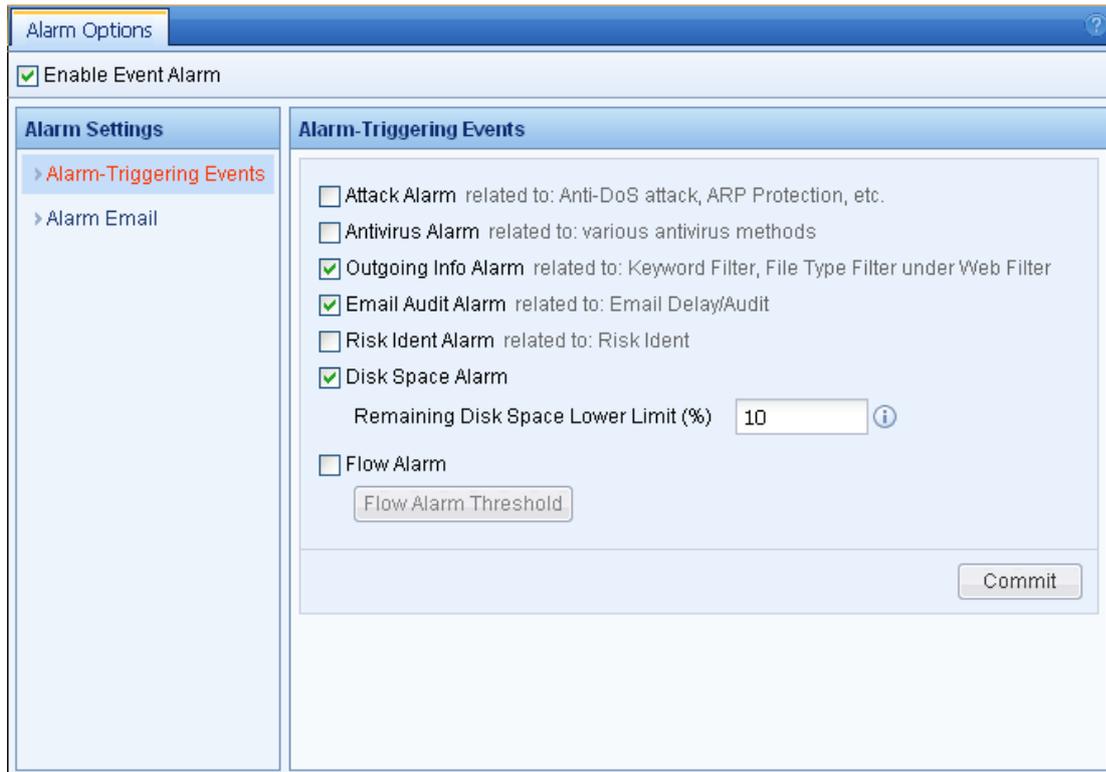
**Require Authentication**

Username:

Password:

### 3.9.5 Alarm Options

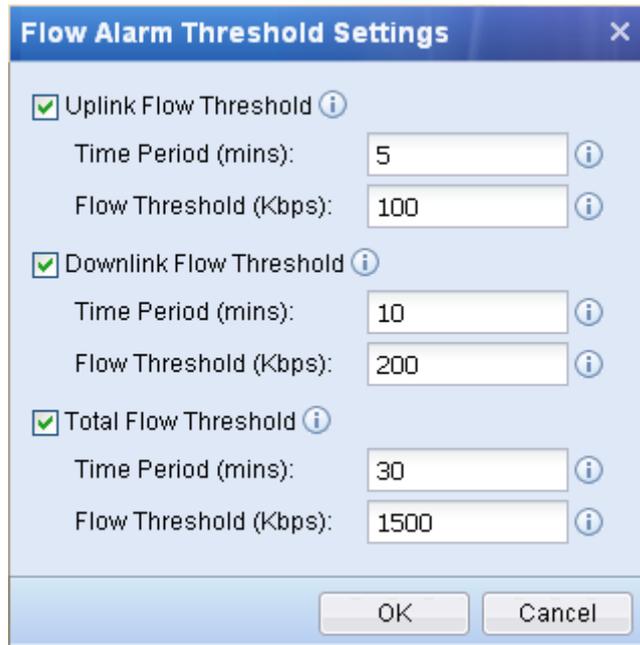
The [Alarm Options] page is used to set the email alarm to notify the administrator when the IAM device detects attacks, viruses, file disclosure, email delayed for audit, risk behavior, insufficient remaining disk space or the flow exceeding threshold.



The [Enable Event Alarm] option is a master switch of alarm function. You can check it to enable the event alarm function.

The [Alarm-Triggering Events] page displays the events that will trigger the alarm functions. These alarm events include [Attack Alarm], [Antivirus Alarm], [Outgoing Info Alarm], [Email Audit Alarm], [Risk Ident Alarm], [Disk Space Alarm] and [Flow Alarm]. You can select one or more of them according to your needs.

For the [Flow Alarm], you need to set the flow thresholds after enabling this function. When one of these thresholds is exceeded, the flow alarm is triggered. The settings include the time duration and flow threshold of uplink flow, downlink flow and total flow. If you set the duration and flow threshold to 5 and 100 respectively, it means flow alarm will be triggered when the corresponding flow exceeds 100 Kbps in 5 consecutive minutes. If the options are not checked, or either duration or flow threshold is set to 0, it means no flow alarm will be triggered. When finishing setting, click <OK> to save, as shown below:



**Flow Alarm Threshold Settings**

Uplink Flow Threshold ⓘ

Time Period (mins):  ⓘ

Flow Threshold (Kbps):  ⓘ

Downlink Flow Threshold ⓘ

Time Period (mins):  ⓘ

Flow Threshold (Kbps):  ⓘ

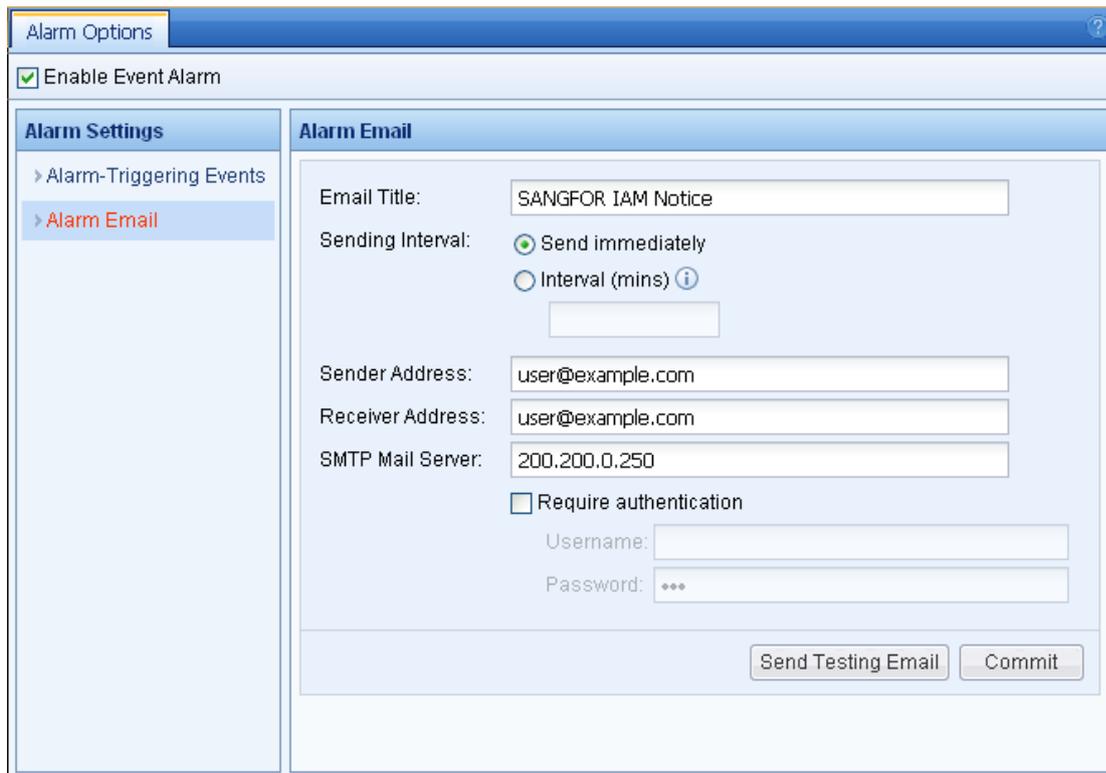
Total Flow Threshold ⓘ

Time Period (mins):  ⓘ

Flow Threshold (Kbps):  ⓘ

OK Cancel

The [Alarm Email] page is used to set the mail server that will send alarm email when any of the alarm events is triggered, and corresponding sender and receiver addresses.



**Alarm Options**

Enable Event Alarm

**Alarm Settings**

- > Alarm-Triggering Events
- > Alarm Email

**Alarm Email**

Email Title:

Sending Interval:  Send immediately  
 Interval (mins) ⓘ

Sender Address:

Receiver Address:

SMTP Mail Server:

Require authentication

Username:

Password:

Send Testing Email Commit

The fields displayed on the above page are respectively described in the following table.

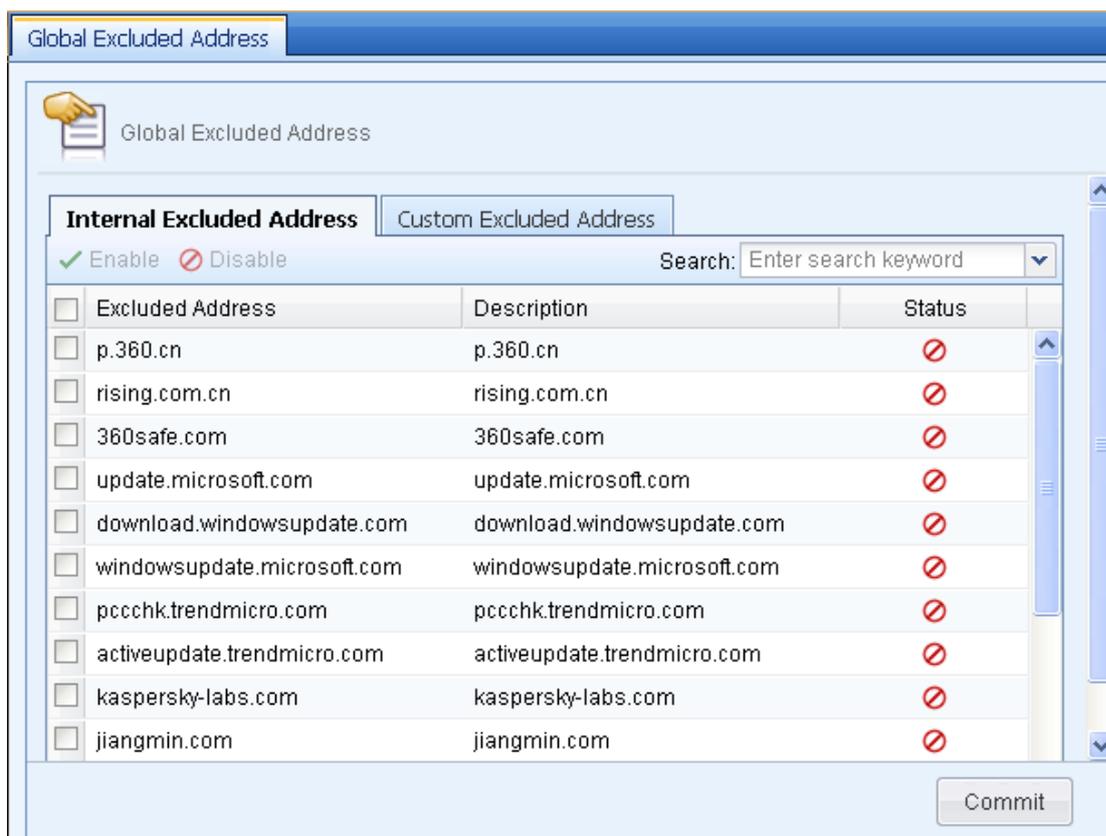
**Table 64 Alarm Email Settings**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Email Title	Define the subject of the alarm email. You can enter any information easy to recognize, but do NOT set any special character.
Sending Interval	Specify the interval at which the alarm email will be sent.
Sender Address	Set the email address from which the alarm email will be sent.
Receiver Address	Set the email address to which the alarm email will be sent when any of the alarm events is triggered.
SMTP Mail Server	Specify the address of the SMTP server that will be used for sending the alarm email. You can enter an IP address or a domain name.  If the SMTP server requires authentication, check the [Require Authentication] option, and then enter the username and password.

After setting the above fields, you can click <Send Testing Email> to test if the email could be sent successfully. If yes, click <Commit> to save and apply the settings.

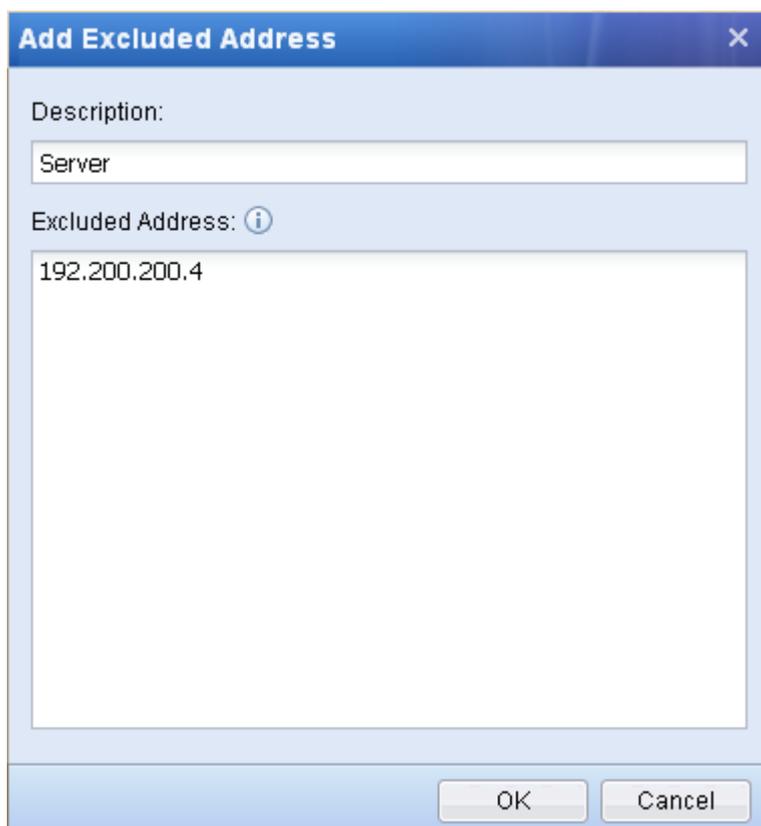
### 3.9.6 Global Excluded Address

When the IP address of a LAN user or a destination server is specified in the excluded address list on the [Global Excluded Address] page, the access request initiated from the LAN user or destined for the destination server will be not monitored nor controlled, that is, the user can successfully connect to the Internet and the destination server can be accessed. You can set the addresses to be excluded on this page. It supports IP address and domain name.



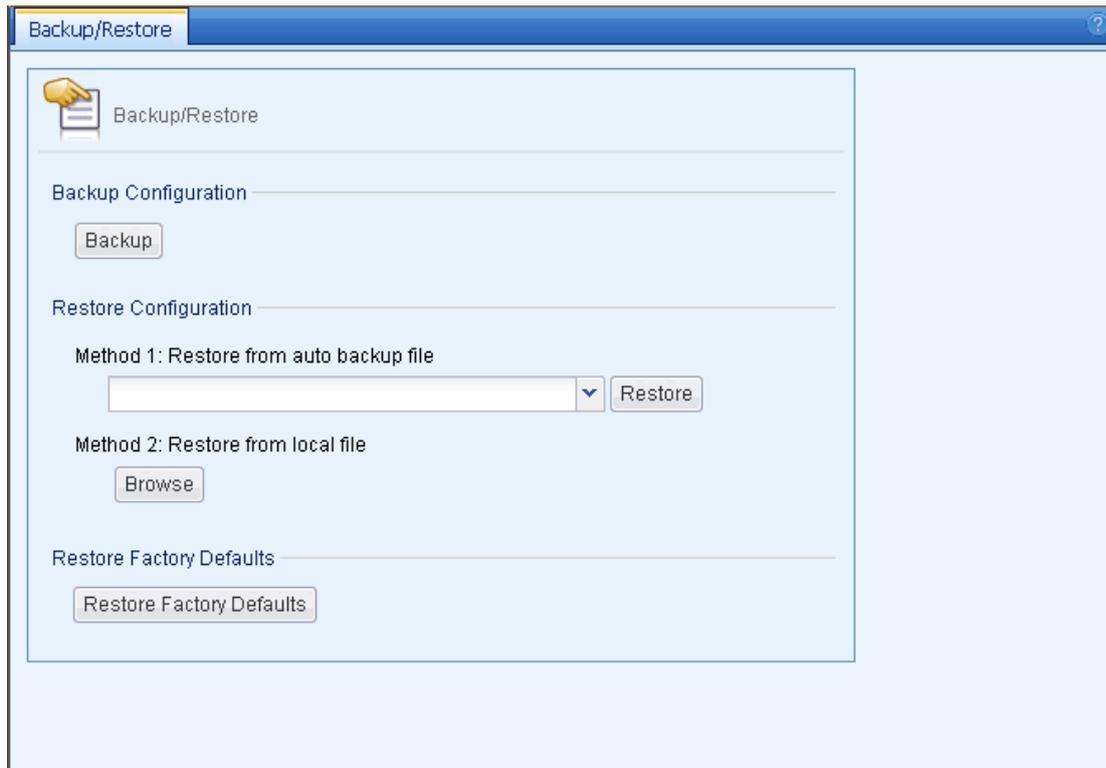
The [Internal Excluded Address] page displays the addresses built in the IAM device, such as the servers to which the IAM device will connect for updating various antivirus software and firewall, to avoid update failure due to conflict with access management policy. The internal excluded addresses can be disabled, but cannot be deleted.

The [Custom Excluded Address] page enables you to define excluded address by yourself. To add an excluded address, click <Add> to open the [Add Excluded Address] page, enter the description information and the address to be excluded, and click <OK> to save and apply.



### 3.9.7 Backup/Restore

The [Backup/Restore] page enables you to download and save the current configuration of the IAM device or restore the configuration from a backup file.



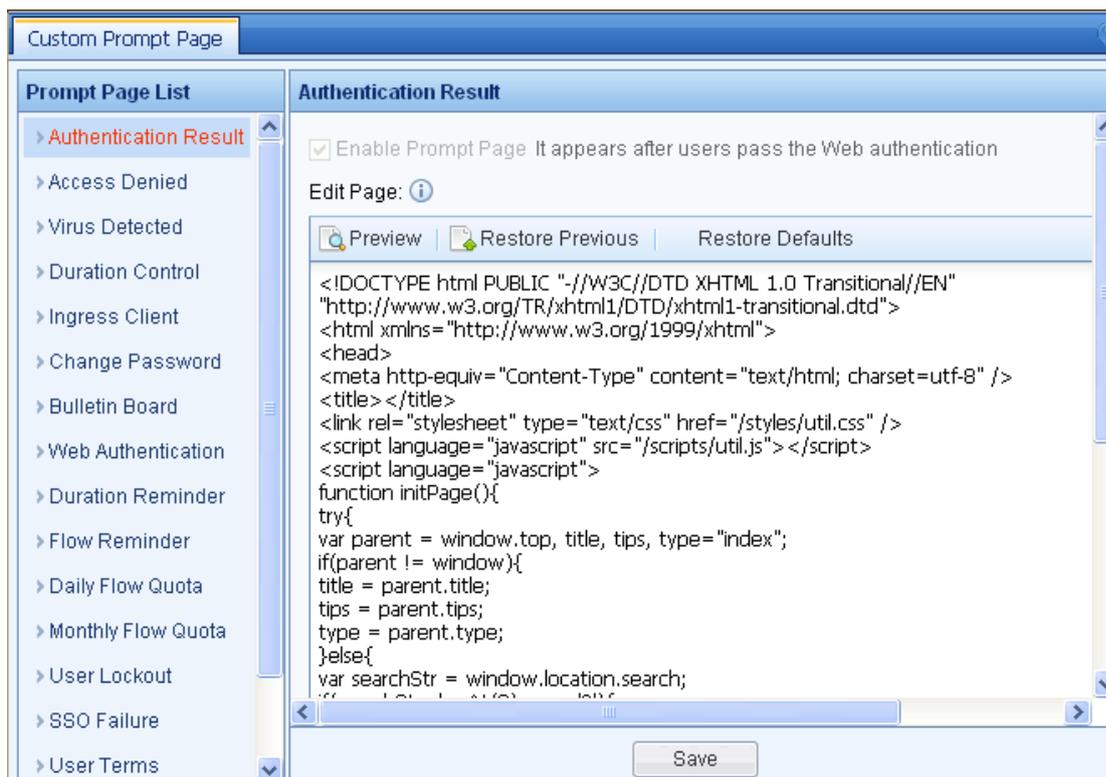
Under the [Backup Configuration] section, you can backup the current configuration of the IAM device. Click the <Backup Configuration> button to download and save the configuration.

Under the [Restore Configuration] section, you can restore the configuration for a backup file. There are two ways to restore configuration:

- ◆ One is to restore the configuration from the file automatically backed up. The IAM device will automatically backup the configuration every morning. By default, it saves the backup configuration files of the last 7 days. To restore the configuration, select one of the automatic backup file and click <Restore>.
- ◆ The other is to restore configuration from a local file. To restore the configuration, click <Select File> to open the backup file and then click <Restore> to restore the configuration.

### 3.9.8 Custom Prompt Page

The [Custom Prompt Page] enables you to customize the prompt pages to which the IAM device will be redirected. The prompt pages that you can customize include: [Authentication Result], [Access Denied], [Virus Detected], [Duration Timeout], [Ingress Client], [Change Password], [Bulletin Board], [Web Authentication], [Duration Reminder], [Flow Reminder], [Daily Flow Quota], [Monthly Flow Quota], [User Lockout], [SSO Failure], [User Terms], [Anti-Proxy Reminder] and [Anti-Proxy Control].



The fields displayed on the above page are respectively described in the following table.

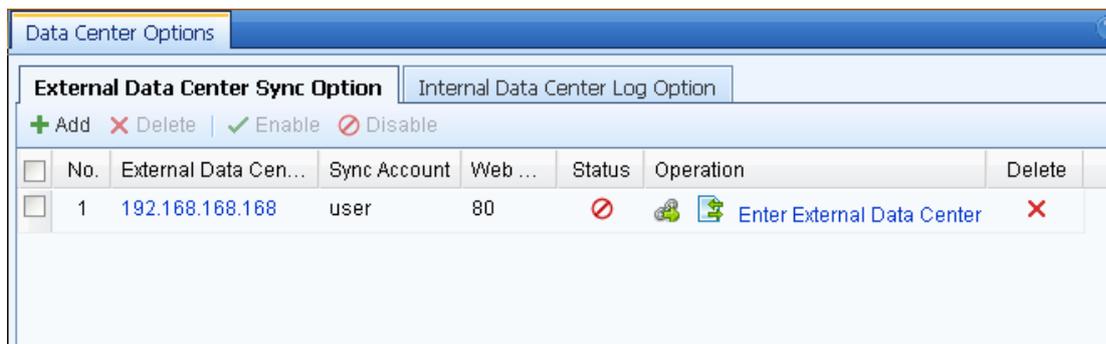
**Table 65 Custom Prompt Page Settings**

Field	Description
Enable Prompt Page	It is recommended to enable this option. If a prompt page is disabled, it will not be displayed. Please note that some prompt pages cannot be disabled.
Edit Page	To edit the prompt page. You can change the source code of the page to change the display of the page. It is recommended to change the text and image only. Other changes may result in the loss of some links on the page.
Upload Image/Javascript File	To upload the image to be displayed on the prompt page. It only supports the .jpg and .gif formats. To upload an object, click <Add File> to locate the file and then change the image file name and Javascript name in the editing box.

After you edit a prompt page in the editing box, you can click <Preview> to preview the current prompt page. Then you can click <Save> to save the page, click <Restore Defaults> to restore the prompt page to the default settings or click <Restore Previous> to restore the prompt page to the latest customized one.

### 3.9.9 Data Center Options

The [Data Center Options] page enables you to set the IP address, synchronization account, synchronization password and web service port of External Data Center, as well as whether to enable the [Auto Delete] function to delete the audit logs. The [Data Center Options] page is as shown below:



On the [External Data Center Option] page, you can click the icon under the [Operation] column to test the connectivity between the IAM device and data center server. If you click the icon, the IAM device will send a SYNCHRONIZE command immediately to the data center server to synchronize the logs.

To enter the External Data Center, click the [Enter External Data Center] link under the [Operation] column to open the Web login page of External Data Center as shown below. Then enter the username and password and click <Login>. By default, the username and password are **admin**.



To add an external data center server, click <Add> to open the [Data Center Sync Account] page, as shown below and then specify the information as described in the following table.

**Table 66 External Data Center Settings**

Field	Description
External Data Center IP	Set the IP address of the server that installs the external data center. It can be an IP address or domain name. When you enter a domain name, please make sure the IAM device can resolve the domain name.
Communication Port	Indicates the port for communication.

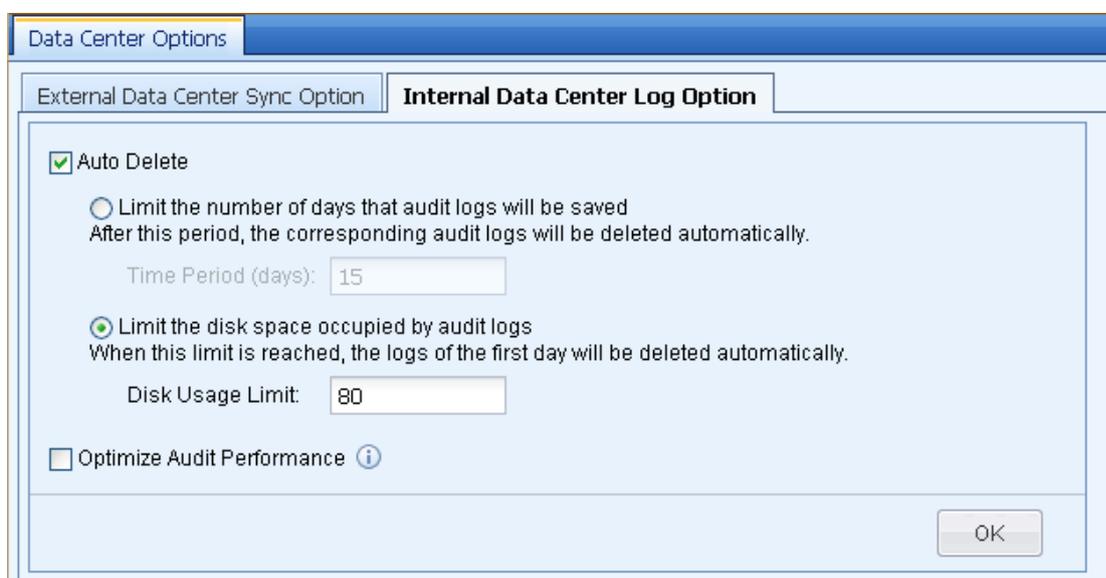
Sync Account	Set the account name of external data center for synchronizing.
Sync Password	Set the account password of external data center for synchronizing.
Web Port	Specify the port at which the external data center provides web service.

On the [Internal Data Center Option] page, you can check the [Auto Delete] option to enable the automatic deletion function of audit logs (it is recommended to enable this option). Then you can set one of the following two options:

- ◆ [Limit the number of days that audit logs will be saved]: It indicates the number of days that the audit logs will be saved. You need to specify the maximum saving period. After this period, the corresponding audit logs will be deleted automatically.
- ◆ [Limit the disk space occupied by audit logs]: It indicates the disk space allowed to be occupied by audit logs. You need to specify the maximum disk usage. When this value is reached, the logs of the first day will be deleted automatically.

The [Optimize Audit Performance] option enables IAM device to record every log when there are a larger number of logs. This option improves the audit performance; however, you cannot enter the internal data center when this option is checked. Therefore, it is recommended to install the External Data Center.

After finishing setting, click <OK> to save your settings.

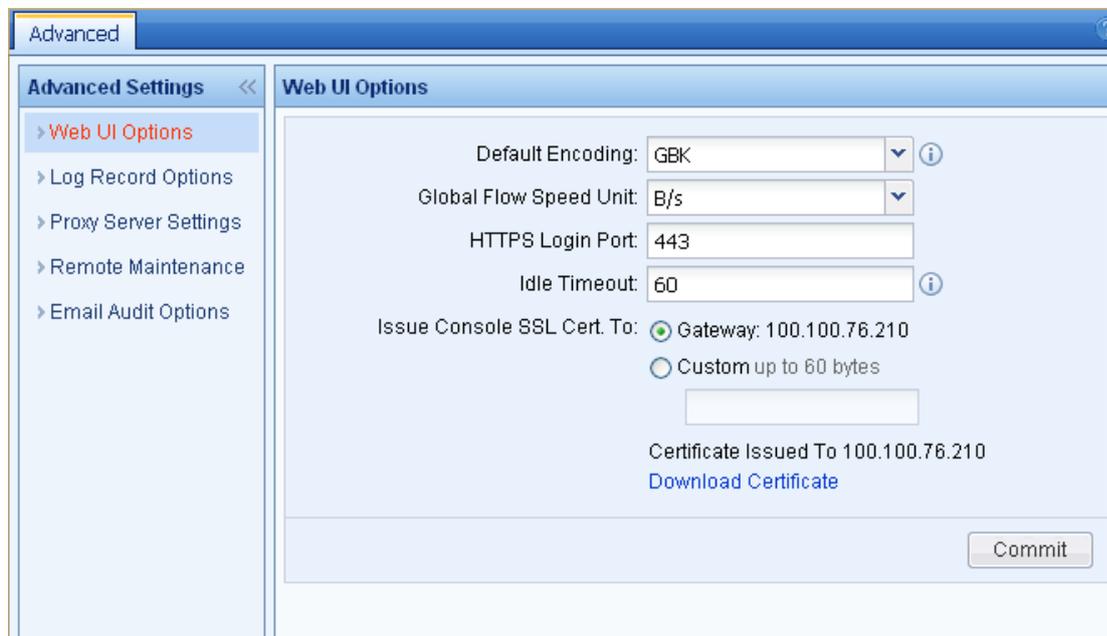


### 3.9.10 Advanced

The [Advanced] page enables you to set some other system configurations, including [Web UI Options], [Log Record Options], [Proxy Server Settings], [Remote Maintenance] and [Email Audit Options].

### 3.9.10.1 Web UI Options

The [Web UI Options] page, as shown below, enables you to set options related to Web UI.



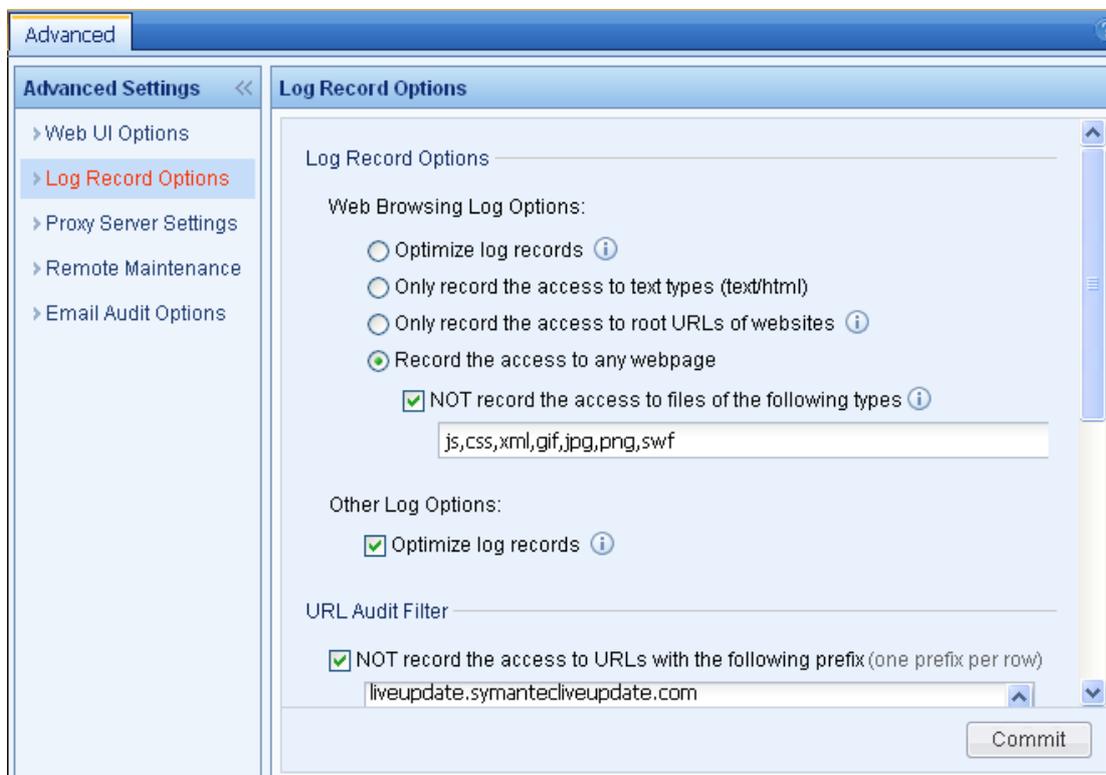
The fields displayed on the [Web UI Options] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 67 Web UI Options**

Field	Description
Default Encoding	To specify the encoding type that will be adopted by default when the encoding of data is unrecognized. It has two options: GBK and BIG5.
Global Flow Speed Unit	To select the unit of flow monitored by the IAM device. Click the drop-down list to select the unit.
HTTPS Login Port	To set the login port of console. The default port is TCP 443.
Idle Timeout	To specify the period of time (minutes) required for the web console to time out due to inactivity. If you do not perform any operation during this period, the system will automatically disconnect and you need to login again.
Issue Console SSL Cert. To	To specify the IP address or domain name to which the SSL certificate of the web console will be issued.  You can click the [Download Certificate] link to download the SSL certificate of the web console and then install it on your computer. By doing this, you can remove the SSL certificate alert dialog which may appear during logging into the Web console.

### 3.9.10.2 Log Record Options

The [Log Record Options] page enables you to set the options related to Web audit.



The options displayed on the [Log Record Options] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 68 Log Record Options**

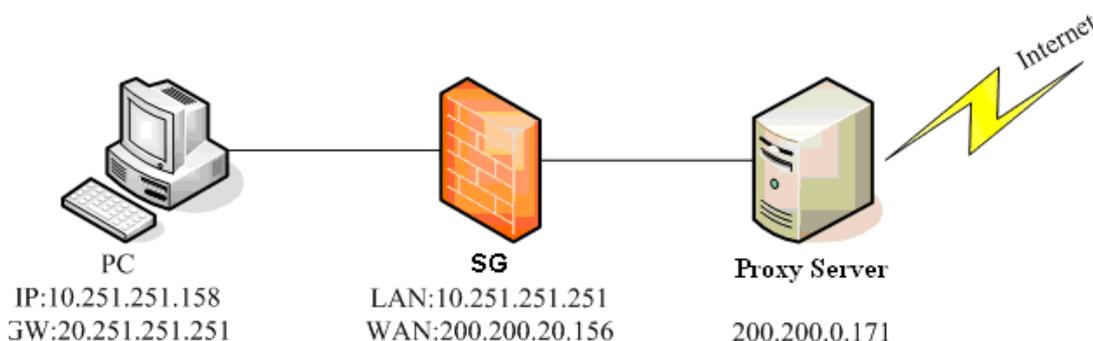
Field	Description
Optimize access logs	It only records the access to text webpages and record only once if a same domain is visited again in a short period.
Only record the access to text types (text/html)	It only records the access to text webpages. If this option is unchecked, the access to any website will be recorded.
Only record the access to root URLs of websites	It only records the access to root URLs of webpages. If detailed logs are needed, please uncheck this option.
Record the access to any webpage	It records every element of the requested webpage. This option will cause massive logs, and thus typically, it is NOT recommended to check this option.
	The [NOT record the access to files of the following types] option below is used to excluded some types of files so that the access to these files will not be recorded. Enter the file extensions in the text box and use comma to separate them.

Not record the access to URLs with the following prefix	When this option is checked and set, the access to the URLs with any of the prefixes specified in the text box will NOT be logged. It supports fuzzy matching, but does not support the wildcard character.
Not record the access to URLs with the following suffix	When this option is checked and set, the access to the URLs with any of the suffixes specified in the text box will NOT be logged. It supports fuzzy matching, but does not support the wildcard character.
Block website access via IP address unless the IP is included in URL library	When this option is checked, the access to websites in the form of IP address will be denied unless the IP address is included in the URL library.

### 3.9.10.3 Proxy Server Settings

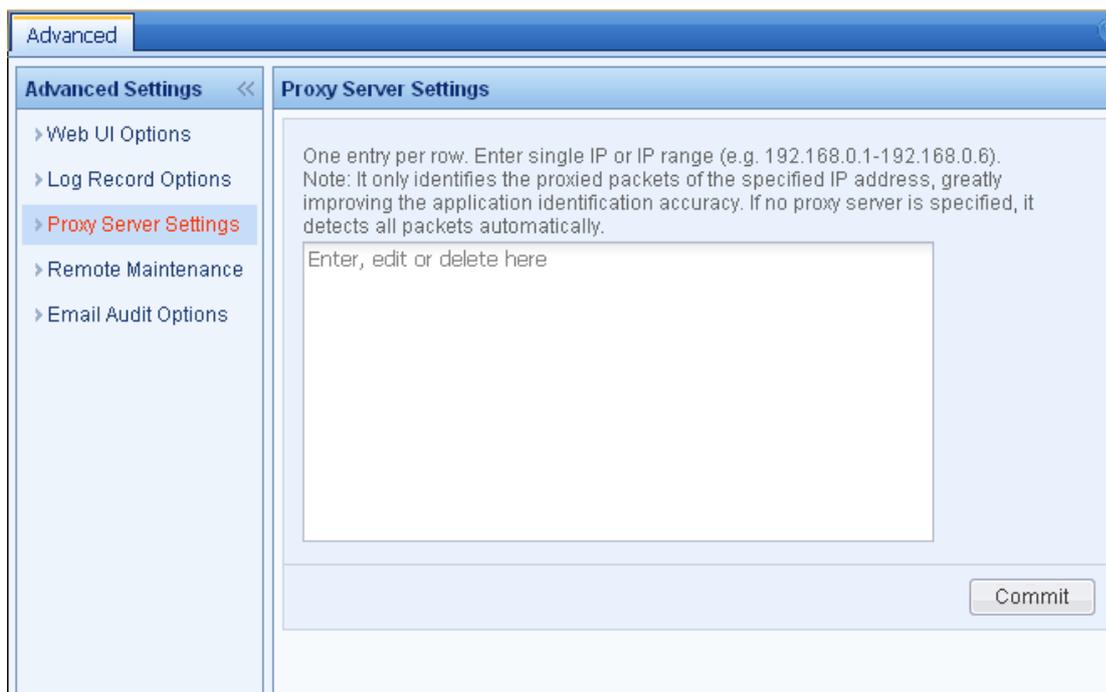
When users are connecting to the Internet through a proxy server, all the requests from users are forwarded to the proxy server. However, as the firewall module determines whether to deny a connection by detecting the destination address and port, many functions of the firewall module will be disabled. To make sure the firewall module works as usual, the actual destination address and port of the requests forwarded to proxy server must be identified by the IAM device so that the address and port can be used by the firewall module.

For example, suppose the network environment is as shown below:



You have to make sure the data packets go through the IAM device before they are forwarded to the proxy server, that is, the proxy server must be placed at the WAN interface of the IAM device.

By default, the IAM device will detect and monitor all proxy data. If you want it to delete the data of a certain proxy server, set the IP address or IP range of the proxy server in the text box on the [Proxy Server Settings] page, as shown below:



When the proxy server is specified here, the IAM device will only detect whether the packets to be forwarded to this proxy server are proxied and conduct Internet access control over these packets. If the list is null, the IAM device will identify all the data packets, which will greatly influence the identification efficiency. Therefore, it is recommended to specify the IP address of proxy server in the text box.

### 3.9.10.4 Remote Maintenance

The [Remote Maintenance] page enables you to set whether to allow remote login to the IAM device through WAN interface, and whether to enable automatic report functions of unidentified URL, unidentified application and system error.



**Table 69 Remote Maintenance Settings**

Field	Description
Enable Remote Maintenance	Indicates whether to allow remote login to the IAM device through WAN interface. When this option is checked, the WAN interface of the IAM device will automatically allow the ping function.
Enable auto report of unidentified URL	When this options is checked, the URLs that are unidentified by internal URL library will be automatically reported, which helps enrich the internal URL library and improve the service further. This function will not disclose the information of your company.
Enable auto report of system error	When this options is checked, the system error messages will be automatically reported, which helps improve the service further. The function will not disclose the information of your company.
Enable auto report of unidentified application	When this options is checked, the applications unidentified will be automatically reported, which helps improve the service further. The function will not disclose the information of your company.

### 3.9.10.5 Email Audit Options

The [Email Audit Options] page enables you to set options related to email audit.

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Settings' window with the 'Email Audit Options' tab selected. The configuration includes:

- Audit Timeout/Action:**
  - Timeout (mins): 60
  - After the timeout period, email still not audited will be:
    - Sent
    - Deleted from the disk without being sent
- Email Sending Attempts:**
  - Max Sending Attempts: 10

A 'Commit' button is located at the bottom right of the configuration area.

**Table 70 Email Audit Options**

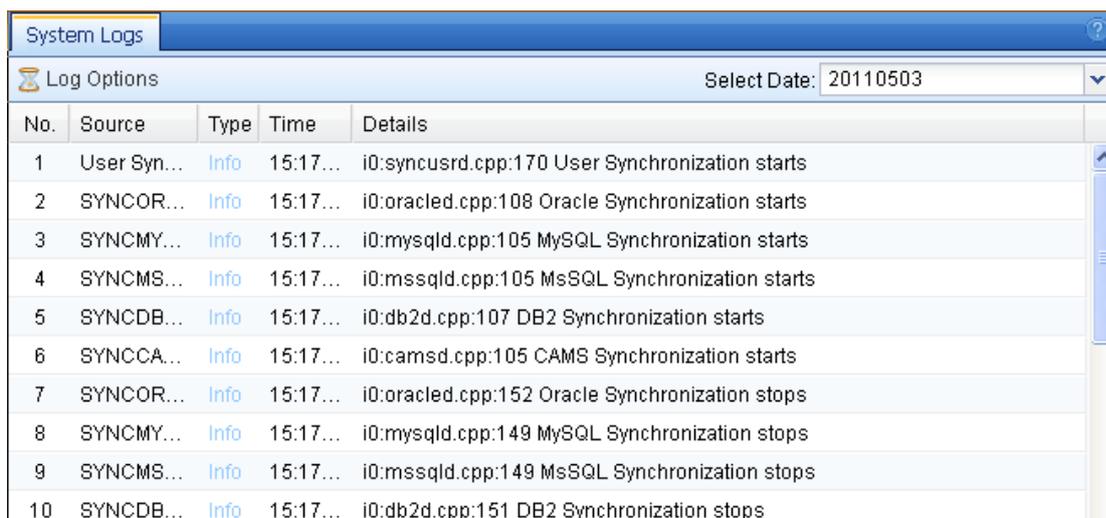
Field	Description
Timeout (minutes)	Set the timeout for auditing delayed emails. The default value is 1 minute.

After the timeout period, email still not audited will be	Specify the processing mode when the delayed emails are still not audited after the timeout period set above. It has two options: [Sent] and [Deleted from the disk without being sent].
Max Sending Attempts	Set the number of attempts for sending the delayed emails after they are audited. When the threshold set here is reached, the emails still not sent out will be deleted.

## 3.10 Diagnostics

### 3.10.1 System Logs

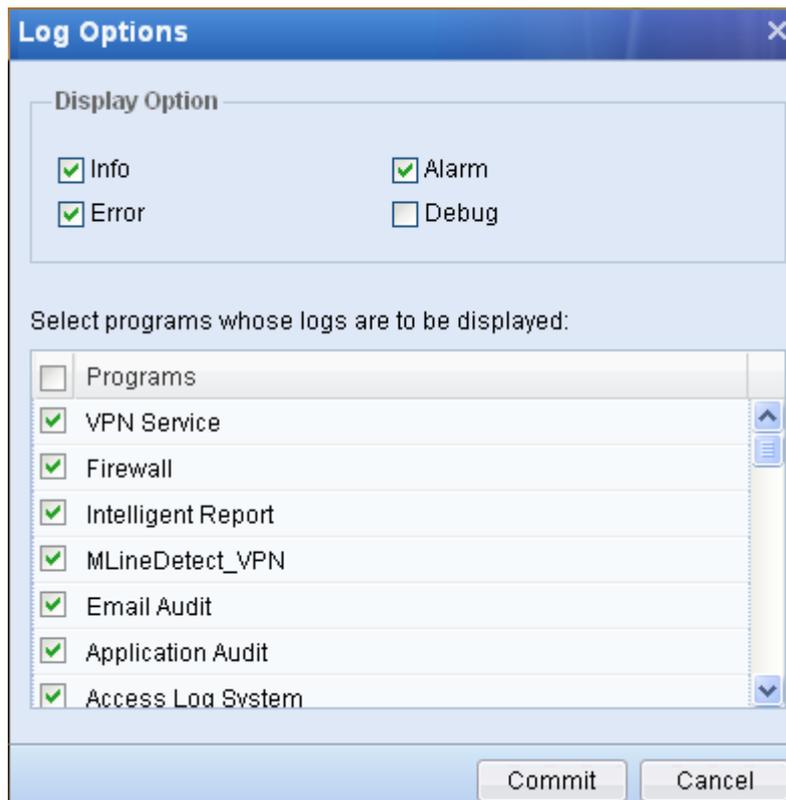
On the [System Logs] page, you can view the running status logs of each modules of the IAM device, through which you will understand whether the corresponding module is running smoothly. The page is as shown below:



The screenshot shows a web interface for 'System Logs'. At the top, there is a 'Log Options' section with a date selector set to '20110503'. Below this is a table with columns: No., Source, Type, Time, and Details. The table contains 10 rows of log entries, all of which are 'Info' type and occur at '15:17...'. The details describe the start and stop of synchronization for various modules: User Synchronization, Oracle Synchronization, MySQL Synchronization, MsSQL Synchronization, DB2 Synchronization, and CAMS Synchronization.

No.	Source	Type	Time	Details
1	User Syn...	Info	15:17...	i0:syncusrd.cpp:170 User Synchronization starts
2	SYNCOR...	Info	15:17...	i0:oracled.cpp:108 Oracle Synchronization starts
3	SYNCMY...	Info	15:17...	i0:mysqld.cpp:105 MySQL Synchronization starts
4	SYNCMS...	Info	15:17...	i0:mssqld.cpp:105 MsSQL Synchronization starts
5	SYNCDB...	Info	15:17...	i0:db2d.cpp:107 DB2 Synchronization starts
6	SYNCCA...	Info	15:17...	i0:camsd.cpp:105 CAMS Synchronization starts
7	SYNCOR...	Info	15:17...	i0:oracled.cpp:152 Oracle Synchronization stops
8	SYNCMY...	Info	15:17...	i0:mysqld.cpp:149 MySQL Synchronization stops
9	SYNCMS...	Info	15:17...	i0:mssqld.cpp:149 MsSQL Synchronization stops
10	SYNCDB...	Info	15:17...	i0:db2d.cpp:151 DB2 Synchronization stops

To select the log types to be displayed on the [System Logs] page, click the <Log Options> to open the [Log Options] page, as shown below:

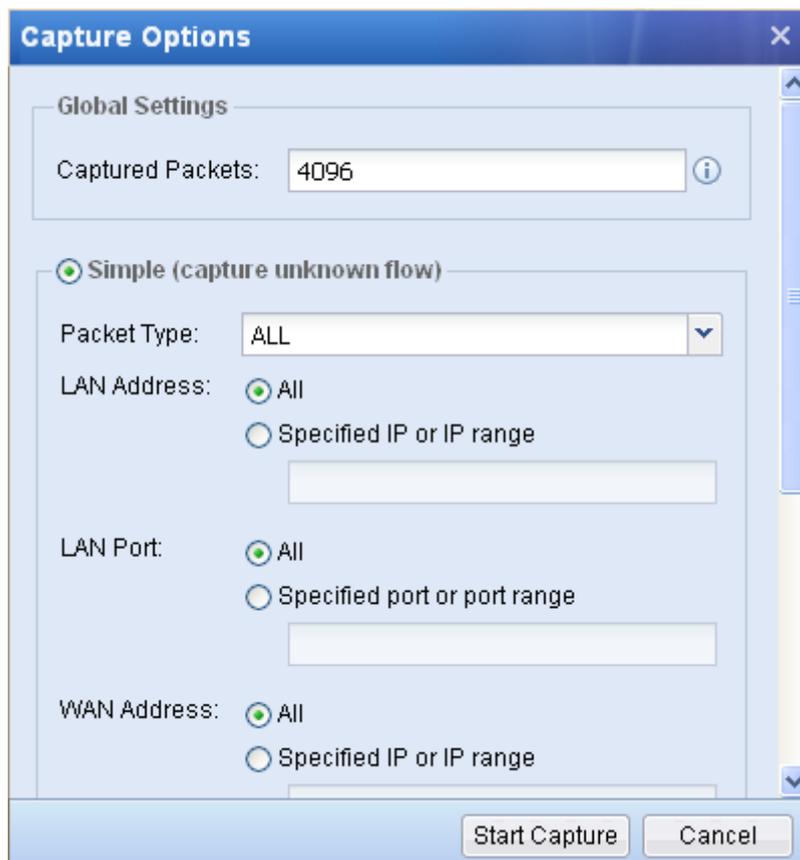


After finishing the settings, click <Commit> to save and apply them. Then you will find only the selected types of logs are displayed on the [System Logs] page.

At the upper right corner of the page, you can select a specific date to view the system logs of the corresponding date.

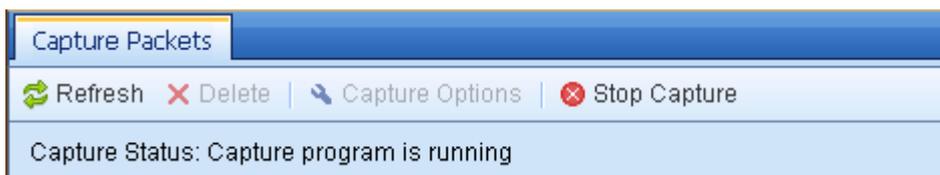
### 3.10.2 Capture Packets

The [Capture Packets] page is used to capture the packets that go through the IAM device to quickly locate the problems. It functions as a troubleshooting assistant tool. To configure the packet capture options, click <Capture Options> to open the [Capture Options] page, as shown below:

**Table 71 Capture Options**

Field	Description
Captured Packets	Specify the number of packets to be captured.
Simple (capture unknown flow)	<p>When selecting this option, you can set the conditions such as LAN address and port, WAN address and port and packet type and then capture the unknown application packets that match your conditions.</p> <p>Note: This option only captures the unknown application packets that cannot be identified by the IAM device. If you want to capture all the packets of specified conditions, please select the [Advanced (TCPDUMP)] option below.</p>
Advanced (TCPDUMP)	<p>When selecting this option, you can specify the network interface and then capture the packets that go through it. In the text box of [Filter Expression], you can set the conditions for capturing packets (it adopts the standard TCPDUMP format under Linux operating system).</p> <p>The [Simple (capture unknown flow)] and [Advanced (TCPDUMP)] options are alternative.</p>

After finishing the above settings, click <Start Capture> to start capturing packets. On the [Capture Packets] page, the capture status displays "Capture program is running", as shown below:



To stop capturing packets, click the <Stop Capture> button. The capture status displays "Capturing has stopped" and a **.pcap** file is generated on the page, as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'Capture Packets' control panel with the status 'Capture Status: Capturing has stopped'. Below the status, there is a table listing the generated .pcap files.

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	Size	Down...	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	2011-05-03-171647.pcap	410(B)	<a href="#">Downloa</a>	<a href="#">X</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	2011-05-03-171722.pcap	332(B)	<a href="#">Downloa</a>	<a href="#">X</a>

You can open the **.pcap** file with packet capture software, such as Sniffer or Ethereal.

To delete the file, select the file and click <Delete>. To download the file, click <Download> to download it to your local computer. By clicking <Refresh>, you can view the real-time information of capture results.

### 3.10.3 Command Console

The [Command Console] page provides a simple console command line for you to execute some simple commands to view corresponding information of the IAM device. It supports the following commands:

**Table 72 Command Description**

Command	Function
arp	View ARP table.
mii-tool	List connection status of network interface.
ifconfig	View information of network interface.
ping	Test connectivity of host.
telnet	Test connectivity of port.
ethtool	View information of network adapter.
route	Display routing table.
traceroute	Track packet forwarding path.

To execute a command, type the command on the command line and then press the **Enter** key on your keyboard, as shown below:

```

Command Console
Commands supported by console:
  cls[clear][ctrl+l]      Clear screen
  term[ctrl+c]           End the current program
  arp                    View ARP table
  mii-tool               List connection status of network interface
  ifconfig               View information of network interface
  ping                   Test connectivity of host
  telnet                 Test connectivity of port
  ethtool                View information of network adapter
  route                  Display routing table
  traceroute             Track packet forwarding path

> mii-tool
SIOCGMIIREG on eth0 failed: Input/output error
SIOCGMIIREG on eth1 failed: Input/output error
SIOCGMIIREG on eth2 failed: Input/output error
SIOCGMIIREG on eth3 failed: Input/output error
eth0: negotiated 100baseTx-FD flow-control, link ok
eth1: negotiated 100baseTx-FD flow-control, link ok
eth2: negotiated 100baseTx-FD flow-control, link ok
eth3: 10 Mbit, half duplex, no link

> route

```

### 3.10.4 Bypass/Packet Drop List

The [Bypass/ Packet Drop List] page enables you to find out why a packet has been denied and which

module has denied it when it goes through the IAM device. This helps quickly locate the error position and test whether some rules take effect. To set the conditions, click <Filter Criteria> to open the [Filter Criteria] page. You can then set the conditions, including IP address, protocol type and port, as shown below:

The fields and buttons on the [Filter Criteria] page are respectively described in the following table.

**Table 73 Bypass/Packet Drop List Settings**

Field	Description
Specified IP	Specify the IP address whose packet drop list is to be displayed. By default, it includes all subnets.
Protocol Type	Select the protocol type. Only the denied packets that match the specified protocol type and port will be listed. It has five options: [ALL], [TCP], [UDP], [ICMP] and [Others].
Protocol Number	Enter the protocol number. This option is available only when the [Protocol Type] above is set to [Others]. Enter an integer between 0 and 255.
Port	Specify the port. This option is available only when the [Protocol Type] above is not set to [Others]. You can select [ALL] or specify a port number.

Enable Bypass for the following address	Enable the BYPASS function for specified IP addresses. When this option is checked and the IP addresses are specified in the list, these IP addresses will NOT be controlled by the access management policies.
---	---

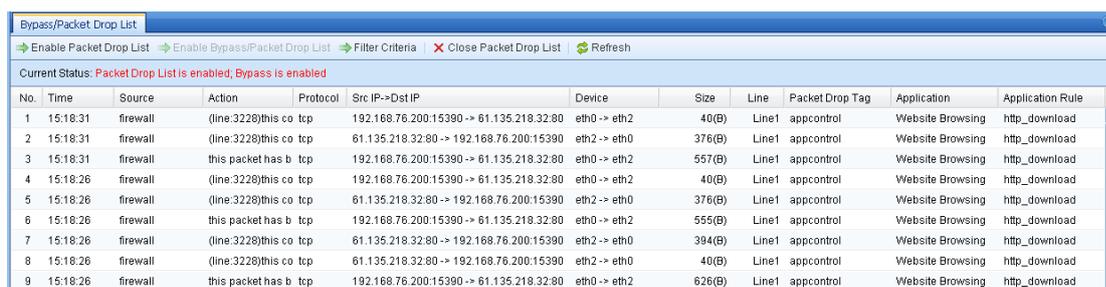
After finishing the above settings, click <Enable> to save and apply them.

On the [Bypass/Packet Drop List] page, you can click <Enable Packet Drop List> to enable the packet drop list, that is, to display the packets of specified IP addresses that are dropped by the IAM device. In this situation, all the access management policies configured on the IAM device are still working. The packets that should be denied by corresponding access management policies are still denied, and the denied packets will be listed on this page. You can click <Refresh> to view the denied packets in real time.

When you click <Enable Packet Drop List/Bypass>, the packet drop list and BYPASS function are both enabled. In this situation, all the access management policies configured on the IAM device are disabled. The IAM device allows the packets that should have been denied by corresponding access management policies and list those packets at the same time on this page. You can click <Refresh> to view the real-time information on why and by which the packets should have been denied. This function helps quickly find out whether the errors, such as network interruption, are caused by incorrect configuration of [Access Management] and then solve the problems.

To close the packet drop list, click the <Close Packet Drop List> button to cancel the output of the packet drop list and close the BYPASS function.

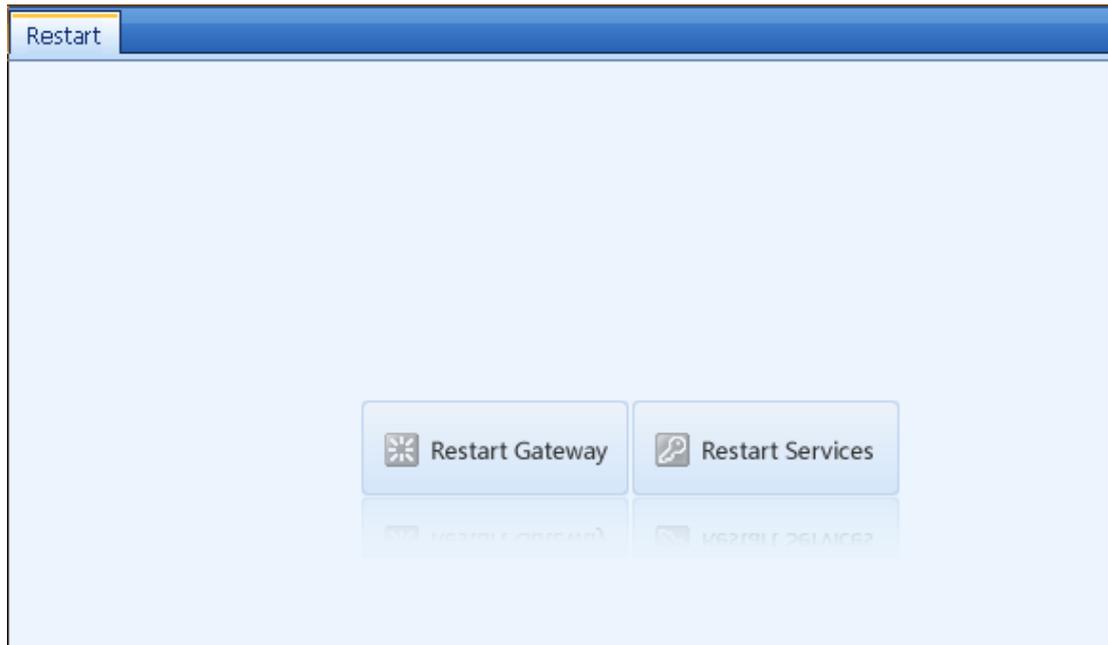
The packet drop list displays the dropped packets of the specified IP addresses, as shown below:



No.	Time	Source	Action	Protocol	Src IP->Dst IP	Device	Size	Line	Packet Drop Tag	Application	Application Rule
1	15:18:31	firewall	(line:3228)this co	tcp	192.168.76.200:15390 -> 61.135.218.32:80	eth0 -> eth2	40(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
2	15:18:31	firewall	(line:3228)this co	tcp	61.135.218.32:80 -> 192.168.76.200:15390	eth2 -> eth0	376(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
3	15:18:31	firewall	this packet has b	tcp	192.168.76.200:15390 -> 61.135.218.32:80	eth0 -> eth2	557(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
4	15:18:26	firewall	(line:3228)this co	tcp	192.168.76.200:15390 -> 61.135.218.32:80	eth0 -> eth2	40(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
5	15:18:26	firewall	(line:3228)this co	tcp	61.135.218.32:80 -> 192.168.76.200:15390	eth2 -> eth0	376(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
6	15:18:26	firewall	this packet has b	tcp	192.168.76.200:15390 -> 61.135.218.32:80	eth0 -> eth2	555(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
7	15:18:26	firewall	(line:3228)this co	tcp	61.135.218.32:80 -> 192.168.76.200:15390	eth2 -> eth0	394(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
8	15:18:26	firewall	(line:3228)this co	tcp	61.135.218.32:80 -> 192.168.76.200:15390	eth2 -> eth0	40(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download
9	15:18:26	firewall	this packet has b	tcp	192.168.76.200:15390 -> 61.135.218.32:80	eth0 -> eth2	626(B)	Line1	appcontrol	Website Browsing	http_download

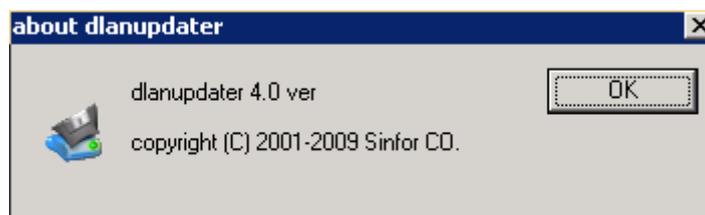
### 3.10.5 Restart

The [Restart] page includes the <Restart Gateway> and <Restart Services> buttons, as shown below. You can click them to restart the gateway or services manually.



## Appendix A: Gateway Update Client

The gateway update and restoration system can be used to update the kernel version of SANGFOR IAM gateway device and backup configuration. When vital errors occur in the system, the IAM gateway device can be restored to the factory default configuration via the gateway restoration system. In addition, the gateway restoration system can be used to inspect the running state of the network interface and configuration of the routing, as well as to modify the work mode of the network interface, etc.



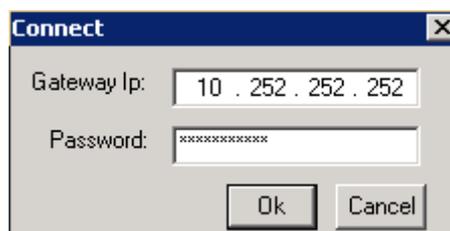
On the gateway update client, as shown above, there are the following menus: [System], [Update], [Backup], [ManagePackage], [Tools], [Updatehistory] and [Help]. Their functions will be described respectively in the following parts.

**[System]:** It includes the five functions: [Connect], [Search], [Change Password], [Disconnect] and [Quit].

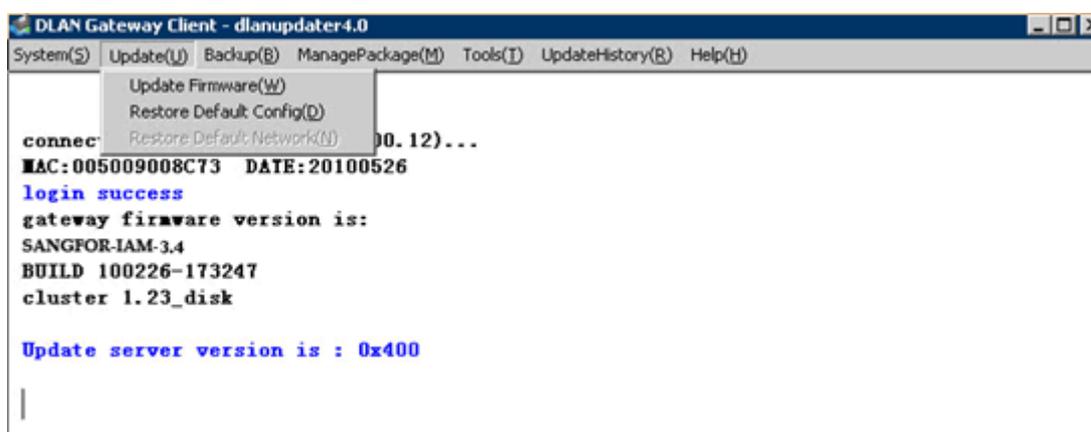


[Connect]: To connect to the gateway device. Just type the IP address of the IAM device to be connected, and then the password to log in.

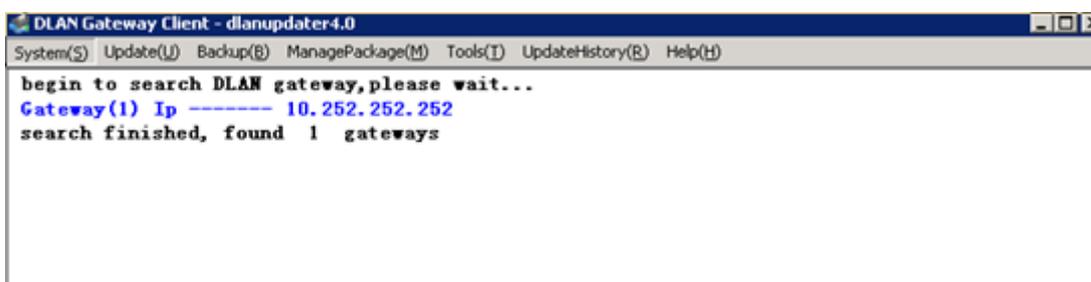
The default password is **dlanrecover**. The login page is as shown below:



After you login successfully, the corresponding login success message will be displayed on the interface of Gateway Update Client, as shown below:



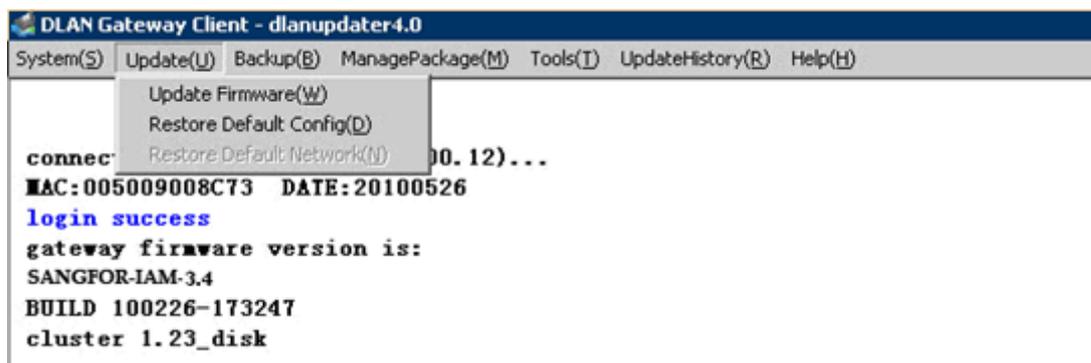
[Search]: To automatically search the local area network for the IAM gateway devices (as long as they are reachable by layer 2 broadcast and not by way of routing device), even if they are located in different subnets (on the condition that no router or layer 3 switch is in the way). The search results are as shown below:



[Change Password]: To change to the login password of Gateway Update Client.

[Disconnect]: To cut off the connection with the SANGFOR IAM gateway device. If there is no operation performed in a certain time period, the Gateway Update Client will also automatically disconnect from it.

[**Update**]: It includes the three functions: [Update Firmware], [Restore Default Configuration] and [Restore Default Network], as shown below:



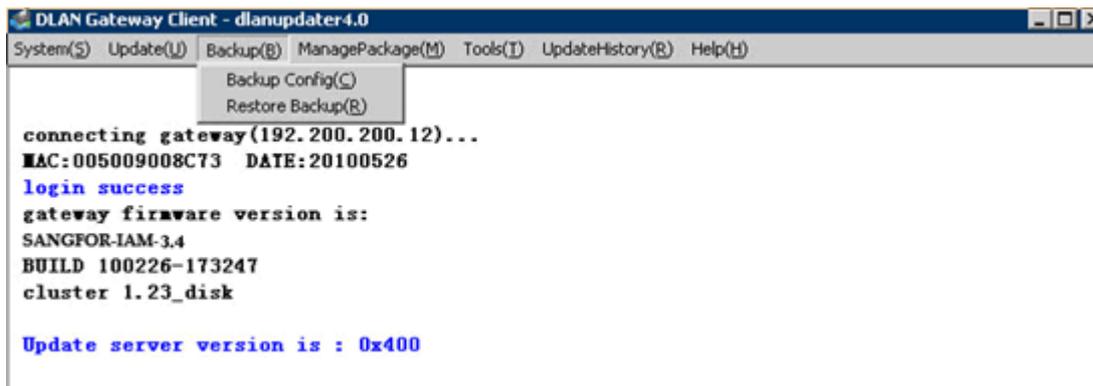
[Update Firmware] and [Restore Default Configuration]: Both are available only after you connect to the IAM hardware gateway. [Update Firmware] is used for updating the kernel Firmware of IAM device and [Restore Default Configuration] for restoring the IAM device to the default configuration. These operations will update the key document of the device, or will change serial number. Please **DO NOT** perform this operation by yourself. If update is needed, please contact our technical engineer and follow the instructions given.

[Restore Default Network]: This function is available only when the Gateway Update Client is disconnected from the SANGFOR IAM gateway device. It is used for restoring the network configuration of the device to defaults. This operation is implemented by sending commands through broadcast package, and will apply to all the SANGFOR gateway devices deployed in the local area network (LAN). This operation may result in hazardous outcome, please **DO NOT** perform it by yourself.



1. The IAM device should be upgraded from lower version to higher one; it does not allow version-skipping upgrade.
2. Upgrade may bring about risk. Inappropriate upgrade operation may damage the device. Please **DO NOT** upgrade by yourself. If upgrade is needed, please contact our technical engineer for instructions.

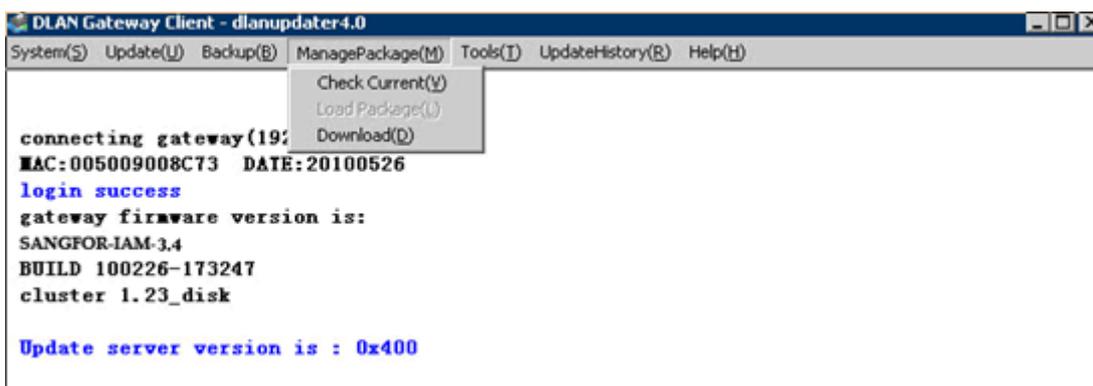
[**Backup**]: It includes the two functions: [Backup Configuration] and [Restore Backup], as shown below:



[Backup Config]: To backup all the configurations of the IAM gateway device.

[Restore Backup]: To restore the last backup configuration to the IAM gateway device.

[Managepackage]: It includes the three functions: [Check Current], [Load Package] and [Download], as shown below:

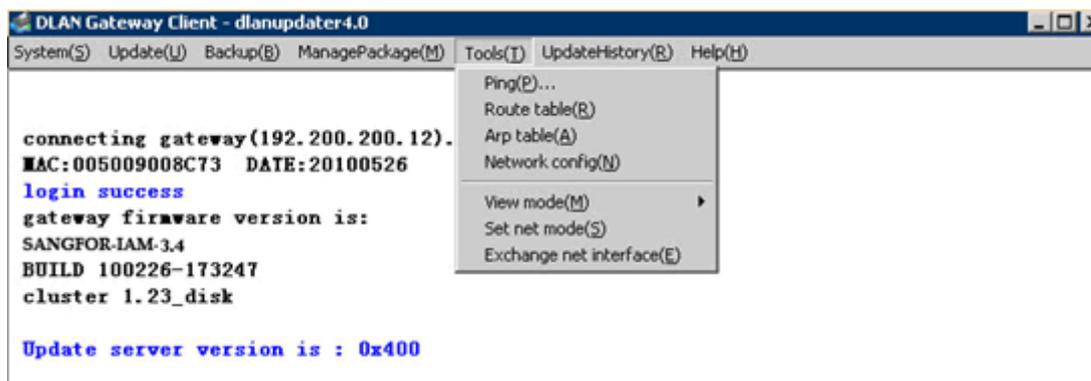


[Check Current]: To view the information of the update package currently loaded.

[Load Package]: To load the downloaded update package. You need to first load the update package and then conduct the update through [Update]> [Update Firmware].

[Download]: To download the update package. Go to the SANGFOR official website: [www.sangfor.com](http://www.sangfor.com).

[Tools]: It includes the seven functions: [Ping], [Route Table], [ARP Table], [Network Config], [View Mode], [Set Net Mode] and [Exchange Net Interface], as shown below:



[Ping]: To ping the device to check if the device is connected to Internet. To perform the operation, you need first log into the device via [System] > [Connect].

[Route table]: To view the route table of the IAM gateway device.

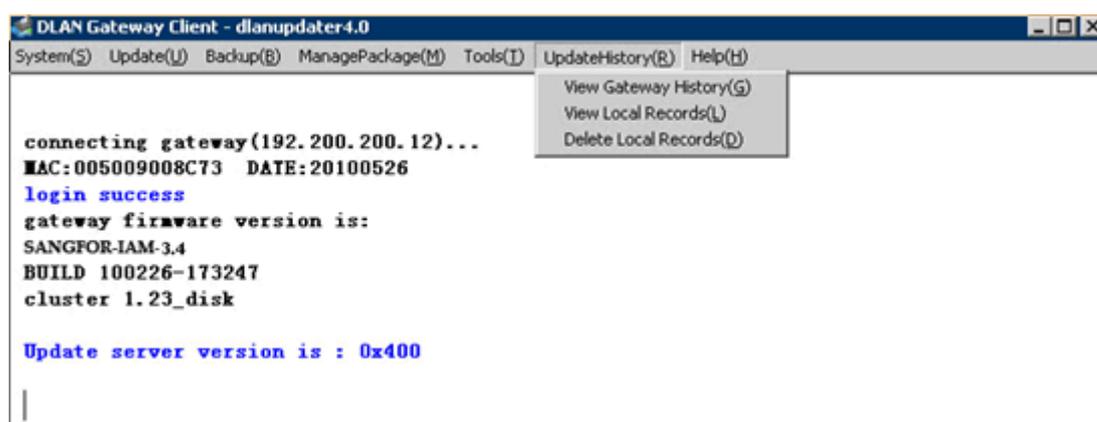
[Arp table]: To view the ARP table of the IAM gateway device.

[Network config]: To view the network configuration of the IAM gateway device, including the configuration of interface IP addresses.

[View mode]: To view the mode the current network interface card (NIC) is working in.

[Set net mode]: To configure manually the working mode of NIC for the IAM gateway device, if the setting is not coherent to the actual NIC mode.

[Update History]: It includes the three functions: [View Gateway History], [View Local Records] and [Delete Local Records].



[View Gateway History]: To view the update logs of the IAM gateway device.

[View Local Records]: To view the update logs of the local Gateway Update Client.

[Delete Local Records]: To clear the update logs of the local Gateway Update Client.

## Procedures for Updating

Step 1. Download the update package to the local computer.

Step 2. Start the Gateway Update Client and then click [ManagePackage] > [Load Package] to load the update package.

Step 3. Log in to the device through [System] > [Connect].

Step 4. Click [Update] > [Update Firmware].

If update is successful, the corresponding message will be displayed on the interface of the Gateway Update Client and the IAM gateway device will reboot.

Step 5. If you want to restore the default configuration, log into the device and click [Update] > [Restore Default Config].



If you want to update the Firmware of the IAM hardware device, please contact our technical engineer and follow the instructions given.

## Appendix B: Acronyms and Abbreviations

AC	Alternating Current
AD	Active Directory
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
BM	Bandwidth Management
CA	Certificate Authority
CAPWAP	Control And Provisioning Of Wireless Access Points
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CN	Common Name
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNAT	Destination Network Address Translation
DNS	Domain Name Server
DoS	Denial of Service Attack
DRP	Dynamic Routing Protocol
HA	High Availability
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	Secure Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
HSRP	Hot Standby Router Protocol
IAM	Internet Access Management
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IM	Instant Message
IP	Internet Protocol
IPS	Intrusion Prevention System
ISP	Internet Service Provider
LAN	Local Area Network
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LWAPP	Lightweight Access Point Protocol

L2TP	Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
MPLS	Multiprotocol Label Switching
NIC	Network Interface Card
OS	Operating System
OSI	Open System Interconnect Reference Model
OU	Organization Unit
POP3	Post Office Protocol 3
PPPoE	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet
SC	Secure Center
SMTP	Simple Message Transfer Protocol
SNAT	Source Network Address Translation
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer
SSO	Single Sign-On
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UI	User Interface
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
VID	VLAN ID
VLAN	Virtual Local Area Network
VPN	Virtual Private Network
VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
WAN	Wide Area Network
WLTP	Wire-Label Transport Protocol